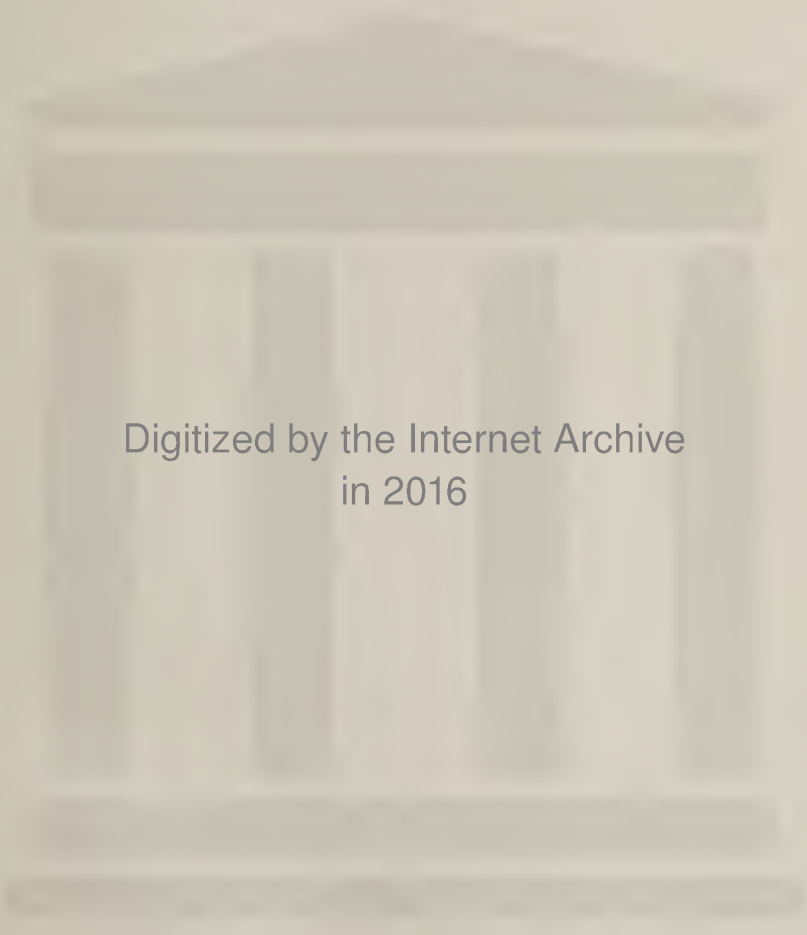


Division PL 533
Section .H 71
No.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2016

A

JAPANESE GRAMMAR.

A JAPANESE GRAMMAR.

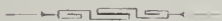
BY

J. J. HOFFMANN, PHIL. DOC.

MEMBER OF THE ROYAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES, ETC. ETC

PUBLISHED BY COMMAND OF

HIS MAJESTY'S MINISTER FOR COLONIAL AFFAIRS.



PRINTED BY A. W. SYTHOFF

WITH THE GOVERNMENT CHINESE AND JAPANESE TYPES

LEIDEN 1868.

SOLD BY

E. J. BRILL AND A. W. SYTHOFF.

This work is published in Dutch also under the title of

JAPANSCH E SPRAAKLEER

DOOR

J. J. HOFFMANN.

LEIDEN 1868.

TO

HIS EXCELLENCY THE RIGHT HONORABLE

J. J. ROCHUSSEN

L. L. D.

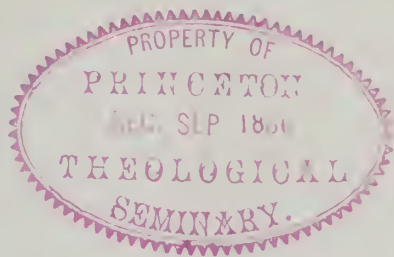
MINISTER OF STATE, LATE GOVERNOR OF DUTCH EAST INDIA, LATE MINISTER FOR THE
DEPARTMENT OF THE COLONIES

IN GRATITUDE FOR THE LIBERAL AND ENLIGHTENED MANNER IN WHICH HE HAS PATRONIZED
THE STUDY OF THE CHINESE AND JAPANESE LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE

THIS WORK IS VERY RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED

BY HIS EXCELLENCY'S MOST OBEDIANT SERVANT

THE AUTHOR



P R E F A C E.

The Grammar of the Japanese language, which accompanied with this Preface, is simultaneously published in the English and in the Dutch languages, is an original work, not a remodelling or an imitation of any other works of that stamp at present existing. As the result of a many years' study of the Japanese literature, it describes the written or book language, as it really exists in its ancient, as well as in its modern forms.

It also contains the author's own observations on the domain of the spoken language, which his intercourse with native Japanese in France, in England and especially in the Netherlands has afforded him ample opportunities to make; opportunities, which have been the more valuable to him, in as much as that they brought him in contact with people belonging to the most civilized and the most learned, as well as with those of the inferior classes of Japanese society. Thence he derives the right, even though he has never actually trodden the soil of Japan, to embrace the spoken language in the range of his observations, and to treat it in connection with the written language.

The author is convinced that, all he has quoted from Japanese writings, whatever their character, is genuine: he relies upon it himself, and trusts that the experience of others, unprejudiced, will find that it is so.

With regard to the manner in which he has conceived the language, and in all its phenomena treated it analytically and synthetically, he believes it to be in consonance with the spirit of this language, simple and natural, and, — his daily experience confirms this, — thoroughly practical.

PREFACE.

This method of his, was made known in general outline ten years ago, when he published the *Proeve eener Japansche Spraakkunst* door Mr. J. H. DONKER CURTIUS, and the seal of approbation was affixed to it by the judgement of scholars, whereas Mr. S. R. BROWN, who, in 1863, published the very important contribution: *Colloquial Japanese or conversational sentences and dialogues in English and Japanese*, not only founded his *Introductory remarks on the Grammar*, on the Author's method, but with a few exceptions, followed it in its whole extent.

The Grammar, now published, to lay claim to completeness, ought to be followed by a treatise on the Syntax, the materials for which are prepared. It will be published as a separate work, and be of small compass.

By these aids, initiated in the treatment of the language, the student may, with profit, make use of the Japanese-Dutch-English Dictionary, for the publication of which the author has prepared all the materials necessary, and by so doing he will have at his disposal the most important means of access to the Japanese literature.

LEIDEN, May 1868.

THE AUTHOR.

CONTENTS.

	Page.
INTRODUCTION.	
1. Connection of the Japanese with the Chinese language. — The necessity of uniting to the study of the Japanese, that of the Chinese language.....	1.
2. On the writing of the Japanese.....	2.
3. Introduction of the written and the spoken language of China into Japan.....	3.
4. Application of the Chinese writing, to the writing of the Japanese language.....	4.
5. The Japanese writing proper.	
<i>a.</i> The <i>Kata-kana</i>	6.
<i>b.</i> The <i>Fira-gána</i>	6.
6. The Japanese phonetic system.....	7.
<i>A.</i> Systematic arrangement of the 47 sounds, expressed by Chinese and Japanese <i>Kána</i> -signs.....	7.
<i>B.</i> The <i>Irova</i> in Chinese characters and in <i>Kata-kána</i> signs.....	9.
7. Repetition of syllables. — Stenographic signs. — Stops.....	11.
8. Remarks on the Japanese system of sounds, and the expression of it with our letters....	12.
9. Doubling of consonants by assimilation.....	18.
10. Accent and rhythm.....	20.
11. The Japanese running-hand <i>Fira-gána</i> .	
<i>a.</i> The <i>Irova</i> in <i>Fira-gána</i>	22.
<i>b.</i> Synopsis of the <i>Fira-gána</i> -characters most in use.....	22.
12. Written, or book language.....	29.
<i>A.</i> Exclusively Chinese.....	29.
Chinese dialects in Japan.....	30.
Chinese text with Japanese translation..	32.
<i>B.</i> Books written in the Japanese language.	34.
<i>C.</i> Style. <i>a.</i> Old Japanese.....	35.
<i>b.</i> New Japanese.....	38.
13. Language spoken. — General conversational language and dialects.....	39.
Epistolary style.....	42.
14. On the parts of speech.....	42.
15. Glance at the arrangement and connection of words in Japanese.....	44.
ETYMOLOGY, NATURE AND INFLECTION OF WORDS.	
CHAPTER I.	
NOUNS.	
§ 1. The root.....	49.
§ 2. Radical or primitive word.....	49. —
§ 3. Radical in composition.....	49. —

CONTENTS.

	Page.
A. Coördination	50.
B. Subordination	50.
I. Genitive subordination	50.
II. Objective subordination.	
1. direct	50.
2. indirect	50.
III. The radical form, as definition before adjectives	50.
Euphonic modification	50.
§ 4. Gender	51.
A. Gender logically included in particular names	51.
B. 1. Gender indicated by the prefixes <i>O</i> and <i>Me</i>	51.
2. Gender expressed by <i>Ono</i> and <i>Meno</i> .	52.
3. By <i>Ko</i> and <i>Me</i> , old-Japanese <i>Ki</i> and <i>Mi</i>	52.
C. Application of the ideas of male and fe- male to objects without sex	53.
D. Chinese expressions for the distinction of sex	53.
§ 5. Number	53.
A. Singular	53.
B. 1. Plural expressed by repetition of the noun	54.
II. Plural expressed by nouns used ad- jectively which signify a quantity, generality	55.
1. Japanese forms	55.
2. Chinese forms	56.
III. The plural expressed by collective words as <i>Ra</i> , <i>Tomo (domo)</i> , <i>Gara</i> , <i>Baru</i> , <i>Nami</i> , <i>Tatsi</i> , <i>Siu</i> , <i>Gata</i> and <i>Nado</i> , used as suffixes	56.
IV. Plural expressed by adverbs, which mitte the idea of multitude to the pre- dicate verb, <i>Mina</i> , <i>Nokarázu</i> , <i>Koto-</i> <i>gótoku</i>	59.
§ 6. Isolating of the noun by the suffix <i>ハ</i> , <i>va</i> ; <i>ワ</i> , <i>wa</i> ; <i>バ</i> , <i>ba</i>	60.
§ 7. Declension	61.
I. Nominative. Vocative	61.
II. Accusative	62.
III. Genitive	63.

	Page.
1. <i>Ga</i> , no index of the subject	64.
2. Genitive suffixes <i>No</i> , <i>Na</i> and <i>Tsu</i> ..	66.
IV. Dative and Terminative. The suffix <i>Ve (ye)</i>	67.
The suffix <i>Ni</i> , as sign of the	
<i>a.</i> Dative or Ablative	68.
<i>b.</i> Local	68.
<i>c.</i> Modal	69.
<i>d.</i> Casual and Instrumental	69.
<i>e.</i> Dative of the person	69.
<i>f.</i> Dative of the thing	69.
<i>g.</i> Terminative	70.
V. <i>To</i> , <i>Nite</i> , <i>De</i>	70.
VI. Ablative, characterized by <i>Yori</i> or by <i>Kara</i>	71.

CHAPTER II.

PRONOUNS.

§ 8. I. Qualifying nouns, which serve as pro- nouns	74.
A. For „I”	74.
B. For the person spoken to	74.
Particular names of human relations to distinguish the person concerned	77.
II. Pronouns proper, formed from the adverbs of place <i>Wa</i> , <i>A</i> , <i>Ka</i> , <i>Ko</i> , <i>Yo</i> , <i>So</i> , <i>Da (Do)</i> , <i>Idzu</i>	79.
<i>a.</i> Immediate compounds with <i>Wa</i>	80.
<i>b.</i> Immediate compounds of the other ad- verbs of place with <i>Ko (ku)</i> , <i>Tsi</i> , <i>Tsira</i> and <i>Tsutsi</i>	80.
<i>c.</i> <i>Da-ga</i> , <i>Wa-ga</i>	82.
<i>d.</i> Pronouns possessive, formed from ra- dical words indicating place, by suf- fixing <i>No</i>	83.
<i>e.</i> Substantive pronouns, formed from ad- verbs of place, by suffixing <i>Re</i>	85.
1) <i>Ware</i> , 2) <i>Are</i> , <i>Oré</i> , 3) <i>Karé</i> , 4) <i>Koré</i> .	86.
5) <i>Soré</i> , 6)	87.
7) <i>Tare (Dare)</i> , <i>Tore (Dore)</i> , <i>Idzuré</i> .	88.
III. Determinative and reflective pronouns ..	89.

CONTENTS.

	Page.		Page.
A. 1. <i>Onôre</i> , <i>onodzukâra</i>	89.	Examples, showing the use of the forms	112.
2. <i>Mi</i> , <i>Midzukâra</i> , <i>Waga-mi</i>	89.	Derivative adjectives.	
B Expressions borrowed from the Chi- nese: 1. <i>Sin</i> , 2. <i>Zi-sin</i> , 3. <i>Zi-bun</i> , 4. <i>Zi-zen</i>	93.	§ 10. Adjectives in <i>karû</i> and <i>garû</i>	113.
IV. Expressions of reciprocity: <i>Tagai ni</i> , <i>Ai</i> .	95.	§ 11. " " <i>ârû</i>	114.
V. Pronouns indefinite: <i>Fito</i> , <i>Aru-fito</i> , <i>Mo- no</i> . — <i>Dare mo</i> and <i>Nani mo</i> followed by a verb negative	95.	§ 12. " " <i>nârû</i> , <i>na</i> and <i>târû</i>	114.
VI. Relative pronoun <i>Tokôro</i>	97.	§ 13. Derivative adjectives in <i>ka</i>	116.
VII. Interrogative pronouns derived from <i>Ta</i> or <i>To</i> , vulgo <i>Da</i> or <i>Do</i>	97.	§ 14. " " " <i>yaka</i>	117.
1. <i>Nani</i> , what?	98.	§ 15. " " " <i>kéki</i> or <i>koki</i>	119.
2. <i>Iká</i> , how?	101.	§ 16. " " " <i>sîki</i>	119.
Interrogative pronouns with the suffix, <i>mo</i>	102.	§ 17. " " " <i>kî-sîki</i>	124.
VIII. Arrangement of the personal pronouns in the conversational language	102.	§ 18. " " " <i>rit-sîki</i>	125.
		§ 19. " " " <i>beki</i>	127.
		§ 20. " " " <i>naki</i>	127.
		§ 21. Adjectives with the negative prefix <i>Na</i> , or the Chinese <i>Fu</i>	128.
		§ 22. Adjectives with a previous definition	129.
		§ 23. Definition of adjectives by adverbs, which denote the presence of a quality in full degree	130.
		§ 24. Definition of adjectives by adverbs, which denote the presence of a quality in a higher degree. Absolute comparative	130.
		§ 25. The relative or real comparative. 1. Attribution of a quality in equal de- gree	131.
		2. Attribution of a quality in a higher degree	132.
		§ 26. The absolute superlative	134.
		§ 27. The relative superlative	135.
		§ 28. Expression of the excess of a quality	136.
CHAPTER III.		CHAPTER IV.	
THE ADJECTIVE.		NUMERALS.	
§ 9. Distinction between the attributive and pre- dicate forms	105.	§ 29. The ancient Japanese cardinal numbers	137.
I. The adjective in the written lan- guage.		§ 30. The Chinese cardinal numbers	141.
A. Joined to a noun substantive	105.	§ 31. The ordinal numerals	142.
B. Adjectives in <i>ki</i> .		§ 32. The iterative numerals	143.
1. <i>a. Ki</i> , termination of the adjective, used as attributive	105.	§ 33. The doubling or multiplying numerals	144.
2. <i>b. Adjectives in ki</i> , used as nouns concrete	106.	§ 34. The sort numbers	144.
2. The termination <i>ku</i> , as adverbial form. The same, isolated by the suffix <i>va</i>	106.	§ 35. The distributive numbers	145.
3. <i>a. Si</i> , form of the adjective, as pre- dicate	106.	§ 36. The fractional, or broken numbers	146.
4. <i>b. As such</i> , superseded by <i>Kari</i>	107.		
4. <i>Sa</i> , forming nouns abstract	107.		
5. List of adjectives in <i>ki</i>	107.		
6. Examples showing the use of the forms cited	110.		
II The adjective according to the spo- ken language	112.		

CONTENTS.

	Page.
§ 37. Numeral substantives.....	147.
I. Japanese numeratives.....	148.
II. Chinese numeratives.....	149.
Notation of time:	
§ 38. Enumeration of years.....	154.
§ 39. Chronological notation of years.....	155.
1. after the cycle.....	155.
2. after the years of governments.....	156.
§ 40. Enumeration of years by year-names....	157.
§ 41. Division of the solar year.....	158.
§ 42. Enumeration of months.....	159.
§ 43. Enumeration of the days.....	160.
§ 44. Notation of hours.....	162.
Measures, weights and coins.	
§ 45. Measures of length.....	166.
§ 46. Superficial measures.....	168.
§ 47. Measures of capacity.....	168.
§ 48. Weights.....	169.
§ 49. Iron, copper and bronze coins.....	171.
§ 50. Silver coins.....	171.
§ 51. Gold coins.....	172.

CHAPTER V.

ADVERBS.

§ 52. I. Adverbs proper.....	173.
II. Improper adverbs, or adverbial expressions.....	173.

	Page.
1. Nouns.....	173.
2. Verbs in the gerund.....	173.
Distribution of adverbs according to their signification.....	173.
§ 53. Adverbs of quality.....	173.
§ 54. " " degree.....	174.
§ 55. " " circumstance.....	176.
§ 56. " " place and space.....	177.
§ 57. " " time.....	178.
§ 58. " " manner.....	181.
§ 59. " connecting propositions.....	182.
Alphabetical synopsis of the adverbs cited.	182.

CHAPTER VI.

WORDS EXPRESSIVE OF RELATION.

(POSTPOSITIONS.)

§ 60. Retrospect of the inflexions.....	185.
§ 61. Distinction of the words expressive of relation.....	185.
§ 62. Nouns, used as expressive of relation....	186.
§ 63. Verbs in the gerund, used as words expressive of relation.....	192.
A. With a previous accusative.....	192.
B. With a previous local, or dative....	193.
Alphabetical synopsis of the words expressive of relation treated.....	195.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER VII.

THE VERB.

	Page.		Page.
§ 64. Voices of the verb.....	197.	§ 81. .. <i>ki</i> , .. <i>si</i> , .. <i>ken</i>	224.
§ 65. Moods.....	197.	§ 82. .. <i>keri</i> , .. <i>kesi</i> , .. <i>keru</i> , .. <i>keran</i>	227.
§ 66. Tenses.....	198.	§ 83. .. <i>tari-ki</i> , .. <i>tari-si</i> , .. <i>tari-ken</i> , .. <i>te-ki</i> , .. <i>te-si</i> , .. <i>ten</i>	228
§ 67. Person and Number.....	198.	§ 84. [... <i>ni</i>], .. <i>nu</i> , .. <i>nan</i> ; [... <i>nuri</i>], .. <i>nuru</i> , .. <i>nureba</i> , .. <i>nuran</i>	229.
§ 68. The verbal root.....	198.	§ 85. .. <i>tsu</i> , .. <i>tsutsu</i> ; .. <i>tsur</i> <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>eba</i> , fut. an.	231
§ 69. The imperative mood.....	199.	§ 86. Synopsis of the inflected forms.....	233
§ 70. Closing-form of the verb.....	200.	§ 87. Causative or Factive verbs in <i>si</i> or <i>se</i> .	234
§ 71. The substantive and attributive form....	201.	§ 88. Causative verbs in <i>sime</i>	238.
§ 72. Gerund.			
I. Origin of the form.....	202.		
2. Modifications introduced by the spoken language.....	203.		
Examples of the use of the gerund . . .	205.		
§ 73. The verbal root in the Local (subjunctive form).....	205.		
§ 74. The concessive form expressed by <i>mo</i> or <i>tomo</i>	206.		
expressed by <i>domo</i> or <i>idomô</i>	208.		
§ 75. The form of the Future.....	208.		
I. The simple Future.....	208.		
Etymology of this form.....	209.		
Examples of the use of the forms cited.	211.		
The certain Future of the written language.....	212.		
II. The periphrastic Future.			
A. of the written language, formed by			
1. .. <i>aran</i> , <i>arame</i> , <i>ran</i>	212.		
2. .. <i>narami</i> , <i>narame</i> , <i>nanan</i> . . .	213.		
3. .. <i>aranan</i> = <i>arinan</i>	213.		
4. .. <i>suran</i>	213.		
5. .. <i>masi</i>	213.		
B. The periphrastic Future of the spoken language.....	214.		
§ 76. The suppositive form.....	215.		
§ 77. The continuative verbal form (<i>ari</i> , <i>iri</i> , <i>ori</i> , <i>uri</i>).....	217.		
§ 78. I. .. <i>te ari</i> , .. <i>te ori</i> , .. <i>te iri</i>	218.		
II. .. <i>tari</i> , .. <i>taru</i>	219.		
Forms of the past tense.			
§ 79. .. <i>tari</i> , .. <i>taru</i> , .. <i>ta</i>	220.		
§ 80. .. <i>eri</i> , .. <i>esi</i> , .. <i>eru</i> , .. <i>ereba</i>	222.		
		§ 81. .. <i>ki</i> , .. <i>si</i> , .. <i>ken</i>	224.
		§ 82. .. <i>keri</i> , .. <i>kesi</i> , .. <i>keru</i> , .. <i>keran</i>	227.
		§ 83. .. <i>tari-ki</i> , .. <i>tari-si</i> , .. <i>tari-ken</i> , .. <i>te-ki</i> , .. <i>te-si</i> , .. <i>ten</i>	228
		§ 84. [... <i>ni</i>], .. <i>nu</i> , .. <i>nan</i> ; [... <i>nuri</i>], .. <i>nuru</i> , .. <i>nureba</i> , .. <i>nuran</i>	229.
		§ 85. .. <i>tsu</i> , .. <i>tsutsu</i> ; .. <i>tsur</i> <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>eba</i> , fut. an.	231
		§ 86. Synopsis of the inflected forms.....	233
		§ 87. Causative or Factive verbs in <i>si</i> or <i>se</i> .	234
		§ 88. Causative verbs in <i>sime</i>	238.
		The passive form.	
		§ 89. Its derivation and signification.....	240.
		I. Passive verbs of the first class.	240
		II. " " " second "	241.
		III. " " " third "	242.
		§ 90. On the government of the passive verb..	245.
		Examples of the use of the passive forms.	245
		The negative form of the Japanese verb.	
		§ 91. I. Theory of the Derivation.....	247
		Examples of the formation of negative verbs.....	248.
		II. Inflection of the negative verbs.....	249.
		§ 92. Continuative form of the negative verb..	250
		§ 93. Form of the forbidding Imperative	251.
		§ 94. Forms of the negative preterit.....	252.
		§ 95. Forms of the negative future	253.
		Examples of the use of the negative forms.	254.
		Verbs expressing the being, the becoming and the causing to be.	
		§ 96. <i>Ar</i> <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , to be.....	260.
		§ 97. <i>Or</i> <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , to dwell.....	263
		§ 98. <i>I</i> , <i>Ite</i> , <i>Iru</i> , to be in.....	264
		§ 99. Conjugation of nondeflecting verbs in <i>i</i> ..	265
		Synopsis of nondeflecting verbs in <i>i</i> . . .	265
		§ 100. I. <i>Ni</i> , <i>Nite</i> , <i>Nan</i> , to be.....	269.
		II. <i>Nar</i> <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , to be.....	270.
		III. <i>Nar</i> <i>e</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>eru</i> , <i>uru</i> , to become... 271.	
		IV. <i>Nas</i> <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , to cause to be.....	273
		§ 101. <i>Mas</i> <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , 1. to abide; 2. to be.....	274
		§ 102. <i>Samuravi</i> , <i>Sorai</i> , <i>Soro</i>	276.
		§ 103. <i>S</i> <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>uru</i> , to do.....	279
		I. Use of the root-form <i>si</i>	279.

CONTENTS.

	Page.
II. <i>Si</i> , acting as verb.	280.
Synopsis of the conjugational forms of <i>si</i>	281.
Compounds with <i>si</i>	282.
III. On the government of <i>Si</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>uru</i> , to do	285.
§ 104. <i>Besi</i> , <i>Beki</i> , <i>Beku</i> , may, can, shall. . .	291.
I. Derivation and signification.	291.
II. Inflectional forms of <i>Besi</i>	292.
III. On the government of <i>Besi</i>	293.
IV. 1. <i>Yokûs</i> i, <i>u</i> , <i>uru</i> , to be able.	294.
2. <i>Atavâz</i> i, <i>u</i> , not to be able.	295.
V. <i>Ahête</i> , <i>Aete</i> , daring.	295.
VI. <i>Too-sen tar</i> i, <i>u</i> , it should be.	296.
§ 105. The desiderative verbs, formed by <i>Ta</i> , disirous.	296.
§ 106. Verbs expressing the leaving off of an action	297.
I. formed by <i>Maki</i>	297.
II. " " <i>Yami</i>	298.
III. " " <i>Simavi</i>	298.
§ 107. The adverbial form of a verb.	299.
§ 108. The derivative form <i>meri</i>	300.
§ 109. <i>Nasi</i> , <i>Naki</i> , <i>Naku</i> , not to exist.	301.
I. The root <i>Na</i>	301.
II. <i>Nasi</i> , Δ <i>Nai</i> , there is not.	302.
III. <i>Naki</i> , Δ <i>Nai</i> , the adjective form.	303.
IV. <i>Naku</i> , the adverbial form.	304.
V. Verbs compounded with <i>Naku</i>	305.
1. <i>Nakû-si</i> , <i>Nakû-se</i> , 2. <i>Nakari</i> , 3. <i>Nakeri</i> , 4. <i>Nakû-nari</i> .	
Synopsis of the inflectional forms and derivatives of <i>Na</i>) <i>si</i> , <i>ki</i> , <i>ku</i>	307.
Remarks on the compound verbs.	
§ 110. I. Verbs compounded with substantives.	309.
II. Verbs compounded with verbs.	309.
APPENDIX.	
Distinctive verbs and verbal forms expressive of courtesy.	
§ 111. General observation	311.

	Page.
§ 112. The honorary passive form	312.
§ 113. I. <i>Tamavi</i> , Δ <i>Tamai</i>	314.
II. <i>Tamavari</i> , <i>Uke-tamavari</i>	315.
§ 114. <i>Mâtsuri</i> , to attend.	316.
Distinctive verbs expressing	
§ 115. Being. <i>Famberi</i> , <i>Moosi</i>	317.
§ 116. Doing. <i>Si</i> , <i>Itasi</i> , <i>Asobasi</i>	318.
§ 117. Seeing, Showing. <i>Mi</i> , <i>Mise</i> , <i>Hai-ken</i> etc.	319.
§ 118. Saying. <i>Ivi</i> , <i>Ii-masi</i> , <i>Nori-tamai</i> , <i>Oôse</i> , <i>Kikase</i> , <i>Moosi</i>	319.
§ 119. Giving. <i>Age</i> , <i>Sasâge</i> , <i>Kudasare</i> , <i>Tsuke</i> , <i>Torâsime</i> , <i>Torâse</i> , <i>Vari</i>	321.
§ 120. Going and Coming. <i>Mairi</i> , <i>Mairare</i> , <i>Mairase</i> , <i>Mairasare</i> , <i>Ide</i> , <i>Agari</i> , <i>Ma-</i> <i>kari</i> , <i>Tsika-dzuki</i>	323.

CHAPTER VIII.

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 121. Classification of the Jap. conjunctions	326.
A. Coördinative conjunctions	
§ 122. I. Copulative conjunctions.	327.
§ 123. II. Disjunctive conjunctions.	329.
§ 124. III. Adversative conjunctions	331.
§ 125. IV. Conclusive conjunctions	334.
§ 126. V. Explanatory conjunctions	335.
B. Subordinative conjunctions.	
§ 127. I. Conjunctions of place and time	336.
§ 128. II. Conjunctions of quality and manner.	338.
§ 129. III. Conjunctions of causality.	
a. Conjunctions of an actual cause.	339.
b. Conjunctions of a possible cause (Conditional conjunctions).	341.
§ 130. IV. Conjunctions of the purpose.	343.
§ 131. V. Conjunctions of concession.	344.
§ 132. The relative comparative of propositions.	346.
Alphabetical synopsis of the conjunctions treated.	348.

INTRODUCTION.

1. CONNECTION OF THE JAPANESE WITH THE CHINESE LANGUAGE. — THE NECESSITY OF UNITING TO THE STUDY OF THE JAPANESE, THAT OF THE CHINESE LANGUAGE.

In its general character, it is true, the Japanese is cognate to the Mongolian and Mandju languages, but with regard to its development, it is quite original, and it has remained so notwithstanding the later admixture of Chinese words, since it rules these as a foreign element, and subjects them to its own construction.

In the Japanese language, as it is now spoken and written, two elements, the Japanese and Chinese alternate continually and, by so doing, form a mixed language which, in its formation, has followed the same course as, for instance, the English in which, the more lately adopted Romance element, which forms a woof only, in like manner, is governed grammatically by the Anglo-Saxon.

In the study of the Japanese language the distinction of the two elements, is of the greatest importance; and as the Chinese element is rooted in the Chinese language, both spoken and written, and thence is to be explained, the student of Japanese ought to know so much of the Chinese language, as shall enable him to read and understand a Chinese text.

The Japanese learns Chinese by means of his mother tongue, thus one, who

is not a Japanese and does not understand Japanese, but wishes to learn it, must make himself master of Chinese by another way; to do this, he will be obliged to make use of the resources which already exist in European languages.

Whoever supposes that he can learn the Japanese language without, at the same time, studying the Chinese will totally fail of attaining his object either theoretically or practically. Even let him be so far master of the language spoken, as to be able to converse fluently with the natives, the simplest communication from a Japanese functionary, the price-list of the tea-dealer, the tickets with which the haberdasher or mercer labels his parcels will remain unintelligible to him; because they contain Chinese, if, indeed, they are not wholly composed of Chinese. Thus, whoever wishes to learn Japanese thoroughly, by means of this grammar, is supposed to possess, in some degree, knowledge of the Chinese written language.

2. ON THE WRITING OF THE JAPANESE.

The Japanese write Chinese but have, at the same time, their own native writing derived from the Chinese and which they, in imitation of the Chinese, write in perpendicular columns which follow one another, from the right hand to the left. Our alphabet, for that purpose would have to be written thus:

I	E	A
J	F	B
K	G	C
etc.	H	D

If the words are written in a cross direction, they begin at the right hand, thus, I H G F E D C B A.

The circumstance, that the Japanese writing does not run in the same direction as ours, but crosses it, or takes an opposite course, causes difficulty as soon as we have to couple Japanese writing with our own. Since, the Japanese, adhering to the custom of writing their words under one another, have altered their perpendicular columns of letters to cross lines, which thus show $\angle \text{B} \cup$; to bring their form of writing into some agreement with ours, I have, till now, thought it best to follow their example and, like them, placed the Japanese letters at the side. Now, however, some Japanese philologists, whenever their

writing is coupled with ours have, in conformity with it, adopted the plan of writing perpendicularly, and from left to right, I likewise have relinquished the manner formerly adopted, and now have, together with the Chinese, reduced the Japanese writing to the rule of ours, and applied to it the modification in the order of the signs already generally in use for the Chinese writing.

The Japanese running-hand, on the contrary, is too much confined to the columnar system to be susceptible of any modification in its direction.

3. INTRODUCTION OF THE WRITTEN AND SPOKEN LANGUAGE OF CHINA INTO JAPAN.

The first knowledge of Chinese-writing was carried to Japan by a prince of — Korea in the year 284 of our era, and then, immediately after, the tutor to that prince, a Chinese, named *Wang Zin* (王仁), having been invited, the — Japanese courtiers applied themselves to the study of the Chinese language and literature. According to the Japanese historians, *Wang Zin* was the first teacher of the Chinese language in Japan ¹⁾.

In the sixth century, the study of the Chinese language and system of writing first became generally spread, by the introduction of the doctrine of BUDDHA. Then every Japanese, in polished society, besides being instructed in his mother tongue, received instruction in Chinese also, consequently read Chinese books of morality, and aimed at being able to read and to write a letter in Chinese.

The original pronunciation of the Chinese, it is true, degenerated early and that to such a degree, that new dialects of it sprung up, which were no longer intelligible to the Chinese of the continent; but notwithstanding that the Japanese, on account of their knowledge of the Chinese writing, and their proficiency in the Chinese style remained able, by means of the Chinese writing to interchange ideas not only with Chinese, but with all the peoples of Asia that write — Chinese. The Chinese written language has become the language of science in — Japan. It, still, is such and will yet long remain such, notwithstanding the influence which the civilization of the West will more and more exert there. The

¹⁾ This historical fact is mentioned in *Japan's Bezüge mit der Koreischen Halbinsel und mit China. Nach Japanischen Quellen von J. HOFFMANN*, Leyden, 1839, page 111.

Chinese written language is, though, the palladium of Japanese nationality, and the natural tie which will once unite the East against the West!

And, however slight be the influence till hitherto exerted on the Japanese language written as well as spoken, by the study of the Western languages and, to wit the Dutch, formerly the monopoly of the fraternity of interpreters and a few literary men, who used this knowledge as a bridge, over which the skill of the West was imported and spread over their country, by means of Chinese or Japanese translations, just as little will it be in future, even if the study of the Western languages should be ever so greatly extended, as the consequence, of Japan's being eventually opened to the trade of the world.

4. APPLICATION OF THE CHINESE WRITING, TO THE WRITING OF THE JAPANESE LANGUAGE.

When, after the introduction of the Chinese written and spoken language into their country, the Japanese adopted it to write their native language, which is not in the least cognate to the Chinese, instead of resolving the sound of the words into its simplest elements, and expressing them by signs, like our letters, they took the sound in its whole, and expressed it syllable for syllable by Chinese characters.

Every Chinese radical word, it is known, is expressed by a more or less composite monogram (character) which has its peculiar ideographic and phonetic value — its peculiar signification and pronunciation. To choose an instance, such is 千 the Chinese word for a thousand. The Chinese says *tsiën*, the Japanese pronounces it *sen*, and the Japanese word for a thousand is *tsi*.

The Japanese considers the peculiar pronunciation of every Chinese character, i. e. the Chinese monosyllable, modified by the Japanese accent, as its sound, and calls it *Koyé* or, by the Chinese name 音 *Yin*, which he pronounces *won*; the Japanese word, on the other hand, which expresses the MEANING of the Chinese character, is called by him its *Yomi*, i. e. the READING or MEANING for which he also uses the Chinese terms 訓 *Kun* and 讀 *Toku* ¹⁾. The 千, above

¹⁾ The distinction between *Koyé* en *Yomi* agrees with this, as it is made do by the compiler and publisher of the *Éléments de la Grammaire Japonaise par le P. RODRIGUEZ* in § 1 of that work, and it is, therefore, important to maintain the contents of his paragraph as quite correct against the mis-conception,

萬葉集 *Man-yō-sū* or the Collection of the Ten Thousand Leaves, compiled about the middle of the eighth century.

The first *Kána*-form was, consequently, called *Yamato-kána* ¹⁾ (大和假名), the other *Man-yō-kána* (萬葉假名).

5. JAPANESE WRITING PROPER.

An abbreviation of the two forms of Chinese writing led to the formation of another writing which, in opposition to the Chinese character writing, was styled, as the writing of the Japanese Empire, 日本國之文字, *Nippon gókū no mon-zi*.

a. The *Kata-kána*.

Abbreviation of the Chinese standard writing gave rise to the *Kata-kána gaki*. It was, originally, intended when placed side by side with the Chinese characters, to express in remarkably smaller writing either their sound (*koyé*), or their meaning (*yomi*), and was therefore denominated *Kata-kána-mon-zi* (片假名文字 ²⁾, i. e. side-letter ²⁾. According to the Japanese sources ³⁾, the inventor of this writing is unknown, and the invention of it has been, incorrectly, attributed to the Japanese statesman, KIBI DAIZIN, who died in 757.

b. The *Fira-gána* ⁴⁾.

The more or less abbreviated form of the Chinese running-hand or short hand (草字 ⁵⁾ *Soo-zi*) is called *Fira-gána-gaki* (平假名書) or the even letter-writing, or, according to another reading, *Firo-gána* (廣假名), i. e. broad letters, since they take up the whole breadth of the writing-column. It is the running hand in which official documents, as well as letters and by far the greatest number of Japanese books are written and printed, and thus must be distinguished as the popular writing, proper. It has the advantage

¹⁾ *Yamato*, contracted from *Yama ato*, behind the mountains, properly the name of the Province, to which the Mikado's court was removed in 710, is at the same time applied to the Japanese Empire. See *Fak-buts-zen*, under *Yamato*, and the Japanese Encyclopedia, Vol 73, p. 4 verso.

²⁾ The notion of some Japanese writers seems less correct, as by *Kata-kána* were meant half-letters.

³⁾ The Japanese Encyclopedia *San-sai-dzu-e*. Vol. 16, p. 35 v.

⁴⁾ People say and write too *Fira-kana*, and *Hira-kana*.

over other forms of writing, that the letters of a word can be joined to one another.

6. ON THE JAPANESE PHONETIC SYSTEM.

The number of sounds or syllables in Japanese was first, fixed at 47 and that in imitation of the Brahmanical-writing (梵字 *Bon-zi*), which distinguishes 12 vowels and 35 consonants ¹⁾. The fixing of the Japanese phonetic system is attributed to the Buddhist Priest KOO-BOO DAI-SI (弘法大師), who, in his 31st year, went to China in 804 A. C. to study more closely the doctrine and institutions of BUDDHA and who, during a stay of three years, acquired there, among other knowledge, that of the Brahmanical writing (Sanskrit) and the phonetic system, as it was understood by the Chinese Priesthood ²⁾.

A. SYSTEMATIC ARRANGEMENT OF THE 47 SOUNDS, EXPRESSED BY CHINESE AND JAPANESE KANA-SIGNS.

The Japanese phonetic system with its Chinese and Japanese *Kána*-signs systematically arranged according to the organs of speech, by which the sounds are produced, is as follows:

- | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------|-------------------|-------------------|----------|--------------------|
| 1. Palatal sounds ³⁾ . | 阿 了, a. | 伊 イ, i. | 宇 ウ, u. | 江 丂, e | 遠 才, o. —
(ye). |
| 2. " | 加 力, ka. | 幾 丰, ki. | 久 久, ku. | 計 夕, ke. | 己 己, ko. |
| 3. Lingual sounds ⁴⁾ . | 左 サ, sa. | 之 シ, si. | 須 ス, su. | 世 セ, se. | 曾 ソ, so. |
| 4. " | 多 タ, ta. | 知 チ, ti
(tsi). | 津 ツ, tu
(tsu). | 天 テ, te. | 士 ト, to. |
| 5. " | 奈 ナ, na. | 仁 ニ, ni. | 奴 又, nu. | 禰 子, ne. | 乃 ノ, no. |

¹⁾ The Japanese Encyclopedia *San-sai-dzu-e*. Vol. 15, p. 35 v.

²⁾ The way in which the Chinese translators have copied, syllabically only, by means of Chinese characters, the Sanskrit words in the Buddhist writings imported from India, is placed in a clear light by the work: *Méthode pour déchiffrer et transcrire les noms sanscrits qui se rencontrent dans les livres chinois, inventée et démontrée* par M. STANISLAS JULIEN. Paris 1859.

³⁾ 喉音.

⁴⁾ 舌音.

6. Labialsounds¹. 波 ハ, fa (va). 比 ヒ, fi (vi). 不 フ, fu (vu). 邊 ヘ, fe (ve). 保 ホ, fo (vo).
7. " 末 マ, ma. 美 ミ, mi. 無 ム, mu. 女 メ, me. 毛 モ, mo.
8. Palatal sounds. 也 ヤ, ya. 爲 イ, i. 油 ユ, yu. 惠 エ, ye. 與 ヨ, yo.
9. Lingual sounds. 良 ラ, ra. 利 リ, ri. 留 ル, ru. 禮 レ, re. 呂 ロ, ro.
10. Labial sounds. 和 ワ, wa. 伊 井, wi. 宇 ウ, wu. 江 エ, we. 於 フ, wo.

We give this view from a Japanese source ²), we must, however, remark that the Chinese signs of the sounds are not generally those, from which the Japanese *Káta-kána* sign placed next it, by way of abbreviation, is derived, for, properly, the *Káta-kána* sign

ア, a,	answers to the Chinese character	安.
オ, o,	" " " "	於, vulgo 於.
チ, tsi,	" " " "	千, a thousand, Jap. <i>tsi</i> .
子, ne,	" " " "	子, the cyclical sign for mouse, Jap. <i>ne</i> .
ハ, fa,	" " " "	半.
ミ, mi,	" " " "	三, three, Jap. <i>mi</i> .
ム, mu,	" " " "	牟.
メ, me,	" " " "	女, woman, Jap. <i>me</i> .
ル, ru,	" " " "	流.
井, wi,	" " " "	井, well, Jap. <i>wi</i> .
エ, we,	" " " "	惠.
フ, wo,	" " " "	乎.

According to this system, some dictionaries, particularly those of the un-mixed old Japanese language have been arranged.

¹) 唇音.

²) *Wa-kan Sets'yoo moe sau bukuro*, p. 38, r., where the pronunciation of the Sanscrit phonetic system is given with Japanese *Káta-kána*.

This system of 47 sounds or syllables, however, and indeed with relation to the consonants, is incomplete. It is not sufficient to express all the sounds of the Japanese language. Therefore, to supply the defect, recourse has been had to a modification of some *Káta-kána* signs, and for that purpose points, or a small ring, have been placed next them. Thus is placed

opposite the row of sounds	カ, キ, ク, ケ, コ	the modification	カ [°] , キ [°] , ク [°] , ケ [°] , コ [°]
	ka, ki, ku, ke, ko		ga, gi, gu, ge, go.
“ “ “	サ, シ, ス, セ, ソ “ “		サ [°] , シ [°] , ス [°] , セ [°] , ソ [°]
	sa, si, su, se, so		za, zi, zu, ze, zo.
“ “ “	タ, チ, ツ, テ, ト “ “		タ [°] , チ [°] , ツ [°] , テ [°] , ト [°]
	ta, tsi, tsu, te, to		da, dzi, dzu, de, do.
“ “ “	ハ, ヒ, フ, ヘ, ホ “ “	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ハ}^{\text{v}}, \text{ヒ}^{\text{v}}, \text{フ}^{\text{v}}, \text{ヘ}^{\text{v}}, \text{ホ}^{\text{v}} \\ \text{ハ}^{\circ}, \text{ヒ}^{\circ}, \text{フ}^{\circ}, \text{ヘ}^{\circ}, \text{ホ}^{\circ} \end{array} \right.$	ba, bi, bu, be, bo.
	fa, fi, fu, fe, fo		pa, pi, pu, pe, po.

The sounds, thus modified, are called *Nigoréru koyé* (濁音), i. e. confused or impure sounds, the points used to indicate the modification *Nigóri*, and the small ring *Máru*.

In the *Yamáto*- and *Man-yor-kána* the modified sounds are expressed by proper Chinese characters chosen for that purpose. While, to give an instance, the syllable *ka* is expressed by one or another of the characters, 加. 苛. 架. 嘉. 迦. 可. 河. 何. 荷. 珂. 柯. 軻. 軻. 訶. 歌. 甘. 間. 箇. 个, to express the syllable *ga*, one of the characters 我. 俄. 峨. 餓. 鵝. 雅 may be chosen.

B. THE IROVA IN CHINESE CHARACTERS AND IN KATA-KANA SIGNS.

To facilitate the learning of the Japanese sounds or syllables, they have been so arranged as to compose a couple of sentences, and as these begin with the word *Irová*, that name has been given to the Japanese alphabet. The composition of the *Irová* is attributed to the Bonze, KOO-BOO DAISI, (who died in 834) already mentioned, the writing-form he used for it was, it is asserted, running-hand or *Fira-gána*.

THE IROVA.	TRANSLATION.	THE IROVA WITH CHINESE TRANSLATION.
Iro vá nivovetó tsirínuruwó.	Color and smell (love and enjoyment) vanish!	淺 ^{アサキ} 有 ^ウ 我 ^ワ ○
Wága-yó daré zo tsūné narám.	In our world who (or what) will be enduring?	夢 ^{ユメ} 爲 ^ノ 世 ^ヨ 色 ^{イロハ}
U-wino ókū-yáma kévū koyéte,	If this day passes away into the deep mount of its existence,	不 ^{エヒ} 奥 ^{オク} 誰 ^{タレ} 勻 ^{ニホヘト}
Asaki yūmémisi, évi mó sézū.	Then it was a faint vision; it does not even cause giddiness (it leaves you cold).	醉 ^{モセズ} 山 ^{ヤマ} 常 ^{ツチナラム} 散 ^{チリヌル}
		今 ^{イマ} 越 ^{コエ}

The *Káta-kána* signs of the *Irová*, which stand in the place of our alphabet, and according to which the Japanese dictionaries are commonly arranged, are derived from Chinese characters, which are likewise used, and that by way of Capitals or large letters. They are:

伊, イ, i.	和, ワ, wa.	宇, ウ, u.	阿, ア, a.
呂, ロ, ro.	加, カ, ka.	* 井, 井, wi, yi.	薩, サ, sa.
半, ハ, fa (ha), va.	與, ヨ, yo.	乃, ノ, no.	幾, キ, ki.
仁, ニ, ni.	多, タ, ta.	於, オ, o.	* 弓, ユ, yu.
保, ホ, fo (ho), vo.	礼, レ, re.	久, ク, ku.	* 女, メ, me.
反, ヘ, fe (he), ve.	曾, ソ, so.	也, ヤ, ya.	* 三, ミ, mi.
土, ト, to.	州, シュ, tu (tsu).	末, マ, ma.	之, シ, si.
* 千, チ, ti, tsi.	* 子, シ, ne.	介, ケ, ke.	惠, エ, we, e.
利, リ, ri.	奈, ナ, na.	不, フ, fu.	比, ヒ, fi (hi), vi.
奴, ス, nu.	良, ラ, ra.	已, コ, ko.	毛, モ, mo.
流, ル, ru.	牟 {	江, エ, ye.	世, セ, se.
乎, フ, wo.		天, テ, te.	須, ス, su.

The characters marked * stand for ideographic signs, answering to the Japanese word *tsi* (a thousand), *ne* (mouse), *wi* (well), *ye* (bay), *yu* (bow), *me* (woman), and *mi* (three).

The sign 𠂇, *mu*, which was also used in the old Japanese for the final

sound *m* (at present *n*) has, in this quality, more lately acquired the sign \smile , *n*, as a variation.

7. REPETITION OF SYLLABLES. — STOPS.

The repetition of a letter is expressed by \backslash , of dis- or trisyllabic words by \langle ; thus, for instance, \backslash stands for \backslash , *ya ya*; \langle for \langle , *iro-iro*.

As stenographic signs for some Japanese words that frequently occur, in connection with the *Káta-kána*, the following are to be remarked:

ㇿ for 事, *koto*, sake.

ㇾ for トモ, *tomo*.

ㇼ .. トキ, *toki*, time.

ㇽ .. シテ, *shité*.

寸 .. 時, *toki*, time.

玉 .. タマ, *tama*.

Stops.

As stops, only the comma (,) and the point (° or .) occur in Japanese. The use of them, however, is left wholly to the option of the writer. Some use ° also at the beginning of a new period, and thus begin that with a point, while others with the same object place a somewhat larger ring, ○, or a △ there. The comma (,) stands on the right of the letter (for instance ㇿ), while the repetition sign is placed on the diameter of the column of letters (for instance ㇿ, *kuku*).

The principle of separating the words from one another in writing is, for the most part, quite lost sight of in writing with the *Káta-kána*, and the *Kána* signs of a whole period are written at equal distances. The consequence of it is, that for an unpractised person, who is not already pretty well acquainted with the Japanese, it is very doubtful how he has to divide some fifty or a hundred successive *Kána* signs into words. With a view to perspicuity and not to require from the reader that he shall be already acquainted with the period which is offered him to read, to enable him to read and understand it, it is in the highest degree desirable that our method of separating the words should be applied to the Japanese, as it is done by us. If the method of separating word for word were adopted by the Japanese, it would be great step in the improvement of their writing-system.

8. REMARKS ON THE JAPANESE SYSTEM OF SOUNDS, AND THE EXPRESSION OF
IT WITH OUR LETTERS.

To promote the unity necessary in the reduction of the Japanese to Roman characters, we have adopted the Universal or Standard alphabet, by ROBERT LEPSIUS. As this alphabet enables people of various nations to reduce to their own graphic system, the words of a foreign language, in a manner systematic, uniform, and intelligible to every one; and as it has been adopted by the principal philologists in all countries, as well as by the most influential Missionary Societies, its application to the Japanese language will be welcomed by every one who prizes a sound, uniform and, at the same time, very simple system of writing.

In reducing the Japanese text to Roman character the following signs borrowed from the Standard alphabet have been adopted.

- a. *a* open as heard in the Dutch *vader*; — English *father*, *art*; — Jap. ア.
- i. *i* pure as heard in the Dutch *ieder*; — Eng. *he*, *she*; — Jap. イ.
- î. *i* long; — Jap. ヰ.
- ï. *i* short.
- u. *u* pure, as *oe* heard in the Dutch, *goed*; — Eng. *oo* in *good*, *poor*, *o* in *lose*; — Jap. ウ. At the beginning of a word it is frequently pronounced with a soft labial aspiration, as *wu*.
- ũ, short, silent *u*.
- e. *e* close, *e* as heard in the Dutch *bezig*, *meer*, *geven*; — Eng. *a* in *face*, *na-*
tion; — German *e* in *weh*; — Jap. エ.
- ê. *e* short.
- é. *e* open as heard in the Dutch *berg*; — Eng. *a* in *hat*; — French *è* in *mère*,
être; — German *Bär*, *fett*.
- o. *o* close as heard in the Dutch *jong*, *gehoor*; — Eng. *borne*; — German
Ton; — Jap. オ.
- ô. *o* short.
- g, *a* sound between *a* and *o*, leaning rather to the *a* than the *o*. as heard in
the English *water*, *all* and *oa* in *broad*.
- q. When the sound g inclines rather to the *o* than *a*, it is expressed by *q*.
- gu. In the dialect of *Yédo* ア ウ (*au*) changes to *qo*, because the *a*, for ease
in rapid pronunciation, inclining to the *u* changes to *g*, while the *u*, to ap-
proach more nearly the *a*, changes to *o*.

In some dialects of Western Japan, particularly that of *Kiu-siu*, *au* changes to *áo*, and *arau* (𐄎) is superseded by *aráo* (𐄎, 𐄎).

The etymology considered, however the written form *au* or *qu* is to be preferred.

ou. Etymologically *ou* (𐄎) in the dialect of *Yédo* sounds *qo*, being the hard open *o* heard in the Dutch *loopen*, German *mond*, followed by the *u* inclining towards the soft *o*. By some Japanese, this diphthong is also pronounced as *qo* and is written so, as well. On the etymological principle we write *ou*, in distinction from *au*, or *qu* ¹⁾.

eu. (ヱ ヅ) is pronounced *éo*.

k, as in Dutch, German, and English. — カ, キ, ク, ケ, コ, = *ka, ki, ku, ke, ko*.

g. In Western Japan, particularly in *Kiu-siu*, カ^h, キ^h, ク^h, ケ^h, コ^h are pronounced as *ga, gi, gu, ge, go*, thus *g* as the medial of *k*, just as the *g* in the German *gabe*, French *garçon*, English *gain, give, go*.

In the dialects of Eastern Japan, on the other hand, particularly in that of *Yédo*, the *g* has the sound of the *ng* in the German *lang*, English *singing*, thus a really impure sound, by no means the medial of *k*; and the series カ^h, キ^h, ク^h, ケ^h, コ^h, are pronounced *nga, ngi, ngu, nge, ngo* according to the Standard-alphabet *na, ni, nu, ne, no*.

Even might the pronunciation of *Yédo* deserve preference above that of the other dialects, still we think we ought to retain the *g* for the representation of the impure *g*, because this form of writing is as good as universally adopted, and also because the *n* does not appear with it, even in the Japanese writing. Therefore without wishing to dispute the freedom of others to write *wanga* for ワカ^h and *Nangasaki* for ナカ^h サキ, because people in *Yédo* speak so, we adhere to our already adopted written form *waga* and *Nógasáki*, and say *wána* and *Nóngasáki*.

The Dutch guttural *g* (*gaan, geven*), = *γ* of the Standard-alphabet is quite foreign to the Japanese organs of speech.

s. s sharp, サ, シ, ス, セ, ソ, = *sa, si, su, se, so*. — *Si* and *se*, in the pro-

¹⁾ LÉON PAGÈS, also has kept this distinction in view, and expresses 𐄎 by *ô* and 𐄎 by *ó*. — *Dictionnaire Japonais-Français traduit du dictionnaire Japonais-Portugais composé par les missionnaires de la compagnie de Jésus. Publié par LÉON PAGÈS. Première livraison. 1862.*

nunciation of *Yédo* have the sound of the German *sch*i, *sche*, the English *she*, *shay*, and thus answer to the written forms *ši*, *še* of the Standard-alphabet. Etymology, nevertheless, requires for *シ* and *セ* the written form *si* and *se*, leaving *she* and *shay*, and sometimes also *tse*, to the pronunciation.

z, soft *s* impure, being heard, in the dialect of *Yédo*, as a combination of *n* and *z* or also of *d* and *z*. — サ^h, シ^h, ス^h, セ^h, ソ^h = *za*, *zi*, *zu*, *ze*, *zo* (*nza*, *nzi*, *nzu*, *nze*, *nzo* or *dza*, *dzi*, *dzu*, *dze*, *dzo*), consequently アラス^h occurs as *aránzŭ* or *arádzŭ*.

š, Dutch *sj*, German *sch*, English *sh*, French *ch*. As pronounced at *Yédo* this consonant is distinguished as a palatal variety of *š* which, as such, ought to be represented by *š̌* of the Standard-alphabet.

The combination of this sound with *a*, *u*, *o*, so *ša*, *šu*, *šo*, is expressed by シヤ, シユ, ショ (*siya*, *siyu*, *siyo*), which, is pronounced by some Japanese of *Yédo*, as *šiya*, *šiyu*, *šyo*, with a scarcely audible *y*, whereas from the mouths of some others, a sound is heard which inclines rather to *ša*, *šu*, *šo*. Since the first pronunciation lets the etymological value of these combinations appear, we think to give the preference to the written forms *šiya*, *šiyu*, *šyo*, leaving it to the reader to pronounce them *ša*, *šu*, *šo* or *sya*, *syu*, *syo*.

ž. The Dutch *zj*, French *j*, English *s* in measure, the softer pronunciation of *š*. シヅ, シジュ, シジョ, *ž*a, *ž*u, *ž*o. For the sake of etymology, we write *žiya*, *žiyu*, *žyo*.

t. タ, チ, ツ, テ, ト = *ta*, *tsi*, *tsu*, *te*, *to*. Properly, チ, ツ, *ti* en *tu* are etymological; but these combinations of sound are, at once, foreign to the Japanese organs of speech and are, whenever they have to be adopted from another language, expressed by ティ *těi* and トゥ *tōu*. チ (*tsi*), commonly pronounced *tši* as in the English *cheer*.

d. タ^h, チ^h, ツ^h, テ^h, ト^h, *da*, *dzi*, *dzu*, *de*, *do*, according to the dialect of *Yédo* *nda*, *ndzi*, *ndzu*, *nde*, *ndo*. The Coreans express the impure Japanese *d* by 닳 (*nt*.)

tš. The Dutch *tsj*, English *ch* in *chair*. チヤ, チユ, チョ, etymologically *tsiya*, *tsiyu*, *tsyo*, according to the *Yédo* pronunciation *tsya*, *tsyu*, *tsyo*, the *y* being scarcely audible. Some are heard to pronounce it *tša*, *tšu*, *tšo*.

dž. The Dutch *dzj*, English *g* in *George*, *j* in *judge*. ジャ, ジュ, ジョ, etymologically *džiya*, *džiyu*, *džyo*, according to the *Yédo* pronunciation *dzya*, *dzyu*, *dzyo*, in the mouths of some also *dža*, *džu*, *džo*.

n. ナ, ニ, ス, ノ, *na*, *ni*, *nu*, *ne*, *no*.

ン, *n*, final letter, serves as well for the dental, as the nasal final sound, which approaches the French faint *n* at the end of a syllable and is expressed by *ny* (ñ of the Standard-alphabet).

Formerly, instead of the final letter ン, the *Kána*-sign ヌ, *mu* was used, and pronounced as a mute *m*. In Japanese words ン, stands for the faint nasal final sound ñ, in Chinese words, on the contrary, for the clear dental final sound *n* as in our „man, dan.”

In composition, the final sound *n* has a euphonic influence on the consonants following it and changes *k*, *s*, *t* and *f* into the impure sounds *g*, *z*, *d*, *b*, which are pronounced more or less like *ng*, *nz*, *nd*, *nb*. The combined sound *nb*, in pronunciation, changes to *mb*; *Tanba* (タ ン ヌ) is pronounced *Tamba*; *Nanbok* (ナ ン ボ ヌ), *Nambok*; *Kenbok* (キ ン ボ ヌ), *Kembok*.

For the sake of unity in spelling, although in the dialect of *Yédo* it is pronounced as the French faint *n*, we retain for the final sound ン, the written form *n*, since long current, and continue to write *Nippon*, leaving it to the reader to pronounce it *Nippong*.

f(h), v. ヲ, ヱ, フ, ヘ, ホ, *fá*, *jí*, *fu*, *fe*, *fo* or *ha*, *hi*, *fu* (not *hu*), *he*, *ho*. Originally the aspirated labial sound *f*, which has been retained in some dialects, in others, on the contrary, superseded by the soft *h*; a phenomenon which occurs in the Spanish also, in which the *f* of the Old-Spanish language has, in later times, passed into the soft aspirated *h*.

In the dialect of the old imperial city of *Miyako*, and its dependent provinces, the *f* is retained, and so far as we know, in *Sanuki* and *Sendai*, where commonly *fána*, *fútó*, *fúrú*, *féri*, *fóká*, are heard. In the dialect of *Yédo*, on the contrary, the *f* has been quite driven out and there, *hána*, *hitó*, *fúrú* (*fu* remains *fu*), *héri*, *hóká* are said.

This distinction of the two sounds, according to fixed dialects, rests on communications made to us orally by Japanese.

That, in the language of *Miyako*, where Japanese is spoken the purest, as also in the dialect of *Sanuki*, the *f* occurs to the exclusion of *h*, I have been assured by a native of *Yédo* who has passed some years in *Sanuki* ¹⁾, while another native of *Yédo* ²⁾ has mentioned to me the province of *Sendai*

¹⁾ OHO-GAWA KITAROO, mechanician, resident in the Netherlands since 1863.

²⁾ ENOMOTO KAMADZIROO, an officer in the Japanese Navy, also resident in the Netherlands since 1863.

and the North-eastern part of Japan as districts, in which the *f*, to the exclusion of *h*, is commonly in use.

In the middle, or at the end of a word, the *f* or *h* in the pronunciation, passes over to *v* or a pure labial (not labio-dental) *w*, and even in writing *ワ* (*wa*) supersedes *ハ* (*va*): *カハ*, *キハ*, *クハ* are heard *kava*, *kiva*, *küvá*, or also *kawa*, *kiwa*, *küwá*, for which *カワ*, *キワ*, *クワ*, is written.

On the contrary the syllables *ヒ*, *vi*, *フ*, *vu*, *ヘ*, *ve*, *ホ*, *vo*, whenever a vowel precedes reject the aspirate, and *アヒ* is pronounced as *ai*, *アフ* as *au* (*gu*), *アヘ* as *ae*, *アホ* as *ao*, *イヒ* as *ii*, *イフ* as *iu*, *イヘ* as *iě*, *オホ* as *oo* etc.

The aspirated labial *ヒ*, *fi*, in *ヒト*, *fító*, man, sounds like a *fű* or *fwi* whistled with the mouth, and is easy to be pronounced. In the *Yédo hi*, on the contrary, the *h* often occurs as a palatal aspirate, which, whenever it is pressed through the closed teeth, forms a sound quite strange to European ears, which it is not possible to express with our letters. What former travellers, GOLOWNIN, MEYLAN and others have said about this sound ¹⁾ is now confirmed by our observation; and we have only to add that in the mouths of some from *Yédo* the word *ヒト* (*fító* or *hító*, man) became even *sto*.

Since for the syllables *ハ*, *ヒ*, *ヘ*, *ホ* two forms of writing have now come into existence, in proportion as one or the other pronunciation is followed, one with *f*, the other with *h*, the question becomes important, which of the two forms of spelling deserves the preference. If Japanese is to be written according to the accent of *Yédo*, then, naturally, the *h* must be adopted, just as, to let the dialect of Zeeland enjoy its rights, *Olland* and *oofd* must be written for *Holland* and *hoojd*, or, not to do injustice to the Berlin dialect, *Jabe*, *Jott* and *jut* must be written for *Gabe*, *Gott* and *gut*. If, however the pronunciation most generally in vogue, with the exception

¹⁾ „No European,” says GOLOWNIN, „will succeed in pronouncing the Japanese word for „fire,” — it is *ヒ*, *fi*. — I have practised at it two years, but in vain. As the Japanese pronounced it, it seemed to be *fi*, *hi*, *psi*, *fzi*, being pronounced through the teeth; however we might wring and twist our tongues into every bend, the Japanese still stuck to their: „not right.” — *Begebenheiten des Capitains von der Russisch-Kaiserlichen Marine GOLOWNIN, in der Gefangenschaft bei den Japanern in den Jahren 1811, 1812 und 1813. Aus dem Russischen übersetzt von Dr. C. J. SCHULTZ.* 1818. Vol. II, p. 30.

of *Yédo*, that of *Miyako* be preferred, then must the *h* be put aside and *f* adopted. We do the last, and that for the following reasons:

1. The Japanese philologists themselves have, at all times, characterized the consonant of their series of sounds ハ, ヒ, フ, ヘ, ホ as labial, and made it equivalent to the labials of the Sanscrit.

2. The Chinese *Kána* signs, fixed upon to represent this series of sounds, are all sounds which, after the Chinese pronunciation, begin with a *p* or an *f*, whereas the sharp aspirated *h* of the Chinese words, just as the *h* of the Sanscrit, is expressed by *k*, and カイ, *kai* is written and spoken for the Chinese *hai*.

3. In Japanese, as in Dutch and English, the sharp *f* between two vowels passes over into the soft *v* or *w*, and beside the older written form カハ, カヘ, カホ, for which we must write *kava*, *kave*, *kavo*, that of カワ, カヱ, カヲ, *kawa*, *kawe*, *kawo*, has gradually come into vogue.

4. From the beginning Europeans, who had intercourse with the Japanese, generally wrote *f* and not *h*: thus the Portuguese missionaries, and their contemporary, FR. CARON (1639); also more lately, E. KAEMPFER (1691), P. THUNBERG (1775), J. TITSINGH ¹⁾ (1780), and others. All wrote *Farima*, *Fanna*, *Firando*, *Fori*. In this century the *h* first appeared, because then Europeans came more frequently in contact with interpreters and natives of *Yédo*. If now we adopt the *h*, then will all connection with what was formerly done for the knowledge of the language, history and geography of Japan be broken off, a door opened for endless confusion, and for thousands of Japanese words we shall have a double spelling.

b, impure, from the sound arisen from the blending of *n* with *v*, which the Koreans, whenever they write Japanese words in their character, express by *mp* (ㅁㅍ). — ハ^b, ヒ^b, フ^b, ヘ^b, ホ^b, *ba*, *bi*, *bu*, *be*, *bo*.

p, ハ^p, ヒ^p, フ^p, ヘ^p, ホ^p, *pa*, *pi*, *pu*, *pe*, *po*.

y, The Dutch *j*: -- English *y* in *yard*: -- French *y*.

ヤ, ュ, ィ, ヨ, *ya*, *yu*, *ye*, *yo*. The pronunciation of 井 is not fixed, and fluctuates between *wi*, *yi*, *ii*, and *i*.

r, Soft guttural *r*, just as the English *r* in *part*, *art*, *r* of the Standard-

¹⁾ In TITSINGH'S *Bijzonderheden* whenever an *h* occurs in Japanese words, it has been placed there, from a mistake of either the writer, or compositor.

alphabet. ラ, リ, ル, ロ, *ra, ri, ru, re, ro*. The Japanese *r*, comes from the root of the tongue, which is kept almost motionless. Our trilling dental *r* cannot be uttered by a thorough-bred Japanese of *Yédo*.

This is also the case with our *l*; this sound too is quite foreign to the Japanese mouth ¹⁾. Instead of adopting a proper letter for the *l*, the Japanese, whenever they have had to reduce words of European languages to Japanese writing, have made the foreign *l* equivalent to the *r*, and have used their *r* for both sounds; a mistake, by which they subjected themselves to a perpetual mutation of the letters *r* and *l* when writing a foreign language, and induced our philologers to suppose that the Japanese *r* was an intermediate sound between *l* and *r* which, as it now appears, is not the case.

In combinations of sounds such as レン, *ren*, リウ, *riu*, リヤウ, *riyau* (*ryoo*), the guttural *r* so nearly approaches the lingual *d*, that, with the utmost attention, it remains doubtful, whether the *r* or the *d* is meant. This is to be remarked especially in words adopted from the Chinese, and which in that language begin with *l*, which becomes *r* in Japanese, such as *den* for *ren* (Chinese *lién*), *dyu* for *ryu* (Chinese *lûng*, dragon), *dyoo-ri-nin* and *doo-sok* for *ryoo-ri-nin* and *roo-sok* (Chinese *liáo-li-nin*, cook, and *lǎ tǔ*, wax-candle).

It is worthy of remark, that with the Chinese just the opposite takes place, that they can pronounce the *l* easily, but the *r* not at all.

w. The German pure labial *w*. ヲ, ウ. ヲ, *wa, wu, wo*.

9. DOUBLING OF CONSONANTS BY ASSIMILATION.

If the letter ヱ *tsü*, which is mostly pronounced as the *ts* mute, occurs in a compound word before a *k, s, t* or *p*, then, for the sake of euphony, it passes over to the latter sound, — it is assimilated.

¹⁾ This has become quite evident to me, from the instruction in the Dutch language which several Japanese have received under my superintendence. After having first pronounced the *l* as the guttural *r*, they required long practice before being able to utter a sound, that in any degree resembled *l*.

SPALDING also, has observed that thorough-bred Japanese of *Yédo*, with whom he met, could not possibly pronounce his name. „They cannot say *L*,“ he adds, „they call it *R*. The word *glove*, which they call *grove*, is too much for them.” J. W. SPALDING, *The Japanese expedition*. Redfield, 1855. p. 233.

一	イ	箇	カ	, <i>itsū-ka</i>	written, is pronounced <i>ikká</i> (one).
一	イ	斤	キン	, <i>itsū-kin</i>	.. .. <i>ikkín</i> (one pound).
一	イ	見	ケン	, <i>itsū-ken</i>	.. .. <i>ikkén</i> (a glance).
一	イ	國	コク	, <i>itsū-kókū</i>	.. .. <i>ikkók</i> (a whole empire).
北	ホ	京	キン	, <i>Fôtsū-kin</i>	.. .. <i>Fokkin</i> (Peking).
一	イ	切	サイ	, <i>itsū-sai</i>	.. .. <i>issái</i> (all).
一	イ	所	ショ	, <i>itsū-sīyo</i>	.. .. <i>issō</i> (one and the same place).
一	イ	寸	スン	, <i>itsū-sun</i>	.. .. <i>issun</i> (the tenth of a foot).
合	カ	戰	セン	, <i>katsū-sen</i>	.. .. <i>kassen</i> (battle, fight).
一	イ	錢	セン	, <i>itsū-sen</i>	.. .. <i>issen</i> (one cent).
一	イ	代	タイ	, <i>itsū-tai</i>	.. .. <i>ittai</i> (a whole life).
以	モ	ッテ		, <i>mótsūte</i>	.. .. <i>mótte</i> (with).
曾	カ	ッテ		, <i>kátsūte</i>	.. .. <i>kátte</i> (already).
貴	タ	ッ		, <i>tatsūtoki</i>	.. .. <i>tattoki</i> (worshipful).
合	カ	羽	バ	, <i>kátsū-pa</i>	.. .. <i>káppa</i> (overcoat).
日	ニ	本	ホン	, <i>Nitsū-pon</i>	.. .. <i>Nippon</i> (Japan).

The *ri* also before *t* is sometimes subject to assimilation; of アリタ *arita*, the pronunciation becomes *atta*, for which アツタ is written.

A rule to determine when, in pure Japanese words, the ツ shall retain its value, as in マツマエ *Mátsū-máye*, マツタイラ *Mátsū-daira*, where it is not thus assimilated, has not, so far as we know, yet been fixed. Certain it is, that the vowel of the syllable, which precedes a double consonant, is short, and that the doubling of the consonant is chiefly applied to compound words of Chinese origin, of which the first syllable contains a short vowel, which in some Chinese dialects is stopped by *t*, represented in Japanese words, by ツ.

Upon this principle the double consonants in words from foreign languages also are expressed in Japanese writing; in this case some place the ツ of the diameter a little to the right and write ^リツ for dutch „ridder” and ^シツ for „schip.”

10. ON ACCENT AND RHYTHM.

In Japanese distinction is made between accented and unaccented syllables.

To the unaccented belong chiefly those ending in *i* or *u*, in which these sounds are scarcely heard at all, and that especially at the end of the words.

Thus, e. g.,

シタ, *sita* (beneath) sounds as *sta*.

シメ, *sime* (let) sounds as *smé*.

シキ, *siki* (like) sounds as *ski*.

マス, マス, マシタ, *masi*, *masu*, *masita* sounds as *masi*, *mas*, *masta*.

タツ, *tatsu* (dragon) sounds as *tâts*,

ヨム, *yomu* (to read) sounds as *yóm*.

ナル, *naru* (to be) sounds as *nár*,

ツクリ, *tsukuri* (to make) sounds as *tskûrî*, etc.

The *i* has, moreover, the peculiarity, that as a final letter it is whispered.

As in Japanese the *i* and *u* mute have not ceased to be real elements of the words, and to be necessary to the distinguishing of them, they ought to be expressed in all philological writings. Even if ミチ (*mitsi*, way) and ミツ (*mitsu*, three) sound as *mits*, in our writing we must, because the Japanese do so in theirs, distinguish both words and write *mitsi* and *mitsu*, or characterize the weak vowels, as weak and mute by writing *mitsi* and *mitsu*. — The form of writing adopted by some, *mitsi* and *mitsu*, answers that purpose also.

The accented vowel is pronounced either long or short-close. Thus is, e. g. the *a* long in マス, *mâtsu* (pinetree). short-close サケ, *sáke* (strong drink).

The consonant, following a short-close vowel is often doubled in pronunciation, though not in writing. Thus, e. g. ハナ, *fána* (flower) sounds as *fánna*; アサ, *ása* (the morning) as *ássá*; サケ, *sáke* (strong drink) as *sákke*.

Since, with regard to the correct indication of the quantity of the syllables, the Japanese graphic system is defective, it behoves us to keep it in view the more carefully, because the accentuation, provided it be based on the pronunciation of Japanese, is an indispensable help in the acquiring of a correct pronunciation.

Hitherto the only European, who has paid attention to the accent of Japanese words, and expressed it after a fixed principle, was E. KAEMPFER. From his manner of writing it might be gathered, that タツ, dragon, and マツ, pine-tree, are pronounced as *tâts* and *mâts*, thus with an *a* long, ヤマ, ミナト and タチバナ as *yâmma*, *minâto* and *tatsbânnâ*. Later travellers, who have visited Japan and written books about it, have been either unable or unwilling to follow his example, and thereby have left their readers in uncertainty with regard to the rhythm of Japanese. Only recently, since the arrival of natives of Japan in Europe, have our linguists had the opportunity to hear Japanese spoken by Japanese, and so to become acquainted with the rhythm peculiar to that language. Availing ourselves of this opportunity, we have already been able to publish the reading of a Japanese text ¹⁾ supplied with a continuous accentuation.

If we cast a hasty glance over what has previously been said, with regard to the Japanese phonetic system, the writing, the pronunciation, it will appear most clearly, that the Japanese phonetic system is very defective. It does not satisfy the requirement of being able, with it, to write the Japanese language itself, as it is spoken, let alone the possibility of its being applied to foreign languages. The Japanese, with all their attempts to write Dutch, French or English, after their *Kana*-system, have been able to effect nothing else, than — caricatures of those languages.

From their defective syllabic-writing are the Japanese behind not only the Western nations, but other Asiatic peoples also, and even the Koreans, their neighbors who rejoice in the possession of an original, and simple character-writing, not borrowed from the Chinese. With regard to the writing of foreign languages, the Chinese alone are worse off.

The intricate, often equivocal writing with which Japanese is written, occasions more difficulty for those, who have not grown up with it, than the study of the language itself, witness the Japanese running-hand, whose turn comes next.

¹⁾ *The Grand Study (Ta Hio or Dai-gaku). Part. I, The Chinese text with an interlineary Japanese version. Part. II, Reading of the Japanese text in Roman character*, by J. HOFFMANN. Leiden, 1864.

11. THE JAPANESE RUNNING-HAND FIRA-GANA.

a. The *Irová* in *Fira-gána*.

The *Irová* in *Fira-gána*-writing, as it is learned in schools and, in connection with Chinese running-hand, is generally in use, consists of the following signs, which are derived by abbreviation from the Chinese characters placed next them.

以 い, i	和 わ, wa	宇 う, u	安 あ, a
呂 ろ, ro	加 か, ka	爲 わ, wi	左 さ, sa
波 は, fa (ha), va	與 よ, yo	乃 の, no	幾 き, ki
仁 に, ni	太 た, ta	於 お, o	由 ゆ, yu
保 ほ, fo (ho), vo	礼 れ, re	久 く, ku	女 め, me
反 へ, fe (he), ve	曾 ぞ, so	也 や, ya	美 み, mi
止 と, to	門 つ, tsu	末 ま, ma	之 し, si
知 ら, tsi	禰 ね, ne	計 け, ke	惠 え, e
利 り, ri	奈 な, na	不 ふ, fu	比 ひ, fi (hi), vi
奴 ぬ, nu	良 ら, ra	已 こ, ko	毛 も, mo
留 ろ, ru	武 ひ, mu.	江 へ, ye	世 せ, se
遠 を, wo.	(ん... n.)	天 て, te.	寸 す, su.

b. Synopsis of the *Fira-gána*-characters most in use.

Were the *Fira-gána*-writing confined to the 47 or 48 signs cited, it would not, with a slight exercise in writing with the pencil, be more difficult to learn, than the *Káta-kána*. But the desire for variety, change and ornament, has rendered this writing so abundantly rich, that to make learning to read *Fira-gána* texts possible, a synopsis of these signs has become an absolute necessity.

With the synopsis, we give at once the Chinese character to which each sign owes its origin.

SYNOPSIS OF THE JAPANESE FIRA-GANA.

A. ア 安 あ 𛄁 𛄂 𛄃 𛄄
阿 𛄅 𛄆 𛄇 𛄈

KA. カ加 かか ㄎㄎ
可 ㄎ ㄎ ㄎ ㄎ ㄎ

1. 似 々 々 々 々 々 い い

KI. 幾 キ 支 起 義 キ

U. ャ于 う
宇

KU. 久 久 久 久 久
具 具 具 具 具

E. 工惠 冬冬冬
衛 水

KE. 計 け け け け け け け け
化 化 化 化 化 化 化 化
希 希 希 希 希 希 希 希
遣 遣 遣 遣 遣 遣 遣 遣

0. * 於 於 於 於 於
於 於 於

KO. 己 乙 二 了 了 了 了
古 古 古 古 古 古

SA. 𠂔 佐 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 左 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 𠂔

TA. 𠂔 太 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 多 𠂔
 堂 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔

SL. 𠂔 志 𠂔
 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔

TSL. 𠂔 知 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 地 𠂔 𠂔

SU. 𠂔 寸 𠂔 𠂔
 須 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 須 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 春 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔

TSU. 𠂔 洲 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 門 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 徒 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 津 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔

SE. 𠂔 世 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 𠂔 𠂔
 勢 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔

TE. 𠂔 天 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 亭 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔

SO. 𠂔 曾 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 楚 𠂔 𠂔

TO. 𠂔 止 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 登 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔

NA. ナ 奈 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 南 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 𪛗
 那 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗

NI. 仁 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 尔 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 丹 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 耳 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗

NU. 奴 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 𪛗
 ...n 𪛗 𪛗

NE. 称 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 禰 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 [𪛗
 子 𪛗 𪛗
 年 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗

NO. 乃 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 野 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 農 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 能 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗

FA. 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 八 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 者 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 盤 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗

FL. 飛 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 比 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗

FU. 不 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 婦 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗

FE. 反(𪛗) 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 遍 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗

FO. 保 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗
 本 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗 𪛗

MA. ㄞ 末 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 万 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 滿 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 𠂔 𠂔

YA. ㄚ 也 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 屋 𠂔 𠂔

MI. ㄢ 三 𠂔 𠂔
 美 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 見 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔

MU. ㄣ 武 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 無 𠂔
 舞 𠂔 𠂔

YU. ㄩ 由 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 遊 𠂔

ME. ㄥ 女 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 𠂔
 免 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔

YE. ㄩ 江 𠂔 𠂔
 衣 𠂔

MO. ㄇ 毛 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 母 𠂔 𠂔

YO. ㄩ 與 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔
 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔

RA. ラ 良 り じ じ じ じ じ
 羅 羅 羅
 樂 樂 樂 樂

WA. ヲ 和 和 和 和 和 和
 和 和 和 和 和
 王 王 王 王 王

RI. リ 利 利 利 利 利 利
 利 利 利 利 利 利
 梨 梨
 里 里 里 里

WI. # 爲 爲 爲 爲 爲 爲
 井 井 井

RU. ル 留 留 留 留 留
 累 累 累 累
 流 流 流 流 流 流
 類 類 類 類

RE. レ 連 連 連 連 連 連
 禮 禮 禮 禮 禮 禮
 礼 礼 礼 礼 礼 礼







RO. ロ 呂 呂 呂
 路 路 路





WO. ヲ 遠 表 表 表 表
 越 越 越 越
 乎 乎 乎 乎


The synopsis of Japanese running-hand characters, given on the preceding pages, collected by ourselves in reading Japanese books and manuscripts, is deserving of remark on account of its correctness. As we appreciated its being submitted to the criticism of a clever Japanese, we, some years ago, sent a few proof impressions, to a respected friend in Japan ¹⁾, on whose invitation Mr. MATS MOTO was so kind as to undertake the revision and correction of one of them. This impression being returned to us, we were enabled to submit our synopsis to a strict revision, and if we have given it a place here, it is with the conviction that it will be a faithful guide in the deciphering of *Fira-gána* texts.

To become familiar with this writing, the Chinese character should be taken for basis, and attempts made at learning to write with a pencil the more and more sketchy *Fira-gána* forms derived from it. By following this practical way, the student will most quickly become so conversant with this writing, as to be able to read without hesitation a text written in it, provided the printing of it be not too bad.

In the *Fira-gána* writing the letters are more or less obviously attached to one another. The way in which this is done will be best learned by copying some Japanese texts ²⁾, in which it will at once be discovered, that some peculiarities in the manner of attaching them are only the natural results of a quick handling of the pencil.

The stops (°), and the sign °, by which in the *Káta-kána* the change from pure to impure sounds is indicated, are used in the *Fira-gána* also, e. g.  ga,  gu,  dzi,  dzu,  ba,  bu, etc.

The point, which in the *Káta-kána*, placed under a letter shows that it is repeated, in the *Fira-gána* runs together with the letter into one stroke. Opposed to  kiki and  tada, are the *Fira-gána* forms  and .

The repetition of two or three syllables is shown by .

¹⁾ W. J. C. HUYSEN VAN KATTENDYKE, Knight, Commander of the Naval-detachment in Japan in 1857, 1858 and 1859.

²⁾ *The Japanese Treaties, concluded at Yedo in 1855 with the Netherlands, Russia, Great-Britain, the United States and France.* Fac-simile of the Japanese text. The Hague, MARTINUS NIJHOFF. 1862.

As stenographic abbreviations come under notice

ㇿ, ㇾ for 事 ^{コト} *koto* (sake).

ㇿ .. ㇿ, ㇿ *koto*.

ㇿ, ㇿ .. ㇿ *goto*.

ㇿ, ㇿ for 自 ^{ヨリ} *yorì*.

ㇿ, ㇿ .. 共 ^{トモ} *tomo*.

ㇿ .. 也 ^{ナリ} *nari*.

12. WRITTEN OR BOOK LANGUAGE.

Books among the Japanese are written either in the Chinese, or in the Japanese language.

A. Exclusively Chinese are scientific works, intended for literate persons, — who make use of the Chinese written language, just as formerly our learned men did of Latin. To this class of books belong, among others, the oldest Chronicle of Japan (*Yamato-bumi* or *Nippon-ki*), in which the pure Japanese words, such as the names of persons and places, are expressed phonetically with Chinese characters. the Japanese Encyclopedia *Wa-Kan san-sai dzu-e*, the Chronicle *Wa-Kan nen-kei*, the Japanese Government-Almanac. etc., while furnishing the books, which are written for the general public and in Japanese, with at least a Preface in Chinese, is still considered to be in good taste.

Among the pure Chinese texts must also be reckoned the Chinese translations of Buddhist works, originally written in Sanscrit, which translations, chiefly imported from China, are hummed by Japanese Bonzes in a peculiar Chinese dialect.

That a Chinese text can be read aloud with a Chinese pronunciation (*koyé*) — by literate Japanese is a matter of course, for, with the Chinese character, they become acquainted with its pronunciation also, and this according to certain dialects; but that whole sentences, when read aloud, according to the pronunciation of the characters, are intelligible to listeners, we have constantly — doubted and now, upon the authority of a learned Japanese ¹⁾, dare deny. The Chinese text with its ideographic signs is there, to be apprehended according to its contents and, for the Japanese, the translation into his mother tongue is included in this apprehension. The apprehension and translation of a Chinese

¹⁾ Mr. TSUDA SIN-ITSU-ROO.

text is therefore very justly called its reading (*yomi*) or *Wa-kun* (和訓), the reading in Japanese.

Respecting the Chinese dialects, which have been here mentioned, the following ought to be added.

In Japan the pronunciation of three dialects of the Chinese written language have been adopted, which are called after the Chinese dynasties 漢 *Hán*. 吳 *U* and 唐 *T'áng* (in the Japanese pronunciation *Kan*, *Go* and *Too*), *Kan-won* (漢_カ音_ヲ), *Go-won* (吳_コ音_ヲ) and *Too-in* (唐_{トウ}音_ヲ) or *Kara-koto*. i. e. dialect of *Hán*, *U* and *T'áng*.

The dynasty of *Hán*, which had its seat in the country of *Ho-nan-fu*, thus on the borders of the *Hoang-ho*, flourished from 202 B. C. till 220 A. C. The dynasty of *U*, settled on the *Yang-tse-kiang*, where at present *Nan-king* is situated, existed from 222 till 280 A. C. The dominion of the dynasty of *T'áng* embraced the period between 618 and 906.

If with the Japanese it be accepted, that the said dialects were not local dialects existing next one another, but changes which the Chinese language has undergone in the lapse of ages, then the introduction and continued existence of those dialects in Japan would not be without importance in the knowledge of the old Chinese language. But since, with the defective Japanese *Kána*-writing, it is impossible to represent any Chinese dialect faithfully, those dialects too, that have wandered to Japan lose all historical value, and we therefore confine ourselves to the question of their introduction into Japan, and the use to which they have been applied.

On the first point the Japanese works at our command do not shed sufficient light. As the first teacher of the *Kan-won*. 表信公 *Piao Sin-kung*, a scholar from the country of *Hán* is mentioned, with the addition, that he came to *Fakúta* in the country of *Tsikuzen*; but the time at which this happened we do not find recorded. Such also is the case with the introduction of the *Go-won*, which is attributed to 金禮信, *Kin Lì-sín* and another Bonze from the country of *U*. As both had settled on the island of *Tsusima*, the *Go-won* was at first also called *Tsusima-won* (對_ツ馬_マ音_ヲ) or the *Tsusimian* pronunciation ¹⁾.

With regard to the second point, it may be assumed as certain, that the

¹⁾ The Japanese Encyclopedia XV, 33 verso. — *Fak-butts-zen* under *Kan-won* and *Go-won*.

Go-won was the dialect, in which the Bonzes read the Buddhist writings, imported from China, and that it still, with a few exceptions, is in vogue among them, whereas the *Kan-won*, the use of which was, in virtue of an edict published by the *Mikado* as early as 792, made obligatory in the study of the Chinese language ¹⁾, prevailed in the domain of science, and penetrated into the whole profane literature.

In the Chinese-Japanese dictionaries the pronunciation of each word is found, given in both dialects and that, first in *Kan-won*, and then in *Go-won*. In the instances 音 ^イ_ン or ^フ_ン 音 ^イ_ン and 明 ^{メイ}_イ or ^ミ_ヤ 明 ^{メイ}_イ and ^フ_ン are placed as *Kan-won*, ^フ_ン and ^ミ_ヤ as *Go-won*.

The dialect of *T'ang* (*Too-in*), as it has been fixed by means of the *Kana*-writing approaches more nearly the ordinary Chinese official language (*Kwan-hoa*), than the two other dialects, but is just as unintelligible as they, to a Chinese. This dialect is found mostly in works about China, used in the description of the names of places, and it is also said to be used by the monastic order of the „Five hills or convents“ (五山 *Go-san*) at *Miyako*.

We close this digression on the three dialects with a quotation of the specimen by which the difference is shown in the Japanese Encyclopedia.

<i>Wa-kun. Too-in.</i>		<i>Kan-won & Go-won.</i>		<i>Wa-kun. Too-in.</i>	○	<i>Kan-won. Go-won.</i>
マタ	エ。	又	エウ	タト	キヤ	カ ケ
イハク	イユン	云	ウン	ヘハ	リン	レイ リヤウ
ヒミク	ハアウ	拗	ヨウ	フタツ	ルウ	ジ ニ
ジハ	ツウ	字	ジ	コエハ	イン	イン フン
ゴトシ	エウ	猶	イウ	ゴトク	シユイ	ジヨ ニヨ
コ	ツウ	子	シ	アニ	ヒヨン	ケイ キヤウ
マゴノ	ソ	孫	ソン	ヲト	テイ	テイ タイ

Japanese translation: *Tatove va Fūtsno koēva ani otōtono gotōku. Mata iwāku, fūbiki no zira ko magono gotosi*, i. e. The two dialects, to use an example, are like brothers. It is also said: The assonances or finals are like sons and grandsons.

¹⁾ *Wa-nen kei oder Geschichtstabellen von Japan, aus dem Originale übersetzt von J. HOFFMANN.*

Chinese text with Japanese translation.

In Chinese there are books written, which contain a complete Japanese translation at the side of the text.

There are also some, in which the Japanese translation is incomplete, and only here and there words or fragments of words are explained. In this case are found either only the principal ideas translated, or merely the terminational inflections given. It is supposed here, that the Japanese reader knows the signification of the Chinese character and the word corresponding to it in his mother tongue, or not being acquainted with it, he resorts to a Chinese-Japanese dictionary, to supply all that, in which the translation is deficient.

Were the construction of the two languages alike, it would suffice simply to represent the signification of each Chinese character by a Japanese word placed at the side of it, and to read Japanese in the same order as Chinese. But there is one point, from which the two languages diverge; to wit, the Chinese verb has its objective (*complément, régime*), whether a simple noun or a substantive phrase objective, after it, the Japanese has it before. To give an instance, the Chinese construction requires one to say: „He reads a book; he desires to go home;” on the contrary, the Japanese: „He a book reads; he homewards to go desires.”

Thus in the reading aloud of the Japanese translation of a Chinese sentence a transposition, a skipping over of the Japanese words is necessary, as often as the case in question occurs. This transposition is shown on the left-hand-side of the Chinese text — the right-hand one being occupied by the Japanese translation — by numbers or equivalent signs. This transposition of the words is called 逆^ゲ讀^トス^ル *Geki-tókū-suru*, i. e. against (the order) in reading, or also *Kayé-ri*, turning back, and the transposition-signs *Kayé-ri-ten* or marks of going backwards.

These marks are

- 1) the hook ヌ, which indicates the transposition of two words following each other, as 以^モ之^テコ^レ is^レ ²motte ¹korewo = *korewo motte* (thereby);
- 2) the Chinese ciphers -, =, ≡ (1, 2, 3) when the translation of a character skips over two or more characters;
- 3) the signs E, M, F (above, in the middle, beneath), whenever the parts of a sentence, that have been already marked, must be again skipped over;

4) the cyclical signs 甲, 乙, 丙, for a further skipping over.

The ciphers and signs cited may occur in connection with the simple transposition-sign, thus: 二, 三, 四; 五, 六, 七; 八, 九, 十.

A practical indication of the use of these signs will be found in our edition of the *Grand Study (Ta-hiò)*, a few lines of which are subjoined as a specimen of Chinese text with a complete as well as a fragmentary translation in Japanese.

CHINESE TEXT

1, with a complete translation in Japanese.

○大_{ダイ}學_{ガク}之道_ノ在_ニ明_ミ 明_{メイ}德_{トク}在_ニ親_{シン}民_{ミン}

在_ニ止_{トメル}於_ニ至_{セン}善_ニ知_シ止_{トメル}而_{シカウ}后_{ノチ}有_{アリ}定_{サダメル}

定_{サダメル}而_{シカウ}后_{ノチ}能_{ヨク}靜_{シヅカニ}而_{シカウ}后_{ノチ}能_{ヨク}安_{ヤスシ}

安_{ヤスシ}而_{シカウ}后_{ノチ}能_{ヨク}慮_{オモンバカリ}慮_{オモンバカリ}而_{シカウ}后_{ノチ}能_{ヨク}得_ウ

2, with a fragmentary translation in Japanese.

○大_{ダイ}學_{ガク}之道_ノ在_ニ明_ミ 明_{メイ}德_{トク}在_ニ親_{シン}民_{ミン}

在_ニ止_{トメル}於_ニ至_{セン}善_ニ知_シ止_{トメル}而_{シカウ}后_{ノチ}有_{アリ}定_{サダメル}

定_{サダメル}而_{シカウ}后_{ノチ}能_{ヨク}靜_{シヅカニ}而_{シカウ}后_{ノチ}能_{ヨク}安_{ヤスシ}

安_{ヤスシ}而_{シカウ}后_{ノチ}能_{ヨク}慮_{オモンバカリ}慮_{オモンバカリ}而_{シカウ}后_{ノチ}能_{ヨク}得_ウ

Reading of the translation in Japanese:

Dai-Gakū no mitsi vá mēi tókū wo akiráká ni sūrū ni ári; tamí wo arátà ni sūrū ni ári; si-sen ni todomárū ni ári.

Todomárūkoto wo sítte, sīkūsité notsi sadamárūkoto ári. Sadamátte, sīkūsité notsi yókū sidzúká nári. Sidzúká ni sité, sīkūsité notsi yókū yásūsi. Yásū-

sité, sikâusité notsi yókû ômônâkârû. Omônâkâtte, sikâusité notsi yókû u ¹⁾.

If, as here, the Chinese text is in the standard form written in full, then the *Kâta-kâna* is used for the interlinear translation in Japanese, whereas the *Fira-gâna* accompanies the Chinese running-hand.

B. Books written in the Japanese language.

In these, the national writing, whether *Fira-gâna* or *Kâta-kâna*, forms the chain, in which a larger or smaller number of Chinese characters are inserted. In this style, the Chinese characters represent ideas, for which the reader, in case the meaning of the Chinese character has not been already expressed at the side of it in Japanese writing, must substitute Japanese words and connect them with the inflectional forms, which the writer has placed after the Chinese character. Here also the *Kâta-kâna* accompanies the Chinese standard-writing, and the *Fira-gâna* the Chinese running hand. In this style the whole Japanese literature proper is written. A Japanese text without an admixture of Chinese ideographic signs, women's letters excepted, has never yet come under our notice.

To exemplify what has been said, we subjoin a few lines written in this style. In the one specimen the translation in Japanese will be found written next to each Chinese character, in the other it is left out; the latter happens chiefly in official documents.

期 限	キ ケン	外 次	ホ カツ ギ	○	ナ ガ
ヨ リ		ニ	ノ	長 崎	サ キ
開	ア ク	載 ス	バ	オ ヨ ビ	ハ コ
ベ シ		ス ル	シ ヨ	箱 館	ダ テ
		場 所	サ	ノ	ミ テ
		所 シ		港	ト
		左 ノ		ノ	

期 限	外 次	○
ヨ リ	ニ	長 崎
開	載 ス	オ ヨ ビ
ベ シ	ス ル	箱 館
	場 所	ノ
	所 シ	港
	左 ノ	ノ

¹⁾ Translation. The way of the Grand Study consists in illustrating illustrious virtue, it consists in renovating the people, it consists in resting in the highest excellence.

The point where to rest being known, the object of pursuit is then determined: that being determined, a calm unperturbedness may be attained. To that there will succeed a tranquil repose. That being attained, there may be careful deliberation, and that deliberation will be followed by the attainment (of the desired end). — J. LEGGE, *Chinese classics*. Vol. I. 220.

Reading of the Japanese text.

Nagasáki oyóbi Hakodate no mináto no hoká, tsugini nósuru ba-siyo wo sa no ki-gen yori ákúbesi ¹⁾).

The frequent use made of Chinese ideographic signs in this style of writing has for consequence, that even people of the lower order are more or less acquainted with it and, appreciating a sort of knowledge, which pleads for a good education, make ample use of it. We possess written communications from Japanese work-people which, written in the prevalent epistolary style, contain more Chinese characters than Japanese letters.

It stands to reason that, to understand texts written in this style, in the first place, an acquaintance with the Japanese language is necessary, since the logical connection between the parts of the proposition and the ideas indicated by the Chinese characters is expressed in Japanese letters, thus in Japanese.

C. Style.

Just as every living language the Japanese too has, during the lapse of centuries, undergone change and had a gradual development, which is reflected in a literature of more than a thousand years. This is not the place to investigate those changes or to indicate specimens of different periods. We desire merely to direct attention to the difference which exists between the old and new Japanese language, written as well as printed.

a. Old Japanese.

The old language, *Fürú-koto*, is an idiom free from foreign ingredients, that has been developed freely and independently in the isolated *Nippon*. Originally the language of the ancient Mikado-dynasty, that was settled in *Yamáto* 660 years B. C., and therefore also called *Yamáto-kotobá* or the language of *Yamáto*, this idiom had, with the political, intellectual and spiritual power of that dynasty obtained supremacy over the other dialects of the empire and was, for ages long, the general written language, expressed at one time in Chinese, and then again in Japanese writing; but when at last the power of this dynasty declined, and lost its direct influence in the government of the empire, this old language shared its fate: it was superseded by a new idiom, and supplanted in

¹⁾ That is: Besides the Ports of Nagasaki and Hakodate, the places mentioned beneath shall be opened at the following periods. — Art. 2 of the Netherlands-Japanese Treaty of the 18th August, 1855.

the political life, but by no means driven from the mouths of the people, or forgotten. As the vehicle of an extensive literature, and chiefly by the power of its poetry and of the old religion, this language has kept its stand, and is still held in respect, since the literature founded on it, as the expression of an ancient civilization, and as the witness of a past, glorious in the eyes of the nation, still finds its admirers; and the old service of *Kamis*, which still lives on among the people, is rooted in this language.

Considered from a philological point of view, the *Yamato-kotoba* is the mirror which reflects most faithfully the being of the Japanese language, the most exposes its organic structure, and sheds a clear light on the grammatical forms also of the new idiom, now become prevalent.

The student of the Japanese language, who is not satisfied with the mechanical learning of grammatical forms, but wishes to penetrate into the knowledge of their origin and being, must, in the etymological and grammatical treatment of that language, take the *Yamato-kotoba* for basis, following, in this respect, the example of the Japanese themselves who, to be able to lay any claim to literary proficiency, apply themselves to the study of their old language and read the old authors and poets, and sometimes even imitate their versification.

The Japanese literature is rich in works in the *Fürú-koto*, but not less rich in philological resources, chiefly in dictionaries, in which the old or pure Japanese language is illustrated by citations of the sources. The principal sources are the works on mythology and history, the oldest of which are those which have been designated with the name of „the three records” (三_サ部_ブ本_{ホン}書_{ショ} *San-bu fon-sjö*).

1. „Original account of the old events of former times. 先_{セン}代_{ダイ}舊_コ事_ジ本_{ホン}紀_キ *Sen-dai ku-zi fon-ki*,” executed by SIYAU-TOK DAI-SI and Sogano MUMAKONO SUKUNE, by order of Mikado SUI-KO, in 10 volumes, beginning with the god-dynasties, and extending to 620 (the 20th year of the said Mikado).

2. The „Book of antiquity, *Fürú-koto-bumi* or 古_コ事_ジ記_キ *Ko-zi-ki*,” written by Oho-ason YASU-MARO and presented to the Mikado GEN-MEI in 711 or 712, 3 volumes. It begins with the mythological times and reaches to 597 (the 5th year of the Mikado SUI-KO).

3. The „Japanese book, *Yamato-bumi* or 日_{ニッ}本_{ボン}書_{ショ}紀_キ *Nippon siyo-ki*,” completed by TONERINO SIN-WOO and Oho-ason YASU-MARO, in 720, in

20 volumes, beginning with the creation and ending with the year 697 ¹⁾.

These works, executed before the introduction of the Japanese *Kûta-kána*-writing, are, as appears from the copies, that we have of them, generally written with Chinese writing, partly ideographic, partly phonetic; at the side of which is found the reading in Japanese expressed with *Kûta-kána*, but this is an addition of later time. As a specimen we here subjoin the first lines of the *Ko-zi-ki* (古事記).

而 ^テ	者 ^ハ	日 ^ビ	日 ^ビ	神 ^{カミ}	名 ^{ミナ}	於 ^タ	天 ^{アメ}
隱 ^{ミミ}	並 ^{ミナ}	神 ^{カミ}	神 ^{カミ}	次 ^{ツギ}	天 ^{アメ}	高 ^{タカ}	地 ^{ツチ}
身 ^{カク}	獨 ^{ヒトリ}	此 ^{コノ}	次 ^{ツギ}	高 ^{タカ}	之 ^ノ	天 ^{アメ}	初 ^{ハジ}
也 ^{ベキ}	神 ^{カミ}	三 ^ミ	神 ^{カミ}	御 ^ミ	御 ^ミ	原 ^{ハラ}	發 ^メ
	成 ^{ナリ}	柱 ^{ハシラ}	産 ^ム	産 ^ム	中 ^{ナカ}	成 ^{ナリ}	之 ^ノ
	坐 ^{マシ}	神 ^{カミ}	巢 ^ス	巢 ^ス	主 ^{ヌシ}	神 ^{カミ}	時 ^{トキ}

Reading: *Ame tsutsi no fazimé no toki taka-ma no fara ni n'irimáseru kami no mi-na vá Ameno mi-naka-nusi no kami, tsugini Taka-mi-musúbi no kami, tsugini Kami-musúbi no kami, — Kono mi fúsira no kami vá mina fitóri gami n'irimásité, mi-mi wo káku-tamáviki.*

Translation: The three gods: Ame no mi-naka-nusi no kami, Taka-mi-musúbi no kami, and Kami-musúbi no kami, at the time of the creation of Heaven and Earth existed in the high expanse of heaven, were solitary gods and hid themselves.

As sources for obtaining acquaintance with the *Fûrû-koto*, the topographical, physical and historical descriptions (風土記 *Fuu-to-ki*) of Japan, collected as early as 713 come further under notice; the laws and precepts edited

¹⁾ Of this work I have made ample use in the elaboration of an historical treatise, which appeared in 1839 in VON SIEBOLD'S „Nippon-Archiv" under the title of *Japan's Bezüge mit der Koreischen Halbinsel und mit China. Nach Japanischen Quellen bearbeitet.*

It might be expected, that the style, in which these annals are written, would be characterized by unadorned simplicity; but the opposite is the case. The oldest Japanese prose is completely subservient to courtly manners; it is verbose and diffuse, and any one, unless he is penetrated, like the authors themselves, with the divine worship, which they display towards the prince and his house, will discover but too soon that behind the richness of courtlike expressions lies hid — poverty of ideas.

in three different periods (三_サ代_{ダイ}格_カ式_{シキ} *San-dai kaku-siki*) of 820, 869 and 907; — Historical narratives and romances (物_{モノ}語_ゴ *Mono-gatari*); — collections of Lyric poems (歌_{ウタ} *uta*), as well as the Bundle of Ten thousand leaves; — Epic poems and Melo-dramatic pieces (舞_{マヒ} *Mai*, or *mai*) etc.

As philological aids towards illustration of the *Fürú-koto* deserving of mention are:

和名鈔 *Wa-mei-seo*, or explanation of Japanese names, collected by MINA-MOTONO SITAGAVU (源順), a famous poet, who died in 986. 20 volumes. There are editions of 1617, 1667 and 1851.

古_コ言_{コト}梯_{ハシ} *Fürú koto no bási*, or „Ladder to the old language.” 1765.

雅_カ言_{ゲン}集_{シュ}覽_{ラン} *Ga-gen sju-ran* or *Miyávi-koto-atsámé*, „View of the correct language,” by ISI-GAVA GA-BAU. 1812.

雅_カ言_{ゲン}假_カ字_ジ格_カ *Ga-gen ka-zi kaku*, „Standard of the correct language” in *Kana*-writing, by ITSI-OKA TAKE-FIKO. 1814.

倭_ワ訓_{クン}栞_{シヨリ} *Wa-gun no siwori*, or „Guide to the Japanese language,” by TANI-GAVA SI SEI. 1830.

b. New Japanese.

Opposed to the *Fürú-koto* is the New Japanese, as it has been in vogue since the 16th century, for the newest type of which the style may pass, in which the diplomatic documents of our time, particularly the treaties concluded with the Western Powers in 1855, are composed ¹⁾.

The distinguishing characteristic of this style does not lie in the spelling, — for this, as the literature of this people, dating more than a thousand years ago, has undergone but few changes, — but in the analytic character, by which it forms an opposition to the antique-synthetic Japanese, and chiefly in the strong mixture of Chinese, or, properly, Japanized Chinese words, which, it is true, are governed by the Japanese element, but play so important a part in it, that this style has been, not with injustice, called the Sinico-Japanese.

Rising in the opinion of the Japanese, above the popular language proper, in dignity, conciseness and strength of expression, this style is more particularly a possession of the more civilized classes of society and, at one time more, at another less, impregnated with the foreign element, forms the book-language;

¹⁾ See p. 28. note 2.

as such, has penetrated to the lower classes of the people, and exercises its influence even on the polite conversational language and the epistolary style.

It follows, as a matter of course, that in our treatment of the Japanese language this style occupies a prominent place, and if at the same time we look back upon the old as well, it is but to be able, from a grammatical point of view, to illustrate the new as it requires.

13. LANGUAGE SPOKEN. — GENERAL CONVERSATIONAL LANGUAGE AND DIALECTS.

Almost each province of the Japanese Empire has its peculiar dialect, and the difference of dialect becomes greater, in proportion as the provinces are more distant from one another.

It is a fact confirmed by the testimony of different Japanese, whom we have questioned on the subject, that a native of the southern part of Japan and one from the northern cannot understand each other's dialect. The merchant or functionary passing from *Yédo* to *Nagasaki*, understands the dialect spoken there just as little as, on the other hand, a native of *Nagasaki* understands the language of the common people of *Yédo*.

The case is just the same with dialects of Japan, as with the many dialects, which, e. g., exist next one another in Germany. But as amidst those many dialects one general polite written and spoken language, — the High German, — has gained the ascendancy there, so in Japan also, (instead of the old *Yamáto-kotoba*) a general polite spoken language has obtained admittance. It is the spoken language, at present in general use in *Miyáko* and, with slight modification at *Yédo* also, but here it is spoken by the polite classes alone ¹⁾. Since the influence of *Yédo* spreads to the most remote parts of the empire, and the instruction in the schools is everywhere given in that lan-

¹⁾ In confirmation of this assertion, we here quote the very words of O. . K. . as we noted them down, when uttered „*Miyáko no stó bu-men wo yomi-más toori ni hanási-mas; káru-nga-yuèni yorósiki kotowa bakári gozárimas. Eddo no kotoba wá, ki-nin wa yorósiki kotoba nite hanási-másu,*” i. e. ‘The inhabitants of *Miyáko* speak as one reads in a book, and therefore have only good language. With regard to the language of *Yédo*, only the polite man speaks good language.’

guage, every well-bred person in the provinces makes use of it in his intercourse with the educated, and leaves the local dialect to the lower classes of the people. To foreigners, who wish to get some knowledge of the spoken language whether at *Kanagawa* or at *Nagasaki*, it is not a matter of indifference to whom they apply for instruction. If they choose for language-master a servant taken from the street, he will sell them his patois for good Japanese, declares what really is good Japanese „not good,” and, although it may not be his intention, gives them the means to afford Japanese functionaries — amusement. As in every language, so in the Japanese also, the dialects have their unquestionable right to existence, and knowledge of them is of importance, as well for the daily intercourse with that portion of the population that do not rise above their dialect, as for comparative philology; but to intercourse with the well educated part of the nation, with whom the foreigner will certainly wish to place himself on a level, he gains admittance only by means of the general polite spoken language, and for this he must look about him. To take an instance, he will then use the word *watákusi* for „I,” just as the gentleman and merchant of *Yédo*, and not accept the porter's „*wátski* or *wasi*,” or a servant-maid's „*watási*” or „*watái*” instead, or please himself with the *ataksa* from the district of *Yosihara*.

The ordinary conversational language differs from the book-language, both in respect of diction and pronunciation. If the book-language is succinct, and concise, the conversational is more circumstantial and diffuse; the natural consequence of the task laid on it of coming up to the rules of good-breeding, which prescribe the form of social intercourse in the different ranks of society.

These rules require from every one respectful politeness to his superiors, strict courtesy to his equals. From a people that, like the Japanese, has obtained among the Western nations the reputation of being the most civilized and most courteous on the earth ¹⁾, it is to be expected that its conversational language should express that character, and this is the case: the language familiarly spoken is a concatenation of courtly expressions and goes even so far, that a person, who has not been brought up with it, will not, to use the mildest expression, acquit it of exaggeration.

With regard to pronunciation, of which we have already spoken above (p. 21), the same phenomenon occurs as, among the Western languages, in the

¹⁾ In 1862 the Netherlands became acquainted with some exceptions to this rule.

French: the pronunciation deviates from the written form, and this deviation arises partly from the original inadequacy of the Japanese phonetic system, which cannot possibly express all the existant combinations of sound, partly from the development of the language, in which the pronunciation has undergone many a change, whilst the once adopted, old orthography, with but slight modifications, has maintained its historical claim.

Specimens of the Japanese conversational style in the form of dialogues have only very lately reached us.

It is true, about forty years ago, a Japanese translation of Dutch dialogues found its way into a Museum in the Netherlands, and later a place in a book about Japan ¹⁾, and every one who attached importance to the study of Japanese, in the supposition that that translation was also in the Japanese conversational style, had then to attach no small value to it; but, now that we have been able to become better acquainted with the familiar conversational style, it appears that people were misled: the translation of these dialogues is not written in the conversational, but in the book style, and therefore loses its supposed value.

The first specimen of the genuine conversational language that reached us was a pocket-work published at *Nagasaki* for the use of Japanese merchants, which we, with a view to the wants of the non-Japanese, recast and published in 1861 with the title of *Shopping-dialogues in Dutch, English and Japanese*. The Japanese it contains, is the pure conversational style in use among the trades-people.

This specimen was in 1863 followed by *Familiar dialogues in Japanese with English and French translations for the use of students*; a contribution with which the names of R. ALCOCK and LÉON PAGÈS are connected.

Now the want of aids to oral intercourse with Japan is daily becoming more prominent, and as yet it is not to be expected, that the Japanese, who reluctantly see the attempt of the foreigner to become in any degree master of their language, will themselves coöperate therein and publish dialogues, from which the foreigner may draw profit, — it may be hoped, that for that very reason the zeal of such Europeans, as apply themselves more particularly to the study of language in Japan, or do so in their intercourse with Japanese out

¹⁾ *Bijdrage tot de kennis van het Japansche Rijk*, by VAN OVERMEER FISSCHER. 1833.

of Japan, — for the Japanese language is not grown fast to the Japanese soil, — will succeed in collecting new series of dialogues and distinguishing in them the more or less polite style of speaking, the correct and the incorrect manner of expression.

Epistolary style.

The Japanese epistolary style (文^フ章^{シヤウ} *Bun siyau*) is the conversational language purified; it is equally subject to stamped forms, and is a model of courtliness and deferential politeness. Knowledge of it is rendered easy, because every popular encyclopedia contains a series of model letters, in which, the difference in rank between the writer and the person to whom the letter is addressed being considered, the choice of words and expressions is defined.

14. ON THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Japanese have of old distributed the words of their language in three sorts:

1. **The Noun**, 名^ナ *Na*, i. e. name (*nomen*). To this category belong besides the noun substantive, the pronouns, the adjectives, the numerals, and the exponents of relation, which last, placed as postpositions, do the office of our so called prepositions, as well as, in part, of our conjunctions also.

2. **The Verb**, 詞^ジ *Kotoba*, i. e. the word (*verbum*) by eminence, and considered as the living element of the sentence.

3. **Particles**, formal or constituent words, generally suffixes (*suffixæ*), which do the office of our terminational inflections (*casus*) such as the particles *te*, *ni*, *wo*, *wa*, and therefore comprised under the name of *Tenivora* or *Teniva*.

Remark 1. By the written form 出^デ 尔^ニ = 葉^ハ or 出^デ 葉^ハ, used for the name *Teniva* by which the signification of „opening leaves” is attributed to the word, one must not be misled into the supposition, that these particles might be actual shoots of words, or what are sometimes called organic terminational inflections, and not suffixes. The form of writing quoted is nothing else, than one of the frequently occurring rebuses, in which, to arrive at the truth, the meaning of the characters employed must be overlooked.

Remark 2. In one European Grammar ¹⁾ these particles are also called

¹⁾ RODRIGUEZ, *Elem.* § 67.

„*Sategana*” and „*Wokiy*,” names, which require a further illustration.

Sute-gána (捨^ス 假^テ 名^ナ), i. e. deserted, or foundling-letters (a foundling child is called *sute-go*) is the name given to the terminations of Japanese words expressed with Japanese *Kána*-writing between, or at the side of, Chinese characters, which words themselves are only indicated ideographically by Chinese characters ¹). The marks ノ *no* and ク *ku* in 孔 *Kou-si* NO *notamara* KU (= saying of Confucius), or ヌ *nu* in 思^シ 子^コノ

曰^フ *omo* V *U* are thus foundling-letters that must be taken up in the translation.

Oki-zi (置^{オキ} 字^ジ) — the written form *Wokiy* appears to be an error of impression — is said of those characters of a Chinese sentence which, in the translation into Japanese, must not be translated separately, but passed over, as 於 in 遊^ユ *San-tsiu-ni asobu* (= walking among the

於
山
中

mountains). The *Oki-zi* thus are characters to which, in translating into Japanese, the part of statistics or mute players is assigned.

By more recent Japanese grammarians the name of 體^タ 詞^ジ *Tai no kotoba* corporal or bodily word has been given to the noun, and that of 用^{ヨウ} 詞^ジ *You no kotoba* or effective word* to the verb, whereas for the particles the name of *Tenivocu* has been retained.

If the Japanese grammarians confine themselves to the distinction of three classes of words, we, to be able to fix the logical and grammatical value of the words properly, must apply our grammatical categories, our distinction of the parts of speech to the Japanese language. Consequently we distinguish 1. Nouns, under which are included 2. Pronouns, 3. Adjectives, 4. Numerals, 5. Adverbs, 6. Verbs, 7. Suffixes (*postpositions*) simple, answering to our terminational inflections, and such as answer to our prepositions and conjunctions, 8. Interjections.

¹) Compare p. 34

15. A GLANCE AT THE ARRANGEMENT AND CONNECTION OF WORDS IN
JAPANESE.

The laws for the arrangement of words, which govern the Japanese syntax, also govern the formation of the words themselves, that is: the manner, in which that language, from its monosyllabic roots, has formed words, and from those existing words has formed, and is still forming new ones, is subject to the same laws, as the manner in which the elements of sentences standing in relation to one another are governed. A concise view of those laws should, therefore, precede the theory of the grammatical forms of words.

The Japanese construction of words is based on two principles, viz: that of *Predicative Apposition*, and that of *Subordination* or order of dependance.

A. Predicative Apposition.

The subject, if it is named, precedes, the predicate follows, the subject being mostly separated from the predicate by an isolating particle ()\), whereas the predicate, in the absence of personal inflections of the verb, is not joined to the subject grammatically. As the subject too is left without a sign of the nominative, a congruency of predicate and subject properly so called does not exist.

B. Subordination.

Every modifying word precedes the word to which it belongs. — Application.

1. The attributive definition, be it a genitive, or adjective; is thus placed before the word to which it belongs.

Thus *Yáma-móri*, mountain-wood, *Móri-yáma*, wood-mountain; *Ame ga furu*, rain-fall, raining; *Ná-tsuno ame*, summer-rain; *Tsuyóki ame*, heavy rain; *Yóku*, well; *Yóku wakári*, understanding well; *Hána-hádayorósiku*, very well. Consequently the connectives answering to our *in, at, of, through, with, on, under, before, after, for, by* etc. etc. become suffixes to the word, which is their attributive definition. This takes place also with the noun, which is to be considered as the attributive definition of the inflection.

2. The verb is placed before the connective (*conjunctio*), because it is governed by it.

Instead of „I go, because he goes,” an expression is used answering to „he to go because || I going am.”

3. The adverb precedes the verb, and the subordinate or dependent proposition, in quality of adverbial definition, precedes the principal proposition.

E. g. „The sun brightly shining is,” instead of our „The sun is shining brightly.”

4. The predicate is placed before the copula, because the meaning included in the predicate adds a definition to the copula (be, is).

E. g. „*The flower in bloom is*,“ for our „*The flower is in blossom*,“ or „*the flower blooms*.“

5. The object direct, as well as the indirect, is placed before its verb; the substantive phrase objective is placed before the principal proposition governing.

Instead of „*he sends a letter home*; — *he knows that I shall come*,“ expressions are used answering to „*he || home(wards) a letter sends*; — *he || I come shall that, knowing is*.“

6. The verb is placed before the auxiliary verb, whether it be affirmative or, in consequence of the blending with a negative element (= not), negative.

Instead of „*he will go*; *I will not go*;“ expressions are used answering to „*he go will*, or *he || (to) go willing is*; *I || (to) go willing not am*.“

7. The verb, by means of which a derivative verb is formed, has the root of this verb placed before it.

The saying: „*I let him go*,“ is rendered by an expression equal to „*I him go let*.“

The interrogatives and certain exclamations (*interjections*), follow the word or proposition they characterize.

Instead of „*Understand you?* — *Oh heavens!*“ we meet with expressions answering to „*You understand eh?* — *Heavens, oh!*“

When several definitions independent of one another belong to one predicate, then the less important precedes the more important: the definition of time is placed before the definition of place: the object indirect (Dative, Local, Instrumental, Ablative) before the object direct (Accusative).

Coördination.

In coördination of words, the last alone receives the characteristic of grammatical relationship, while the preceding ones are left undefined.

Thus if it be a series of nouns, which are linked together, the last only receives the terminational inflection, that refers to them all.

Our saying: „*The three lights of sun, moon and stars*“ gets the Japanese form of „*sun, moon, stars of three light*.“ (日^ニ 月^ケ 星^ヲ 之^ノ 三^サ 光^{クワ} *Zit get sei-NO san kwoo*). —

In the saying: „*Who has made heaven, earth, sun, moon, water, air, fire?*“ only the last of the nouns linked together gets the terminational inflection of the accusative, thus *Dare ga ame, tsutsi, fi, tsuki, midzu, kazé, fi WO go-zúku nasareta?* — Both examples, corrected, have been taken from RODRIGUEZ *Élém.* § 88.

The case is just the same with propositions linked together, the verb only of the last proposition, in like manner, receiving the terminational inflection, while the verbs of the preceding propositions, left undefined, retain their radical form.

The Japanese and the Chinese order of words, with regard to the attributive definitions, agree, as in both these languages they precede the word to which they belong; but they differ from each other, in respect of the object (*complément*), which, as it has been shown on p. 32, in Japanese is placed before, in Chinese after the verb.

Might it be objected that in Chinese there are prepositions also such as 於, 于, 自, 由 etc. which have the word they govern placed after them, we must observe that, in our opinion, those prepositions are verbs, and therefore have the complement after them.

Inversion.

Inversion or transposed order of words plays an important part in Japanese. The Syntax will show, how it can step out of the monotonous march of the regular order of words, and without violating its laws, set off the principal elements and the definitions of a sentence rhetorically.

ETYMOLOGY, NATURE AND INFLECTION OF WORDS.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

§ 1. THE ROOT is the monosyllabic element of a word. Roots are, e. g.

<i>i</i> , to go,	<i>kik</i> , to hear,
<i>ki</i> , to come,	<i>ag</i> , to ascend,
<i>mi</i> , to see,	<i>sag</i> , to descend,
<i>tor</i> , to take,	<i>tat</i> , to stand.

§ 2. The verbal form, on which derivative or inflectional suffixes are grafted, is called the RADICAL OR PRIMITIVE WORD.

The Radicals are the names either of objects or qualities, or verbs, as:

<i>Káva</i> , river,	<i>Táka</i> , high,	<i>Itári</i> , gone,	<i>Kíki</i> , hear,
<i>Yáma</i> , mountain,	<i>Fikí</i> , low,	<i>Kitári</i> , come,	<i>Age</i> , raise,
<i>Kuni</i> , land,	<i>Fíro</i> , broad,	<i>Miye</i> , seem,	<i>Ságe</i> , abate,
<i>Mitsi</i> , way,	<i>Nága</i> , long,	<i>Tóri</i> , hold,	<i>Táte</i> , fix, place.

§ 3. THE RADICAL IN COMPOSITION.

If a word in its radical form stands before a noun, then both words are either coördinate, or the first is to the second, as a definition, subordinate. In the latter case the rule is, that Japanese words are combined with Japanese, Chinese with Chinese.

A. Coördination takes place in expressions as: *Ame-tsutsi*, heaven-earth; — *Fī-tsūki*, sun (and) moon; — *Kūsa-ki*, plant (and) tree.

天^{テン} 地^チ *Ten-tsi*, heaven (and) earth; 日^{ジツ} 月^{ゲツ} *Zit-get*, sun (and) moon;
 國^{コク} 家^カ *Kókū-ka*, country (and) people; 草^{サウ} 木^{モク} *Squ-mok*, plant (and) tree.

B. Subordination.

I. Subordination by way of genitive or adjective definition takes place in compositions, as:

Kava-oso, river-otter; *Oso-gava*, otter-river.
Kava-yeda, river-branch; *Yeda-gava* = branch-river.
Yáma-mori, mountain-wold; *Mori-yáma*, wold-mountain.
Taka-yáma, high-mountain; *Yoko-háma*, cross-strand.
Naga-sáki, long-cape; *Firo-no*, large-field.
 天^{テン} 神^{ジン}, *Ten-zin*, heavenly gods;
 地^チ 神^{ジン}, *Tsi-zin*, earthly gods;
 國^{コク} 人^{ジン}, *Kóku-zin*, country-men, inhabitants;
 國^{コク} 字^ジ, *Kóku-zi*, country-writing, the *Káta-kána*.

II. The object direct or indirect, if taken in a general sense, is placed in its radical form before the verb ¹⁾.

1. The radical form occurs as object direct (Accusative) in compounds as *Ana-fori*, the hole-digger; *Kava-watári*, one who crosses a river; *Sūná-tori*, sand-fetcher, sand-skipper; *Midsu-kósi*, water-filter; *Ama-terásu*, heaven-lighting.

2. The radical form occurs as object indirect in *Ama-kudári*, (from) heaven descending; *Tē-tori*, *asi-tori*, to seize (any one by the) hands, seize (by the) feet; *Me-gake*, (in the) eye hold; *Me-sasi*, (with the) eye show, give a wink; *Ana-dori*, (in) holes catch.

III. The radical form as a definition before adjectives, e. g. *Tē-baya*, = hand-quick, handy, dextrous; *Asi-faya*, = foot-quick, swift of foot, fleet; *Asi-taka*, = leg-high, high-legged; *O-naga*, = tail-long, long-tailed.

Remark. In composition rules of euphony are observed and bring about modifications of sound, as well with regard to vowels, as to consonants, whenever

¹⁾ Comp. H. STEINTHAL, *Charakteristik der hauptsächlichsten Typen des Sprachbaues*, p. 184, 185.

their meeting is embarrassing to the pronunciation. From *Asa* + *ake*, dawn, is formed *asáke*; from *Yáma* + *áto*, = hill-behind, behind the hills, *Yamáto*; from *Tóyo* + *úra*, = rich-creek, the name of a place, *Toyóra*; from *Fó* + *isi*, = fire-stone, *fósi*, star, etc.

As we must draw up the rules of euphony from the grammatical phenomena we shall, to be able to refer to them, insert the rules at the end of the Etymology.

GENDER.

§ 4. Grammatical gender does not exist. If the gender must be definitely expressed of objects in which a distinction of sex exists, then this distinction is made, either by means of particular words A. or as in English in which *male-servants* and *female-servants*, „a *he-animal*” and „a *she-animal*” are spoken of, by placing ㄣ O, man, and ㄣ Me, woman, as attributive before the word, B.

A. To the particular names belong: *Mi-kádo*, = the sublime port, the sovereign, king or emperor. *Ki-sáki*, originally 君^キ 幸^サ *Kimi-sáki*, = princely fortune, the queen or empress; thence in the Mythology which, under the name of *Kámi*, *Kán*, = prince, chief, includes the gods, the expression *Kisáki-gámi*, i. e. higher being (*kámi*) that is consort (*kisáki*), to indicate a goddess, who is the consort of a god.

Tsitsi, kazo, father.

Fava (haha), irova, mother.

Mama-tsitsi, stepfather.

Mana-fava, stepmother.

O-dsi, uncle.

O-ba, aunt.

Ani, eldest brother.

Ane, eldest sister.

Tsitsi-tori, = father-bird, cock.

Fava-tori, = mother-bird, brood-hen.

B. 1. By the prefixes ㄣ O and ㄣ Me the sex is determined in

O-vi, o-i, nephew.

Me-vi, me-i, niece.

O-ke-mono ¹⁾, male-mammal.

Me-ke-mono, female-mammal.

O-usi, ox.

Me-usi, cow.

O-mámá, stallion.

Me-mámá, mare.

O-inu, dog.

Me-inu, bitch.

¹⁾ *Ke*, hair, hairy, *mono*, being.

O-inó-ko, boar.*Me-inó-ko*, sow.*O-fitsüzi*, he-goat.*Me-fitsüzi*, she-goat.*O-sikä*, stag.*Me-sikä*, hind.*O-néko*, he-cat.*Me-néko*, she-cat.*O-kúzŕa*, male-whale.*Me-kúzŕa*, female-whale.

2. Instead of the radical form *O* and *Me* the genitive attributive **Ono** and **Méno** also occur.

Ono-ko, male-child.*Méno-ko*, female-child, girl.*Ono-kami*, a god.*Méno-kami*, goddess.

Remark. When *Ono* and *Méno* are contracted to **On** and **Men**, then the pure sounds *k*, *s*, *t* if following, generally pass to the troubled *g* (*n̄*), *z* (*nz*), *d* (*nd*)¹⁾.

From *ono* + *tori*, male-bird, becomes successively ヲノトリ *ondori* and ヲトリ *odori* (pronounce *ondori*); from *meno* + *tori*, female-bird, メノトリ *mendori*, and メトリ *medori* (pron. *mendori*); from *meno* + *sárü*, female-monkey, メノザル *men-záru* and メザル *mezáru* (pron. *menzáru*); *meno* + *tora*, female-tiger, メノトラ *mendora* and メトラ *medora* (pron. *mendora*); from *meno* + *kataki*, female-enemy, メガタキ *me-gatáki* (pron. *mengatáki*).

3. There come under notice also **Ko** (子^コ) and **Me** (女^メ), lad and lass, with antecedent attributive definition.

*Otó-ko*²⁾, lad, man.*Oto-mé*, virgin, maid.*Musü-kó* = begotten son, (my) son.*Musü-mé* = begotten maid, (my) daughter.*Fíkó*, young nobleman.*Fímé*, young lady.*Kana-yáma fíkó no kami*, the god of the ore-mountain.*Kana-yáma fímé no kami*, the goddess of the ore-mountain.*Mi-koto*, Sublimity, Highness.*Fímé-gami*, goddess.*Ono mi-koto*, His Highness.*Fímé no mi-koto*, Her Highness.

The old-Japanese also has **ki** and **mi** instead of *ko* and *me*, probably with a view to the vocal-harmony; thence *Izana-ki* and *Izana-mi*, = male-goer to and fro, female-goer to and fro, name of the divine pair that first mingled carnally.

¹⁾ Comp. Introduction, p. 15, line 8.

²⁾ *Oto*, old-Japanese for *ono*, genitive attributive of *o* (小), small, young.

C. The ideas of male and female are sometimes transferred to objects without sex, for the purpose of characterizing the one as big, strong, rough, the other as little, weak and mild, or to indicate other peculiarities of one or the other of the sexes; e. g. *O-matsü*, the masculine fir-tree, or *Küró-matsü*, the black fir-tree ¹⁾; *Me-mátsü*, the feminine fir-tree, also *Aka-mátsü*, the red pinetree ²⁾.

Two islands being next each other, when they are of unequal size, are often denominated *O-sima*, man-island, and *Me-sima*, woman-island.

Me-iküsa, a female-army, means a weak army (= *Yowáki iküsa*); *me-nüzi*, a female-rainbow, is the name of the faint by-rainbow. *Me-kavára* or feminine-tile is the name given to flat tile (*jira-kavára*), on which the roll-shaped (*máru-kavára*), as the masculine tile (*O-kavára*), rests.

D. The Chinese expressions, used in connection with Chinese names for female and male, are for quadrupeds 牝^ニ 牡^ボ *jín* and *bo*; for birds 雌^メ 雄^オ *si* and *yuu*, e. g. 牝^ニ 馬^バ *jín-ba*, mare; 雄^オ 雉^チ *yuu-tsi*, cock-pheasant.

NUMBER.

§ 5. The grammatical distinction of singular and plural is wanting. The noun used in its radical form expresses the idea generally and leaves it undetermined, whether the said object is to be adopted in the singular or plural.

Only when it is strictly necessary to make the general idea appear in a definite sense as something either singular or plural, such is expressed in one way or another.

A. In Japanese words the singular is expressed by the numeral 一^{ヒト} *fító*, one;

Fító yo, one night.

Fító kádo, one corner.

„ *tose*, one year.

„ *katamári*, one clog.

„ *tábi*, one time, once.

„ *fána*, one flower.

in Chinese words by 一^{イチ} 箇^カ, *ikka* or *ikkúno*, as

一^{イチ} 箇^カ 所^{ショ}, *ikka sýo*, one place;

一^{イチ} 箇^カ ノ 地^チ, *ikkúno tsi*, one piece of ground.

More amply, when treating of the numerals.

¹⁾ *Pinus massoniana* LAMB.

²⁾ *Pinus densiflora* SIEB. et ZUC.

B. The plural is expressed:

I. By a repetition of the noun, for so far as a distributive generality ¹⁾ indicated by the repetition includes the idea of a plural. *Yáma*, hill; *Yáma-yáma*, every hill.

The number of such repetitions is determined by custom. In the pronunciation the accent lies on the first part of the compound, while the second occurs as a soft prolongation of the sound, and the consonant, with which it begins, undergoes a softening and becomes impure. Examples:

國 クニ <i>kuni</i> , country, province;	國 クニ ヲ <i>kuni-guni</i> , each country, every province.
郡 コホリ <i>kohóri</i> , <i>koóri</i> , district;	郡 コホリ ヲ <i>kohóri-gohóri</i> , every district.
村 ムラ <i>múra</i> , village;	村 ムラ ヲ <i>múra-múra</i> , each village.
邑 サト <i>sato</i> , village;	邑 サト ヲ <i>sato-zato</i> , each village.
町 マチ <i>mátsi</i> , ward, street;	町 マチ ヲ <i>matsi-matsi</i> , every ward.
家 イヘ <i>í hé</i> , <i>í é</i> , house, family;	家 イヘ ヲ <i>í hé-í hé</i> , every house, each family.
戸 ヘ <i>fe</i> , <i>he</i> , door, family;	戸 ヘ ヲ <i>fe-fe</i> , door for door, every family.
社 ヤシロ <i>yasiro</i> , chapel;	社 ヤシロ ヲ <i>yasiro-yasiro</i> , every chapel.
山 ヤマ <i>yáma</i> , hill, mountain;	山 ヤマ ヲ <i>yáma-yáma</i> , every hill or mountain.
處 トコロ <i>tokóro</i> , place;	處 トコロ ヲ <i>tokóro-dokóro</i> , every place, everywhere.
隅 ズミ <i>sumi</i> , corner;	隅 ズミ ヲ <i>sumi-zumi</i> , every corner.
間 マ <i>ma</i> , space, (place and time).	間 マ ヲ <i>ma-ma</i> , every space, every time.
間 マヰ <i>aí</i> , space between;	間 マヰ ヲ <i>aí-aí</i> , meanwhile.
橋 ハシ <i>fási</i> , <i>hási</i> , bridge;	橋 ハシ ヲ <i>fási-bási</i> , every bridge.
己 オノ <i>ono</i> , one;	各 オノ ヲ <i>ónó-ónó</i> , each.
人 ヒト <i>fító</i> , one, man;	人 ヒト ヲ <i>fító-bító</i> , every one.

¹⁾ „Die Wiederholung der Substanzwörter bezeichnet nicht den Plural, auch nicht schlechthin Mehrheit, sondern distributive Allheit, die wir am besten durch „jeder“ wiedergeben.“ — STEINTHAL, *Typen des Sprachbaues*, pag. 158.

親 おや *oya*, old;役 やく *yákū*, office;世 よ *yo*, age, time of life;年 とし *tosi*, year;日 ひ *ji*, day;時 とき *toki*, time, hour;色 いろ *iro*, 1) color, 2) sort;級 きゅう。品 しん *sina*, 1) degree, rank,
2) quality.種 しゅ *shyu*, sort;様 さま *sama*, the look, the mien度 たび *tabi*, journey, turn;藥 くすり *kūsuri*, medicine;聲 こゑ *koyé*, sound;親 おや *oya-oya*, both parents.役 やく *yákū-yákū*, every office.世 よ *yo-yo*, every age.年 とし *tosi-tosi*, each year.日 ひ *ji-bi*, every day.時 とき *toki-doki*, always, each hour.色 いろ *iro-iro*, every color or sort.品 しん *sina-zina*, every quality, every
article.種 しゅ *shyu-zshyu*, every sort.様 さま *sama-zama no*, of every form.度 たび *tabi-tabi*, each turn.藥 くすり *kūsuri-gūsuri*, every medicine.聲 こゑ *koyé-goyé*, each sound.

II. The plural is expressed by nouns used adjectively, which signify a quantity, generality.

1. In composition with Japanese words (*yomi*) are used:

多 おほく *ohókū no*, *oókūno*, many. *Oókū no fitó*, many people. *Oókū no kane*, much money, in opposition to *súkóshi no kane*, little money.

大 たい 勢 せい *tai-sei no*, in great power, in multitude. *Tai-sei no fitó*, people in multitude.

大 たい 壯 さう *tai-sau no*, *tai-soo no*, exceedingly.

澤 たく 山 さん。沢 たく 山 さん, *tákū-sán no*, abundant.

色 いろ *iro-iro no*, of every color or sort, of all sorts. *Iro-iro no fána*, all sorts of flowers. *Iro-iro no yákū nin*, functionaries of every rank.

品 しん *sina-zina no*, of every quality.

様 さま *sama-zama no*, of all sorts. *Sama-zama no wake*, all the different judgements. *Sama-zama no mono*, things of all sorts.

數 かず *kázū-kázū no*, numerous.

種 しゅ *shyu-zshyu no*, *shu-zhu no*, of every sort. *Shyu-zshyu no fitó*, people of every sort.

一^ッ切^{サノ}, *is-sai no*, all. 一^ッ切^{サノ}眾^シ生^シ, *is-sai no šū-zōgyō*, all living beings.

Moro-moro no, all [from 双^モ, *moro*, both]. *Moro-moro no fūto*, all people; *moro-moro no mono*, all things; *moro-moro no tsutsi-rui*, all sorts of earth. *Taka moro-moro no tori wo kásumū*, the falcon plunders all birds.

2. In composition with Chinese words (*koyé*) are used:

數^ス, *su*, number, many.

數 ^ス 代 ^ダ , <i>su-dai</i> , many generations.	數 ^ス 万 ^{マン} , <i>su-man</i> , many tens of thousands.
| 年 ^{ネン} , <i>su-nen</i> , many years.	
| 月 ^{ゲツ} , <i>su-get</i> , many months.	| 千 ^{セン} , <i>su-sen</i> , many thousands.
| 日 ^{ジツ} , <i>su-zit</i> , many days.	| 百 ^{ヒャク} 人 ^{ニン} , <i>su-byákū nin</i> , many hundreds of men.
| 人 ^{ジン} , <i>su-zin</i> , many people.	

諸^{シヨ}, *siyo*, every, all.

諸 ^{シヨ} 國 ^{コク} , <i>siyo-kókū</i> , the countries.	諸 ^{シヨ} 役 ^{ヤク} , <i>siyo-yákū</i> , the functions.
| 方 ^フ , <i>siyo-fū</i> , the regions.	| 說 ^{セツ} , <i>siyo-sétsū</i> , the arguments.
| 物 ^{ブツ} , <i>siyo-buts</i> , the things.	| 藝 ^{ゲイ} , <i>siyo-kei</i> , the arts.
| 人 ^{ニン} , <i>siyo-nin</i> , mankind, the people.	| 職 ^{シヨク} , <i>siyo-siyókū</i> , every trade.
| 士 ^シ , <i>siyo-si</i> , the warriors.	| 宗 ^{シウ} , <i>siyo-siu</i> , the sects.

III. The plural of a noun is also expressed by one or another suffix, which signifies a quantity or generality, and either must be considered as coördinate, as e. g. *Co* in *I and Company* for *we*, or with the preceding word forming a collective word, as e. g. *man-kind* for *men*. These suffixes are **ra**, **domo**, **gara**, **bara**, **nami**, **tatsi**, **siu**, **gata**, **nado**.

1. **Ra** (等^ラ) signifies a class of persons or things without any distinctive, e. g. *Yátsükáre*, subject or vassal; *Yátsükárerá* (臣等), subject and class, all that belongs to the category of subjects, the subjects (or vassals).

Otóko, man; *Otókorá* (男等), man and class, all that belongs to the category of man, men.

Fūyák-siyou rá (百姓等^ラ), or *Nou-min rá* (農民等^ラ), country-people.

Ware, the I; *Ware-rá* (吾等), I and class, we. *Nandsi*, thou; *Nandsirá* (汝等), you.

Koré, something that is here, this; *Korérá* (是等), this and class, such. *Korerá no nozomi*, such a desire, a desire of that nature ¹⁾. *Koto*, matter; *Korerá no koto*, such a matter. *Sono mono*, such a one; *Sono monorá* (其者等), such a one and Co., such persons ²⁾.

Míji (pronounce *mingi*), on the right, in a writing referring to what precedes. *Migirá*, all that precedes, the aforesaid. 右^ミ等^ラ 諸^シ入^ニ費^ビ, *migirá no syo nin-ji*, the expenses of all the aforesaid ³⁾.

Atsi kotsi, there and here; *Atsira kotsira*, all that is included in there and here.

Kova Wani no kimi, *Kamo no kimi rá ga oja nari*, this is the father of the princes (princely houses) of *Wani* and *Kamo*.

Remark. If we are at liberty to consider *ra* as a coördinate word, and then again as a suffix that forms collective words, logic will require the first, seeing that such an expression as *I and Company* really answers to *we*, which is not the case with the expression *my company*, by which „I” may be excluded.

2. **Tomo, domo**, mate, fellow, companion, particularly in the spoken language, for persons and things.

Watáksi no tomo, my mate or friend; *Watákusi domo* (我共), I and mate, we; *Watáksi domo no hon.* our book. *Ko*, child; *Ko-domo*, a mate who is a child, (my or his) child; *Ko-domo ra* or *Ko-domo domo*, (my or his) child and mate, (my or his) children. *Ke-rai*, attendant; *Ke-rai domo*, attendants, the suite of a prince. *Sono monodomo* (其^ノ者^モトモ), such persons ⁴⁾. *Ware*, I; *Ware domo*, we. *Mi*, I myself; *Mi domo*, we ourselves; *Mi domo ga kimi*, the prince of us ourselves, our own prince. *Ohóknno taka domo*, falcons in multitude. *Yebisu domo wo tairakéšmū*, he has the savages subjected. *Taka no na tomo wo sirúsū*, to give up the different names of the falcon. *Neko*, the cat; *Neko domo*, the cats. *Mūmá*, horse; *Mūmá domo*, horses.

3. **Gara**, series, row; division of objects distributed in classes.

Fitó, man; *Fító-gara* (人品。人柄), series of men. *Fító-gara no yūn ni*, after the manner of men. *Fí-gara* (日次), series of days. *Koto*, matter; *Koto-*

¹⁾ The Treaty between the Netherlands and Japan, concluded at Yedo, 18th August, 1858. Art. II, al. 12.

²⁾ Ibid. Art. VI, al. 9.

³⁾ Ibid. VIII, 2.

⁴⁾ Ibid. VI, 10.

gara, series of matters. *Tomo* (友。朋), fellow, mate; *Tomo-gara* (倫。輩。曹。儔), a row of companions, a series or class (of men or brutes). *Wa ga-tomo-gara* (吾輩), the class of the I, we. *Nandsi ga tomo-gara* (爾曹), the class of you, you. *Nézumi no tomo-gara* (鼠之儔)¹⁾, the mouse-kind.

4. **Bara**, group.

Taka-bara (竹林), bamboo-wood. *Mátsü-bara* (松林), fir-tree-wood, a group of fir-trees. *Nandsi-bara* (汝曹), your group, you. *Tono-bara* (黨曹), they there without.

5. **Nami** (次), series.

Fi-nami, series of days. *Tsüki-nami*, series of months. *Se-ken-nami*, the common people. *Fütó-nami*, the people. *Wa-nami* (吾儕), my series, we.

6. **Tatsi** (等^{タチ})²⁾, row of persons who are, or may be, in an upright posture for, or at a given time, host.

Yákü-nin, functionary; *Yákü-nin-tatsi* (役人等), row of functionaries, functionaries. *Kami*, god; *Kami-tatsi* (神等), series of gods, gods. *Kono mi-fasira-no Kami va mina Wataravi-agata ni masu Kami-tatsi nari*, these three gods are a series of gods residing in the district of *Wataravi*. — *Kono fütá fasira no kami va minasokó-ni narimaséru Kami-tatsi nari*, both the gods are gods sprung from the bed of the river. *Tomo*, fellow, friend; *Wátákusino tomo-tatsi*, my friends.

7. **Süu**, *süyu* (眾^{シユ}), *šu*, also *su*, in the written language 眾^シ中^ヂ, *süu-dsyu*, company, circle of persons. *Samürdi süu*, band of warriors, warriors. *Onágo-süu*, circle of women.

Remark. Both expressions, *samürdi-süu* and *onágo-süu*, already given by COLLADO as forms of the plural, are acknowledged by natives of *Yedo*, in answer to our personal inquiry, to be good Japanese, in colloquial style. Thus, when in the *Japanese Grammar* of 1861 (page 19, line 6 from the bottom) it is remarked: „RODRIGUEZ speaks of a fourth (particle expressing the plural), *soo*, but this appears to be always a prefix. It has reference to number, but is not indicative, as alleged, of *rank*, while the other three (タチ。ドモ。シ) undoubtedly are,” it appears that there the difference between 數^ス *su*, number,

¹⁾ Jap. Encycl. 39, 6, v.

²⁾ Instead of 等 occurs 達, but only as the phonetic representative of *tatsi*.

multitude (see page 56), and the 衆^シ *shū*, *su*, used elliptically is not taken notice of.

8. **Gata**, pronounced *ngata* = *no gata*, side of.

Mi-kata, the side or party of the Mikado. *Teki no kata*, the hostile party. To indicate the plural *gata* is used for high persons, and characterizes deep respect towards them.

Dai-miyau, = great name, nobleman; *Dai-miyau-gata* (大名方), the noblemen, the nobility. — *Tono sáma*, young nobleman; *Tono-sáma-gata*, young noblemen. — *Te-mae-sáma*, you, Sir; *Te-mae-sáma-gata*, you, Sirs or gentlemen. — *Ka-nai-sáma-gata*, the gentlemen house-mates, your family. — *O-ko-gata*, your Highness's children, your children. — *Dzyo tsiu gata* (女^メ中^{ナカ}方^{カタ}), women of quality, young gentlewomen.

9. **Nado**, from *nani-to*, *nando*, whatever, and so forth, and such (等, vulgo 杯^ハ). *Iyé-nado*, house and so forth, house and such like, houses. — *Samüráinado*, warriors.

As the grammatical distinction of singular and plural is wanting, so the compound words, which express a plural, have no separate declension.

Remark. With a view to courtesy, which particularly dominates the spoken language, it is not a matter of indifference which of the words given, is used to indicate the plural. **Ra**, **domo** and **nado** refer directly to a class of persons or things and therefore are used when one speaks of his own or of subordinate people, or in general of objects, to which no importance is attached. — **Gara** and **bara** belong to the written language. — **Tatsi** implies respect, and **gata**, side, the highest respect, which is analogous to our „on the part of the King” for „from the King.”

It is natural, that more or less elevated expressions, which from politeness are used to others, are not applied to oneself and one's own.

IV. The plural is also expressed by adverbs, as **Mina** (皆^{ミナ}), together, **Nokorázu** (不^フ残^{ザン}), without exception, and **Koto-gótoku** (悉^{シツ}), generally, which then precede the predicative verb to which they belong, for instance *Moto sinawa mina yorósii*, the article itself is together good, the articles themselves are all good. — *San-kan nokorázu mitsúki-monowó taté-matsuru*, the three empires offer without exception tribute. — *Tane koto-gótoku me wo idásu nari*, the seed shoots generally, all the seed shoots.

ISOLATING OF THE NOUN.

§ 6. The suffix ヲ *va*, ヲ *wa*, ヲ *ba*.

Every one, who for the first time hears a Japanese harangue, is struck by the continual repetition of the little word *wa*, which pronounced in a sharp and high tone and followed by a pause, breaks off the equable flow of words, in which the speaker then proceeds in his ordinary tone of speaking. On a hearer, not acquainted with the language, this little word with its resting point makes the impression, that the speaker would emphasize what he has just said, and separate it from what follows. And that impression is correct. *Wa*, ヲ, in the book-language ヲ, *va*, is an emphatic suffix or rather an interjection, intended to isolate some word or saying, and to separate it from what immediately follows. We do the same, when we raise the voice at some word and, after a pause, continue speaking in our ordinary tone.

Va or *wa* therefore is used, in the first place, to separate the subject from the predicate, as in *Táma vá yáma yóri ídsü*, = the jewels || mountain out come (jewels come out of mountains); and it may not cause surprise when, on that account, it is understood as characteristic of the subject and consequently as the sign of the nominative, which, strictly considered, it is not. It is indeed joined to the subject, but not exclusively, and serves to isolate every other relation, every dependent case. The isolating power of *va* finds its equivalent in expressions like as to, with regard to, *quant à* Fr., *quoad*, *quod attinet ad*, Lat., *wat ... aangaat*, Dutch.

Whenever *va* isolates the subject, it answers to the Chinese 者 *tshè*, which has the signification of a „definite something” and passes for a relative pronoun. As a euphonic modification of *va*, ヲ *ba* also occurs.

The subject and the predicate are not always separated by *va*, but how necessary this separation sometimes is, appears from the instance quoted, which, with the omission of *va*, may also signify: „jewel-mountain from come,” i. e. be produced from a jewel-mountain.

Examples: 獅^シ子^シハ百^ハ獸^ノ長^チナリ, *Sisiva faku-zu no tsūgu nari*, the lion is the head of all brutes, or: as to the lion, he is the head etc. — 牛^ウハ田^タヲ耕^クス畜^チナリ, *Usi va ta wo takaresu tsiku nari*, as to the ox, he is a field-ploughing domestic animal. — 獺^ヲハ水^{スイ}中^チニス, *Oso va sui-tsin ni sumu*, the otter in (the) water lives.

DECLENSION.

§ 7. The relations of one noun to another word, or its cases, are expressed by suffixes, by particles (*Tenirova* or *Tsüké-zi* ¹⁾), which generally have a definite signification and, arranged according to our declension, are limited to the following.

Nominative (subject) and Vocative . . .	
Accusative (object direct)	ヲ <i>wo</i> .
Genitive.	ガ <i>ga</i> (pronounced <i>nga</i> , <i>ña</i>), among inexact writers often カ <i>ka</i> .
Qualitative Genitive	ノ <i>no</i> , old-Japanese also ナ <i>na</i> and ツ <i>tsu</i> , originally <i>tu</i> .
Dative and Terminative	{ へ <i>ve</i> , he or へ <i>ye</i> , e (wards).
Index of the relation of the Place,	{ = <i>ni</i> (in, at), へ <i>to</i> (to).
Means and Instrument	{ = <i>ni</i> , テ <i>te</i> .
	{ = テ <i>nite</i> , テ <i>de</i> (pron. <i>nde</i>).
Ablative.	ヨリ <i>yorì</i> , カラ <i>kara</i> (out, from).

ヲ *wo* alone, which indicates an object direct is characterized as a real form of declension, the other inflections belong to the suffixes, that have their own signification. If, notwithstanding, they are here already cited and illustrated, it is for the behalf of those, who do not willingly dispense with the ordinary declensions.

Explanation.

I. NOMINATIVE. The primitive form of a noun is at the same time that of the nominative, which thus has no inflectional termination. In imitation of former grammarians the suffix ヲ *ra*, vulgo ヲ *wa*, has been considered as a characteristic of the Nominative, but as this suffix is merely an isolating particle, which may also be of use with other cases, it must not be longer considered as a definite characteristic of the Nominative (subject) ²⁾.

¹⁾ See Introduction, § 14. 3. pag. 42.

²⁾ „Keine altaische Sprache hat einen Nominativ.” H. STEINTHAL, *Charakteristik der hauptsächlichsten Typen des Sprachbaues*, 1860, pag. 186.

VOCATIVE. The poet sometimes stretches or doubles the final sound of a noun, to make known, that his feelings are thereby affected, or that he invokes the object. This emphatic prolongation of sound, by which the vocal-harmony comes into play, belongs properly to the interjections, and has the same effect as our exclamation *O!* or *Oh!*

Hána, flower; *hána a!* (花^ハ 兮^ヲ) o flower! oh the flower!
Tori, bird; *tori i!* (鳥^{トリ} 兮^ヲ) o bird!
Mi, three; *mi i!* (三^ミ 兮^ヲ).
Yo, four; *yó o! yo wo!* (四^ヨ 兮^ヲ).
 ...*u*; ...*uwo!*

As exclamation ㄅ, *wo* occurs, e. g. in *Iro va nirove to tsirínürü wó*, = the colour with the smell corruption o! i. e. oh! that the colour with the smell should vanish!

Besides, ㄅ *yo*, just as in German: *Feuerio! Mordio!* is used as an emphatic suffix and, added to the simple root of a verb, strengthens the Imperative, e. g. *To wo akéyo*, open the door!

II. ACCUSATIVE. If the object direct of a transitive verb is indefinite, it is placed before the verb in the primitive form and the logical accent falls upon the verb, e. g. *Kúsá kari*, = grass to mow. If the object is definite (Accusativus definitus), it is characterized by *wo* and at the same time is accentuated, e. g. *Kúsá wó karu*, = grass (or the grass) to mow. If it is to be brought out with emphasis as the subject of conversation, then the accusative is isolated by the particle *va* besides, and the form *wo va* is obtained, which for enphony passes over into *wobá*, and is frequently pronounced *oba*.

Examples. *Tori-odósi vá tori kedomono wó odósü mono nári*, the scarecrow || is something that frightens birds and beasts. — *Uwó tóru ami rá uwowó toru gu nari*, = the fish catching-net, is a fish catching-net. — *Mídzü kumí*, water scooper. — *Iké no mídsu wó kunü*, to scoop the water from a pond. — *Kefuri no nobóru wó mirü*, to see the mounting of the smoke. — *Kami ní nükümü tokóro o ba mótte simo wó tsükáu koto nákre* ¹⁾, with that which people disapprove of in their chief, they must not charge their inferiors.

In the book on the Middle-Way (中庸 Cap. IX) after what a man may un-

¹⁾ *The Grand Study (Dai Gaku)*, X, 2.

dertake of what is great has been summed up, there follows as antithesis: „but he cannot keep the Middle-Way,” which the Japanese translation very correctly expresses by 中^チ庸^ヨヲバ^レ不^ズ可^ク能^ク也 *Tsiu-you wóbá yókusu békárázu*. It would have the same effect, if it were: „*Tsiu-you wá, koré wo yokūsu békárázu* = but the Middle-Way — that can one not keep.” The form *Tsiu-you wa* cannot, it is plain, pass for an accusative. On the other hand the saying: „*Mūma sárū wo ba nava nite kore wo sibáru*, = the horse and the ape — with a rope (one) binds them fast,” contains an unnecessary repetition of the object, characterized as accusative. If the *wo ba* is preserved, the *koré wo* is superfluous; if the *koré wo* remains, *Mūma sáru va* must remain, the *wo* being superfluous.

The use of *wo* in *Kai-hen wo isi-kabe wo tsūku*, to build a wall on (or along) the seaside, deserves notice. — *Nippon no bu-naí wo riyo-ku-suru men-giyo* (日本ノ部内シ旅行スル免許), permission to travel through the inland of Japan ¹⁾. The Accusative employed here indicates a continuous motion which we express by means of *along*, *through*.

III. GENITIVE. 1. カ^カ *ga*, *nga*, *na* (之), in pronunciation sharp toned, characteristic of the genitive relation, sets forth the object as something taken in a definite sense, and has the effect of *of the*. The genitive subordination by means of *ga* is considered disrespectful; thence the speaker applies it only to himself and to persons and things of which, having higher persons in view, he makes no case. One says, indeed, *Wáre gá* or *Wátákusi gá*, = of the I, of me, and *Are gá*, of him; but *ga* is not used with those nouns and pronouns, with which respected persons are addressed or indicated ²⁾.

Examples. *Ko va Misima-agata-nusi gá oya nari*, this is the progenitor of the bailiff of the district of *Misima*. — *Kono kami vá N. N. ra gá oya nari*, this god is the progenitor of the N. N.s.

Fitó mina Sukune gá kau-riki wo zo kan-zi keri, each admired *Sukune's* strength. —

¹⁾ *Netherlands and Japanese Treaty* I. al. 3.

²⁾ This RODRIGUEZ also must have meant, when he, according to the French edition § 7, says: „*ga* s'emploie comme pronom de la troisième personne, pour les inférieurs, et comme pronom de la première, par humilité.” Let the misprint „comme pronom” be altered to „après” or „pour le pronom,” and the agreement with our assertion will be found. A pronoun, *ga*, does not exist. The same mistake is met with in another Japanese Grammar of 1861 p. 18, where we read: „カ^カ *ga*, a sign of the genitive in nouns, is used as a pronoun in the third person for inferiors, and in the first person as a term of humility.”

Kai-mon gá dake, the peak of the sea-port (*Kai-mon* is the name of the entrance to the bay between the provinces of *Oósūmi* and *Sátsūma*).

Sagámi no Miūra gá sáki, the cape of the *Sagámian* *Miūra*, the cape of *Miūra* in the province of *Sagámi*. — *Ame gá sítá* (天下), under the heavens, the sublunary world. — *Fítówo nai gá síroní su*, to estimate others at the value of nothing, to consider others of no value. — *Kárū*, being so, *Kárū gá yūēni*, = for the reason of the being so, on account of the state of affairs. — *Watákusi gá ki-mono*, the dress of me.

力⁶ *Ga*, no index of the subject.

The particle *ga* is also considered as an emphatic definite characteristic of the subject. Now the question arises, if a particle, which, as it most evidently appears from the instances cited, is an emphatic definitive characteristic of the genitive, can also be one of the nominative. The answer is negative. The cases, in which *ga* is considered as an emphatic nominative termination, are capable of a conception, which leaves to this particle its value of a characteristic of the genitive, and besides places in a clear light the reasons, why *ga* has that effect, which is ascribed to it as an emphatic characteristic of the subject. An instance will make this clear. Speaking of an undertaking the question is proposed: „Is there MONEY for it?” and which is answered by: „There is money for it.” Now in the question money is the subject, which after the Japanese arrangement, is placed first and, as a subject first brought into conversation, isolated by *wa* or *wa*. In the answer, on the contrary, the predicate „there is” logically has the greater weight, and the subject „money,” as subordinate attributive definition, precedes the predicate, as genitive, emphatically characterized by *ga*. The answer: „There is money” changes to: „of money the presence (is)” ¹⁾. The question sounds in Japanese: *Kane wa árimásuká?* the answer: *Kane gá árimásū*.

Another instance consisting of the words *jī*, day, and *kuretá*, become dark. To the question: *Fī wá kuretaká?* = the day (as to the day) || has become dark? i. e. has the day approached the end? as answer, follows: *Fī gá kuretá* = the day's having become dark is, i. e. the day has become dark ²⁾.

¹⁾ It must be kept in view that in Japanese no congruency, properly so called, of the predicative definition with the subject exists. See Introduction § 15 A. p. 44.

²⁾ This instance is taken from the Japansch en Hollandsch Woordenboek van den Vorst van *Nakats*, 1810, letter *jī*.

The *Shopping-Dialogues* are rich in instances, which plead for this conception.

E. g. pp. 1 and 2:

The buyer. I have come to buy something = *Watákusi wa kai mononi maitta.*

The seller. What will you buy? = *Nani wo O kái násáru ká?*

The buyer. What is there? = *Náni ga ári-másuka?*

The seller. There are lacquered goods inlaid with mother of pearl = *Awo-gái mono gá ári-másu.*

The buyer. Are there any gold-lacquered goods? = *Máki-ye mono wa ári-másuka?*

The seller. Yes, gold-lacquered goods are at hand = *Hei. Maki-ye mono gá árimásu.* —

Question: *O ko samagata wa ikága de iraserare másuka?*, your children, how do they do? — Answer: *Súno ko ga sugure masénü* ¹⁾, the youngest child is not quite well.

Therefore is said rightly for „it snows” *Yuki ga furu* or *furi-másu*, = of snow come down is, whereas *Yuki wa furu* = with respect to the snow, it is coming down, would be a definition which attributes „come down,” the predicate, to the snow. The same is the case with *Hoká no fúné ga tsuki-masta* ²⁾, there is another ship arrived, properly the arrival of another ship has happened, whereas *Hoká no fúné wa tsúki-másta*, would signify: „another ship — is arrived,” the subject now being „another ship” the idea to which the most importance is attached, and on which the attention is first fixed. The degrading of the subject to attributive genitive of the predicate is a phenomenon, that commonly occurs in the Altaic languages ³⁾, and in the Chinese also, plays an important part. Thus, to choose a classical expression, the saying 回爲人也 *Hoei wéi zhin yè*, means Hoei is (or was) a man, Japanese *Kwai wa fútó tó nari*. Hoei is here the subject brought under consideration, of which something is said. On the contrary the saying of CONFUCIUS: 回之爲人也 ⁴⁾, Japanese *Kwai ga fútó tó nari*, = Hoei's a man to be (is), lays the accent emphatically on the predicate „to be a man,” which we might express by „Hoei was eminently a man.”

¹⁾ Copied, with correction, from R. ALCOCK, *Familiar dialogues*, pp. 1, 2.

²⁾ R. BROWN, *Colloquial Japanese*, p. 1, n^o. 6.

³⁾ STEINTHAL, *Charakteristik* etc., p. 186.

⁴⁾ *Tschung-yung*, Cap. VIII.

Still worthy of a place here, is R. BROWN'S remark in his *Colloquial Japanese*, pp. XXXIII and XXXIV, his opinion concerning the power of both particles being fully confirmed by our illustration.

„*Wa*, which is merely an isolative particle, serving to separate a word or clause, from the words that follow it, is not a sign of the nominative, though it frequently stands between the subject and its predicate. . . *Wa* is a sort of vinculum around a collection of words, and serves to give definiteness to this group of words, distinguishing it from the other elements of the propositions. . . *Nga* or *ga* (ガ) is used for the same purpose, except that it seems to be more emphatically definitive. — The difference between *wa* and *nga* is scarcely translatable, but is to be expressed by the tone of the speaker's voice, rather than by any corresponding word in English. The native ear at once perceives the difference, and a foreigner can acquire the use of these particles only by practice and much familiarity with the Japanese usage. The native teachers say that *wa* is a kind of cordon drawn around a word or words, as if to isolate it or them as a distinct subject of thought, and that *nga* is used when one or more objects are singled out, being present or conceived to be present, spoken of specifically. Thus, if a Japanese should say of a certain lot of teas; Here are the musters, his expression for the musters, would be *Mihon wa*, i. e. the musters, as separated from the original packages, but, if a buyer, taking one of the samples should say he liked it, his expression would be *Kono mihon ga kini irimasu*. The idea would then be, that that particular sample suited him.” — Thus here a difference is made between *Mi-hon wa* (properly *Te-hon wa*) *koko ni arimasu*, samples are here at hand, and *Kono te-hon ga kini irimasu*, these samples please me.

2. **No**, ノ, cognate to *ni*, to be, is used for the attributive subordination of one substantive to another, and gives to the subordinated the character of an adjective. As the use of *ga* is limited by etiquette, no distinction of person is intended by *no*; it is used for high and low.

Examples: *Kousi no i-siyo* (孔子之遺書), a writing left by *Kung tsè*. — *Dai-gákû no mitsi* (大學之道), the way of the Grand Study. — *Ama no gara*, the river of heaven, the milky-way. — *Fosi no fikári*, starlight. — *Tósi nó fázimé*, beginning of a year. — *Fázimé nó tosi*, a beginning year, New year. — *Kabe no jima*, a split in a wall. — *Nisiki no bousi*, cap of colored silk. — *Akagane no derû tokóro*, = of copper the birth place, i. e. the place whence copper comes. — *Wa-tákusi nó kimono*, my garment.

Remark. By way of elision the *o* of *no* is suppressed as in シノ *ondori*, for *óno tori*, male bird; メノ *mendori* ¹⁾, for *menô tori*, female bird.

That *no*, frequently, has still another particle (case) after it is the consequence of an ellipsis, e. g.: 潮^{ウシ}。早^{ハヤ}ノ^シ 日^ヒ 潮^{ウシ}ト。晚^{オシ}ノ^シ 日^ヒ 汐^{ウシ}ト。
Usiro, ásita nowó ásasiro to íri, kurú nowó yúusiro to íru ²⁾, tide, that of the morning is called the morning-tide, that of the evening the evening-tide. — *Kore*

¹⁾ Compare § 4, A. 2. Remark p. 52.

²⁾ Jap. Encycl. 57, 2 verso.

wa amari tsiisa; *mo sūkōsī ookii no wo O mise* ¹⁾, this (case) is too small; let me see a larger one.

3. **Na**, ナ (abbreviation of *nārū*, „being”), old, and in the popular language, still used variation of *no*, in the mouths of the vulgar at *Yedo da* (ダ) also (pronounced *nda*) ²⁾, which, however, is to be considered as a syncope of *de-ārū*.

Simozama na koto (鄙事), baseness, vulgarity, from *simo*, beneath, *sama*, manner, and *koto*, thing. — *Kōva na-bakāri nari*, that is only a name. — *Na-bakāri na mono*, something (*mono*) that exists only in name. — *Kanna gawa*, for *kaneno gawa* (金川), metal-brook, or *kanu no gawa* (神奈河), god's-river. — *Tai-zi dā* (for *Tai-zi de-aru*) *koto wā gozārimasēnū*, there is nothing of consequence.

4. **Tsu**, ツ (津), old-Japanese characteristic of attributive relation, appears still only in old compounds, instead of *no*; sometimes, for the sake of euphony, after *m* or *n* it passes over to **dzu** (ヅ). The oldest records sometimes have, instead of ツ and ゅ, ゑ *su* and ゑ *zu* also.

Examples. *Amatsu kami*, = of heaven khan, heavenly god. — *Amatsu sora*, the expanse of heaven, the firmament. — *Amatsu miko*, the son of heaven (the Emperor). — *Amatsu jitsūki*, the heavenly (imperial) crown. — *Kunitzu kami*, the country god. — *Kunitzu* or *kunizu* (クニズ) ³⁾ *mono*, country objects, country products. — *Iretsu imo*, house-potato ⁴⁾. — *Iratzu kokōro*, = prickle heart, shrewdness. — *Nivatzu dori*, the court-bird, the cock. — *Aki*, 1. glitter, 2. autumn. — *Akitzu musu*, the glittering insect (*Libellula*). — *Akitzu sima*, glittering islands (a name of Japan). — *Sita*, beneath, under. — *Sitatsu mitsi*, an underground way. — *Kibitsu* ⁵⁾ *takefikō*, the hero of *Kibi*.

Instead of 少津子 *otsuko*, bachelor, and 少津女 *otsune*, spinster, occur in old writings *otōko* and *otōme* also.

IV. DATIVE and TERMINATIVE. へ *ve* (he) or 江 *ye*, e properly signifies side or direction, e. g.: *Yama no ve*, the mountainous side, the side of, the direction of (towards) the mountains. — *Yūku vé*, the side, by which one goes

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 3.

²⁾ From oral communication by O. Y. from *Yedo*.

³⁾ In the *Nipponki*, XXII, 20, both forms (クニヅ and クニズ) occur alternately.

⁴⁾ *Caladium esculentum*.

⁵⁾ It must seem strange, that the writer of the Japanese Encyclopedia (78. 8. r.) has thought it necessary to subjoin to this name the note: 津ツ、助語、與ト之ノ同、*tsu ra zijo-go*, *no to onāi*, i. e. *tsu*, an auxiliary word, the same as *no*.

away. — *Ma vé, ma yé*, vulgo *mai* = look-wards, i. e. forwards, before. — *Ato ve* or *ato ye*, = spur-side, backwards, behind.

As suffix *ve* or *ye* answers in all respects to our wards and indicates the direction in which any thing proceeds, e. g. *Yédo-ve* (or *Yédo-he*), *Yédo-wards*, as distinction from *Yédo ni*, in or at *Yédo*, *Yédo ni ôitê*, being in *Yédo*; *Yédo ve no mitsi*, = *Yédo-wards road*, the road to *Yédo*. — *Nippon ve no miyáke*, presents for Japan.

Examples: *Siyok'-motsu wó fító vé ôkúrû*, to send victuals to others. — *Kari va minámi vé sárta*, the geese have gone away towards the south. — *Toróki kuni re yúkû*, to go to distant countries. — *Ten-ki vá simo vé kúdári*, *tsi-ki vá kami ve nobóru*, the mists of the sky sink towards beneath (to the earth), the mists of the earth rise towards above. — *Moto ve modóru*, to return to the source. — *Kara-finé itsu sou (issou) Sagámi no Miürá ga sakive feu-tsiyaku-su*, a Chinese junk ran aground on the cape of *Miürá*, in the province of *Sagámi*.

Instances from the treaty between the Netherlands and Japan. Art. II, § 17. *Kóku dai ve furi-watasu*, to make known into every part of the realm. — II, 18. 軍^ク用^ヨノ諸^シ物^ツハ日^ニ本^ボ役^ヤ所^シノ外^ホカへ賣^ルベカラズ, *Gun-yóu no siyo-butsu wa Nippon-yák'-siyo no fóká ve úrû-békarázu*, munitions of war may not be sold to any other than the Japanese government. — V, 1. *Olandazin ve (or ni) taisi (對^タ) fau wo (法^ハヲ) okásu*, to transgress the law against the Dutch. — VI, 9. コンシユルへ申^マ達^タス, to communicate to the Consul. — V, 1. 各^カ方^ハへ, in every direction, towards every side.

Ni (於。于), with relation to, in general, points out the relation of an indirect object, is, therefore, used for the indication of the place at which, as well as of the direction towards the innermost part, or to the attainment of anything, and answers to our in, at, to, unto, by and by means of, according as the verb, to which it belongs, indicates that the place has been reached, or that the object makes movement towards it.

The relation expressed by **Ni** may be understood as:

a. Dative or Ablative, by which, in general, a collateral relation to the predicate verb is expressed. E. g. *Fító ni tsikáki mitsi*, a road, which with relation to people is near. — *Fító ni toróki mitsi*, a road which with relation to (for) people, is remote. — *Fító ni fanóruru*, separated from people. — *Kávi ko kuvá ni fanarénu*, the silkworm does not remove from the foliage.

b. Local, to the question where or when. E. g. *Kono tokóroni*, at this

place. — *Nusubitó tokóro-dokóro ni okóru*, robbers rise at every place (everywhere). — *Figu jigási ni nobóri, nisi ni íru*, the sun rises in the east, and goes in (down) in the west. — *Yédo ni kiyo-riu-suru yakú-nin*, functionaries residing in *Yédo*. — *Yáma ni iei ki wo kiru*, = to go into the mountains and chop wood. — *Fané ni nóru*, to be load in a ship (to navigate). — *Yáma-gúsá wo náva ni tsuri, kazé ni sarásu*, to hang up mountain-herbs on a rope and dry (them) in the air. — *Kaviko ni yamawo dekiru*, by (among) the silk worms exists sickness. — *Ivu ni todokororu*, to stick fast in speaking. — *Kono tosi ni*, in this year. — *Firu ni*, at noon. — *Yuvu ni*, in the evening. — *Firu-gavo ása ni ake, yirubé ni sibómu*, the „face of noon” ¹⁾ opens in the morning, and closes in the evening.

Ni va, the relation indicated by **ni** isolated by **va**. — *Nan-bu, Tsükárü-ben no tsi-mei ni va fan-mei ohósi*, among (*ni va*) the names of places (地[†] 名[△]) of the country of *Nan-bu* and *Tsükárü* strange names are manifold.

Ni va sometimes elliptically changes in to **nva** (ㄣ ㄩ). — *Aru tóki ni vá or áru tokinvá*, at any time.

c. Modal, to the question how. E. g. *Dai-si ni tatsi-tamaru*, he appears as (in the quality of) hereditary Prince. — *Iká ni*, vulgo *ikán'* (ㄝ ㄣ ㄣ), how, in what manner. — *Iká-sámani*, in what (or which) manner. — *Saka-sana ni*, perversely. — *Koto ni*, particularly. — *Makóto ni*, in truth, indeed. — *Tada ni*, mere, only. — *Ooki ni*, often, very. — *Sámiyaka ni*, suddenly, quickly.

d. Casual and Instrumental, to the question of whom, by which or by what, with which, with what, although here also the original signification, with relation to, is preserved. E. g. *Ya ni ataréta*, struck with an arrow. — *Fitó ni damasaréta*, deceived by people (others). — *Dai-Min no sei va fai-gun ni korite susumi tsiká-dzukázu*, *Tú-Ming's* army, confounded by the defeat, does not approach.

e. Dative of the person, to the question to whom. E. g. *Oya ni niru*, with relation to the parents, to be like, to resemble the parents. — *Fitó ni tai su*, to stand opposite others. — *Fító-ni mono wo atavuru* (pron. *atguru*), to concede or give anything to others.

f. Dative of the thing, to the question to what or to which, for which the suffix *to* is used also. E. g. *Kúvá no mǐ wo tane ní* (or *tane tó*) *tórü*, to take mulberries for seed. — *Máyu wo wáta ní tóru*, to use cocoons for wadding. —

¹⁾ The flower of *Pharbitis Nil* CHOIS, or *Ipomoea Nil* LINN.

Yumi ni tsükuru ki, wood worked into bows. — *Wära vä musiro ni oru bësi, náva ni návu bësi, fäki-mono ni tsükürü bësi*, with regard to straw (*wara vä*), it can be woven into mats, it can be twisted into rope, it can be worked up into shoes. — *Nami kaze mo taroyaka ni nari*, wind and waves become smoother. — *Asi wo kirite sïyökü-môtsü ni atavu besi*, he will cut off his feet and give (them) for food.

g. Terminative, the direction whither, signifying to which (to what, to whom), provided the movement directed towards an object extends to within its limits or reach, distinguished from *~ ve* which properly answers rather to our wards. E. g. *Kazé vä nisi-katu ni kaváru*, = the wind changes to (veers towards) the west side. — *Yo wo ji ni tsügü*, to continue the night to the day. — *Kazé yámite (yande) fûné kisi ni tsükü*, the wind lulls and the ship comes to the shore. — *Fäküsai yori Nippon ni watáru*, he passes from *Fakusai* to Japan. — *Isi ni náru*, to turn to stone.

V. **To**, ト, to, Dutch tot, ter, German zu, a particle that denotes the inherency of a substantive in a predicate verb, which expresses a becoming or a making to, in general a working, which has an object for its apposition. Of such sort are the verbs *nari*, to become; *nasi*, to make; *iru*, to be called, to name; *nádsukuru*, to name; *naïyu*, to seem; *kaku*, to write, etc. — E. g. *Midsükára toravare-fitó to nari*, he becomes, of his own accord (to) a prisoner. — *Máju wo ma-wata to nasu*, people make (work up) cocoons to silk wadding. — *N. va tori to késite tobiyuku*, N. changes himself to a bird and flies away. — *Fító to iru*, to be called man; *Fító to iru va* (by syncope *Fító tó vá*), that which is called man, the so called man.

Nite, ニテ, in the spoken language, passing into **nde**, for which テⁿ (de) is written, characterises alike the Local and the Instrumental and is used, especially, when the predicate-verb does not follow it immediately, but is separated from it by the interposition of the subject or of the object direct. E. g. *Kono sedo nite sivo fayási*, = in this strait the tide is rapid. — *Kari-bási nite karu wo watáru*, to cross the river by means of a temporary bridge. — *Kome wo kárusü nite kómakáni kudáku*, to stamp rice fine in a mortar. — *Küvä nite káviko wo yásínávu*, to rear silk-worms with leaves. — *Tamago nite siyau-zuru mono*, beings proceeding from eggs. — *Fäku-sai-kókü nite ra taka wo Kutsin tó ien*, in the country of *Fäku-sai*, the hawk is called *Kutsin*. — *Aru kuni nite ra kariko-ami wo tsukaru nari*, in a certain country the silk-worm net is used. — *Morogosi nite ra*, in China. — 中^チ國^コニテハ, in the Middleland. — *Kuni-guni nite*, in each

country. — *Tē nite*, with hands; *Tē nite no si-kata*, gestures with hands. — *Fasī nite fasāmu*, to take hold of with eating-sticks.

De, **デ**, contraction of *nī + te* and pronounced as *nite*, characterizes alike the relation of *a.* the Local and *b.* the Instrumental is, however only peculiar to the easy, spoken and written styles. Examples:

a. *Miyako de*, at *Miyako*. — *Tsūki no mōto de aru*, to meet under the moon (here below). — *Yūmei no ūtsi de aru*, to meet with in a dream. — *Māmā no ūyē de katamukeru*, to sit awry on horseback. — *Fāna no sitā de mayōru*, wander among flowers. — *Tsūbome ga yanagi no fotori de mayōru*, the swallow roams around willows. — *Kūsū naka de naku musī*, insects chirping in the grass. — *Musi ga kabe de nākū*, insects chirp on the wall. — *Ikka de dēkimāsū kā*, in how many days can it happen, is it possible?

b. *Fude de kaku*, to write with the pencil. — *Isi de gan wo tsukūrū*, to build a temple of (with) stone. — *Sono ne de wa kage masēnū* ¹⁾, with (for) that price I do not sell it. — *Tsi wo tsi de arāru*, to wash off blood with (or in) blood. — *Yōtsū māmā de jikaserū kurūma*, a waggon drawn with four horses.

Remark 1. The book language generally expresses the Instrumental by ... *wo motte* (以^{モツ}。シ), and uses for „to wash off blood with blood,” the expression 以^{モツ}血^チ洗^ス血^チ *Tsi wo motte tsi wo arawu*, = holding or using blood (with blood) to wash off blood.

Remark 2. For the explanation of expressions belonging to the book-language, in schools and school-books the spoken-language is used, and this, whenever *nī* occurs in the book-language as a characteristic of the Local or of the Instrumental, generally substitutes *de* for it.

VI. ABLATIVE. **Yori**, **ヨリ** and **kara**, **カラ** (由。自。從), out of, from, indicate a movement in a direction from a place, in opposition to **へ**, *re*, towards, or **マデ**, *made*, to, till. If the point of departure is a period of time, or an action, then *yori* and *kara* answer to our from...to, from, since; after, afterwards.

Examples. *Firato yori Nagasaki made san zū fātsi ri āri*, from *Firato* to *Nagasaki* it is 38 *ri* (Japanese miles). — *Inisivē yori* (自^{ヨリ}昔^イへ), from old times. — *Fāzimē yori*, from the beginning. — *Ima yori* (自^{ヨリ}今^イへ), from now.

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 3.

國_ニ = 到_ッ 着_キ ノ 日_ヒ ヨリ, *Kuni ni tō-tsiyaku no hi yori*, from the day of the arrival in the country ¹⁾. — *Fusi-yama wa Wun-zen ga take yori takási*, = *Fusi-mountain is out of the peak of the warm springs high*, i. e. the *Fusi-mountain* is higher than the peak of the *Wunzen*. — *Kore wa sore-yori takaku árimásu* ²⁾, = this from that out high is, i. e. this is higher, than that.

Yori, subordinated by means of *no* to another substantive: *Kono misaki wa oki yori no meáte nari*, this cape is a mark (*meáte*) out of sea.

Kara, indicating rather the direction, from which any thing comes ³⁾, as the German *her*, occurs in the written language seldom, and only in old compounds, as in *Oki kara*, out of sea, and is, rather, peculiar to the spoken language. *Kore kara* (由是), thence, also therefore, for that reason (= *kore ni yotte*). — *Sore kara*, so with. — 見_テ 本_ホ 切_レ ガ 有_ア マスカラ 是_コ シ 由_ヨ 覽_ン ナサレ, *Tehon-gire ga árimásu kara*, *kore wo Goran-nasare* ⁴⁾, since (*kara*) there are patterns at hand (*árimásu*), please see this. — *Age-masu kara uke-tori-gaki wo kudasare* ⁵⁾, after (*kara*) delivery (*agemasu*) please, give a receipt. — *Kon-nitsi wa yohodo ósói kara* ⁶⁾, *mýgu-nítsi kahéri masšyoo*, as (*kara*) to day it is too late (*yohodo-ósói*), I will come back to morrow.

Remark. *Yori*, verb continuative, derived from *yi* (井). to shoot, from which, among others *ya*, arrow, and *yumi*, bow, derive. (*Kara* seems to belong to the root, *ki*, come). Preceded by a local *ni*, *yori* means to have its point of departure in; *Kore-ni yoreri*, from that flows forth. — *Kore ni yórité* or *yótte*, in consequence of, therefore.

¹⁾ *The Treaty between the Netherlands and Japan*, I, § 5.

²⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 35.

³⁾ 所從來也. *Wa-gun siwori*, under *Kara*.

⁴⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 23.

⁵⁾ *Ibid.* p. 14.

⁶⁾ *Ibid.* p. 41.

CHAPTER II.

PRONOUNS.

§ 8. The Pronouns in Japanese are:

I. Nouns which express a quality.

II. Pronouns demonstrative, which point out something, either a person or thing according to its relation to the speaker.

They are all subject to the ordinary declension, and with the genitive suffix. *no*, are used as pronouns possessive.

The distinction of three grammatical persons (I, Thou, He) has remained foreign to the Japanese language ¹⁾. All the persons, that of the speaker (the I), as well as that to which or of which he speaks (Thou, He), are considered as contents of the proposition and thus, according to our peculiarity of language, in the third person, and etiquette, having in view the meaning of words expressive of quality, has to determine, which person, by one or another of these words is intended. Etiquette distinguishes only between the „I,” and the „not-I,” it abases the one, and exalts the other. Thus, it is the meaning, which in this sort of words comes first under notice, before the use, that etiquette makes of it, is indicated.

¹⁾ Therefore, as it will be seen hereafter, the verb has no conjugational suffixes, which tend to the expression of this distinction.

With respect to the use of the qualifying pronouns especially, the written or book language and the conversational differ from each other.

I. Qualifying nouns, which are used as pronouns, are,

A. For the „I“:

Yátsü-kó (臣 ^ニ), pron. Yákkó, = house-boy, valet, servant; belongs to the old written language. — Yátsü-káre (僕 ^ニ), valet, your servant.

Yátsü-bára (奴 ^ニ 儕 ^ニ), the valets, we subjects.

The Chinese 愚 *yu*, Jap. *gu*, unintelligent, in compounds, as:

愚 ^ニ 人 ^ニ *gu-nin*, the unintelligent man, I.

愚 ^ニ 者 ^ニ *gu-ša*, the unintelligent.

愚 ^ニ 草 ^ニ *gu-sau*, the unintelligent herb ¹⁾, the „I“ of the Bonzes.

愚 ^ニ 老 ^ニ *gu-rau*, the unintelligent old man.

愚 ^ニ 心 ^ニ *gu-sin*, my heart.

B. For the person spoken to, THOU:

1. Nandzi (汝 ^ニ), formerly *námūdzi*, originally *na-motsi*, = having a name, name-having, name bearing, renowned, honoured; plural *nandzira*, *nandziga-touo-gara*. It belongs to the written language and to the solemn style. Nobles, and literate persons address one another with *Nandzi*. 爾. 尔. 尔. 你.

Tómi tomoni nándziráw míru, the people look up to you together, or every one looks up to you. — *Nándzi fitóga me wo tsukéte óru*, you have attracted the eyes of the people.

2. Imási (汝 ^ニ), shortened *mási*, = present, leaves it uncertain, whether a person speaks to his betters or inferiors. 座下.

3. Sáma (様 ^ニ 様 ^ニ 扱 ^ニ), vulgo *San*, = the look, appearance, shape, e. g. *Mindónó sáma yósi*, the shape of the harbour is beautiful, the harbour looks well, — was, originally, as a characteristic of modesty, applied by the speaker to himself; since the middle ages, however, conceded to a person beyond the speaker, it is now generally used as an expression of respect and at present answers to our „Sir, Mister.“ It is subjoined to nouns and pronouns.

4. Kimi (君 ^ニ), Sir, Mister; *Kimi-sama* (君 ^ニ 様 ^ニ), vulgo *kimi-san* — honour, lordship. — *N. N. kimi-sama ye*, to Mr. N. N.

5. Te-máyo (手 ^ニ 前 ^ニ), vulgo *Tě-mai*, *Tě-mwe*, = at hand, indicates the per-

¹⁾ Corporal, only to vegetate from the example of the Lotusplant, but to make the spirit free, is the duty of the Buddhist's life; thence the clerical (Bonze) considers himself as an herb.

8. **O-māye, ō-māë** (御^マ前^{マエ}), vulgo **ō-māi**, from the honorary *o* and *ma-ye* or *ma-ve*, = look-wards, that is before, thus something that is present before the speaker, or as by him imagined present and honoured, = Your Honour. The lower classes of functionaries and small people call one another *omae* and *omāe-sāma*, *omāesan*.

Formerly by *O-mae* was meant the place before the prince; thence: *Omaë ve mairu*, to step before the Emperor. *Npr.* II, 4, r.

9. **貴^キ Ki**, noble, honourable, = „you” in genuine Chinese compounds, as:

貴^キ 國^{コク} *ki-kókū*, your country.

貴^キ 府^フ *ki-fu*, your town.

貴^キ 縣^{ケン} *ki-ken*, your district.

貴^キ 郡^{ケン} *ki-gun*, your canton.

貴^キ 所^{ショ} *ki-sūyo, ki-so*, your place,
your Excellency.

貴^キ 宅^{タク} *ki-tákū*, your house.

貴^キ 顔^{ガン} *ki-gan*, your face.

貴^キ 面^{メン} *ki-men*, your countenance.

貴^キ 覽^{ラン} *ki-ran*, your look.

貴^キ 翰^{カン} *ki-kan*, your pencil, your pen.

貴^キ 札^{ザツ} *ki-zat*, your letter.

貴^キ 書^{ショ} *ki sūyo, ki-so*, your writing.

貴^キ 命^{メイ} *ki-mei*, your command.

貴^キ 意^イ *ki-i*, your will.

貴^キ 慮^{リョ} *ki-riyo*, your care.

貴^キ 報^{ホウ} *ki-fū, ki-foo*, your an-
swer.

貴^キ 答^{タフ} *ki-too*, your answer.

貴^キ 公^{コウ} *ki-koo, ki-koo-sama*. the no-
ble Lord, your Lordship.

貴^キ 殿^{テン} *ki-den*, your Excellency. *Ki-
den sama*.

貴^キ 邊^{ヘン} *ki-fen, ki-hen*. your side. your
Excellency. *Ki-fen-sama*.

貴^キ 方^{ハウ} *ki-fau, ki-hoo*, your side. *Ki-
foo sama*.

貴^キ 様^{サマ} *ki-sama*, your Honour.

10. **尊^{ソン} Son**, worshipful, reverend, = „your” in Chinese compounds, as:

尊^{ソン} 君^{クン} *son-kun*, the worshipful gen-
tleman, Sir.

尊^{ソン} 公^{コウ} *son-kou*, the worshipful gen-
tleman, your father.

尊^{ソン} 父^フ *son-fu*, the worshipful father,
your father.

尊^{ソン} 母^ボ *son-bo*, your mother.

尊^{ソン} 客^{カク} *son-kák*, the worshipful guest,
my guest.

尊^{ソン} 草^{サウ} *son-sau*, the worshipful herb,
you, Bonze.

尊^{ソン} 體^{タイ} *son-tai*, your body, your per-
son.

尊^{ソン} 骸^{ガイ} *son-gai*, your limbs.

尊_ソ容_ヨ *son-yon*, your appearance.
 尊_ソ覽_ラ *son-ran*, your look.
 尊_ソ方_ハ *son-fan*, the worshipful side.
 尊_ソ札_ガ *son-zat*, your letter.
 尊_ソ書_シ *son-siyo*, *son-so*, your writing.
 尊_ソ簡_{カン} *son-kan*, your letter.
 尊_ソ翰_{カン} *son-kan*, your pencil, your pen.

尊_ソ意_イ *son-i*, your will.
 尊_ソ慮_リ *son-riyo*, your care.
 尊_ソ答_タ *son-too*, your answer.
 尊_ソ號_ガ *son-gan*, your title.
 尊_ソ下_カ *son-ka*, that which is below
 the worshipful; the „I” of the modest
 speaker.

In proportion as any thing belongs to the speaker or to a person beyond him, it is frequently mentioned under different denominations, to express modesty on the one side, and respectful politeness on the other. As much is presumed on this abundance of names, and ample use is made of them, we may not entirely overlook them here. They occur in popular books under the title of „Particular names of human relations” (人_{ジン}倫_{リン}之_ノ異_イ名_{ミナ} *Zin-rin no i-miyan*).

One's own father (我_ワ父_フ) is:

家_カ父_フ *Ka-fu*.
 家_カ君_{クン} *Ka-kun*.
 家_カ大_{タイ}人_{ジン} *Ka-tai-zin*.

Another's father (人_{ヒト}之_ノ父_フ) is:

令_{レイ}父_フ *Rei-fu*.
 嚴_{ゲン}君_{クン} *Gen-kun*.
 老_{ラウ}大_{タイ}人_{ジン} *Rau-tai-zin*.
 尊_ソ父_フ *Son-fu*.

One's own mother (我_ワ母_ボ) is:

慈_ジ母_ボ *Zi-bo*.
 家_カ母_ボ *Ka-bo*.
 老_{ラウ}母_ボ *Rau-bo*.

Another's mother (人_{ヒト}之_ノ母_ボ) is:

令_{レイ}尊_ソ *Rei-son*.
 令_{レイ}堂_{ダウ} *Rei-dau*.
 北_{ホク}堂_{ダウ} *Fokü-dau*.

One's own eldest brother

(我_ワ兄_{エイ}) is:

長_{チヤウ}兄_{エイ} *Tsiyan-kei*.
 家_カ兄_{エイ} *Ka-kei*.
 阿_ア兄_{エイ} *A-kei*.

Another's eldest brother

(人_{ヒト}之_ノ兄_{エイ}) is:

令_{レイ}兄_{エイ} *Rei-kei*.
 難_{ナン}兄_{エイ} *Nan-kei*.
 令_{レイ}伯_{ハク} *Rei-fakü*.
 元_{ゲン}芳_フ *Gen-fau*.
 長_{チヤウ}公_{コウ} *Tsiyan-kou*.

One's own youngest brother

(我^ワ弟^{テイ}) is:家^カ弟^{テイ} *Ka-tei.*阿^ア弟^{テイ} *A-tei.*阿^ア叔^{シユク} *A-siyuk.*阿^ア仲^{チュウ} *A-tsin.*舍^{シヤ}弟^{テイ} *Siyu-tei.*

Another's youngest brother

(人^{ヒト}之^ノ弟^{テイ}) is:令^{レイ}弟^{テイ} *Rei-tei.*貴^キ弟^{テイ} *Ki-tei.*難^{ナン}弟^{テイ} *Nan-tei.*令^{レイ}仲^{チュウ} *Rei-tsin.*淑^{シユク}弟^{テイ} *Siyuk-tei.*One's own son (我^ワ子^コ) is:小^{セウ}子^シ *Seo-si.*愚^グ子^シ *Gu-si.*痴^チ子^シ *Tsi-si.*Another's son (人^{ヒト}之^ノ子^コ) is:國^{コク}器^キ *Kok-ki.*令^{レイ}子^シ *Rei-si.*秀^{シウ}子^シ *Sin-si.*蘭^{ラン}玉^{ギョク} *Ran-giyok.*掌^{シヤウ}珠^{シュ} *Siyau siyu.*One's own wife (我^ワ妻^{ツメ}) is:荆^{ケイ}妻^{サイ} *Kei-sai.*賤^{セン}妻^{サイ} *Sen-sai.*內^{ナイ}助^{ヂョ} *Nai-dziyo.*賤^{セン}室^{シツ} *Sen-sits.*Another's wife (人^{ヒト}之^ノ妻^{ツメ}) is:令^{レイ}室^{シツ} *Rei-sits.*內^{ナイ}子^シ *Nai-si.*內^{ナイ}相^{シヤウ} *Nai-siyau.*細^{サイ}君^{クン} *Sai-kun.*One's own concubine (我^ワ妾^{テカ}) is:小^{セウ}妾^{セウ} *Seo-seo.*荆^{ケイ}妾^{セウ} *Kei-seo.*側^{ソク}室^{シツ} *Sokü-sits.*Another's concubine (人^{ヒト}之^ノ妾^{テカ}) is:令^{レイ}可^カ *Rei-ka.*令^{レイ}寵^{チヨウ} *Rei-tsiyon.*盛^{セイ}寵^{チヨウ} *Sci-tsiyon.*

One's own country and town

(我^ワ國^ク鄉^サ) is:山^{サン}縣^{ケン} *San-ken.*賤^{セン}里^リ *Sen-ri.*樊^{ヘイ}里^リ *Fei-ri.*里^リ間^{ケン} *Ri-ken.*寒^{カン}鄉^{キヤウ} *Kan-kiyau.*

Another's country and town

(人^{ヒト}之^ノ國^ク鄉^サ) is:貴^キ國^{コク} *Ki-koku.*仙^{セン}(貴^キ)府^フ, *Sen-fu of Ki-fu.*貴^キ縣^{ケン} *Ki-ken.*貴^キ郡^{グン} *Ki-gun.*錦^{キン}里^リ *Kin-ri.*

One's own dwelling place

(我^ワ居^カ處^{トコロ}) is:蝸^ク舍^{シヤ} *Kūwa-siya.*蝸^ク室^{シツ} *Kūwa-sits.*矮^ワ屋^{オク} *Wai-ōku.*懷^{トク}虛^ロ *Tōkū-ro.*寒^{カン}舍^{シヤ} *Kan-siya.*葡^ホ室^{シツ} *Fou-sits.*

Another's dwelling place

(人^{ヒト}之^ノ居^カ處^{トコロ}) is:高^{カウ}祐^{イウ} *Kau-in.*甲^カ第^{テイ} *Kau-tei.*華^ク第^{テイ} *Kwa-tei.*蘭^{ラン}房^{バウ} *Ran-bau.*佳^カ室^{シツ} *Ka-sits.*One's own letter (我^ワ狀^{シヤウ}) is:寸^{スン}毫^{カウ} *Sun-kau.*手^{シュ}讀^{トク} *Siu-toku.*柔^{ジウ}尺^{セキ} *Ziu-séki.*尺^{セキ}楮^{チヨ} *Seki-tsiyo.*愚^グ翰^{カン} *Gu-kan.*Another's letter (人^{ヒト}之^ノ狀^{シヤウ}) is:朶^ダ雲^{ウン} *Da-un.*藻^{サウ}翰^{カン} *Sau-kan.*芳^{ハウ}札^{ザツ} *Fau-zat.*郇^{シユン}雲^{ウン} *Syun-un.*華^ク翰^{カン} *Kwá-kan.*

II. Pronouns proper, which point out objects with distinction of the place they occupy in space. They are formed from adverbs of place. They are:

1. **Wa** (ワ), pointing to the centre of space, therefore to the person speaking, to his „I.”

2. **A** (ア), anywhere, elsewhere, indicates a place not sufficiently known beyond the speaker.

3. **Ka** (カ), there, indicates a definite, more distant place.

4. **Ko** (コ), here, indicates a definite place in the neighborhood.

5. **Yo** (ヨ), yonder, indicates a place, which is beyond a place already defined, and serves to suggest the idea of other, Dutch *ander*, German *der andere*, *äussere*.

6. **So** (ソ), so, indicates a place already mentioned or imagined as mentioned, and serves to form the reflective pronoun.

7. The interrogative elements **Ta** (タ) or **To** (ト), vulgo **Da** (ダ) or **Do** (ド), and **Itsu** (イツ) or **Idzu** (イズ), answering to *wh* in „who? which? what? where?” and to the Latin *qu* in „quis? quid?” — **タ** and **ト** is the written form occurring in old books, that now, in accordance with the pronunciation of the people,

is more generally superseded by 又² and ト¹). The first form may perhaps be attributed to the inaccuracy of writers and engravers.

a. To the immediate compounds with the root **Wa** (own, proper) belong:

Wa-nusi (吾² 主^ス), proper master, the master, the master of the work-people.

Wa-dono (吾² 殿^ド), my or our master.

Wa-nami (吾² 儕^ナ), the proper row, we.

Watakūsi (我 私), the „I,” plural *Watakūsi-dōmo*, we, among people of fashion, and in the familiar language the ordinary pronoun for the first person. It is commonly abbreviated to *Watāksi* or *Watāks*, and *Watakūsi wa* to *Watāksa*, whereas the porter at Yédo says *Wātski*, *Wāsi* or *Wāsi*, and the servant-girl *Watāsi*, *Watāi*. Whoever does not wish to put himself on a footing with the last mentioned should, thus, use *Watakūsi*.

About the meaning of *tākūsi*, the second element of this compound, the Japanese etymologists keep silence; likewise, our question directly proposed on that subject always remained unanswered. Referred to our private judgement, we now recognize this word as the *tāki* (欲, vulgo 度), greedy, desirous, in use in the popular language, adv. *tākū*, whence the verb *tākūsi* to desire, to be greedy, is derived. Thus *Wa-tākūsi* means self-love, egotism, and is tantamount to the ordinary Chinese compound 私^シ私^ス慾, self-love, egotism.

b. The remaining adverbs of place enter into immediate composition with words as 1) **Ko** (處^コ 所^コ), place, region, 2) **Tsi** (子), plural *tsira* (子^ラ), way, tract, in the popular language also **Tsutsi** (ツ子), province, etc. These compounds indicate a place or places, and are, as nouns, declinable.

1) Compounds with **Ko** (處^コ 所^コ):

Doko (何^ド 處^コ), what place? — *Dokono tsurugizo*, whence this sword? — *Doko ni* or *Doko de*, at which place? at what place? — *Doko yé* or *Doko yé*, towards which place? whither? — *Doko ye yūkū ka*, where is it going to? whither is it going?

Koko (此^コ 處^コ 此^コ 所^コ 爰^コ 茲^コ), this place, here. — *Koko ni* or *Koko de wakāru*, herein lies the difference. — *Koko ni ôté*, herein.

Sōkō (彼^ソ 處^コ 其^ソ 所^コ), pron. *sō*, such a place, the place of which is

¹) *Wa-gun siwori*, under *Tare*.

spoken, or the place of something, pointed out, serving formerly to indicate the person spoken to; plural *sokora* (其^ソ所^コ等^ヲ). — *Sôko-môto*, for *âsokô-moto* = the seat there, serves as pronoun for the person spoken to: Thou, You. — *Sôko-môto nani wo kûrâsû zo?* in the spoken language: *Sôko-môto ikûga O kârâsi nasâru*, how do you do? literally: how do you let (the time) go round, how do you wind round? — *Asoko*, pron. *âskô* = of some where the quarter, any where. — *Kâsokô*, vulgo *kâsikô* (彼^カ處^ト), = the place of there, that or yon place. — *Doko kâsikô*, which quarter? — *Koko kâsiko ni*, at this and yon place, here and there yonder. — *Kono yama yori kasiko no yama re ûtsuru*, to remove from this mountain to yonder mountain.

Yoko, because it means „cross” is superseded by *Yoso* (外^ヨ遠^ト), another place, elsewhere. — *Yoso ye ûtsuru*, to remove to elsewhere. — *Yoso ye ugokânu*, not to remove to elsewhere, i. e. to stay firm at (or in) one's place.

Idzûku (何^{ナニ}處^ト), old-Japanese *Idzûko*, which place? Some consider *ku* as an abbreviation of *kuni*, country, and consequently write 何^{ナニ}國^{クニ}, which country? — *O kuni wâ idzûku de gozârimâsû*, your country — which country is it? what is your country? — *Idzûku no jitô zo*, from what country is the man? — *Idzûku yé*, whither? — *Idzûku ye mô*, whithersoever, — to every-where. — *Idzûku yôri kita zo*, whence has he come? — *Idzûku yori mô*, whencesoever, from every place whatever. — *Idzûku ni âru zo*, where is he? *Iyê ni âru*, he is at home. — *Idzûku ni kâ*, or *Idzûkunkâ*, where? whither? ¹⁾. — 牛^{ウシ}何^{ナニ}處^ト之^ノ (牛^{ウシ}何^{ナニ}處^ト之^ノ ²⁾), *Ushi idzûkunkâ yûkû*, whither is the ox going?

Idzûkunzô, イヅクニゾ, originally *Idzûku ni zo*, イヅクニゾ, — old-Japanese *Idzu ko ni zo*, イヅコニゾ, from the elements, of which it is composed, has the meaning of „at what place? where?”, answers nevertheless to our „on what ground? why?” also, and with this meaning is ranked with *Nan to site* and *Dousite* ³⁾. The force of *Idzûkun zô* appears most plainly in the Japanese translation of the Chinese expression following:

知^{シラセ}彼^カ 知^{シラセ}彼^カ *Kare idzûkun zô kore wo sirân?* ¹⁾ = he there on what ground (why) shall he know this?
 之^ノ惡^{イハレ} 之^ノ惡^{イハレ} *Ushi idzûkun zô kore wo sirân?* ²⁾ = he there on what ground (why) shall he know this?
 之^ノ惡^{イハレ} 之^ノ惡^{イハレ} *Ushi idzûkun zô kore wo sirân?* ³⁾ = he there on what ground (why) shall he know this?

The speaker's object here is, not to draw out an answer, but

¹⁾ See p. 68, line 8 from the bottom.

²⁾ MENCIUS (LEGGE, *Chinese Classics*, Vol. II, p. 15).

³⁾ See p. 85.

⁴⁾ „ „ Vol. I. Book I. Pt. I. Ch. VII. § 7).

he will have it understood that he not only doubts the assertion, but even is convinced of the contrary: „one does not know it.”

If the question proposed by *Idzükunzô* is affirmative, as in the instance quoted, the speaker has the negative contrary in view, if however it is negative, then the positive, as in the phrase:

ズ^レ未^{イマ}高^{カク} *Kau-mÿgau idzükun zo imóda firokarázu?* Why should his fame not be spread everywhere?

廣^{ミヤシ}名^ナ 胡^コ *The affirmative question 庸^{ヨウ}詎^ナ可^カ乎^ハ, Idzükunzô kanarân? = why shall that be possible? implies that the speaker is convinced, that it is impossible; the negative form: Idzükun zo kanarazóran? = why shall that not be possible?, is a consequence of the conviction, that it must indeed be done.*

The Chinese characters, which are used to represent *Idzükunzo* are 焉^ン。惡^ニ。烏^ウ。胡^コ。奚^シ。曷^カ。豈^キ。庸^{ヨウ}。庸^{ヨウ}詎^ナ。 Of the Japanese word only the termination *nzo* is mostly found added. These characters have the force indicated only, when they occupy a place before the verb of the predicate; at the end of a sentence, where some occur likewise, they imply a direct question.

2) Compounds with Tsi (道^チ。地^チ), way, place.

Dotsi, which place? where? — *Dotsira*, which places? — *Dotsi ye*, whither? — *Dotsira ye mó*, whithersoever, to everywhere. — *Dotsira kara mó mukûi-áru*, to meet each other from whatever places it may be (from all sides).

Atsi (外^ア地^チ), *atsira*, elsewhere. — Kotsi (此^コ地^チ), here. — *Atsi kotsi* or *otsi kotsi*, *atsi kotsi to*, plural *atsira kotsira*, elsewhere and here, here and there.

Sotsi (其^ソ方^チ), old-Jap., his place, plural *sotsira*, serves to indicate the person, of whom it is spoken. — *Sotsira kotsira*, those (the persons) there, and those here.

3) Compounds with Tsutsi.

Do-tsutsi, which place? — *Do-tsutsi ve*, whither? — *Do-tsutsi kara*, whence?

c. The adverbs of place Ta (vulgo Da) and Wa with the genitive possessive termination 力^リ, ga (pron. nga), which is mostly, but improperly, written 力^リ, ka.

Tá ga, vulgo Dá ga, (pron. Da-nga), arisen, perhaps by syncope, from *Tarega* or *Darega*, whose. — *Dá ga iyé ka*, whose house (is this)? — *Dá ga awarémü-koto arau* (or *aroo*), whose compassion will there be? who will have compassion?

Wá ga, pron. *Wa-nga*, own, my or his own, according as the subject of discourse, to which *Waga* refers, is the speaker or another person, — for distinction from *Waka*, young. — *Wága kǎni*, own country, my or his native country. — 我^ワ朝^テ *Waga teô* (or *Waga tsoo*), own realm, my or his, our realm. — *Wága iyé*, also contracted *Wágíyíé*, own house. — *Wátákúsi vá wága iyé yé kayéru*, I return home. — *Kare va wága iyé yé kayéru*, he returns home. — *Wága tsuná*, one's own beloved, my wife. — *Wági-móko*, old-Jap. for *Wága móko* (吾^ワ妹^イ子^コ), my little wife. — *Wága kó* (吾^ワ子^コ), own son. — *Wága-mi* (我^ワ身^ミ), own body, one's own person, my person, — the „I” in a woman's month. — *Wága tátsi*, one's own station, we. — *Wága-tómo*, ours. — *Wága-tómo de nai*, they are not of ours. — *Wága tómó-gára*, one's own relations or clan, we. — *Wága mǎmá*, own authority, arbitrarily. — *Wága mǎmá ni* (or *de*) *wá náí*, it is not arbitrary. — *Wága rikútsū wó tatémū*, not to persist in one's perverse view. — *Wágū tǎmení*, for own behoof; I for my own sake, or he for his own sake. — *Ware soré wo wágū monó ni sítá*, I have made that my own property. — *Kare soré wó wága monó ni sítá*, he has made it his own property, he has appropriated it. — *Waga mave ní*, = „before the I” of the subject of discourse, whether the speaker, or a being beyond him. — *Kaviko souō sēki wó sarázū*, *wíte*, *kūvá mo waga mave ni kitarebá*, *kūvū*, the silkworm does not leave its mat, sitting still it eats, whenever food comes before it. — *Wága de ni*, with one's own hands.

In the old-Japanese, which used *A* for *Wa*, we meet with *Aga* for *Waga* also; thence *Aga-kimi* (我^ア君^{キミ}), abbreviated *Ajimi* and *Agi*, Sir. — *Aga fotóke* (吾^ア佛^{ホトケ}), our Buddha. — *Ago* (吾^ア子^コ), abbreviated for *Aga-ko*, my son. — *Adzūma*, abbreviated for *Aga-tsūma*, my beloved, my husband (吾^ア夫^フ), my wife (吾^ア婦^フ).

d. Pronouns possessive.

By suffixing *no*, the adverbs of place become pronouns possessive; thus we have **Ano**, **Kano**, **Kono**, **Yono**, **Sono**, **Dono**, **Idzuno**.

Anó fító (アノヒト), after the *Yédo* pronunciation: *Anó htó* and *Anó stó*, a man of elsewhere, any one, he. — *Anó onna* (アノシメナ), a woman of elsewhere, she. — *Ano fító tatsi*, *Ano fító gata*, the men there, those people, they. — *Ano káta* (アノカタ), contracted *Anáta* (アナタ), the side of elsewhere, is used as a polite indication of the second person, thou (you); plural *Anátá gáta*. — *Anáta de wá gozári-masénū*; *wátákúsi zi-sin ni útási-másita*, = it is not you; I have done it myself.

Ada (アタ), pron. *Anda*, is used with the signification of other, opposed to *Ware*, I, *Mino*, own and *Midzükára*, self.

Kano kisi (カノキシ), the bank (or shore) yonder, the other world. — *Kano kata*, yon side. — *Kano fütó*, that man.

Kono yo (コノヨ), this world, this life. — *Kono toki*, this time, this hour. — *Kono kata*, this side, — with relation to time, since. — *Kono aida*, between there, meanwhile. — *Kono yūéni*, for this cause, therefore. — 此^コ箇^カ條^テハ, these articles.

Yono (ヨノ), without, on the outside, other, with reference to something that has been already mentioned. — *Yono fütó* (他^コ人^ト), another man, someone else; the same as *Fókáno fütó* (外^ホ人^ト) or *Bétsū zin* (別^ベ人^{ジン}). — *Yono isiyá*, another physician than he, of whom it is question. — *Sobáno isiya*, an additional physician.

Sönó (其^コ), his, its.

Ano fütó sönó tokóro máde yūki-tsūkú, he arrives at his place, he reaches his object. — *Fütó bító sönó sásidsüméwó fádzúsámu*, each one misses not his aim, = no one misses his aim. — *Kun-si sönó kūrái ní so-síté okonóvu*, *sono fókáwó negavázū*, the nobleman acts according to his station, what is beyond that, he does not long for. — *Sönó mi*, his body, himself. — *Ayamatsi wó sono mi ní motomurū bési*, men must seek for the fault in or with themselves. — *Sönó tóki*, or *sönó sětsū* (其^コ時^ト 其^コ節^ツ), its time, such a period, the period of the act that has just been mentioned, then, there. — *Sono fi* (當日), that day. — *Sono mǐgiri* (其^コ砌), that point of time. — *Sono fen* (其^コ邊^ヘ 其^コ辺^ヘ 其^コ辺^ヘ), thereabouts. — *Sono nótsi* (其^コ後^ト 自^コ後^ト), thereafter. — *Sono ūyé* (其^コ上^ヘ 且), or after the *Yédo* pronunciation: *Sönó ūwé*, moreover, besides, also. — *Sono átó*, behind that, thereafter, there upon. — *Sono yūéni*, for that cause, so, therefore. — *Sono ta va* (其^コ他^タハ), else, otherwise. — *Sono toóri ni*, thus.

Sono kata, contracted: *Sónáta*, his (or its) side, yon side, the familiar word for *Nandzi*, your Honour, you; vulgo *Sönó fóo*, *Sönó hoo* (其^コ方^フ), plural *Sono fóo domo*. — *Sönó fóo tori-tsüküró ye*, undertake it! = *Nandzi kǎnǎvé yo!*

Sono moto (其^コ許^コ) = yon domicile or seat, for „you, ye.” — *Koko moto ni* (於^コ = 茲^コ 土^コ), at this place. — *Kami no moto*, seat of gods. — *Fütó ga moto ni*, at the place where someone dwells. — *Tsuku-yumi no mikoto mikoto-nori wo ukéte kūdári-másū*. *Tsni ni ūké-motsi no kami no moto ni* (許^コ _ト) *itári-tamqrū*, the god of the moon-bow receives the divine charge and descends. At length he

comes to the seat of the goddess of the harvest. — *Sono moto motsi-kita*, you have brought. — *Kūni-gūni nite iro-iro no si-fau ari*; *ono-ono sono yōrōsiki ni šita-garu besi*, in every country different ways of acting exist; people ought to keep to the best (*yōrōsiki*) of each (*ono-ono-sono*). — *Ono-ono-sono bun wo u*, = each gets his share. — *Sono i ni makāse* (任^ニ其^ノ意^ニ), leave it to his pleasure.

Tá no or **Tó no**, commonly **Dá no** or **Dó no** (何^ノ), or **Donna** (何^ニ), the interrogative which? what?

Dóno fitó, which (what) man? who? — *Dóno tokóroni*, at which place? where? — *Dóno káta*, or contracted **Dónatá**, which (what) side? where? — is at the same time used as the „who?”, polite interrogative — *Dónatá ye yúkū zo*, whither, or to whom, are you going? — *Dónatá ga anataní koré wo ōsiye-másita ká*, who has taught you this? — *Donna kotozo* (何^ニ事^ヲ), which matter?

Dóno yau (何^ノ様^ニ), pron. *dono yóo*, = which way? how? — *Yóru do no yau na*, how is the night?

In the popular language *Dono yau* or *Dóyau* resolves into **Doo**, which is written 何^ノ or 何^ヲ also 何^ニ. Thence: *Douká* (乎^ノ), pron. *dóoká*, *Douzó* (何^ノ卒^ノ), how? — *Dóu mó*, however. — *Ano koto wá dou náttaká*, = the matter how is (it) become? what has become of the matter? — *Ano fitó no ná wá dou ūká*, = his name how is it called? what is his name? — *Koré wa dou tsüküríté yókaróo ká*, = what concerns this, by what making will it be good, i. e. how will people have to make this?

Dou-si, = how to do? — *Ka-yau-si* (彼^ノ様^ニ), contracted *Kau-si*, *Kóo-si*, so to do. — **Dóu-síté** (何^ノ。何^ノ以^ニ。曷^ニ), = how doing? — *Dou-síté makóto de nái to iwaren zo*, = how could people say, that it is not true? — *Waré dou-síté sómukau zó*, how should I be against it?

Dou-sítá (an abbreviation (apocope) of *Dóusítárū*), = how done? how? is used adjectively. — *Dóusítá koto gá árū*, what sort of matter is there? — *Dóusítá koto zo*, = what sort of matter? what matter?

e. Substantive pronouns.

By suffixing *re* the adverbs of place become substantive pronouns, which refer to something (whether person or thing, remains undetermined) as being present in a place. The termination *re* is indeed an abbreviation of *are*, which, by a mutation of sound, has arisen from *ari*, to be. The pronouns thus formed are declinable as every other noun, with the genitive termination **no**, are used as attributive adjectives, and, in this form, answer to our pronouns possessive

(„mine, thine”), they are, however, used as substantives also, in which case they, as every other noun, are declinable.

These substantive pronouns are:

1) **Wáre**, ワレ, the „I,” understood as that which is in the midst, in the circle (*wa*), by which the person thinking or speaking supposes himself surrounded. The characters used for it are 我。吾。台。儂。印。身。子。言。The Mikado uses for „I” 朕 *Tsin*, for which formerly *Maro* (麻呂) was used, which word however has at present become an appellative of youth. The Tai-kun generally uses for „I” 余 or 予 (not to be confounded with 矛). — *Wáre fitó* (我人。自佗), the I and another. — *Ware warewó wasúrū* (吾忘我, I forget the I, — I forget myself. — *Kono kása wa ware no nari* (此笠ハ我ノナリ), this hat is mine ¹⁾.

Plural: *Wáre-ware*, *Wáre-ware-dzüré*, *Wáre rá* (我等), *Ware domo*, we; *Warérá gá*, ours.

Ware properly belongs to the book-language, nevertheless it is used in the conversational, when the speaker exalts his „I.” Then it answers to our *WE*.

2) **Aré**, アレ (彼。佗), something that is some where, he, she, it, German *er*; plural *Aré-are*, *Aréra*. Being short in matter it, just as he or it, refers to something (person or thing) of which no case is made.

Are ga hon, that one's book, his book. — *Are wa tare?* = something what? i. e. what is it? who there? — *Are wó mi-tái*, I long to see him (or it).

In old-Japanese *Are* occurs, as a variation of *Ware*, I.

Are mé, = that there, also *A-itsu* and *Ko-itsu*, = that there and this here, or *A-itsumé*, *Ko-itsumé* are opprobrious terms.

Oré (意。礼), variation of *Are*, in the mouth of a plebeian of *Yédo* *örá*, refers with derogation to another person, whereas from humility, the speaker, with it, also designates himself.

„*Oré wa fitó wo iyásimete iwu kotoba nari; kou-sei midzukúra mó iwu.*” *Oré* is a word, with which one mentions another disrespectfully; in later times persons have applied it to themselves. — *Farú-kotono basi*.

3) **Karé**, カレ (夫。伊。渠), something that is there, he, she, it, that.

4) **Koré**, コレ, something that is here, this. (此。是。茲。之).

¹⁾ Here a contraction takes place, as the word *Kasa*, which belongs to *Ware no* also, is expressed but once. Comp. pag. 66, line 4 from the bottom.

Koré wa amari tsiisai (是_レヲ余_ヲ小_{ナシ}イ), this is too small ¹⁾. — *Koré wo moto wó siru tó üü*, this is called knowing the foundation. — *Are kore*, that and this, those and these. — *Koré kara inürü*, to go from here. — *Koré ni yótte* (レ依_テ之_ニ), therefore. — *Koréde yói*, so far well, good so!

Plural: *Kore-kore*, *Korera*. — The isolated *Kore vá* is often superseded by *Kova* (此_ヲ者_ハ), and the attributive *Kore no* continually, by *Kono*. — *Kova ao-fatú-küsdá no fazímé no oya nari*, this is the progenitor of the human race. — *Kono nedan wa ikúra si-másüka*, the price (*nedan*) of this (article), how much is it? ²⁾.

5) *Söré*, ソレ (夫_ヲ爾_ハ其_ハ), something that is so, such. Plural *soré-sore*, so or such. — *Sore kore* (其_ヲ斯_ハ), = such ones. — *Söréwa deki-másüka*, can such happen? — *Söréwa náni dé gózárü*, what is such? — *Ware soré wo wága mono ni sitá*, I have made such (or that) my property. — *Söré no toki nó fan yóri tsügínó toki ní itárü made*, = from the half of such an hour till it comes to the next hour (till the next hour). — *Sore ní tsuité* (レ就_テ夫_ニ), concerning that. — *Sore ni wá oyóbi-masénü*, = it comes not to such, such is unnecessary. — *Sore dé mó yói*, also so it is good, also that is good. — *Sore dé wa*, *kai-mášoo*, so (this being so or then) I will buy it. — *Soré kará üyé*, = from there upwards; in relation to time, earlier than, before. — *Sore yóri mayé*, = proceeding from there forwards, i. e. earlier than. . . — *Sore yóri simo*, = proceeding from there downwards, i. e. afterwards, there upon (以後). — *Sore yori kono kata* (爾_ハ來_ハ), = proceeding from there on this side, i. e. since. — *Soré-sore nó mönóvá*, things which are so or so. — *Soré-sore ní sitagátte*, = according to the so or such, in proportion as it is so or so.

If *Soré* happens to be at the beginning of a sentence as attributive definition (such) of a noun immediately following, then it reflects on that, which has previously been said of the same subject already; e. g.: Mention has been made of the historical commencement of Japan; after some general remarks the writer continues: *Söré Nippon-gokü wa Tsiu-kwa no tsi yóri figásini atárü yivéni Nítsü too to íwü*, what concerns SUCH country Japan, as it lies towards the east of the Central Blooming country (China), so it is called the *Nítsü too* or country eastward of the sun. Evidently *sore* is here, not as a mere expletive particle, but is of the same value, as the Latin relative *qui* at the beginning of a

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, pp. 2, 23, 24.

²⁾ *Ibid.* p. 34.

sentence such as: *Quae contumelia non fregit eum sed crevit.* (*C. Nep. Themistocl.* I. 3). In cases such as this, we supply the place of the reflective pronoun with the demonstrative, and the Japanese *Soré Nippon gokū* is equal to: this country Japan.

Sōrégāsī = such a man, formerly used only by princes as a modest indication of their own persons towards higher ¹⁾, latterly it has come into vogue with inferior persons, and is used by them to speak modestly of themselves. It is taken for an amalgamation of *Sore ga nusi*, Mister such a one, and is placed on a footing with the Chinese 某 or 人, = somebody, *quidam* ²⁾.

6) *Yore* is not in use.

7) *Tare*, タレ, old language, now usually *Dare*, ダレ (誰。孰), = who? Lat. *quis*? — *Dore*, ドレ, which of many? By suffixing the interrogative particle ゾ *zo*, is formed *Darézo*, abbreviated *Dazo*, who? — *Dare ga*, whose? (*cujus*?), is often superseded by *Daga*.

Kavá (= *kare vá*) *dáre* (彼カ誰ヅ), who is there? — *Kavá-daré-tóki* (= the who is there?-hour), the hour at which objects are still too faintly lighted, to be recognized well, the morning twilight. — *Kavá-daré-bosi*, the morning-star. — *Sore wa dare no O kote gozarimásuka*, what boy is that? vulgo: *Are wa dare no ko duká* (*duká* = *de áruká*). — *Simíre daréga tamé ni nivóvū*, = the violet for whom does it smell? — *Sókó ni daréga árizó*, who is there? — *Daréga yókū sŕíte órū*, who knows it well? — *Kono fitó wa daré de áři-másüká*, = this man who is he? = vulgo *Ano fitó wa* (or *Arewá*) *daré da ká* (properly: *daré de áru ká*), who is he. — *Nandzi va daré de áři zó*, who' are you? — *Darétó ñnázi koto*, with what identity? — *Darétó fanási súrū*, with whom to talk? — *Darétó tomoní órū zó*, with whom to dwell together? — *Daré ni yorázū*, indifferent who. — *Korera no siyo no naka de doréya nandzi ni yókizó* (此等ノ書ノ中テ何レカ汝 = ヨキシ), which of these books pleases you? — *Doré mo*, whatever, each. — *Dore-fodo* (何レ程ホ), how much? — *Koko yori tsuginó matsi madé doré-hodo arimásū*, = from here to the nearest town how many (miles) is it?

Remark 1. The Japanese does not distinguish the interrogative sentence

¹⁾ In the *Nippon woo dai itsi ran* (39th Mikado, 10th year, 10th month), the Emperor's brother, addressed by him as *Nandzi*, calls himself *Soregasi*, whereas now every one speaks of *Soregási ga káita fumi*, = the letter written by me.

²⁾ *Wa-gun siwori*, under *Soregasi*.

from the affirmative by an altered order of words; the sentence „who is it?” must, therefore, as „it” is the subject of discourse, be expressed by *Soré wa daré de arimásuká*, and not, as in the *Ban-go zen* ¹⁾, II, 39 r. is the case, by *Darega sore de arimásuká*.

Remark 2. The question, if perhaps *Dare*, just as the Latin *quis*, with the signification of *drüfitó*, = somebody, is thus used as an indefinite pronoun, has been answered negatively by a literate Japanese ²⁾.

Idzuré, イツレ (誰。孰。何), mostly イツレ *Itsure*, who?, what?, which? — used rather in poetry and in the epistolary style, is superseded in the ordinary conversational language by *dore*, *doko*, *dotsira* or *dou*.

Idzuré ga masáru (孰^レガ愈^ル), who surpasses? which is the better? — *Imáda idzuréká* ³⁾ *kore* (Fou-rai-san) *náru yá tsümbiráka narázu*, it has not yet been settled, which (of the mountains mentioned) this (the *Pang-lai-schan*) is. — *Idzuré no tokóro ni ká* ³⁾ *te wo kudásan* (何處下手), at which place will one lay hands on? where to begin? = *Doré kara fajimeu zo?* ³⁾. — *Idzüre no fütó*, which man? — *Idzüre no yo*, which age? — *Idzüre no tosi*, which year? — *Idzüre no kata*, which side? which province? — *Idzuré mo*, *Idzuré tomo*, whoever, whichever, = *Doré mo*, *dotsira mo*. — *Idzüre to* (or *Idzüre tomo*) *náku*, = without whatever, i. e. without anything whatever, = *Doré to iwú koto naku*. — *Idzüre mo idzüre mo*, plural, whichever, all. — *Idzuré nari tomo*, whoever it may be. — *Idzuré no utsura ni te mo*, in somewhere a vessel.

III. Determinative and reflective pronouns.

Self, determinative pronoun in I myself, he himself, reflective pronoun in myself, himself, herself, is expressed by

A. 1. *Onóre*, = Individual; *önödzükará*, apart, by oneself.

2. *Mi*, = body, person; *Midzükára*, personal; *Waga-mi*, = own body.

1. *Onóre*, オノレ (己 (vulgo 已) 身。躬), from *onó*, = single, and *ore*, = *are* (being), thus something that is single, single being, individual, — allied in sense to *fütóri* (= *fütó* + *ori*, being alone, single, alone); plur. *onóredomo*, *onóvera*, also *onóra* (已等) in old Japanese.

¹⁾ 蠻語箋.

²⁾ Mr. TSUDA SIN ITSUROO.

³⁾ *Ka*, an interrogative suffix, just as *zo*.

As the subject of a proposition *Onóre* answers to he, German *er*, *einer*, and, just as these words, indicates a person, without any compliment. Therefore, when the speaker applies it to himself it betrays modesty, whereas applied as a demonstrative pronoun to any one beyond the speaker it shows a want of respect and, just as the variation *Odóre* (オドレ), is understood as a epithet expressive of contempt. The Princes of the Empire call themselves, *ónóre*, to the Emperor, and make this word equal to the Chinese expression 寡人 *kwà-žin*, Japanese *sükünáki fütó*, i. e. an insignificant man ¹⁾.

Onóre, used attributively (genitively), or objectively, refers to the subject as being itself the object of its action, and answers to: his own, himself. Examples:

先 ^{マツ}	○	人 ^{ヒト}	○
令 ^{シメス}	欲 ^{ホッスル}	亦 ^マ	已 ^{オノレ}
達 ^{タツセ}	= 達 ^{タツセ}	= 敬 ^{ウヤマフ}	= 敬 ^{ウヤマフ}
他 ^タ	已 ^{オノレ}	已 ^{オノレ}	人 ^{ヒト}
人 ^{ジン}	身 ^ミ	親 ^{オヤ}	親 ^{オヤ}
	者 ^バ	者 ^バ	

Onóre fütó no oyá wo uyámavebá, *Fütó mata onóre-gá oyá wo uyámavu*.

Onóre gá mi wo tassentó hóssürebá, *Mádzü ta-zin wo tússe-símé yó*.

If an individual honors the parents of others, Then others honor the parents of the individual.

Will you improve yourself, First improve others.

Any one may now substitute for the word „individual,” in the first saying „I myself, thou thyself (you yourself), or he himself,” and say: „If I honor another’s parents, then the other also honors mine.” In the second saying, however, *onóre*, in consequence of the Imperative there used, may be referred to the second person (thou, you). — *Onóre gá kokóro-sásiwo okonón* (行己之志), to do his own will. — *Onóre wó okonau* (行己), to behave oneself, one’s own conduct. — *Onóre wó sùtete, fütó no taméni su* (舍己爲人), to set oneself aside and to act for the advantage of others, = *Wága koto wo bá sási-óité, fütó no koto ni wá sewayakü*, to give up one’s own business and serve the interests of others. — *Onóre wó tudásü síté, fütó ni mótómézárebá, sunavátsi ürámí nási*, when one rules himself (his individual) and seeks nothing of others, then one experiences no hatred. — *Onóre ni katsü*, self-victory. — *Onóre-yóri* (自^{ヨリ}己^{オノレ}), = from oneself.

¹⁾ オノレ。寡^{フキ}人^{ヒト} 諸^シ侯^コ 自^ジ稱^{ショウ}。

Remark. If we have derived *onóre* from *onó* and attributed to this the signification of one, the word *onó-ono* pleads for this conception, for *ono-ono*, as a repetition of *ono*, has the signification of „one and one,” i. e. each one, answers to the Chinese 各 *kô*, and is equal to *fitó-bito*, = man and man, i. e. each man, everyone. As derivatives from this *ono*, which, singly, is no longer in use, comes under notice: *Onáziki* (同 オナジキ), not individual, i. e. identical.

Onóre is frequently superseded by *Ore* (已 オレ)¹⁾, which some Japanese philologists consider an abbreviation of *onóre*.

2. *Mi* (身 ミ), body, person, understood as the concrete self, whereas the idea of self, when it is taken in opposition to all that does not belong to self, is indicated by *ware* or *onóre*. — *Mi wo tatsuru mono*, = one (*mono*) who makes his body stand, is one who makes the most of his person; *ware wo tatsuru mono*, on the contrary, is one who places his I, his will, his interests on the foreground, and by which is, in general, understood a self-willed person. — *Sono mi wo usinawázu mono*, is one who does not throw himself away, does not lose sight of his personal dignity; on the contrary *Ware ware wo wasurénû*, I do not forget my I, do not lose sight of my own interest. — *Kare onóre wo wasurénû*, he does not forget himself (his individual in opposition to others). — *Onóre wo homeru*, = to praise oneself as an individual; *mi wo homeru*, to praise one's own person.

Examples: *Mi ten-ka no ken-meiwó usinawázû* (身 ミ 不 フ 失 シツ 天 テン 下 カ 之 ノ 顯 ケン 名 ナ), he himself (by his personal conduct) does not lose his brilliant name in the Empire²⁾. — *Kun-si sono mi wó fádzúkásimezû*, the noble man brings no disgrace upon himself. — *Mi wo ôsámürû yuén wo sirebá*, *sunawátsi fitó wó ôsámuru yuén wo sirû*, if one knows the way to rule oneself, then one knows the way to rule others. — *Mi wó n'ná ni makásété nǵé-sárinu*, yielding himself to the horse, he escapes.

Wága-mi wo uru, to sell his own body (himself); said of girls who prostitute themselves for hire. — *Wága-mi wo yásimúru*, to let one's own body rest, to allow oneself rest. — *Wága deni wága-mi wo wáruu súrû mono*, one who deforms himself with his own hand.

¹⁾ See p. 86.

²⁾ *Tschung-yung*, Cap. XVIII, § 2.

Women use *Waga-mi* and *Mi*, plural *midomo*, for I. — *Midomo ga máitta toki*, when we have come — at the time of our coming ¹⁾.

Mi-mi (御^ニ 身^ニ), = Highness' self, in old Japanese the self of illustrious persons, e. g. *Kono futá fasirano kami no...mi-mi wo kákusi-tamaviki*, also both these gods kept their sublime persons (themselves) concealed.

Midzū kārā, ミヅカラ, compounded of *mi* (body), *dzu* (piece, i. e. something that, as a part of a whole, exists apart for itself, so that *mi-dzu*, means a separate something that is body) and *kara* (from), answers to our of itself, from itself. It is expressed by the Chinese characters 自。自然。身自。躬。親。化來。

Remark. As the Japanese etymologists do not satisfactorily explain this word, as they leave the *dzu* unnoticed, we must explain the derivation given here. We acknowledge now, and that for the first time, *dzu*, — to be distinguished from the genitive termination *tsu*, — to be the same suffix, that, added to the radical numbers (*fitó*, *futá*, = one, two), forms of them proportional numerals, (thus: *fitó-dzu*, *futá-dzu*, = single, double, *simpliciter*, *duplus*), and which, by means of repetition, used in the form of *dzu-dzu*, gives to these numbers the character of distributives: *fitó-dzu-dzu*, *futá-dzu-dzu*, = *singuli*, *binii*, one at a time, in couples. Whereas now in *mi-kara* (= from a body) the idea of body is taken quite generally, and only opposed to something else, *midzu-kara*, refers to a separate body, to a separate person (opposed to all other persons).

By means of the same derivative elements (ヅカラ), from *Te* (テ), hand, and *Kokóro* (コゝロ), heart, will, are formed the words *Te-dzū-kara* (手自。手親), = from a separate hand, i. e. with one's own hand, and *Kokóro-dzū kara* (心^ミヅカラ), from a separate heart, i. e. spontaneous (from one's own free movement).

According to its form *Midzūkara* is originally an adverbial definition (= of itself), and as such not susceptible of declension; e. g. *Midzūkārā torāvāre futó tó nári*, he becomes a prisoner of himself, he surrenders himself a prisoner. — *Tédzūkára kūdwo tórū*, to pluck feeding leaves of mulberry trees with one's own hands.

¹⁾ The words given in RODRIGUEZ *Éléments*, pp. 11 and 80 ought, for the correction of typical errors, to be reduced to the forms: *Sui* = *Mi no*, *Waga-mi no*, *Ware-lomo no*

Sibi = *Mi ni*, *ni*, *ni*

Se = *Mi wo*, *wo*, *wo*.

Midzūkara also occurs there with the inflectional terminations *no*, *ni* and *wo*, although in original texts it is always undeclined.

However it is also used (in the quality of subject or of object), for I myself or he himself, and for they themselves.

Midzükara is used as subject, whenever another object is mentioned before the verb of the predicate; e. g.: *Midzükara omórákúra fakári-koto wo yetári*, he has himself, as he thinks, attained what he intended. — *Midzükara* is also characterized as the subject in the proverb:

即 ^{スナハチ} ○ ^{ミテハ} 見 ^{ミテハ} ^{ミテカフ} 自 ^{トモニ} 他 ^ニ 人 ^ノ 之 ^{ウレフ} 患 ^{ウレフ} 愁 ^フ

Tu-nin no ürëi wó míte rá sunavátsi midzükara tomoni urévu bési, If one sees another's grief, then one must oneself be grieved with him.

As object (himself), on the contrary, *Midzükara* is used, whenever it is immediately followed by a transitive verb; e. g. *Mina midzükara akirákani sürü nári* (皆自明也) ¹⁾, all (these sayings) mean: to enlighten oneself. — *Midzükara azámuku* (自欺) ²⁾, to deceive oneself, self-deception. — *M. osámürü* (自修) ³⁾, to cultivate oneself, self-culture. — *M. óru*, to stand on oneself (to rely on oneself). — *M. kokóronni*, to take the proof of oneself. — *M. yomín-sürü mono* (自好者), one who is fond of himself. — *M. itámu*, self-torture.

Onódzükará (オノヅカラ。自。自然。己ヅカラ。化來), = from the individual, from oneself, of self, Lat. *sponte*. What has been said of *Midzükara*, is, with regard to its adverbial character, applicable to *Onódzükara* also.

Onodzükará kuru-kuru to navúrú mono, things turning themselves, having their own revolution. — *O. maukérú fító*, one who, of his own accord, immigrates. — *O. náru kotowári wo niyo!* behold reasons, which are self-evident!

B. As Chinese expressions of the determinative and reflective pronoun self are in use:

1. 身 ^シ, *Sin*, body, self, opposed to 人 ^{ジン}, *zin*, others.
2. 自 ^ジ 身 ^シ, *Zi-sin*, often pronounced as *dzi-sin*, own body or person. — *Zi-sin wo aisürü fító*, one who loves his own body, i. e. who is fond of ease, the same as *Sono mi wo aisürü fító*. — *Watáküsi zi-sin ni itásímúsita*, I have done it in my own person (myself). — *Anáta Go-dzi-sin ni* (御 ^ゴ 自 ^ジ 身 ^シ ニ) *itásimúsita*, = You have done it in your Honor's own person.

¹⁾ *Doi Gaku*, I, 4.

²⁾ *Ibid.* VI 1.

³⁾ *Ibid.* III, 4.

3. 自分^ジ, *Zi-bun*, = own part, his part. — *Zi-bun wo mi-sutēru mono*, one, who loses sight of himself, his interest. — *Zi-bun ni suwōtte ōrū*, = *midzuka* *ōrū*, to be substantive. — *Zi-bun no sai-ku wo suru*, to do one's own work. — *Zi-bun no mono to naru*, to become property.

4. 自然^ジ, *Zi-zen* (by some pronounced as *dzi-zen*), also *zi-nen*, = being of self, original, natural, unworked. — *Zi-zen ni*, or *zi-zen to*, = Lat. *sponte*. — *Sore fūto no tsi-āru wa zi-zen nari*, that this human understanding is there, is something natural. — *Yama no ūyēni zi-zen no ho āri*, on the mountain there is a natural fire. — *Yumēni zi-zen ni mirū*, to see something in a dream, of oneself (involuntarily). — 自然^ジ生^シズ, to exist of itself (spontaneous existence).

Besides these, there occur many more expressions compounded with 自^ジ, *zi* (self), in which *zi*, at one time, has the meaning of „own,” then of „self.” In the former case it stands adjectively before a substantive, in the latter objectively before a transitive verb.

自^ジ, *zi*, enters adjectively into compounds, as:

自^ジ國^{クニ}, own country.

自^ジ家^カ, own house.

自^ジ身^ミ, own body, self.

自^ジ己^コ, own person.

自^ジ己^コ流^リ, own clan.

自^ジ身^ミ, own person.

自^ジ力^{リキ}, own strength.

自^ジ性^{シヨウ}, own disposition.

自^ジ儘^シ, own whim.

自^ジ業^{ゴフ}, own trade.

自^ジ作^サ, own fabric.

自^ジ筆^{ヒツ}, own pencil.

自^ジ画^{ガク}, own drawing.

自^ジ問^{モン}, own question.

自^ジ答^{トウ}, own answer.

自^ジ慢^{マン}, own neglect.

自^ジ炊^シ, own boiling.

自^ジ得^{トク}, own interest.

Zi is objective to the verb in standard compounds as:

自^ジ愛^{アイ}, self-love.

自^ジ賛^{サン}, self-praise.

自^ジ在^{ザイ}, self-existence.

自^ジ負^フ, self-confidence.

自^ジ縛^{バク}, self-bondage.

自^ジ稱^{ショウ}, self-nomination.

自^ジ棄^キ, self-prostitution.

自^ジ害^{ガイ}, self-injury.

自^ジ賣^{バイ}, self-sale.

自^ジ殺^{サツ}, self-murder.

自^ジ盡^{ジン}, self-destruction.

自^ジ滅^{メツ}, self-annihilation.

These compounds by suffixing the verb *si*, *su*, *suru* (to do), can be changed to verbs, as *zi-fits-suru*, to write with one's own hand; *zi-san-suru*, to praise oneself.

IV. Expressions of reciprocity.

The reciprocity of an action is expressed in Japanese not by pronouns, but by the adverbial (modal) definition **Tāgávi ni** (タガビニ, pronounced *tā-ngái ni*, 互^タカ^ビニ。送。遞), or **Ai-tāgái ni** (アヒ タガビニ), = reciprocal, or also by the verb **Avi** (アヒ), vulgo **Ai** (アイ). The last means „meet each other” and signifies, whenever it is prefixed to another verb, that the action takes place reciprocally or mutually. The meaning of *Tagai*, is generally explained by *Kare kore*, this and that; *Atsi kotsi*, here and there; *Ware fitó*, self and another.

Remark. Japanese etymologists ¹⁾ ascribe to *Tāgávi* the meaning of 手^タ換^カヒ, *Ta-kavi*, = changing of hands, by which nevertheless the change of the *k* to the troubled *g* (= *ng*) is not explained. To be able to give a reason for this, we think we must consider *Tagavi* as a fusion of *ta* + *mūkávi*, = meeting of (or with) the hands, as this takes place in weaving when the shuttle is thrown with one hand and caught up with the other. We, thus, see in *g* (*ug*) a fusion of the *m* with the *k*; a phenomenon that frequently takes place. In *Fígási* (pron. *fí-ngási*), = East, likewise the troubled *g* in *gási* is called into existence by a fusion of *mūkási* to *ngási*. *Fí-mūkási*, originally *Fí-mūkási káta*, means: the side (*kata*), whence the sun (*fi*) has come to meet (*mūkási*).

Examples: 互^タカ^ビニ = 爲^タル 賓^ビニ 主^シト, *Tagái ni jin-zŷu tó náru* ²⁾, by turns he becomes guest and host. — *Tāgávi ní nikúmá*, hate each other. — *Tāgávi ni nŷru*, see each other, meet. — *Kican-nin ŷde-mūkávi*, *Fokkin yori no okuri-fitó tó tāgávi ai-sátsŷ tamávikí*, Mandarins came out of (the town) to meet, and exchanged welcome-greetings with the people sent from Peking.

Avi-nitaru mono (相^ア似^ニ物^{モノ}), things resembling one another. — *Avi-ŷtsŷ*, strike each other, come to blows. — *Avi-sim*, know one another. — *Avi katárvŷ*, converse (speak together). — *Avi-tagáini* (相^ア互^タカ^ビニ), reciprocal.

V. Pronouns Indefinite.

In Japanese, if the subject of a proposition is indefinite, it remains unex-

¹⁾ *Wa-gun siwori*.

²⁾ MENCIUS (LEGGE, *Chinese classics*, Book V. Pt. II. Ch. III. § 5.)

pressed; there, propositions without subjects are something very common. Our idioms do not permit this, and having to represent the subject of a proposition by a pronoun indefinite, in such sentences we make use of our „one” (people) or „it.”

Besides, for our „one,” in a more definite sense are also found **Fító**, man, and **Arũ-fító**, = some person, e. g. *Fító ga árũ yá* (有^レ人^々麼^ㄣ), is there anybody? — *Fító ga nandzi wo tóvũ*, someone asks for you. — *Fító ga árĩte* (or *atte*) *O me ni kakári tási*, there is somebody, who wishes to appear before you.

„Something” or „anything” is expressed by **Mono**, which „thing,” means, however it is also applied to living beings. — *Kore wo kóku mono* (書^々之^レ者^ㄣ) is „a this-writing-individual,” some one who writes this, distinguished from *Kaki-mono*, = a written something, a writing (文牒), and from *Mono-kaki*, = a something writing, a writer, = *fumi-bító* (史). In *Kaki-mono*, *mono*, has the signification of thing or something and is defined by the verbal root *Kaki* as, something written; in *Mono-kaki*, *mono* is the objective definition to the same verbal root.

Nani, = what? is also used as our „somewhat,” with the signification of „something.”

If by „nothing” is intended something without contents or substance, it is expressed by the noun-substantive **Nai**, = something of no value; e. g. *Fító wo nai ga sironi su*, to consider anyone as worth nothing.

Our „nobody,” when no particular accent falls upon it, is superseded by „somebody” with the negative form of the verb connected with it, the negative („not”) being thus taken from the noun or pronoun and incorporated in the termination of the verb. — *Fító ga ari-másũ*, there is somebody. — *Fító ga ari-masénũ*, in the written language *Fító nasi* (無^ㄣ人^ㄣ), somebody is-there-not, = there is nobody.

If, however, it is wished to bring out „nobody” and „nothing” with emphasis, the expressions which signify „whoever, whatever,” are used in connection with a negative verb.

Dare kore wo siránu means: who does not know this? (*siránu*, verb negative = not know). — *Dare mó kore wo siránu*, whoever (who it may be) knows not this, nobody knows it. — *Kare nani wo sénu*, = what does he not? — *Kare nani mó sénu*, = he does not whatever it may be, i. e. he does nothing. — *Doko ni mó arázu*, wherever not to be, = to be no where.

Consequently the instance, cited in the *Elements of Japanese Grammar*, Shang-hai 1861, page. 23, *Dare mo kokoni kimasinanda*, will mean: „whoever has not come here,” and not „nobody here come (honorific) has not.” We are not at liberty to assign to *Dare mo* the meaning of *Nobody*, and to overlook, that in Japanese the negation of a negation is equal to a confirmed assertion.

VI. Relative pronouns are wanting, because the Japanese, having no relative clauses, substitute for them adjective clauses, which precede the word, to which they refer. Instead of „the man, who is present,” an expression is used, answering to „the present man” (*Arū fitó*); instead of „the town, which the enemy has sacked,” — „of the enemy-to have-sacked-town.”

In such cases, moreover, the substantive **Tokóro** (所), place, is also used to intimate the passive something.

Tsükúru koto is the fabricating, the fabrication;

Tsükúru mono, a fabricating being;

Tsükúru fitó, a fabricating man, one who fabricates;

Tsükúru tokóro, the place of fabrication;

Fitó no tsükúru tokóro no mono is something (*mono*) of a man's (*fitó no*) fabricating- (*tsükúru*-) place (*tokóro no*). i. e. something that somebody fabricates. — *Insiye yóri motsúyürü tokóro no nen-ggu* is a year-name (*nen-ggu*) of a place, where (not which) one from ancient times has used, i. e. a year-name used from ancient times.

Thus we, although the Japanese philologists do not do so, give to *Tokóro*, in that position also, in which it seems to do the work of a pronoun relative, its proper signification, namely that of „place.”

In the Syntax this construction will be treated again.

VII. Interrogative pronouns.

In the previous pages, treating of the formation of the pronouns, those, of which the interrogative elements **Ta** or **To**, vulgo **Da** or **Do**, and **Itsu**, vulgo **Idzu** are the foundation, have already been explained. To embrace them in one glance, they are:

<i>Dáno</i> , which? p. 85.	<i>Doko</i> , where? p. 80.	<i>Idzūku</i> , where? p. 81.
<i>Dare</i> , who? 88.	<i>Dotsi</i> , „ 82.	<i>Idzūkunká</i> , „ „
<i>Dare ga</i> , whose? „	<i>Dotsira</i> , „ „	<i>Idzūkunzō</i> , on what ground? how? „
<i>Daga</i> , „ „	<i>Dotsūsi</i> , „ „	<i>Idzūre</i> , who, which? 89.
<i>Dazo</i> , who? „	<i>Dóno</i> , which? 85.	<i>Idzūrenó</i> , whose? „
<i>Dareno ka</i> , whose? „	<i>Donna</i> , „ „	
<i>Dareno zo</i> , „ „	<i>Dónata</i> , who? „	
	<i>Dono ygu</i> , how? „	
	<i>Doyou</i> , <i>dou</i> , „ „	
	<i>Dousite</i> , „ „	
	<i>Dore</i> , which? 87.	

Besides these are still **Nani**, what? and **Ika**, how?, which from the important part they play, deserve an acquaintance more than superficial ¹⁾, whereas **Iku**, how much?, as being related to the numerals, will be treated of with them.

1. **Nani**, 十二 (何), abbreviated **Nan**, ナン, obsolete **Nam**, ナム, plural *Nan ra* (何等), what? which? Lat. *quid? quod?* It is used both substantively, and adjectively, and very often strengthened by an interrogative suffix. **ka** or **zo**.

Substantively, with the meaning of „what?”, *Nani* occurs in expressions as: *Nani wo yerabi másūká?*, what do you choose? — *Nani wo tōvu ká?*, after what do you ask? — *Nani wo nandzi ga motomuru yá?*, what do you seek? — *Nani wo O kai nasáru ká?*, what do you buy? ²⁾. — *Nani wo motte?*, wherewith? whereby? — 何^{ナニ}以^{モツ}利^リ吾^ワ國^{クニ} ³⁾, *Nani wo motte waga kuni wo risen*, wherewith shall I advantage my empire? — *Nani gá ári-másūká?*, what is there at hand? ⁴⁾. — *Kore wa nani ni motsii-masūka?*, what is the use of this? — *Sore wa nani ni yoi ka?*, for what is such good?

¹⁾ The greatest stumbling-blocks in oral intercourse with the Japanese, are the interrogatives (we understand by the term every word, by which inquiry after anything is made), and the ways of using them. Uncertainty in that respect brings about misunderstanding on both sides; one answers to what the other has not asked; and the speakers, weary of the continual deviating answers, probably end by thinking each other reserved, if not by suspecting each other of a want of understanding. With a view to this, the interrogative pronouns, and the combinations formed with them are here treated of with the diffusiveness required.

²⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 2.

³⁾ MENCIUS (LEGGE, *Chinese Classics*, II. Book I. Pt. I. Ch. I. § 4).

⁴⁾ „ p. 2.

Nani to, = to what, whereto, as appositive definition ¹⁾. — *Anótano O na va nani to ii-masúka?*, = your name what (how) is it called?, what is your name? ²⁾.

Nani to iru (何^{ナニ}云^イ), in the popular language contracted to ナデフ, pronounced *Na-ndeo*, for which 何^{ナニ}條^{ジョウ} is written, = what to call? how? called. — *Nani to iru koto*, = a what calling matter? i. e. what sort of or which matter? — *Nani to mousi-másúka?*, what do you say? — *Nani to náku*, without anything (無大小).

Nani to zo (何^{ナニ}卒^ゾ), what says it?, supersedes, like *doo zo*, our „if you please.”

Nani to te, also ナドテ *Na-ndote*, from *Nani to sité*, = to what? tending, whereto? wherefore? — *Nani to te koré wo itásimásita ka*, to what end have you done this?

Nani yori (於^{ヨリ}何^{ナニ}). *Nani kara* (自^{ヨリ}何^{ナニ}), = of what?, whereof?

Nani ni yótte (何^{ナニ}由^{ヨリ}緣^縁底^底), = on what ground?, whence? — 何^{ナニ}由^{ヨリ}知^{シル}吾^ワ可^カ也^也 ³⁾, *Nani ni yótte waga kanáru-koto wo siran?* on what grounds, (how) do you know that I am able for that?

Naze ni, from *nan-se-ni*, = for what? to do, why? — *Naze ni sore wo sezu ni áruka?*, why does not one such? — *Naze ni O agári nasaránü ka?* = why does not your rise happen?, i. e. why do you refuse? ⁴⁾.

Nani-si ni, *Nani-si ni kó*, variation of *Naze ni*, why? — *Nán sore zo*, properly *Nan sure zo*, how doing, on account of which, why? 何爲.

爲^{スレ}之^{コレ}王^ワ *Wgu mosi kore wo yosito seba, sunavatsi nansure zo okonava-*
不^{ガル}則^{スル}如^{モシ} *zaru* ⁵⁾, if the king considers this as good, why does not
行^{ハナ}何^{ナニ}善^{ヨシトモ} he carry it out?

Nani zo (ナニゾ。何), abbreviated *Nanzo* (ナンゾ), also *Na-nzo* (ナン), how? in what way, for what reason? — occurs also as a mere characteristic of a direct question. — 王^ワ何^{ナニ}曰^{イハ}利^リ ⁶⁾, *Wgu nanzo ri wo ívan*, = the king, why does he mention the word advantage? — 何^{ナニ}可^{ベシ}廢^{ハイス}也^也 ⁷⁾, *Nanzo faisu beken*, how can one abolish (such)? — 牛^ウ羊^{ヤウ}何^{ナニ}擇^セ焉^焉 ⁸⁾, *Giu yau nanzo eraban*, why to choose between ox and

¹⁾ See page 70, V.

²⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 19.

³⁾ MENCIUS (LEGGE, *Chinese Classics*, vol. I, p. 15).

⁴⁾ „ p. 21.

⁵⁾ „ Ch. V. § 4.

⁶⁾ MENCIUS (LEGGE, Vol. II. Book I. Pt. I. Ch. I. § 3).

⁷⁾ „ Ch. VII. § 4.

⁸⁾ Ibid. Ch. VII. § 7.

goat? — *Nanzo O kini iri-mdsu mono ga gozdrī-mdsū*, is there anything that pleases you? — ^ガ盃^ナ ^ニ反^カ ^ニ其^ソ ^ニ本^ト ^ニ矣¹⁾, *Nanzo sono moto ni kavera-záru*, why not return to the foundation?

Nanzo ya, ナンゾヤ, obsolete ナゾヤ。何也。何如, = how is this, how does it happen? as predicate closing the sentence, and preceded by a subjective clause.

^{オホキナシ}多^ミ ^タ民^ミ *Tami ohokikoto wo kuvarezaru va nanzo ya* ²⁾, that the people does not increase its number, how is this?

^ナ何^ハ ^ナ不^ハ **Nazo-nazo**, = how? how?, riddles.

^{ナニ}何^ハ ^{ナニ}加^ハ **Nani naru** ³⁾, = what? being. — *Nani naru mono*, or *koto*, what thing, or what matter?

Nani no, **Nanno**, adjectively what? in the expressions: *Nani no hi* (何^{ナニ}日^ヒ ⁴⁾), what day? vulgo *itsu*. — *Nani no kōkū* (何^{ナニ}刻^{コク} ⁵⁾), what hour? — *是^{コト}誠^{マコト}* = 何^{ナニ}心^{ココロ} ⁶⁾哉^ヤ ¹⁾, *Kore makoto ni nanno kokoro zo ya*, what was really (my) opinion concerning that?

Nani and *Nan* occur adjectively in the expressions *Nani-goto* (何^{ナニ}事^{コト} ⁷⁾), what matter?, what? — *Kimi konōmō tokoro nani-goto zo*, = that which you willingly have, what (is it)? — *Nani-goto de?*, wherefore, why? — *Nani-bun* (何^{ナニ}分^{ブン} ⁸⁾), what part? — *Nani-yōu* or *Nani-zama* (何^{ナニ}様^{サマ} ⁹⁾), what manner? — *Nani-ren* (何^{ナニ}篇^{ヘン} ¹⁰⁾), what volume? — *Nani-fodo* (何^{ナニ}程^{ヘイ} ¹¹⁾), what quantity? the quantity. — *Nani-mono* (何^{ナニ}者^{モノ} ¹²⁾), what being, what? — *Nani-gokōro* (何^{ナニ}心^{ココロ} ¹³⁾), which heart, which sense? — *Nani gokōro naku* (無^ム何^{ナニ}心^{ココロ} ¹⁴⁾), without any purpose. — *Nani-yūé* (何^{ナニ}故^コ ¹⁵⁾), what cause? — *Nani-yūéni sore zo?*, why that? — *Nani-kore*, obsolete *Nani-kure* (何^{ナニ}是^{コト} ¹⁶⁾), what one?

Nani-gasi (何^{ナニ}某^{ナニ} ¹⁷⁾), after Jap. etymologists from *Nani ga nusi*, = where-of? master, what somebody, now in use only with the signification of the indefinite pronoun „any-(some-)one” (某) and applied by the speaker to himself. Compare *Sore gasi*, pag. 88.

Combinations with *Nau* (ナウ) are: *Nau-nen* (何^{ナウ}年^{ネン} ¹⁸⁾), which year? — *Nau-giwats* (何^{ナウ}月^{ゲツ} ¹⁹⁾), which month? — *Nau-doki* (何^{ナウ}時^ジ ²⁰⁾), which (what)

¹⁾ MENCIUS (ibid. Ch. VII. § 23).

²⁾ Ibid. (Ch. II. § 1).

³⁾ Not *Naniru*.

⁴⁾ Ch. VII. § 7.

time? what hour? — *Nan-doki-goroni* (何^{ナニ}時^{トキ}頃^{マヅル}), against what time? ¹⁾. — *Nan-dan* (何^{ナニ}段^{ダン}), which pieces? — *Kono iro ga nan-dan árimásüka?* ²⁾, what (how many) pieces are there of that color? — *Nan-gin?* ³⁾ (何^{ナニ}斤^{キン}), how many pounds?

Nani, *Nanzo* occur also with the signification of the indefinite pronoun „any-(some)-thing. — *Nandzi vá sono koto ni tsuité nanzo kikite órú ká*, have you heard anything about that matter?

2. *Iká*, イカ (如何。云何), how?

Current combinations with *iká* are:

Ika-mono (何^{ナニ}者^{モノ}), what thing.

Ika-sama, vulgo *Ika-yau*, *Ika-yoo* (何^{ナニ}様^{サマ}。何方^{ナニヘ}), which way. — *Ika-yau ni*, in what way, how. — *Ika-yau ni mo*, however. — *Ika-yau ni nórú tomo*, however it may be. — *Ika-yau nárú mono*, what sort of thing. — *Ika-yau naru mono nite mo*, what sort of being or thing it may be, who or whatever. — *Ika-yau na koto de mo sárú*, do whatever thing it may be, do every thing.

Ika-fodo (何^{ナニ}程^{ハカリ}), quantity. — *Ika-fodo ka*, how much? — *Ika-fodo no tsikára*, how much power. — *Ika-fodo no aida*, — how much interspace, how long? — *Sore wo iká-fodo ni uru ya*, for how much is such sold? — *Ika-fodo ooku tomo*, however much? how much soever?

Ika-bakári, how yet (still). — *Sono koto wo ika-bakari kucinka*, how will people yet (still) be sorry for that.

Ika-nárú, how being, of what sort. — *Ika-narü kotozo*, what sort of thing? — *Sokó ni ika-naru fitó zo*, what sort of man is there? — *Ika-naru sei-mei zo*, what (is your) name?

The modal terminations of *Ika* are: *Ikani*, イカニ, — *Ikani ka*, イカニカ, — *Ikani zo*, イカニゾ, abbreviated *Ikan*, イカニ, — *Ikan zo*, イカニゾ, or even *Ikade*, イカデ (pronounce *Ika-nde*), イカデカ, *Ikade ka*, *Ika-nde ka*, how? Lat. *quomodo*.

Sore wa ikan? = such — how? how is such? According to the rule of the Japanese arrangement of words *ikan*, as predicate, follows *sorewa* as subject ⁴⁾. The subject may also be a subjective clause, e. g. ...*aru vá ikani*, how does it happen, that there...is? — *Ikade* (vulgo *doude*) *iraserare mäsüká*, how goes it? — *Ikade arazaran*, how should there not be, why not?

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 17.

²⁾ *Ibid.* p. 35.

³⁾ *Ibid.* p. 11.

⁴⁾ See Introduction, p. 44, 15, A.

Ikága, イカガ, pronounce *íká-nga* (如何。云何), how?, probably a fusion of *íká* *íka*. — *Ikága On watári sorooya*, = how is your passage?, how do you do? — *Sokó-moto ikága O kurási zo?*, = how do you let (the time) go round? how do you do? — *Ikága sen*, how will one do (anything)? — *Ikága náru* (or *Ikága ná*) *koto*, what matter? — *Ikága nó obósímésizo*, what opinion? what do you think?

Interrogative pronouns with the suffix **mo**.

Connected with the suffix **mo**, 𐤎 (= also, Latin *que*, *cunque*), the interrogative pronouns embrace all that is comprehended in the interrogative as individuals together. *Dare mó*, the same as *quicunque*, whoever, everyone that may be reckoned under *Dare* or *qui*.

If the interrogative is joined to a substantive, *mo* is placed after it, and if it is declined, after the inflectional termination. — *Idzüre no ya mo kara tó ívű bésű*, every arrow may be called *kara* (shaft). — *Doko ni mó* or *Doko dé mó*, wherever, everywhere.

Instead of *mo*, **te mo** (テモ) is often used; e. g. *Daré té mó sono zi wo hómétäri*, = whoever it may be (everyone) has praised this poem. — *Idzüre no tosi ni te mo*, in whatever year it may be; *te mo* having, by apheresis, arisen from *sitè mo* (= also is), whereas *to te mo* in expressions as *Nani to te mo*, = whatever people (may think or say), is the same as an ellipsis, being the verb that means think or say, and that governs the apposition ¹⁾ characterized by *to* (*nanito*), not expressed itself, but only indicated by the termination *te*. *Nani to te mo*, thus stands elliptically for *Nani to iyu te mo* ²⁾, = whatever it may be called or be. An abbreviation of which is *Nanito mo*, *Nán tö mö*. — *Nán to omoruka*, what do people think of it? *Nán tö mö omowánu*, people think nothing of it, people do not trouble themselves about it.

VIII. Arrangement of the personal pronouns in the conversational language.

The choice of the words, which are used in the oral intercourse as pronouns, is not indifferent, but it is prescribed by etiquette. From our own experience, if after an intercourse of more than two years with Japanese we may speak of it, and from the information given by a learned Japanese gentleman ³⁾

¹⁾ Compare p. 70, V.

²⁾ *Wa-gun iwari*.

³⁾ Mr. TSUDA SUN ITSUROO.

the following expressions, used as pronouns, enter into the conversational language.

1. For I.

- 1) The humblest expression is **Te-máe**, plural **Te-máe-tátsi**, in the popular tongue of *Yédo* which frequently changes *a* to *e*, **Temée**, = at hand, i. e. that which is at hand or present to the person opposite.
- 2) **Watakūsi**, plural **Watakūsi-domo**, a modest, and, in confidential intercourse, most usual expression. Every respectable man speaks of himself thus; and the man of the people at *Yédo* says for it **Waši** (*waschi*).
- 3) **Oré**, plural **Oréra**, in the *Yédo*-dialect **Oira**, after the mention on page 86 supported by a quotation from the Dictionary of the old-Japanese language, a self-humiliating expression, is now considered as one of pride at *Yédo*.
- 4) **Wáre**, plural **Wáre-ra**, the „I” and „We” in the mouth of a prince, when he speaks to his people.

2. For the person spoken to, THOU, YOU, YE.

- 1) **Wáre**, plural **Wáre-ra**, the most humiliating expression, which is applied only to low people. Probably confounded with *Are*?
- 2) **Te-máe**, the same as given above for „I,” is fit for subordinate persons and servants. and answers to the well known German „*Er*” and „*Sie*.”
- 3) **Temáe-sáma**, plural **Temáe-sáma-gata**, is equal to You, Sir. You, gentlemen, used by a person of quality towards those somewhat below him.
- 4) **O-máě**, in the *Yédo*-dialect **Omée**, plural **O-máě-gata**, in use among the middle class.
- 5) **O-máě-sáma**, = Your Honor, more periphrastical and consequently more solemn than *O-máě*.
- 6) **Anáta**, plural **Anáta-gáta**, used, with preference, by polite people towards their equals ¹⁾).
- 7) **Anáta-sáma**, plural **Anáta-sáma-gáta**, is expressive of the greatest respect towards the person addressed.

3. For the person spoken to, HE.

- 1) **Are**, plural **Arera**, is put down for disrespectful.

¹⁾ The members of the first Japanese embassy, which came to Europe in 1862, and to which the author was appointed as one of a committee by his Government, generally used *Anáta* mutually.

- 2) **Ano mono**, = that person there, characterizes the person spoken of as a mere object (*mono*), deserving of no respect.
- 3) **Ano fitó**, plural **Ano fitó-gata**, polite indication of one's equals. On officer or functionary speaking of another intimates him by *Ano fitó*.
- 4) **Ano O fitó**, plural **Ano O fitó-gata**, somewhat more stately. is used when the person spoken of is related to the person spoken to.
- 5) **Ano kata**, plural **Ano kata-gata**, = the side there, and **Kono kata**, = the side here, looking from the person, and only indicating the direction. in which he is, both belong as our Your Honor, to the very respectful expressions.
- 6) **Ano O káta**, plural **Ano O káta-gata**, is indicative of the highest respect.

The above arrangement of the pronouns of the conversational language agreeing, in general, with that adopted by R. ALCOCK in his *Elements of Japanese Grammar*. page 21, contains, however, a few deviations which, the reader will please to observe, rest upon the authority of Mr. TSUDA SIN ITSIROO.

CHAPTER III.

THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 9. The adjectives attributing to the idea, expressed by a noun substantive, one or another quality, have, in proportion as they represent an attribute or a predicate, different forms which, though strongly prominent in the written or book language, are, on the contrary, more or less obsolescent in the conversational. The forms of the written, will, therefore, be treated before those of the spoken language.

I. THE ADJECTIVE IN THE WRITTEN LANGUAGE.

A. Construction of the adjective in its radical form with a noun. — If the quality expressed by the adjective is represented as present in the object from the very beginning, then the adjective is, as a subordinate attributive definition in its radical form, joined to the substantive in a compound word; *Taka-no*, = Highland, German *Hochland*. Thus also:

<i>Naga-sáki</i> , Long-cape.	<i>Küró-tsütsi</i> , black-earth.
<i>Aká-tsütsi</i> , red earth, ruddle.	<i>Amá-zake</i> , sweet-beer.
<i>Siró-góne</i> , white ore (silver).	<i>Fürú-tósi</i> , the old-year.

B. Adjectives in *ki*.

1. *a. Ki*, termination of the adjective used as attributive. — If the quality is first to be attributed to the object expressly, the adjective, to be used as attributive, acquires a conjunctive, or properly a derivative termination, which

for a particular class of adjectives, is **ki**; **Takaki no**, = a high land, land that is high, distinguished from **Takano**, = highland. Thus also:

Nagáki saki, a long cape.

Kuróki tsütsi, black earth.

Akáki tsütsi, red earth (ruddle).

Amáki saké, sweet beer.

Siróki gáne, white ore.

Fürúki áto, old traces, ruins.

The adjectives belonging to this class generally express a quality, to which activity is not allied.

Remark. The termination *Ki*, whose vocal *i* is the root, from which the continuative verb *ari* = to be, is derived, means „being so” that is to say, as the essential part of the word implies. The relation of the essential part to the verbal element can be no other, than that of an adverb to the verb, whereas the mutual relation of *Takaki* and *Yama* is that of a compound word. — Compare what has been said on page 96 line 15 et seqq. concerning *Kaki-mono*.

The vulgar language of *Nagasaki* substitute, **ka** for the adjective termination *ki*, thus *siróka* for *siróki*, white ¹⁾.

b. The adjectives with the termination **ki** may be used substantively, as nouns concrete, and then as such are declinable. — *Yama takaki* or *Yama no takaki* is the high of mountains, i. e. eminently high, or the highest of mountains, *yama* now being a subordinate definition to *takaki*.

2. **Ku**, adverbial form. — If an adjective of this class is used as an adverb, then its radical form assumes the termination **ku**. *Takakü tobu*, = to fly high. The adverb in *ku* under all circumstances remains an adverb, yet represents in the coördinate sentence, whose predicate verb must be in the unconjugated radical form ²⁾, the undefined radical form of the adjective verb terminating in *si*.

Isolated by the suffix *va* (§ 6) the adverb acquires a position separated from the verb, which brings out its idea with more emphasis. — *Obškü vá*, = manifold, often (frequently).

3. *a.* **Si**, form of the adjective as praedicate. — When an adjective of this

¹⁾ The question, formerly mooted in the *Proeve eener Japansehe Spraakkunst* by D. CURTIUS, 1857, p. 34, if the termination *ka* is really peculiar to the dialect of *Nagasaki*, has since been answered affirmatively, as well by Japanese orally, as in writing by the late R. J. DE SAINT AULAIRE, who was stationed, as Dutch interpreter for the Japanese language, at *Nagasaki*. „The adjective termination in *a*,” wrote the latter to me, „is really used generally in *Nagasaki* and the lower class of the people understand nothing else; those however who have had a little education, know very well, that it is not right.”

²⁾ See Introduction, p. 45, Coördination.

class is used as a predicate, its radical form acquires the termination *si*, = to be, is. **Yama takási**, = the mountain high to be, i. e. the mountain is high ¹⁾. The relation in which *taka* stands to *si*, is, in the spirit of the Japanese language, again no other than that of an adverb to its verb.

This *si*, placed by Japanese grammarians among the auxiliary verbs (*Ziyo go*) ²⁾ and designated *Gen-zai no si* ³⁾ or the *si* of the present tense, undergoes no verbal change.

b. If now a verbal change to indicate term and mood is required, then instead of *si*, the continuative verb *ari*, *aru* ⁴⁾ (= exist), is used. which added to the adverbial form *ku*, fuses with this into *kari*; from *Takaku ari*, = continually high to be, comes **Takakári**, a derivative verb, which is now to be conjugated in accordance after the general plan of conjugation ⁵⁾. Instead of *ari*, *eri* is also used, as synonyme.

4. By the change of *si* into *sa* these adjective verbs are made nouns abstract; **Takása**, = the height.

Remark. *Sa* is a contraction of the *si* predicate, and the isolating *va*. *Takása*, therefore includes the *Takási* predicate = „is high,” whereas *va* raises this idea to a noun substantive „the height.”

The Chinese follows the same way, when it expresses the abstract idea of „height” by 高也者.

5. LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL ADJECTIVE ROOTS IN KI.

1. <i>Taka-ki</i>	高 ^{タカ} , high.	2. <i>Fiki-ki</i> , <i>Fikü-ki</i>	低 ^{ヒキ} , low.
3. <i>Fuka-ki</i>	深 ^{フカ} , deep.	4. <i>Asa-ki</i>	浅 ^{アサ} , shallow.
5. <i>Naga-ki</i>	長 ^{ナガ} , long.	6. <i>Midzika-ki</i>	短 ^{ミヅカ} , short.
7. <i>Firô-ki</i>	廣 ^{ヒロ} , wide, broad.	8. <i>Seba-(Sema-)ki</i>	狭 ^{セバ} , 陝, narrow.
9. <i>Fütô-ki</i>	太 ^{フト} , thick, coarse.	10. <i>Foso-ki</i>	細 ^{フソ} , fine.
6) [<i>Ooi-naru</i>	大 ^{オオイ} + 々, large.]	11. <i>Tsiisa-ki</i>	小 ^{チイサ} , small.

¹⁾ In R. BROWN'S *Colloquial Japanese*, p. XXXIX, line 26 et seqq., *ki* is cited as the termination of the adjective predicate, and *si* is wholly overlooked; a capital mistake that we may not leave unnoticed.

²⁾ 助^{シヨ} 語^ゴ.

³⁾ 現^{ケン} 在^{ザイ} 之^ノ 止^シ. — *Wa-gun siwori* under *Si*. Compare RODRIGUEZ, pag. 66.

⁴⁾ Not *karu*, nor *yaru*, as it is printed in ALCOCK *Elem.*, p. 27, line 9.

⁵⁾ See § 10.

⁶⁾ The adjectives placed between brackets [] do not belong to this category, and are inserted only for the antithesis.

12. *Fira-ki* 平^{ヒラ}, level, even. 13. *Kevasi-ki* ¹⁾ 險^{ケン}, steep.
14. *Naka-daka-ki* 凸^{ナカダカ}, gibbous, convex. 15. *Kubo-ki* 凹^{クボ}, 窪, hollow, concave.
16. *Firata-ki* 扁^{ヒラタ}, flat. 17. *Māro-ki* (*Ma-rū-ki*) 丸^{マル}, 圓, 團, round.
18. *Atsu-ki* 厚^{アツ}, thick. 19. *Usu-ki* 薄^{ウス}, thin.
20. *Nao-ki* 直^{ナオ}, right. [*Magaru* 曲^{マグル}, crooked.]
21. *Toó-ki* 遠^{トウ}, far, distant. 22. *Tsiká-ki* 近^{チカ}, near.
23. *Amane-ki* 普^{アマン}, 遍, 徧, everywhere. 24. *Sūkū-ná-ki* 寡^{スグナ}, seldom.
25. *Oó-ki* 多^{オウ}, much, many. 26. *Sūkósi-ki* 少^{スウシ}, little, few.
27. *Sigé-ki* 茂^{シゲ}, 繁, 數, dense. 28. *Mūná-si-ki* 空^{ムナシ}, without contents, void.
29. *Matta-ki* 全^{マッタ}, entire, whole. 30. *Ná-ki* 無^ナ, without, ...less.
31. *Ková-ki* 剛^{コウ}, hard. 32. *Moro-ki* 脆^{モロ}, 脆, brittle.
33. *Tsuyo-ki*, 強^{ツヨ}, strong. 34. *Yowá-ki* 弱^{ヨウ}, 柔, weak.
35. *Ara-ki* 暴^{アラ}, 虐, 荒, 麁, [*Yawaraga-nāru* 軟^{ヤワガ}, soft, weak.]
36. *Omó-ki* 重^{オモ}, heavy. 37. *Karó-ki* 輕^{カウ}, light.
38. *Káta-ki* 難^{カタ}, difficult. 39. *Yásū-ki* 易^{ヤス}, facile, easy.
40. *To-ki* 銳^{トウ}, 疾, pointed, sharp; quick. 41. *Nibu-ki*, 鈍^{ニブ}, blunt.
42. *Hayá-ki* 早^{ハヤ}, 急, 速, 疾, early; quick. 43. *Osó-ki* 遲^{オソ}, late; slow.
44. *Waka-ki* 少^{ワカ}, 若, young. [*Oitaru*, 老^{オヒタル}, old.]
- [*Arátā-nāru* 新^{アヲタル}, new.] 45. *Fūrú-ki* 古^{フル}, 舊, ancient, antique.
46. *Yo-* (oldj. *Ye-*) 善^{ヨウ}, 能, good, well. 47. *Wāru-ki* 惡^{ワル}, bad, base.
- ki* [*Atataka-naru* 暖^{アタカル}, warm.]
48. *Sāmū-* (*Sūbu-*) 寒^{サム}, cold. *ki*

¹⁾ *Kevasiki*, and the adjectives cited under Nos. 28, 30, 66 and 73 have *siki* (N^o. 71) for their derivative form.

49. *Suzu-ki* 涼 スズ, cool. 50. *Nuru-ki* 溫 ヌル. 遲 ヒ, lukewarm; lazy.
51. *Ko-ki, Ke-ki* 濃 コケ, strong (of taste or color). 52. *Ara-ki, Awa-ki* 淡 アヲ, faint (of taste or color).
53. *Ao-ki* 青 アヲ, pale blue, pale green. 54. *Aka-ki* 赤 アカ. 紅 ベニ, red.
55. *Siró-ki* 白 シロ, white. 56. *Kuró-ki* 黒 クロ, black.
- [*Akiráká-narū* 明 アカリ, light, clear.] 57. *Kurá-ki* 暗 クラ, dark, dusky.
58. *Amá-ki* 甘 アマ, sweet. 59. *Sa-ki* 酸 サ, acid.
60. *Umá- (Mū-má-) ki* 旨 ウマ. 美 ミ, sweet, nice, beautiful. 61. *Niku-ki* 醜 ニク, ugly.
62. *Kayu-ki* 痒 カユ, itching. 63. *Niga-ki* 苦 ニガ, bitter.
64. *Sibu-ki* 澁 シブ, raw, acerb. 65. *Yegu-ki* 酸 エグ, tart.
66. *Kaubasi-ki, Kaurasi-ki,* 芳 カバシ. 香 カシ, fragrant. 67. *Kūsá-ki* 臭 クサ, stinking.
68. *Sivá-ki* 悋 シバシバ, covetous, scant. 69. *Tá-ki* 欲 タ. 度 タク, desirous, willing.
70. *Gotó-ki* 如 ゴト. 若 ニガハ, like. [*Kotonáru* 異 コトナ, different.]
71. *Si-ki* 如 シ. 敷 シキ, being such as (substantive suffix = ...ish, ...like). 72. *Siká-ki* 然 シカ, being so, or such.
73. *Be-ki* 可 ベ, allowable.

THE SAME ROOTS ARRANGED ALPHABETICALLY.

<i>Aka</i> . . . 54.	<i>Fiku</i> . . . 2.	<i>Kaubasi</i> 66.	<i>Matta</i> . 29.	<i>Omo</i> . . . 36.	<i>Su</i> . . . 59.	<i>Uma</i> . . . 60.
<i>Ama</i> . . . 58.	<i>Fira</i> . . . 12.	<i>Kayu</i> . . . 62.	<i>Midzika</i> 6.	<i>Oo</i> . . . 25.	<i>Sukosi</i> . 26.	<i>Usu</i> . . . 19.
<i>Amane</i> . 23.	<i>Firata</i> . 16.	<i>Ke</i> . . . 51.	<i>Moro</i> . . . 32.	<i>Oso</i> . . . 43.	<i>Sukuna</i> . 24.	
<i>Ao</i> . . . 53.	<i>Firo</i> . . . 7.	<i>Kevasi</i> . 13.	<i>Muma</i> . 60.		<i>Suzu</i> . . . 49.	<i>Waka</i> . 44.
<i>Ara</i> . . . 35.	<i>Foso</i> . . . 10.	<i>Ko</i> . . . 51.	<i>Manasi</i> . 28.	<i>Samu</i> . . 48.		<i>Waru</i> . 47.
<i>Asa</i> . . . 4.	<i>Fuká</i> . . . 3.	<i>Kova</i> . . . 31.		<i>Seba</i> . . . 8.	<i>Ta</i> . . . 69.	
<i>Atsu</i> . . . 18.	<i>Furu</i> . . . 45.	<i>Kubo</i> . . . 15.	<i>Na</i> . . . 30.	<i>Sema</i> . . . 8.	<i>Taka</i> . . . 1.	<i>Yasu</i> . . . 39.
<i>Ava</i> . . . 52.	<i>Futo</i> . . . 9.	<i>Kuro</i> . . . 57.	<i>Naga</i> . . . 5.	<i>Si</i> . . . 71.	<i>Tsiisa</i> . 4.	<i>Yegu</i> . . . 65.
		<i>Kuro</i> . . . 56.	<i>Nao</i> . . . 20.	<i>Sika</i> . . . 72.	<i>Tsika</i> . . 22.	<i>Yo</i> . . . 46.
<i>Be</i> . . . 73.	<i>Goto</i> . . . 70.	<i>Kusa</i> . . . 67.	<i>Nibu</i> . . . 41.	<i>Sibu</i> . . . 64.	<i>To</i> . . . 40.	<i>Yowa</i> . . 34.
			<i>Niga</i> . . . 63.	<i>Sige</i> . . . 27.	<i>Too</i> . . . 21.	
<i>Faya</i> . . . 42.	<i>Kata</i> . . . 38.	<i>Maro</i> . . . 17.	<i>Niku</i> . . . 61.	<i>Siro</i> . . . 55.	<i>Tsuyo</i> . 33.	
<i>Fiki</i> . . . 2.	<i>Karo</i> . . . 37.	<i>Maru</i> . . . 17.	<i>Nuru</i> . . . 50.	<i>Siva</i> . . . 68.		

Remark. The termination *ki*, as the distinguishing characteristic of this class of adjectives, ought to be placed on the foreground, deviating from the method in the Japanese dictionaries, which give these adjectives as adjective verbs with the termination *si* and, so doing, do not distinguish them from those, which terminate in *siki* (= ish). So, to give an instance, their expression 久^キ ^ナ is defective, since *fīsāsi* (= is of long duration) as a syncope of *fīsāsisi*, is in all respects the form of the adjective verb, has but *fīsāsiki*, not *fīsāki*, for adjective form, whereas the adjective form of *nagasi* is not *nagāsiki*, but *nagaki*.

6. Examples of the use of the forms cited.

[**Ki.**] *Sibu-kaki no tane wo ūte, anaki kaki va favezārū*, if people sow seed of the sour fig, then do not grow figs, that are sweet. — *Tanba-kūni yori kūrōki kitsūné wo sasāgū*, from the country of Tanba people offer a fox which is black. — *Tsikāra-nāki yumi*, a powerless bow. — *Tsikāra-nāki koto*, powerlessness. — *Ne-zūmi no sirōki wā siro-nezūmi to ū*, the white of mice (= mice that are white) are called white mice. — *Fūrūki wō sūtēte ūtārāsiki ni tsukū*, forsaking the old, to apply oneself to the new. If objects are previously mentioned, from which a choice is made, then the expression is good: *Fūrūki no wō sūtēte, ūtārāsiki no wō toru*, to reject the old (objects) and take the new ones ¹⁾.

不^フ 山^{ヤマ} *Yāma takāki ga yūēni tattokarāzu*, a mountain is not considerable,
貴^{タカキ} 高^{タカ} because it is high; *Ki ārū wo mōtte tattosi tō su*, because he carries
故^コ wood, people consider him to be respectable.

ル^ル 下^{ビキ} 下^{ビキ} 鼯^ハ *Mūsasabi va takāki yori fikiki ni ōmōmuku. Fikiki yori ta-*
ア^ア ヨリ^{ヨリ} ニ^ニ オ^オ モ^モ ム^ム カ^カ *kaki ni nobōru-koto atarōzu* ²⁾. The bat turns itself with
タ^タ 高^{タカ} its head from above towards below. To climb from below
ハ^ハ ノ^ノ キ^キ towards above it may not.
ズ^ズ オ^オ リ^リ

[**Ku.**] *Kono fa akākū tērite firūgaverū*, the tree-leaf shining red flies around. — *Iyé wo takākū tsūkūru*, to build a house high. — *Kari va takāku tonde tooku yori kūtāri*, the wild goose flying high, comes from afar.

¹⁾ With regard to this construction compare, page 86, line 10, in connection with note 1.

²⁾ *Kasira-gaki kin-moo dzu-i*. XII. 11. recto.

高^{タカ} 翅^{ツバ} 大^{オホ} 鳥^{クマ}
 飛^{トビ} ヲ^ツ ナ^ナ 鵬^ハ
 メ^メ ヲ^ツ ル^ル 空^ク ノ^ノ
 中^{ナカ} ナ^ナ リ^リ

Kuma-taka rá taku no ooi-naru mono nari. Tsúbása tsü-yókü, ku-tsiu taküku tobi-mégürü ¹⁾, the eagle is the biggest among the birds of prey; strong in the wings, he soars round high in the space of the air.

Tsúbása tsuyóku stands to the next sentence in the relation of coördination, in consequence of which its grammatical relation is left undefined and the adverbial form *tsüyóka* is used instead of the predicate *tsüyósi*. (See above, page 106 b. 2.). The same is the case with *yásüku* in the proverb:

難^{ガシ} 易^{ヤシ}
 入^イ 入^イ
 善^{サン} 惡^ア
 道^{ミチ} 道^{ミチ}

Akü-dau ni iri-yásüku, sen-dau ni wá iri-gátasi, = to turn into the way of evil — (is) easy, to tread the way of virtue is difficult.

Kore wá sore yóri yásüku ari-másü, this is, from that out, cheaper, = this is cheaper than that ²⁾. — *Nomi-táku úri*, desirous of drink, to be thirsty. — *Oide hüyákü ari-másü*, or merely *O hüyákü ari-másü*, = your rise is speedy, a greeting at setting out on a journey, and on the way. — *Yóku O ide nasáre-másüta*, = well, your arrival has happened, i. e. be welcome. — *Wárukü nári*, to become bad. — *Wárukü náttu*, has become bad. — *Yo fodo takáku nari-másü* ³⁾, it is too high (too dear).

Remark. Do the adverbs in *ku* in the three last expressions, which we have taken expressly from R. BROWN'S *Colloquial Japanese*, p. XL, retain their adverbial character, or are they predicate adjectives? this question is answered in the place quoted in that sense, „that wherever this form (the adverb in *ku*) precedes a substantive verb, it is an adjective or a predicate adjective,” a conception with which we cannot agree. As the Japanese has no properly called nominative termination, an adjective, to stand as predicate, cannot agree with the subject; these adjectives are governed as subordinate definitions, by verbs which, as regards their signification, answer to our „be” and „become,” but their complement, when it is a noun, to the question where? how? or whereto? in the case of *ni* or *de*, and, if it is an adjective, have *ku* before them, in the equivalent adverbial form. *Ten-ki yóku úri* (*yokari*) or *Ten-ki yóku nari*, the weather is good, or the weather becomes good, is in a language nearer perfection in all respects expressed by *Tempestas bona est*, or *bona fit*, but the Japanese expression is, as far as form is concerned, equal to *Tempestas bene est*, or *bene fit*.

[Si.] *Kono misáki wá hanahada nagási*, this cape is very long. — *Ne no adzi ámúsi*, the taste of the root is sweet. — *Kari ga tobu-koto takasi*, the flight of the geese is high. — *Yama toosi*, the mountain is far. — *Kono sedo nite*

¹⁾ *Kasira-gaki kin-moo dzu-i*. XIII. 6. recto.

²⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 35.

³⁾ *Ibid.* p. 37.

sivo fayási, in this strait the stream is swift. — *Siyu ni mázivárū mono vá akási* (交朱者丹), whoever goes about with red is red. — *Fino atárū tokóro, taki-fino kin-ziyo ve óku koto ásisi*. *Súbéte ásiki nivorí wo ímu bési*, in a place where the sun comes, (and) in the neighborhood of fire (the eggs of the silkworm) to lay is not good. In general people ought to avoid the nasty smell. — *Kono sima fúto nasi*, this island is without inhabitants. — *Yosi to ómóvū*, to think that it is good. — *Ne no adzi asisi yotte*, because the taste of the root is nasty.

[Sa.] *Kono misaki nagása san ri bakari nari*, the length of this cape is only three *ri* (miles).

II. THE ADJECTIVE ACCORDING TO THE SPOKEN LANGUAGE.

The spoken language suppressing the *k* and the *s* of *ki*, *si* and *ku*, thus retains only the *i* and the *u*, which now immediately follow a vowel. Thereby they acquire

for *aki* and *asi* the form *ai* and for *aku* the form *au*, pronounced as *au*, *ao*, *oo*.

„ <i>eki</i> „ <i>esi</i> „ „ <i>ei</i> „ „ <i>eku</i> „ „ <i>eu</i> , „ „ <i>eo</i> .
„ <i>iki</i> „ <i>isi</i> „ „ <i>ii</i> „ „ <i>iku</i> „ „ <i>iu</i> .
„ <i>oki</i> „ <i>osi</i> „ „ <i>oi</i> „ „ <i>oku</i> „ „ <i>ou</i> , „ „ <i>oo</i> .
„ <i>uki</i> „ <i>usi</i> „ „ <i>ui</i> „ „ <i>uku</i> „ „ <i>uu</i> .

The easy written style, which follows the spoken language, has for *au*, *eu* and *ou*, no fixed written form; it supersedes the form of writing to be used by choice

タカウ (high)	also by	タカン, タコウ and タコ!
ナガウ (long)	„ „	ナガフ, ナゴウ „ ナゴ!
タウ (desirous)	„ „	タフ, トウ „ ト!
ナウ (without)	„ „	ナフ, ノウ „ ノ!
シゲウ (close)	„ „	シゲン
トホウ (far)	„ „	トシ!.

Examples of the use of the forms.

[*i* for *ki*]. *Nagai matsu yori otsuru yuki*, snow falling out of the long (high) pine-trees. — *Karoi kemuri noboru*, light smoke ascends. — *Fána simo no samui wo osóru*, the flower fears the cold of the rime.

[*i* for *si*]. *Kuré no jiga akai*, the evening-sun is red. — *Kari ga tobū-koto takai*, the flight of the geese is high. — *Korewa amari tsúisai* ¹⁾, this is too small. —

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 2.

..*nagai* ¹⁾), is long. — ..*takai* ²⁾), is high. — *Fitoga nai* ³⁾), there is no one. — *Korewa dziyaiğa usui* ⁴⁾), this is thin of texture. — ..*utsui* ⁵⁾), is thick. — *Korewa iroga koi* ⁶⁾), this is dark of color. — ..*iroga usui* ⁷⁾), this is light of color. — ..*iroga warui* ⁸⁾), this is bad of color. — *Osoi kara* ⁹⁾), as it is late. — *Yūsui nara, tori-mašoo* ¹⁰⁾), as it is cheap, I shall take it.

[u for ku]. *Ari-gátau* or *Ari-gátoo*, difficult to be, abbreviated for *Ari-gátaku ari-mtsü*, it is difficult to be, — I am obliged to you. — *Yóo moosü*, for *Yókü mgusü*, to speak well. — *Kasikóo suru*, for *Kasikókü suru*, to do wisely. — *Fukóo wadzuróo*, for *Fukákü wádzürávu*, to be deeply involved in difficulty.

In Japanese vocabularies the expressions of the conversational are mostly distinguished from those of the book language by an antecedent △ or ○; thus

可^カ_リ △ ソレデモヨイ。 — 否^イ_ハ ○ ソウシタ事ワナイ。カウテワナイ,

that is: the word *Kanari* of the book language is equivalent to *Soredemo yoi* of the conversational. — *Inaya* (= should not...) of the book language is the same as *Soosita koto wa nai* (= such sort of thing there is not) or as *Kaute wa nai* (= so is there not) of the conversational.

DERIVATIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 10. Adjectives in *karü* and *garü*.

By a fusion of the adverbial form *kü* with *ärü* (being), the form *karü* is obtained (so being as the previous adverb indicates). *Nomi-táku-ari*, passes into *Nomi-takárü* (ノミタクル), = desirous of drink or being thirsty.

Derivatives of this stamp take the same inflections as *ari*, — *áru* being the attributive, *ári* the predicate form; and as the adjectives in *ki* themselves, express a quality, to which the idea of activity is not allied, the derivative form *k + ari* expresses merely the continual presence of the not-active quality.

Waka-ki, young. — *Waka-ki toki ni*, in youthful time. — *Wakakárü toki ni*, while or as long as one is young. — *Wakakári si toki yóri*, since the time when one was young.

Naki, not at hand, being without. — *Nakári*, continually not to be at hand.

Siró ki, white. — *Sirokárü*, continually white.

Yúsüki, easy. — *Yúsükári*, continually to be easy.

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, page 8.

²⁾ page 12.

³⁾ page 5.

⁴⁾ page 23.

⁵⁾ page 24.

⁶⁾ „ page 23.

⁷⁾ page 23.

⁸⁾ page 14.

⁹⁾ page 41.

¹⁰⁾ page 37.

Remark. This illustration of the derivative form *kari* explains the obscure §§ 55 and 57 of RODRIGUEZ *Élém.* The *garu* there mentioned on page 55, lines 8 to 12, is a fusion of the genitive-termination, *ga* and *aru* peculiar to the conversational language exclusively. Joined to the Chinese word *Yek-ki* ¹⁾, gladness, with it, it forms *Yékkigáru*, being full of gladness, synonymous with *Yekkináru*, *Yekkina*, being glad. See § 12.

§ 11. Adjectives in *áru*.

Ari, áru (有 ^ア_リ), verb continuative, to be at hand, to be there, to exist, antithetical to **Náki** (無 ^ナ_キ), not at hand, ...less. *Ari* is the radical (to be) and at the same time, but by exception, the predicate form (= there is); *áru* the substantive form (the being), which is at the same time used attributively (being), to derive adjectives from substantives.. — *Iro ari*, = there is color or colors are there. — *Kumova iro ari*, = what concerns the cloud, there is color, i. e. the cloud has color. If the definition: „there is color” is to become attributive, then *ari* acquires the attributive form *áru*; the subject *iro* now becomes an attributive proposition of *áru*, and assumes the attributive form, thus the genitive termination *no*, in the spoken language, *ga*. *Iro no* or *iro ga aru kumo* means, literally: colors present being clouds, i. e. colored clouds or clouds which have colors.

The genitive termination *no* is often omitted in similar expressions, particularly when the attributive definition joined to *aru* is a verb, which is in its radical form; e. g. *Asiki níwá áru ki*, wood (*ki*) of a bad smell. — *Niroi*, to smell, smell.

Examples. *Tsümi ári*, there is guilt. — *Tsümi áru mono*, a guilty person, criminal. — *Futá-kokóro no áru fütó*, a man who has two hearts, a double-hearted man. — *Omóí fütátsü áru kotoba*, a word (*kotoba*), that a comple (*fütátsü*) of meanings (*omóí*) has, an equivocal word. — *Kokóro-sási áru mono*, one who has a will, a firm character. — *Aya-áru ori-mono*, flowers having texture, flowered silk-stuff. — *Sai-vai-áru*, happy. — *Yamari-áru*, sickly. — *Koto-áru*, having business, busy. — *Fima-áru* or *sukimaga áru*, having free time. — 有 ^ア_リ 功 ^{コウ}_{コウ} 人 ^{ヒト}_{ヒト} *Kou-áru fütó*, a man who has merit. — 有 ^ア_リ 益 ^{エキ}_{エキ} *Yeki-aru*, profitable.

§ 12. Adjectives in *naru*, *na* and *táru*.

By means of the substantive suffix *narü*, which is, in my opinion, a fusion of the Local *ni* and of *ári*, *áru*, and thus means „being lasting in ...,” from

¹⁾ 悦 ^エ_ツ 喜 ^キ_キ.

substantives and adverbs adjectives are formed, which indicate a possession of that which the root expresses.

The familiar conversational and the epistolary style abbreviates *naru* to *na*. — *Ki*, yellow. *Ki-uri*, the yellow pumkin ¹⁾. *Ki-náru* or *Ki-na uri*, a pumkin that is yellow. — Δ *Fimcha tokóro*, a place of rest. — Δ *Kirei-na nizi*, a beautiful rainbow.

With the inflectional termination *ni* the radical forms of this class are used as adverbs. — *Oói ut*, greatly. — *Tsūné ni*, commonly. — *Suguni*, directly, straightly.

As words, which have *naru* for their derivative form are to be noticed:

1) <i>Oói</i> ²⁾ 大 <small>オホ</small> , great.	<i>Ue</i> 上 <small>ウエ</small> , above.
<i>Tsūné</i> 常 <small>ジョウ</small> , common.	<i>Sita</i> 下 <small>シタ</small> , below.
<i>Mare</i> 希 <small>マレ</small> , rare, seldom.	<i>Maé</i> 前 <small>マエ</small> , before.
<i>Sugu</i> 直 <small>スグ</small> , right.	<i>Iya</i> 不 欲 <small>イヤ</small> , unwelcome.

Examples of the use of the forms.

Fitó sono nare no óoi náru wo siru koto nási ³⁾, = it is not the fact (*koto nasi*) that a man knows that his rice-crop is so large (ample). — 音 呼 オンコ, 大 小 ダイショウ アリ. オ、イ ナルハ ハトノ 大 小 オホコチ サ アリ, *Ia ko ra dai seo ari*; *óoi náru va fato no óoisá dri*, of parrots people have big and little ones; those which are big have the bigness of a dove. — *Sono kou óoi nari*, his merit is great. — *Kari-ko no katawara naru taka-tokóro*, a high place at the side of the silkworms. — *Sakiui neruri si kariko va ūve* (or *ūe*) *naru kawa wo nugi idzuru*, = the silkworms that have previously slept, throw off the skin being (which is) upon them.

2) By means of *naru*, or *na*. Chinese words are made Japanese adjectives.

仁 ニン ナル, *Zin-nárū*, humane.

忠 チュウ ナル, *Tsiu-nárū*, sincere.

不 忠 フチュウ ナル, *Fu-tsiu-nárū*, insincere.

勇 ユウ ナル, *Yuu-nárū*, brave.

¹⁾ *Cucurbita Pepo verrucosa* LINN.

²⁾ *Oói*, great, after the old writing オホビ, and the forms *ooki*, *oosi*, in the conversational language *ooi*, derived from *oo*, much, are frequently interchanged; the same writer frequently uses by turns *ooisa* (オ、イサ) and *oosa* (オ、サ) for „great,” and *ooi-nari* and *ooki nari* for „is great.”

³⁾ *Dai Gaku*, VIII, 2.

眞^シ 實^{ジナル}, *Sin-zits-nárŭ*, solid, real, sincere.

丁^イ 寧^{チナル}, *Tei-nei-nárŭ*, courteous.

綺^キ 麗^{レナル}, *Ki-rei-nárŭ*, beautiful, fair.

不^ブ 綺^キ 麗^{レナル}, *Bu-ki-rei-nárŭ*, not beautiful.

様^{ヰナ}, *Yŕu-na*, ...ly, being as... — *Yumino yŕu na*, archwise.

悅^ツ 喜^{キナ}, *Yekki-na* ¹⁾, glad, joyful.

笑^シ 止^シ, *Sŕo-si* ¹⁾, = cease laughing, feel pain. — *Sŕo-si nari*, It is not to be laughed at, It is sorrowful.

Tárŭ (タル), = *te aru*, is also used to form Japanese adjectives from Chinese words. — 現^ケ 然^{ゼタル}, *Gen-zen-tarŭ*, apparent, public.

If more adjectives thus formed follow, linked to one another, then only the last has the attributive form *tarŭ*, whereas those preceding have the indefinite form *tari*.

君^ク 有^{アリ} 閒^{カン} 瑟^シ [○] *Sit-tari, kan-tari, fŭ-tárŭ kun-si ari* ²⁾, there is a prince,
子^シ 斐^ヒ 兮^{タリ} 兮^{タリ} ^ス stately, worthy, perfect.

§ 13. Derivative adjectives in *ka*.

The termination *ka*, in my opinion, allied to the adjective radical forms *Kŕ* and *Kŕo* (page 109 n^o. 51), just as these, indicates, that the quality expressed by the radical word is present in a large degree or is strongly prominent. As evidence of the mutual affinity of *ka*, *ke* and *ko* may be adduced that the forms *kanaru*, *kanari* and *kani*, the first being attributive, the second predicate, the third adverbial, are frequently superseded by *kŕki*, *kŕsi* and *kŕku*. — For *kánaru* and *kánari* the conversational language uses only *kána*.

Adjectives of this class are:

Akiráká 明^{アキラカ}, bright, clear, light; allied to *Ake*, light.

Atataká 温^{アタタカ}, warm; allied to *Atataneru*, to warm.

Farúká 遙^{ハルカ}, far. — *Sono áto farúká nári* or *farúkési*, his trace is far.

Kásüká 幽^{カスカ}, remote, solitary. — *Umi no kazé va kasüká nári*, the sea-wind is so solitary. — *Mitsi ga kásükani farúkana*, the way solitary and far.

¹⁾ Both expressions are taken up here, to illustrate the forms occurring in RODRIGUEZ *Éléments*, p. 55, line 9 and 10 *sŕsina*, „avoir du regret” and *yekina*, „se rejouir.”

²⁾ *Dai Gaku*, III, 4.

Kiraraká 晶^{キラカ}, brilliant; from *Kira-kira*, glitter; *Kirara*, glimmer, *mika*.

Komaká 細^{コマカ}。細密, fine; allied to *Komamérü*, to make fine, to make small. —

Komakana *sünd*, fine sand. — *Komaku ni*, adverb, to the most minute particulars; minutely, exactly.

Nadaraká 朽^{ナダラカ}, smooth, ironed out; from *Naderü*, to iron, to stroke.

Nameraká 滑^{ナメラカ}, smooth, slippery; allied to *Namerü*, suck, and to *Namésü*, to make smooth.

Nodoká 悠^{ノド}然^カ, set fair (of the weather); from *Nodo*, calm.

Ogosoku 莊^{オソク}, severe, strict. — *Oróka* 愚^{オカ}。癡, stupid, obsolete *öróké*.

Orósoku 疎^{オソク}, negligent, lazy. — *Orósokani su*, to neglect; allied to *örösu*, to lay down, put off.

Sadaka 眞^{サダカ}。真, certain, sure, definitive. — *Sadaka nári* or *Sadakesi*, it is certain; allied to *Sadámeru*, to define, fix.

Sidzüká 靜^{シヅカ}。寂然, calm, still. — *Asa-ji ga sidzuka nari*, or *sidzükána*, or *sidzükési*, the morning is so calm. — *Sidzükáni*, old-Japanese also *sidzukuni yuku*, to go softly, slink, sneak. The old form *Sidzukuni* pleads for the influence of the vocal harmony. (Compare page 62, line 2). The radical word *Sidzu* is preserved in *Sidzu-kokóro*, a calm mind.

Tairaraká 平^{タラカ}, or *Tairaká*, even, plane, flat; from *ta*, hand and *jira*, flat, thus hand-flat-ish.

Tsümá-biráká 詳^{ツマビラカ}, clear and plain, decided, settled; after the *Siwori* from *Tsumári*, concise and *jiraku*, to open. — *Tsumábiraká ni*, or old-Japanese *Tsümbirakékü*, adverb, plainly.

Wadzüká 僅^{ワヅカ}。纔, scarce; *Wadzüká ni*, scarcely, hardly.

§ 14. Derivative adjectives in *yaka*.

Attributive *yakánaru*, predicate *yakánári* (in the conversational language *yakana*), adverbially *yakani*.

The derivative form *yaka* means as much as having the appearance of that which the root points out ¹⁾.

To the words of this class, which have passed from the old language to the new, belong:

¹⁾ This notice of the meaning of *yaka* agrees with that which a Japanese etymologist gives of it: ヤカ。凡^{スベテ}物^{モノ}モ^モ形^{カタ}々^々容^{イロ}シ^シテ 詞^{コトバ}ズ。 — *Wa-gun siwori*, under *yaka*.

Asáyāká 鮮^{アサカ}カ。鮮明, fresh and bright as the morning (*asa*). Also *Azayaka*, *Azayagu*, *Asayuga*, *Azarakeki*. — *Asayaká naru iro*, a bright color. — *Kurenai va iro hana-hada asáyāká nari* 紅藍花ハ色^{イロ}甚^タ鮮^{アサカ}明^{アカリ}ニ, the safflower is very bright of color.

Fūyáyaká 冷^{ヒヤカ}カ, bleak, cold. — *Aki-kazé va fūyayaka nari*, the autumn wind is bleak. From *fiya*, cold.

Ke-zayaka 氣^ケ亮^{ハルカ}カ, bright (of the weather).

Kirāviyaká 晶^{キラビ}カ, glittering; also *kirabiyaka*, from *kirāmi*, to glitter.

Kōmāyāká 穠^{コモリ}カ, 1) tight, close, dense; from *komi*, *komu*, to fill. — *Kūsá ki komayakana*, grass and wood close growing. — *Komayaka naru saké* 濃酒, strong beer. — 2) narrow, precise.

Maméyaka 眞^{マコト}成^{ナリ}カ, sincere, unfeigned, true; from *Mamé*, reality.

Miyabiyaka 艶^{ミヤビ}カ。媛, splendid, beautiful; allied to *miyaburi*, courtly.

Nagóyāká 妍^{ナギ}妖^{ヤカ}カ, maidenly, graceful; from *Nago*, maid.

Nigiyaka 賑^{ニギハヤ}カ, busy, bustling. — *Nigivari*, bustle.

Nikoyaka 婉^{ニキ}カ, fine, tender, soft, mild; from *Niko*, pleasing; fine.

Nobiyaka 舒^{ノビ}カ, elastic; from *Nobi*, *u*, to stretch.

Odáyāká 穩^{オダ}カ, calm, still; from *ōdavi*, *u*, to become calm.

Saváyaká 爽^{サカ}快^{カイ}カ, bright; gay; brave.

Sayaká 清^{セイ}明^{メイ}カ, ook *Sayakeki*, clear (of light and sound).

Sináyaká 娜^{シノビ}カ。嬾, supple, pliant; soft, flexible; also *Sinābiyaka*, from *Sināmi*, to bend (oneself).

Sinóbiyaka 密^{シノビ}カ, secretly; from *Sinobi*, *u*, to hide; to suffer.

Sūkóyāká 健^{スグ}カ。勇健, strong, full of power; also *Sūkúyāká*, *Sūkúyōká*, *Sūkáyāká* and *Sukúyāká*; allied to *Súké*, support. (?)

Sūmíyāká 速^{スミ}カ, quick, swift; allied to *Sūsāmi*, pronounce *smi*, to advance. — *Kawa-oso va midzu-naka wo fashiru-koto sūmíyāká nari*, the motion of the river otter under water is quick.

Tawóyāká 嫵^{タウ}カ, also *Tawayaka*, pliable, supple, soft; after Japanese etymologists from *Ta*, hand, and *Yowa*, weak, being the weaker sex, opposed to the man, called *Tawoya-me*; — allied to *Tuwame*, *eru*, to bend. — *Nami kaze mo tawóyákani naru*, waves and wind become softer.

Wakáyāká 天^{ワカ}カ, juvenile. — *Waka-ki*, young. — *Wakayaka naru sámurai*, a youthful warrior. — *Yuruyaka* 徐^{ユル}カ, limp; slow; allied to *Yarusi*, to loose.

§ 15. Derivative adjectives in **kéki** or **kóki**.

Kéki or **Kóki**, radical form **Ke** or **Ko** (濃), = strong (of taste or color), already mentioned among the adjectives in *ki*, whenever it is joined to the root of another word, signifies that the object richly possesses that, which is mentioned by this word. Words of this stamp are chiefly characterized as old-Japanese, although not totally excluded from the modern language. The conversational language supersedes the attributive *keki* or *koki* and the predicate *kesi* or *kosi* with *kei* or *koi*, and the adverbial *kekū* or *kokū* by *keu* (*keo*) or *kou* (*koo*). The forms *keki* and *koki* frequently mutate with the derivative form *ka* (§ 13).

To this class belong:

<i>Azara-keki</i> 鮮 ^{アサラ} ケキ, quite fresh.	<i>Ne-koki</i> 睡 ^ネ 濃 ^ネ , lying in a deep sleep.
<i>Fáru-keki</i> ¹⁾ 亮 ^{ハル} ケキ, very clear.	
<i>Keja-keki</i> 健 ^ケ ケキ。尤, very strong.	<i>Nure-koki</i> 濡 ^ヌ 濃 ^ネ , thoroughly damp.
<i>Sámū-keki</i> 寒 ^{サム} ケキ, very cold.	
<i>Sidzu-keki</i> 惛 ^{シズ} ケキ, very calm.	<i>Sitsu-koki</i> 湿 ^{シツ} (濕)濃 ^ネ , wet-through.
<i>Tsuyu-keki</i> 露 ^{ツユ} 多 ^タ , full of dew.	

§ 16. Derivative adjectives in **siki**, = ..like.

Adjective **siki** (シキ), adverbial **siku** (シク), predicate **sisi** (シ), often, but not generally, **si** (シ); in the conversational language by the elision of *k* and *s*, mostly **sii** (シイ) and **siu** (シウ シン), the last mentioned frequently pronounced as *šu* (*shu*); substantive **sisá** (シサ); continuative verb **sikari**, **u**, = so to be. Root **si** (如^シ), = so, (Lat. *sic* ²⁾).

Siki means, just as ..like (German ..*lich*, Dutch ..*lijk*, ..*aardig*), equality with that, which is expressed by the root, to which it is joined. Being of a similar sound to the transitive verb *Siki*, *Siku*, = to spread, Chinese 敷。³⁾ 布, it is indicated in writing also by these Chinese characters, thus by a rebus, which places the word indicated in a false light.

As in old-Japanese many of the adjectives in *ki* (§ 9. B.) occur with the termination *siki* or *ziki*, the Japanese philologists consider the *ki* as an abbreviation of *siki*.

¹⁾ Distinguished from *Fáru ke-siki*, spring-weather.

²⁾ 如^シ。似^ニモノト云^フ事^{コト}。Zoo boo si-mon tsu-boo ki, 1773, under *Siku*.

Siki forms adjectives from nouns, from adverbs and interjections, and from verbs.

- 1) Denominative and Adverbial i. e. derived from nouns and adverbs are, e. g.
A-siki 惡^アシキ。邪, bad. — *Kokoro no asiki mono*, any one bad in disposition, a person of bad character. — *Asiki utsuwa*, bad tools. — *Asiku mandū*, to learn badly. — *Fino teri-kōmu wa hanahada asisi*, = the entrance of sunshine (in an apartment where silkworms are bred) is very injurious. — *Yosi asi wo wakemacennū*, = not once to distinguish the, „it is good and it is bad,” not to distinguish good from bad. — *Asikāru*, continuative verb, from *asikū* and *āru*.
Ava-siki 淡^アシキ, frothy; faint of taste; also *Ava-ava-siki*.
Aya-siki 奇^アシキ。怪, wonderful; singular; from *aya!*, exclamation of surprise. *Ayasiki ame*, a wonderful rain, e. g. a stone-rain.
Bi-bi-siki 美^ビ々、敷^シ, handsome. — *Fage-siki* 烈^ゲシキ, heavy; eager.
Fana fada- or *Hana hada-siki* 甚^{ハナ}ダシキ, very, uncommonly; from *hanahada*, very.
Fisá-siki 久^ヒシキ, long ago, antithetic to *Sibárakū*, shortly, lately. — *Fakū-sai Hon-tsiyau ni towóru koto fisási*, it is long, that *Fakū-sai* has intercourse with our empire. — *Fisása*, length of time. — *Iku fisása ni nari-másüká*, = what lapse of time is it?, how long is it ago. In *Fisa* is placed the meaning of 日去, i. e. the sun or the day goes hence, or has gone hence, which refers to *Fī sāršī*.
Fūtó-siki 均^フシキ。等, = of one sort; agreeing.
Fūtó-siki 太^フシキ, thickish, stout.
Ikáya-siki 如^カ何^カシキ, interrogative, inquisitive.
Iyá-siki 賤^イシキ, despicable, mean; from *Iya*, no!
Kána-siki 哀^カシキ, painful, pitiful; from *Kana!* alas! — *Kanasiki kána!* how pitiful!
Kibi-siki 嚴^キシキ, originally *Kimi-siki*, = masterly, authoritative, strict, severe.
Kuda-kuda-siki 瑣^{クダ}々、敷^シ, piecemeal.
Kuru-siki 苦^クシキ, *Kuru-kuru-siki* 苦々敷, tiresome, disagreeable, grievous.
Mi-kuru-siki, disagreeable to be seen, ugly, misformed. Root *Kuri*, *u*, to reel (reel off cocoons).
Kurá-siki 妙^クシキ。美。委, fair, neat. — *Kurá-siki ma*, a fair horse. — *Kurá-siku*, neat, precise.
Mádzu-siki 貧^マシキ, poor, shabby.

Mása-siki 正^マシキ, real; from *Mása*, truth.

Mānū-siki 空^マシキ, without contents, empty; in vain; from *mī*, kernel, fruit and *na*, without; thus fruitless. — *Mānū-siku nāru*, to become empty; to give up the ghost.

Onā-ziki 同^オジキ, identical.

Sabi-siki 寂^サシキ。閑^サ寂 淋。孤, rusty; alone (solitary).

Suzu-siki 冷^スシキ, cool. — *Suzu-sikāru*, continually cool.

Tādā-siki 但^タシキ。眞, proper, real.

Taye-daye-siki 斷^タ々^タ々^タ敷^シ, often interrupted, by pausing.

Uré-siki 喜^ウシキ, glad, merry, joyful, pleasant. — *Watákusi wo urésiku gozāri-māsū*, also I am joyful. — *Urésisa*, gladness. — *Urésisa kagiri nakeri*, the gladness was boundless. — *Urésikāru* or *Urésigāru*, = *urésiku-aru*, continuative verb, to rejoice. — *Ii-kāzu no ooi wo urésigāru*, to be glad at the greatness (*ooi wo*) of the number of days (at a long life). — *Urésimu*, transitive to make glad. — *Uré*, Yakutic *Yōr*, joy. — The *Wa-gun Sicori* gives 得^エ (*e*, *uru*, = to get, acquire) as root.

Utsukú-siki 美^ウシキ, lovely; agreeable; handsome; old-Japanese *Itsuku-siki*; allied to *Itsukú-simu*, or also *Utsukú-simu*, to love.

Yāsú-siki 温^ヤ和^ワシキ, meek; honest, graceful.

Yōrō-siki 宜^ヨシキ。義, apt, fit; well.

2) Verbal, derived by means of *siki*.

The transitive or intransitive meaning of the verb, from which adjectives are derived by means of *siki*, passes over to the adjective too, because *siki* is, by nature, neuter. On the manner, in which the derivation in one case or another is brought about, the Japanese etymologists, at least those, whose works are within our reach, preserve silence; they talk about it, indeed, but leave the matter itself in the dark. To be able to treat thoroughly and satisfactorily, this class of words, which, from an etymological point of view, belong to the most intricate, we ought also to be able to compare the forms, in which they occur in the different dialects of the popular language. As these are still unknown to us, we think we must confine ourselves to a mere indication of the most conspicuous phenomena.

Adjectives with a causative meaning derived by means of *siki* from causative or factive verbs, from verbs, by which, as it is known, to cause an ac-

tion to take place or be carried out is indicated, and which in Japanese, as it will be seen, hereafter, are formed by changing the verbal termination *i* into *asi* (or for vocal-harmony sometimes into *osi*). From *Konómi*, = to like, to be fond of, is formed the causative *Konomási*, = to cause fondness for, to make one to be fond of, and from this the adjective *Konomásiki*, = lovely. The adjectives, so formed, thus show, that in the nature of the object lies the action, expressed by the causative verb, to exercise or to bring to light.

To this kind of adjectives, among others, belong:

Ibukásiki 訝^イ敷^キ, strange, wonderful; polite expression for: doubtful, suspected; from *Ibukási*, *u*, to excite surprise, and this from *Ibuki*, *u*, to be surprised at something.

Isogásiki 鬧^イ敷^キ。急。忙, busy; from *Isogási*, *u*, to make busy; and this from *Isogi*, *u*, to make haste. — *Isogásiki tokóro*, a busy place. — *Watákusi wá kon-nitsi wá isogási* (私^ワ今^イ日^ニ多^ク忙^シイ^イ)¹⁾, I have much business to day. As a variation of *Isogásiki*, we have *Isogavásiki*, derived from the causative form *Isogavási*, = to make busy, which proceeds from *Isogávi*, *u*, = to be busy.

Itamásiki or *Itavásiki* 傷^イ敷^キ。痛敷, smarting, painful; from *Itamási*, *u*, to torture, and this from *Itámi*, *u*, to feel pain, to suffer.

Konomásiki, lovely, agreeable, from *Konomási*, *u*, cause to like, to excite one's love, to attract a person; and this from *Kónóni*, *u*, to be fond of. 好.

Medzürásiki 珍^メ敷^シ。奇, exciting interest, interesting; from *Medzürási*, *u*, to excite interest, and this from *Mede*, *Medzüru*, also *Medzüri*, to take interest in..., to have gladly (愛). Distinguished from *Medzüráká*, important; costly. Every thing that is strange and rare, and however insignificant, an object of taste, is called *Medzürási*. If from *Me-tsüki* or *Mi-tsüki*, = to fix the eye upon a thing, an adjective with the signification of „attractive to the eye,” must be formed by means of *siki*, we should obtain *Metsükásiki*, as derivative from the causative form *Metsükási* (= cause one to look), but not *Medzürásiki* ²⁾.

Mutsükásiki, tiresome, grievous, vexing, 難, or also, by means of rebus, ex-

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 16.

²⁾ This as an answer to the question, proposed in R. BROWN'S *Colloquial Japanese*, XII.

pressed by 六^ッ借^キ and 六^ッ々^カ敷^キ; from *Mutsukasi*, *u*, to vex, to grieve, make sad, and this from *Mutsuki*, *u*, whence the continuative *Mutsukári*, *u*, = to be grieved (or sad), is more in use.

Natsukásiki 嬋^ハ媛^メ, vulgo 懷^ナ敷^キ, attractive, engaging. — *Fánanó nivóvi natsukásii*, the scent of flowers is attractive. — From *Natsukási*, *u*, make disposed, excite inclination or love; and this from *Natsuki*, *u*, to be inclined, have inclination to.

Omómükásiki 偉^{オホ}慶^キ, also by contraction *Omojáski*, pronounced as *Omongásiki*, attractive, engaging; from *Omó-mukási*, *u*, to attract, and this from *Omó-muki*, *u*, to turn oneself with the face (*ómó*) towards a thing. 趣^ス. 趣^ス向^ム. From *muki*, = to go to meet, arises a continuative verb *mukávi*, *u*, to be turned towards; whence *mukavasi*, *u*, the causative form; from this is derived *omómükavásiki*, to be continually attractive.

Omöróski, causing to think of one, keeping another's thoughts engaged, and that in a good sense, thus engaging, dear, kind; from *Omorási*, *u*, also *Omo-rósi*, *u*, to cause to think, and this from *ömóci*, *u*, to think (思).

Osoróski 恐^{オソ}シ^シキ, frightful; from *Osórósi*, *u*, to make fear, and this from *Osóré*, *uru*, to fear.

Sawagásiki 躁^{サウ}敷^キ. 騷^{サウ}, full of rustling and noise, stormy, turbulent: from *Sawagási*, *u*, to make rustle, to disturb, to confound, and this from *Sawagi*, *u*, rustle, make a noise, be uneasy (怖^{サウ}不安也). — *Sivo sawagasi*, the sea is stormy. — *Kokóro wo sawagásii*, make the mind uneasy. — *Sáru va sei sawagasiku site mono wo kai-su* ¹⁾, = the monkey makes much noise and injures every thing. — The old-Japanese has as variation of *Sawagi* also *Sawagavi*, rage, tear; *Sawagavási*, *u*, enrage, and *Sawagavásiki*, full of noise.

Tanomóski 可^カ頼^レ, trusty, a thing upon which one can rely; from *Tanomosi*, *u*, make trust, and this from *Tanómi*, *u*, to trust to, to rely upon.

Urámásiki, exciting disgust; from *Urámasi*, *u*, make have disgust, to prejudice against oneself, and this from *ürámi*, *u*, to be disgusted with. 怨^{ウラ}恨^ミ.

Uráyamásiki (vulgo, and by way of rebus 浦^{ウラ}山^{ヤマ}敷^キ), worthy of envy; from *üráyamási*, *u*, to make one envy, excite envy, and this from *üráyami*, *u*, to envy. 羨^{ウラ}歎^ミ.

¹⁾ *Kasira-gaki kin-moo dzu-i*. XII. 11. recto.

Uruvāsiki, *ürüvāsiki* 艶^ルシキ。美, charming; from *Uruvāsi*, *u*, enliven, and this from *ürüvi*, *üróvi*, to be enlivened, or charmed.

Utágavāsiki 訝^ツシキ。不審, doubtful; from *utágavāsu*, make doubt, and this from *utágavi*, *u* (疑。嫌。窓), to doubt.

Utomāsiki, despicable, from *Utomāsu*, to despise, properly to estrange, and this from *ütómi*, *u*, to be strange, to be despised. 疎.

Wadzüravāsiki 煩^ツ敷^シ。惱, tiresome, teasing, plaguing, from *Wadzüravāsi*, *u*, to tease, and this from *Wadzürávi*, *u*, to be plagued.

Yádórāsiki, hospitable; from *Yádórāsi*, *u*, to lodge, take anyone in, and this from *Yadóri*, *u* (宿^フ), to lodge somewhere.

Yawāsiki 和^フシキ, calming, from *Yawāsi*, *u*, to make rest, to reduce to calmness, and this from *Yavi*, *u*, or *Yami*, *u*, to come to rest.

Yōrōkobāsiki, joyful, rejoicing, from *Yōrōkobāsi*, *u*, to please anyone, and this from *Yōrōkōbi*, *u*, to rejoice, to be glad. 歡。喜.

Yūkāsiki 悵^ツシキ, urging on, impatient; from *Yūkāsi*, *u*, to make go; to drive; and this from *Yuki*, *u*, to go.

§ 17. Derivative adjectives in *ká-siki*.

To the adjectives in *siki* unite the derivatives in *ká-siki*, *ká-siku*, *ka-si*; terminations, which are considered by Japanese etymologists as contractions of *kamāsiki*, *kamāsiku*, *kamāsi* (for which *kavasiki* etc. also occur), and which are indicated in writing by 通^カ敷^シ. The sign 通 means to go through or to make go through for...., in Japanese *Kajovi* or *Kajovasi*. Is this character to be remarked as a rebus here, or is its signification allied to that of the Japanese termination? This question remains unanswered by the Japanese philologists. The writer of the present, leaves the rebus for what it is, and sees in the *kasiki* in question nothing more, than the frequently occurring abbreviation of *siká-siki*, of which the radical form *sika* (然^シ) is quoted among the adjectives in *ki* (page 109 n°. 72) with the meaning of „being so, such.” *Kasi* is met with, and that as a substantive predicate verb with the signification of „is as much as,” in simple expressions such as „Heer (Mister) *to va kimi zo kasi*” ¹⁾, = the word Heer is as much as *kimi*; whereas the continuative verbal

¹⁾ I borrow this satisfactory example from a metrical list of Japanese and Dutch words, by a Japanese dilettante.

form *Karu* (for *sikáru*) in *Karu ga yūni* (= for reason (*yūni*) of the (*ga*) being so (*káru*), that is therefore, on that account). is generally in use, and that to exclusion of *sikáru*. The derivative forms *kásiki*, *kásiku*, *kásisi* or *kasi* thus answer to ...ish, ...some; whereas **kamásiki** is equivalent to a fusion of *siká-mási-siki* (*mási*, = to be).

To this class of derivative adjectives, among others, belong:

Fúdzí- (vulgo *Fúdzü-*) *ka-siki* 慙^ㇿ通^ㇿ敷^ㇿ. 耻敷, timid; also *Fúdzi-* (vulgo *Fadzu-*) *ka-másiki*, or *-kavásiki*; from *Fúdzi*, blush; *Fadzu*, *Fadzüru*, to blush.

Fáru-ká-siki 晴^ㇿ通^ㇿ敷^ㇿ, clear (of the weather); also *Fáru-kavásiki*; root *Fare*, clear. *Kara-kari ga másiki*, droll, jocose; from *Kara-gari*, to laugh, and this from *Kara kara*, = ha! ha!

Ne-ka-siki 寐^ㇿ通^ㇿ敷^ㇿ, sleepy, also *Ne-kama-* (or *kava*) *siki*; from *Ne*, sleep. *Ya-kamásiki* 喧^ㇿ通^ㇿ敷^ㇿ, noisy; from *ya!* an exclamation like Heh! holla! ho! ¹⁾. — *Koko de yakamásiki wo sakerü*, here people prevent what is noisy. — *Sidzuka ni site yakamasi nai* (寂不喧), it is quiet and without noise.

Yume-ka-siki 夢^ㇿ通^ㇿ敷^ㇿ, also *Yumé-kama-* (or *kava-*) *siki*, as in a dream; from *Yume*, a dream.

§ 18. Derivative adjectives in **rá-siki**, = having a resemblance to....

They are generally denominative. **Ra** is instead of **ará**, which has arisen by the strengthening the final vowel of *ari* into *a*; **ará-siki**, by apheresis **ra-siki**, thus means: „such (*siki*) as were there...,” or „so as if there were.” **Makoto**, = truth; **Makoto-narü**, = being truth, true; **Makoto-ra-siki**, such as if it were truth, i. e. probable. *Makoto-rá-siki koto*, or *Makoto-rá-sisa*, probability.

Ra-siki therefore answers to the derivative termination ..ish, so far as it means having a resemblance to that, which is indicated by the root, as bluish ²⁾, whereas the Japanese termination gives at the same time, to the adjective formed with it, a diminishing, frequently also a contemptible signification in addition.

The old way of writing the predicate form *Arasi* is 有^ㇿ良^ㇿ志^ㇿ. The presence of 有, which is here ideographically, with the signification of „to be

¹⁾ *Ya*, *yobi-kakuru koye ni iveri*, = *Ya* is said of a calling voice. — *Wa-gun siwori*, under *Ya*.

²⁾ BRILL, *Nederl. Spraakleer*, 1854, § 42. 1. 1).

on hand, = Jap. *ari*," pleads for the correctness of the assimilation of *ra-si* to *ara-si*, and therefore against the supposition, that the *ra* used here might be the characteristic of the plural (§ 5. III. 1. page 56).

The dialect of *Nagasaki* has **ráska** for *rásiki*.

Examples of derivative adjectives in *ra-siki*:

Otoko, man; *Otoko-rásiki ónna*, a manly woman.

Onnágō, woman; *Ounnágō-rásiki otoko*, a womanish (effeminate) man, = *ónnáo yau ni okonái-másu otoko* ¹⁾, i. e. a man conducting himself like a woman.

Warabe, *Warambe*, boy; *Warambe-rásiki*, boyish.

Ko-domo, child; *Kodomo-rásiki*, childish. *Kodomo-rásiki handasi*, childish-talk. *Ko-domo no yau nárü*, childlike.

Kimi, gentleman; *Kimi-rásiki*, playing the gentleman.

Dai-miyau, = great name, imperial prince; *Dai-miyau-rásiki hátamoto*, a vassal, who plays the prince.

Baka, fool, madman; *Baka-rásiki*, stupid, foolish; *Baka-rásiki koto*, stupidity, folly.

Uso, gossip, untruth; *Uso-rásiki*, trifling.

The derivative *Fító-rásiki*, from *Fító*, man, answers formally indeed to „human,” must however, with a view to the examples quoted, have a signification, by which it is only applicable to a not human being, that acts humanly ²⁾.

Also words of Chinese origin are compounded with *rásiki*, e. g.

Kou 功 ³⁾, merit; *Kou-aru waza*, = a merit being deed, a deed, that really is meritorious. — *Kou-rásiki waza*, an apparently meritorious deed.

Ri-kou 利 ¹⁾ 口 ²⁾, whetted mouth or tongue, eloquence. — *Rikou-nárü fító*, an eloquent, witty (but not blunt) man. — *Rikou-rásiki fító*, a man, who plays the witty person or the orator.

Ai 愛 ³⁾, kind; *Ai-rásiki*, amiable.

Ka-wai, proper 可 ⁴⁾ 愛 ⁵⁾ *Ka-ai*, kind, agreeable. *Kawai-rásiki*, amiable, lovely.

Ka-wai-rásiki naki koto, ungraciousness.

Bin-bou 貧 ⁶⁾ 乏 ⁷⁾, poverty; *Bin-bou-rásiki*, poorly.

¹⁾ Thus Mr. Oono Y., when requested to describe the meaning of *Onnagorasiki otoko*, defined it

²⁾ We know this word alone from a Vocabulary, in which it was translated „menschlikerwijze.”

§ 19. Derivative adjectives in **beki**.

Placed after the attributive form of a verb **beki** (**可** ^レ_キ) signifies, that what the verb expresses may, can, must and shall happen. The predicate form is **bési**, the adverbial **békū**. — *Onna kono téwaza wó sū-bési*, women may, can or will do this work — *Kore wa onna no sū-beki tewaza nari*, this is a work to be done by women. — *Sū-beki*, = being allowed or able to do, is here conceived in an active sense, whereas the genitive *onna no* precedes as definition. Compare page 97 § 8. VI. — *Fító-bitó kono tama wo tattomū*, every one values this jewel highly. — *Kore wa fító-bitó no tattomū-beki tama nari*, this is a jewel, which every one may, can and shall value highly.

In the chapter on the verbs we shall refer again to *Beki*.

§ 20. Derivative adjectives in **náki**, = without, ...less, indicating the want of that, which is mentioned in the radical word.

Na-ki 無^ナ_キ, in the conversational language **Nai**, from the radical word **Na**, = not, used substantively means „the good for nothing” or „something good for nothing,” = nothing, e. g.: *Fito wo nai ga siro ni su*, to consider a person as good for nothing (of no value). *Nai ga* is genitive.

Used attributively it means „not existing:” *Naki-fító* is a not existing man, one deceased; *Nai-mono*, a good for nothing, a not existing thing, a nothing. — *Fító no naki-koto wo kiku*, to hear of a person's not existing (his death).

When *Naki* is preceded by an attributive definition of what does not exist, it answers to the suffix ...less. — *Tsikára-naki* or *Tsikara no naki yumi*, a powerless bow.

The predicative form **Nasi**, in the conversational language **Nai**, means the not being at hand of anything, be it thing or circumstance. — *Kono yumi wa tsikára nasi*, this bow is powerless. — *Irgu-ga-sima fító nasi*, the sulphur island is without inhabitants. — *Ari nasi wo tovu* 問^ア_リ 有^ナ_シ 無^ナ_シ, to inquire about the existence or non-existence of a thing.

Adverbially **Nákū** (無^ナ_ク), in the conversational language **Nāu**, **Noo** (ナウ。ナフ。ノウ。ノン). — Thence the continuative verb *Nakari* (= *Nákū + ari*), not to exist. — *Náku nari*, to go to nothing, to die. — *Naku si, su*, to be without..., to want.

Na and the forms derived from it will be found treated more diffusely in the chapter on the verbs.

§ 21. Adjectives with the negative prefix **Na**, or the Chinese 不 **Fu**.

Na, with negative power comes before adjectives as well as substantives, and causes them to express the contrary. This use of *Na* peculiar to the old language has been preserved in expressions as: *Na-yami*, = no rest (不安); *Na-yí* (十井), = no seat, for „earthquake” (地震); *Na-ivi zo*, = not speak, = be silent!

The Chinese 不 **fu**, = not, as a pure negative prefix to Japanese words expressive of quality has also got into use. To the few compounds of that nature belong:

Fu-de-ki 不^フ 出^デ 來^キ, mis-ehance, bad-growth. *De-ki*, to proceed, to be produced.

Fu-nari 不^フ 實^{ナリ}, bad growth. — *Fu-nari no tosi*, a bad year.

Bu-nari-naru 不^フ 形^{ナリ} ナル, misshapen; *Nari*, shape.

Fu-katte-naru 不^フ 勝^カ 手^テ ナル, uneomfortable, disadvantageous; uneasy; *Kátte*, the winning hand.

Fu-ni-motsi-naru 不^フ 身^ミ 持^モ テ ナル, behaving badly; *Fu-mi-motsi*, bad behavior, Fr. *inconduite*; *Mi-motsi*, behaving as it should be.

Fu-ratsi no 不^フ 埒^{ラシ} ヲ, extravagant; absurd; improper, irrational; from the Chinese *Lině* (埒, vulgo 埒), after the Japanese pronuneiation, *Ratsi*, limit, fence. — *Fu-ratsi no koto*, what goes beyond limits. — *Ratsi mo naki zon-zi yori* 埒^{ラシ} モ ナキ 存^{ゾン} 寄^ジ, an irrational opinion.

Fu-sai-vai-naru 不^フ 幸^{サイ} ヲ ナル, unprosperous; *Sai-vai*, prosperity, luck, blessing; from *saki*, development, and *favi*, growth.

Fu-si-arase-naru 不^フ 仕^シ 合^ア セ ナル, not lucky; from *Si-arase*, chance.

Fu-sugurete imasu 不^フ 勝^{スグ} レ イマス, not excellent, not being particularly well.

Fu-tsu-gan-naru 不^フ 都^ツ 合^ガ ナル, unfit, ineonvenient, incongruous; from the Chinese 都^ツ 合^ガ, = altogether, the sum; thence *Toki no tsu-gan ni yori*, according to the time.

More numerous are the compounds with 不^フ, which, adopted from the Chinese, and sanetioned by use as classieal expressions, have penetrated even to the language of daily life.

As attributive definitions prefixed to Japanese words, they occur with the suffixes *no* or *naru*; e. g.:

不^フ 和^ハナル, discordant.
 不^フ 幸^{サチ}ナル, disastrous.
 不^フ 孝^{サカ}ナル, unchildlike.
 不^フ 足^タナル, insufficient, not enough.
 不^フ 快^{サカシ}ナル, indisposed.
 不^フ 堅^ツ固^コナル, indisposed, not well.

不^フ 作^サ法^{ホウ}ナル, unfashionable.
 不^フ 斷^{ダン}嗾^{サツ}, unceasing gossip.
 不^フ 朽^ク親^{シン}睦^ム, imperishable friendship.
 不^フ 意^イ難^{ナン}, unforeseen difficulty.
 不^フ 圖^ズシテ, unexpectedly, by chance.

If the pure negative 不^フ, of similar expressions is superseded by 無^ム (*bu*, without), the meaning of the word undergoes a considerable modification, which is still frequently lost sight of. 不^フ 礼^{レイ}ナル *Fu-rei-naru*, is uncourtly, and equal to coarse, clownish. 無^ム 禮^{レイ}ナル, = „without ceremony,” and may also be rude behavior, which does not wound. 非^ヒ 礼^{レイ}, is a behavior, antagonist to the nature of politeness, thus misbehavior. 不^フ 時^ジ *fu-zi* is untimely, i. e. not at the time fixed: 無^ム 時^ジ, without fixed time, i. e. always: 非^ヒ 時^ジ, wrong-time, the improper time, the time at which something may not happen.

§ 22. Adjectives with a previous definition.

Nouns, prefixed to an adjective as definitive, form with it a compound word, provided they are not characterized as an attributive addition by the termination *no*. — *Tè*, hand; *Naga*, long; *Te-naga zaru*, long-armed ape. — *Kutsi*, month; *Omoki*, heavy; *Kutsino omóki fitó*, a man heavy of mouth or tongue.

Examples.

Inisihé imá no na-takáki fitó, High named (celebrated) persons of old and new times.

Te-baya, asi-faya, = of hand quick, of foot quick; quick-handed, quick-footed.

Kotoba-fayasi, he is ready of speech. — *Kotoba-oosi*, he is woody. — *Kutsi-jirósi*, broad-mouthed. — *Me-akáki*, red-eyed.

Mimi-tóki fitó, a man, sharp of ears, a quick-hearing man.

Fara-bütó, thick of belly, a paunch-belly, name of a fish.

Faráka üwó (for *fara-aka üwó*), a fish red of belly, the red-belly.

Omó-siróki, white or clear of countenance, friendly.

Mono-koye no naki yo, a night without sound, a dead night.

Kokóro-ne no jiróki kotoba, a word ample of meaning.

Kokóro-ne no warui fito, a man bad of disposition.

Ke-no ara-mono, ke-no niko-mono, rough haired beings, soft haired beings.

§ 23. The definition, that the quality in any object in full or relatively full measure is met with, is expressed by adverbs or definitions equal to them, which precede the adjective; as such are worthy of notice:

1. **Ma**, 眞^マ. 眞, in conversational language generally **Man**, = effectively, really; genuine unadulterated, indicates the full measure of the quality. **Ma-naka**, or **Man-naka**, 眞^マ 中^{ナカ}, the just middle. — *Yumi no ma-naka wo tóru*, just the middle of the bow to seize, to seize the bow just in the middle. — *Man-nakano iya*, the middle house, standing between two others. —

Mán-firáki 眞^マ 平^ヘ, quite level, even.

Mán-márúki 眞^マ 圓^{マル}, quite round.

Má-yásúki 眞^マ 安^{ヤス}, quite easy.

Má-siróki 眞^マ 白^{シロ}, quite white, snow-white.

Má-küróki 眞^マ 黑^{クロ}, quite black, jet-black.

Ma, = effectively, really, variation of *Mi* (實^ジ), is the same radical word. that occurs in *Ma-koto* (眞事. 眞言), = reality, truth. *Ma-gokóro*, an upright heart; *Musa*, truth; *Masa-síki*, = really.

2. **Itsi-dan**, 一^{イチ} 段^{ダン}, a whole piece, adverbially: wholly. — *Itsi-dan utsúkúsíki ónna*, a woman in all respects beautiful. — *Itsi-dan kek-kan náru*, in all respects excellent.

3. **Ikani mo**, = however, in all respects. — *Ikani mo tsüsaki*, as small as possible. — *Ikani mo tayásúki*, as easy as possible.

4. **Züi-bun**, 隨^{ズイ} 分^{ブン}, = comparatively, so much as possible. — *Züi-bun fayákü*, pretty early; is also used with the signification of „very early.”

§ 24. Absolute comparative.

Adverbs which, expressing a higher degree of the quality, come before the words of quality, are:

1) **Mo**, 最^モ. vulgo 最^モ, yet, yet more; to be distinguished from *Ma*, = real, with which it frequently mutates.

Mo-yásúki 最^モ 安^{ヤス}, easier.

Mo-gami 最^モ 上^{ウエ}, higher up.

Mo-sotto 最^モ 些^{ソト}, yet less.

Mo-fayá 最^モ 早^{ハヤ}, still quicker or earlier; already.

Mo-sukósi 最^モ 少^{ソウ}, yet a little.

Mo-sukósi saki ni, still rather earlier; just now. — *Kore wa amári tsüsai*. *Mo-*

sūkōsi ookii no wo (*O mise* ¹⁾), this (case) is too small. Let me see one rather larger.

2) **Ooki ni**, 大 ^{オオキニ}, greatly, very. — *Ooki ni furūki*, very antique. — *Ooki ni arāki*, very rough.

3) **Sūkōsi**, 少 ^{オウコシ}, little, in slight degree. — *Sūkōsi takai tokoro*, a place high only in a slight degree.

4) **Nao** 猶 ^{ナオ}, old-Jap. **Naō** 猶 ^{ナオ}, once more so..., still more. — *Sore de nao yokū nari*, thereby it becomes so much the better. — *Sore dake nao yorōsui*, it is so much the better.

5) **Iyā** or **iyō**, also **yā** or **yō**, 彌 ^{イハ}。 ^{イロ}。 ^{イサ}。 ^{イタ}。 弥 ^{イハ}, = once more so..., farther, more; to be distinguished from *iya*, no. — *Iyā taka yama*, the mountain once as high. — *Iyā medzūrāsiki*, still more interesting.

6) **Iyā-iyā** or **iyō-iyō**, 彌 ^{イハ}。 ^{イロ}。 弥 ^{イハ}。 ^{イロ}。 ^{イサ}。 ^{イタ}。 弥 ^{イハ}, more and more; in the conversational language *Iyā ga iyē ni* also. — *Iyō-iyō fūkōki*, still much deeper.

7) **Māsū-māsū**, 益 ^{マス}, more and more. — *Riyau-kōku no mōzicari māsū-māsū ūtsukū nari*, the intercourse of both the empires extends more and more.

§ 25. The relative or real comparative.

1. If a quality be attributed to one object in the same measure as to another, the likeness, if it is quantitative, is expressed by **Fodo**, if it is qualitative by **Ygu ni**. **Fodo** (程 ^{ホド}) means quantity, **Ygu ni**, or **Yoo ni** (様 ^{ヨウ}), in the manner.

Nami va yāma-fodo takasi, the waves are as high as mountains. — *Nami va yuki no ygu ni sirōsi*, the waves are white as snow. — *Yama-fodo*, = size of mountains, and *Yuki no ygu ni*, = in the manner of snow, are here adverbial definitions, which, as such, precede the words of quality *takasi* and *sirōsi*. The particle *va*, vulgo *wa*, is here necessary to separate the subject *nami* from the following substantive (*yama*, or *yuki*), which, as subordinate definition, belongs to the predicate word of quality.

San ri fodo toōsi, it is so far as three miles. — *Isiygu ni kataki*, = stony hard, i. e. so hard as stone. — *Zen fodo tai-sētsū nārū mono va nasi*, 無 ^ム 善 ^{ゼン} 程 ^{ホド} 大 ^{オホ} 切 ^キ 者 ^{モノ} ハ, there is nothing so important as virtue; in the conversational language: *Zen fodo tai-setsu na* (or also *tai-zi ta*, 大 ^{オホ} 事 ^{コト}) *mono wa nai*.

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 2.

2. If a quality is ascribed to one object in a higher degree, than to another, with which the comparison is made, the latter is considered as the point of departure in the ascription and, as such, characterized by the termination *yori* (out). immediately precedes the word of quality, which does not assume a comparative form; thus *Nami va iyé yori takasi*, = the waves are from houses out high, i. e. the waves are higher than houses. In this form of speech also the isolating particle *va* or *wa* is indispensable.

The Mongolian and Mandju, in respect of the comparative, follow the same way ¹⁾. To the expression: „The horse is higher than the sheep,” is equivalent in Japanese the expression: *Mimá va fûsûzi yori ooi nari* (馬々ハ 大^{オホ} 於^於 羊^{ヒツ} 也^也), = the horse — from the sheep out high is; in Mongolian *Morin anu chonin etse jeke*.

Examples.

Mei va koo-moo yori karosi (命^メハ 輕^{カサ} 於^於 鴻^{カサ} 毛^毛), the life is lighter than down. — *Ookami vá yama-înu yori takesi*, the wolf is bolder than the wild dog. — *Olanda-fûné vá Too-sen yori saki ni tsîyáku-gan su*, the Dutch ship lands earlier than the Chinese. — *Kakûretârû yôri aravaruru va nasi*, = something more manifest than the hidden, is there not, there is nothing more manifest, than the hidden. — *Ri wo kiramete, Ten-ka wó ôsámûrû-koto va — sîyu yori ooi-nûrû va nasi*, what concerns the forming of the understanding, and the government of the state, there is nothing greater than the doctrine of CONFUCIUS. — ... *yori sükôsiku naru*, less becoming than ...

Remark. No comparison is contained in the sentence: *Kono sákayori tsutsi fíkisi*, = the land (*tsutsi*) is of this steepness off low; as the words „of this steepness off (*kono saka yori*)” are an attributive definition of „land (*tsutsi*)” and not of the word of quality „low (*fiki*).”

The relative comparative may also be defined by means of one of the adverbs (§ 24), which indicate a higher degree of the quality; e. g.: *Wasi va kuma-taka yori mata-mata ooi nari*, the eagle is twice as big as the bear-falcon (the horned falcon). — *Kuma-taka va me-o no dai-siyau mina taka ni onáziku, taka yori ooi-naru koto san bai seri*, with the bear-falcon (*Spizaidos orientalis*) the size of the female and the

¹⁾ Compare I. J. SCHMIDT, *Grammatik der Mongolischen Sprache*. St. Petersburg, 1831. S. 39. — CANON DE LA GABELLENTZ, *Élém. de la Grammaire Mandchoue*, 1832. page 86. — *Characteristie der hauptsächlichsten Typen des Sprachbaues*, von Dr. H. STEINTHAL. Berlin, 1860. page 200.

male generally is as with the hawk; his size (*ooinoru koto*) with relation to (*yori*) the hawk amounts to threefold (*san bai*); i. e. it is thrice as big as the hawk.

The object, with which the comparison is made, is also isolated by *va*, when the word expressive of quality does not immediately follow it, but is separated from it by a subordinate adverbial definition; e. g.: *Kono yû yori va mata takasi*, is as high again as this house. — *Kono yû yori va nao takasi*, is yet higher than this house.

If the object, with which the comparison is made is something which either has remained without notice, or is not expected, then it is characterized by the suffix *mô* (= also, even). *Kore yori mô oosi*, more than this also, or more than even this. — *Fayâbûsû to iuu tori wa taka yori mô fayâsi*, the bird, called *Fayâbûsû*, or the quick flier (it is the noble falcon) is fleetier than even the hawk. — *Kono jîtô wa are yorimo nao gakusiya de ari* ¹⁾, this man is more learned than even he. — 草サ木モノ花ハ久ク形キハ牡ボ丹ニヨリ大オナナル物モノハナシ *Sau-môku no kwa-kiyû wa Botan yori ooi-nâru mono wa nâsi*, among the flowers of the vegetable kingdom there is none bigger than the piony.

Verbs also, which express a more or a less, such as *Mâsi*, *Masâri*, *Masâ-reri* (愈ユシ。勝。優), = to be more, to excel (*praestare*); *Otôreru* (劣オレレル), = to be less, are used in the forming of comparisons; e. g.: *Idzure ga nandzi ni masâru* (孰ナニ愈ユ於ニ汝), who is more than you? — *Kono kuni ni masârite takâ-rano ârû kuni* (愈ユテ茲ココノ國クニニ而ニ有アル寶ホウノ國), a country better than this country and rich in treasures. — *Ware ni masâreru*, he has excelled me. — *Siro-mayu-kaviko ni masâreru mono wa nâsi*, there is nothing, that surpasses the silkworms of white cocoons. — *Fîtô ni otôru*, to be less than others.

Remark. When in the saying: „It is better not to go, than to go,” deviating from the usual order of words, according to which one would be obliged to say „*Yukânû wa* (the not going) *yuku yori* (than the going) *masi* (is better).” is expressed by *Yuku yori va yukânû gâ mâsi*, a rhetorical inversion takes place, to make it appear, that the predicate „it is better (= Lat. *praestat*)” is of the most importance. Therefore the subject *yukânû*, as a subordinate definition precedes the predicate, but is emphatically characterized by *ga*, whereas the *yuku yori*, contributed to the comparison,

¹⁾ Compare RODRIGUEZ *Éléments*, p. 50.

isolated by **va**, is placed in front. Compare what is said on this subject, on page 64.

The poet supersedes *yori va* by **kara koso** or **gara koso**; e. g.:

Uéte miyó! Fana no sodatanu sato vá nási.

Kokóro gára kósó ni va tyasikere ¹⁾).

Plant and look! There is no village where flowers do not come up.

My outside is worse than my heart.

§ 26. The absolute superlative.

The absolute superlative is expressed by one of the abverbs, which imply the highest degree of the quality and precede the word expressive of quality. The adverbs are:

1) **Fana-fáda**, or **hana-háda**, 甚^{ハナハダ}, very; old-Japanese *Fata-fata*, from *fata*, yet again. — *Fana-fáda takaki*, very high. — *F. sebáki*, very narrow. — *F. tákú-san náru*, very plentiful. — *Tsúbame tobi-kakeru koto fana-fada fayá-si*, the flight of the swallow is very quick. — *F. tai-sétsü ni ómóru*, to consider of the most importance.

2) **Mottomo**, 最^{モトモ}。甚。尤, originally **Mótomó**, utmost, quite. — *Aka-kane no nari mottó mo yorósiku*, *ítatte mare nari*, as to the standard of copper (the coin) is quite good, it is however extremely rare.

3) **Ito, ito-ito**, 最^{イト}。太。彌。甚。痛, very. — *Ito yásüki*, very easy. — *Ito ósiki fímé*, a very lovely girl.

4) **Itátte**, 至^{イト}, the gerund of *ítári*, = arrive at the place to which one will come; as adverb complete, entire; utmost, highest. — *Itatte yorósi*, it is quite good. — *Itatte fayáku*, very early. — *Sasakiwa katatsi itatte tsüsáku síté koyé ooi nari*, the wren is in form very small, yet in voice strong. — ...to *kokóro-yuru vá makoto ni itatte oróka nari*, mean that..., is indeed utterly stupid. Instead of it place the inversion: *makotoni oróka nó ítári nari*, = is indeed the highest point of stupidity, if the logical accent is to be placed on *ítári*. — *En-in ainari ki no doku no itari ni soro*, 延^ヒ引^キ相^イ成^キ氣^キ毒^クノ至^ヒニ^シロ, delay is the summit of vexation.

The Chinese 至^シ **si**, = *ítatte*, also is used to express the superlative, and that in composition with Chinese words; e. g.:

¹⁾ A leaf in an album, written bij FUKU-SAVA, 1862

至^シ 極^ゾ, *si-gôku*, top-point, utmost.

至^シ 善^ゼ, *si-zen*, highest good, perfectly good.

至^シ 妙^ベ, *si-beo*, excellent.

至^シ 要^ヨ, *si-you*, needful in the highest degree.

5) **Meppo** (メツボウ), which is said to be in use with the signification of „most,” but only at *Yêdo*, is known to us only under the form of *Méppou-nâru*, as synonym of *Mono-osôre sênû*, = caring for no danger, fearless, bold.

6) **Itsi no**, 一^{イチ}ノ, first; **Dai-itsi no**, 第^{ダイ} 一^{イチ}ノ, = the first. — *Tsuruga kita-kuni itsi no yoki minâto nari*, *Tsuruga* is the first good (the best) harbour in the northern provinces. — *Nippon itsi no takeki mono*, the bravest man in Japan. — On the other hand *itsi* stands for *ûtsi*, = blow, in *Itsi fuyâku*, = quick as the lightning. — *Ten-ku dai-itsi no gâku-siya*, the first scholar in the empire.

7) **Itsi-ban**, 一^{イチ}番^{バン}, = first rank (see § 31.1)). — *Itsi-ban yorôsiki*, the very best.

8) **Sûgûrête**, 特^{トク} 越^エテ, excelling, surpassing. — *Sûgûrête medzûrásiki*, most interesting.

9) **Kitsûku**, kitsuu (酷^{キツ}), heavy, very. — *Kitsuu sui mono*, something very sour.

Very common also, are the following Chinese compounds with 最^{サイ}, **Sai**, = very, utmost, which express a superlative:

最^{サイ} 上^{ジョウ}, uppermost, best.

最^{サイ} 頂^{テイ}, the highest.

最^{サイ} 中^{チュウ}, middlemost.

最^{サイ} 前^{ゼン}, first; with relation to time.

最^{サイ} 下^ゲ, lowest, least.

= just now, presently, a few mo-

最^{サイ} 初^{ショ}, very first, first begin-
ning.

ments ago.

最^{サイ} 勤^{キン}, most diligent.

§ 27. The relative superlative.

The relative superlative is characterized in that, that the objects surpassed are expressly named, and this naming, whether in the genitive, or in the local, is placed before the word expressive of quality, by way of a definition, and thus subordinate to it. The brighter of (or among) the stars is, after the Japanese manner of speaking, the brightest of (or among) the stars, *Fosino* (or *Fosi no naka ni*) *akiraka nâru va*.

Examples. *Karasi fazikami va na no tattoki nari*, mustard and ginger are the principal of vegetables; or: *Na no tattoki va karasi fazikami nari*, the principal

among the vegetables are mustard and ginger. — 藥^ク之^ノ中^ナ之^ノ勝^マ
[劣^ワ] ^レル者^モ, *Kūsuri no naka no masáreru* [otóreru] *mono*, the best [the least]
among the medicines.

勝^ス最^{モト}諸^{モロ}佛^{ブツ}
= 爲^イノ法^ハ
殊^サ中^ナ於^ニ
Buppoo va moro-moro no nori no nakani motomo sara ni
sugurete imásu ¹⁾, the Buddha-doctrine is among all
doctrines the most excellent.

§ 28. The excess in a quality is expressed by:

Amári, 餘^ア_リ. 余^ア_リ, = excess, adv. excessively, too... — *Tsikarano amari*,
excess of strength. — *Amári gin*, excessive money. — *Kore wá amári tsiisai*,
是^コレ^ワ 余^ア_リ 小^チ_イ ²⁾, this is too small. — *Kore wá amari nagai* ³⁾, this is
too long. — *Kore wa amari iro ga koi* ⁴⁾, this is too dark of color. — *Kore wa*
amari dzi yai ga átsui ⁵⁾, this is too thick of stuff.

Yo-fodo, 余^ヨ 程^ホ, = excess, excessive, too..., = *Amári*. — *Sore de wa*
yo-fodo takáku nari-masu, 夫^ソレ^デ 余^ヨ 程^ホ 高^{タカ} 直^ナ ⁶⁾, then it
becomes too high (too dear). — *Yo-fodo osó* ⁷⁾, it is too late.

¹⁾ *Nippon-ki*, Vol. 19, page 25 verso.

²⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, page 2.

⁵⁾ „ page 24.

³⁾ page 8.

⁶⁾ page 37.

⁴⁾ page 23.

⁷⁾ page 41.

CHAPTER IV.

NUMERALS.

The Japanese language has its own numerals; but with the introduction of the Chinese system of measures, weights and reckoning of time, the Chinese numerals and the Chinese marks of number came early and generally into use. Therefore one has to do with two sorts of numerals, with the Japanese and with the Chinese. The Japanese are connected with Japanese words, and the Chinese with Chinese.

§ 29. The ancient Japanese cardinal numbers are:

ヒト, Fító (F'tó, H'tó) . . . one.	コヽノ, Kōkónó nine.
フタ, Fütá (F'tá) two.	トヲ, Tòo, = once ten.
ミ, Mi three.	ソ, So, ten, termination of tens.
ヨ, Yo four.	モヽ, Momo hundred.
イツ, itsú five.	ホ, ..fo, ..vo, as termination of hundreds.
ム, Mû, Muyu six.	
ナヽ, Năná seven.	チ, Tsi. thousand.
ヤ, Yá eight.	ヨロヅ ^b , Yōródzū ten thousand.

The vulgar man says for *Hitó* (1) and *Kokono* (9), by way of abbreviation, *Hi* and *Koko* also. Oral communication by 〇〇〇〇 一.

These radical forms are used in the forming of compound words in which, according to the principle fixed in § 9. I. A., the idea of number is supposed to be already combined with the object, e. g.:

Fütó-vi no fána, = one day's flower. — *Fütó-yo no sake*, = one night's rice-beer, i. e. *sake*, that is only one night old. — *Fütó-fána*, one-flowered.

Fütá-go, a twin. — *Fütá-gokóro*, a double heart. — *Fütá-nari*, an hermaphrodite. — *Fütá-oyá*, the parents. — *Fütá-tábi*, twice. — *Fütá-na nó sima*, a two-named island.

Mi-ka, the day (*ka*), which has the number three as characteristic, the third day; also the period of three days (*triduum*). — *Mi-ka-tsúki*, = the third-day-moon, the moon of the third day. — *Mi-tose*, the year three, also the period of three years (*triennium*). — *Mi-kúsá no kaju*, = three-herbed pap.

Ya-mo, the square. — *Mū-tóse*, the year six, also the period of six years. — *Mū-tóse no*, six yeared. — *Nāná-yáma*, the Seven mountains.

Used as substantive numerals, the cardinal numbers from 1 to 9 take the suffix 𪛗 *tsu*, which just as the Chinese numeral-substantive 箇 (*ko*), with which in the most ancient writings ¹⁾ it is assimilated, means, originally, a piece of bamboo and, in a general sense, in the counting of articles, is taken for „piece, number” ²⁾. Consequently we have the following compound nouns:

Fütó-tsü (*F'tóts'*, *H'tóts'*) . . one.

Mū-tsú six.

Fütá-tsü (*F'táts'*) two.

Nāná-tsü seven.

Mi-tsu three.

Yá-tsü. eight.

Yo-tsü four.

Kókóno-tsü nine.

Itsü-tsü (*Its'ts'*) five.

These numerals answer to the question: *Iku-tsu* (幾¹/_ど), how many pieces?

Fütó-tsu-fá, a single leaf ³⁾. — *Mū-tsú-hána*, or *Mū-tsú no hána*, flowers to the number of six, being *Mūtsú* characterized by the genitive termination *no* as a noun used attributively.

¹⁾ *Nippon-ki*.

²⁾ When, in 1857, I published the *Proeve eener Japansche Spraakkunst* van DONKER CURTIUS, I considered this *tsu* as the old genitive termination.

³⁾ The name of *Acrostichum Lingua*.

By combination with *ari* or *ori* (= to be), *Fító*, *Fütá*, *Mi* and *Yo* form the words **Fítóri** (獨^レ), **Fütári** (二^ノ 人^ヲ), **Mitári** (三^ニ 人^ヲ), and **Yottári**, = individual, alone; — pair, both; — triad, three together; — four; — nouns, which are only applicable to persons, and thus are used as substantives, as well as attributively. — *Kan-si ra sono fítóri wó tsütsüsimü*, the philosopher attends to his own person, himself alone. — *Iku-tári*, how many persons?

The tens: 10, 20 to 90, consist of the cardinal numbers followed by **ソ**, *so*, which means ten (just as *ty* in twenty). *Mi-so*, three ten, = thirty. If they are used as substantive numerals, they take as suffix, (instead of **ツ**, *tsu*) **チ**, *tsi*, which is only a modification of *tsu*, and for the sake of euphony also changes to **ヂ**, *dzi*. *Mi-so-dzi*, = thir-ty-number. *Mi-so-dzi no hána*, flowers to the number of thirty. Let this **ヂ** be distinguished from **ジ** *zi*, for *Misozi* means the age of 30 years (三^ニ 十^ノ 歳^シ).

The tens are:

Radical forms.

Compounds with *tsi*.

ト^ノ, *Toó*, also *Tó*, contracted from

F'tóso, = once ten.

(**ソタソ**, twenty, not in use.)

ミ^ノ, *Mi-so*, thirty.

ヨ^ノ, *Yo-so*, forty.

イツ^ノ, *Itsü-so* (*its-so*), commonly:

イ^ノ, *I-so*, fifty.

ム^ノ, *Mü-só*, sixty.

ナ^ノ, *Naná-so*, seventy.

ヤ^ノ, *Yá-so*, eighty.

コ^ノノ, *Kōkōnó-so*, ninety.

ト^ノチ, *Toó-tsi*, one ten.

ソタチ, *Fütá-tsi*, }
ハタチ, *Fütá-tsi*. } two tens.

ミソヂ, *Mi-so-dzi*, number of thirty.

ヨソヂ, *Yo-so-dzi*, number of forty.

イツヂ, *its-só-dzi* (*its-só-dzi*), number of
fifty.

ムソヂ, *Mü-só-dzi*, number of sixty.

ナソヂ, *Naná-so-dzi*, .. seventy.

ヤソヂ, *Yá-só-dzi*, number of eighty.

コソヂ, *Kōkōnó-so-dzi*, .. ninety.

モ^ノ, *Momo*, a hundred; in combinations モ^ノ, *-fó*, *-ro*, *-ho*; thence *Yo-ro*, 400. —

I-ro, 500, — *Ya-ro*, 800; others we have not met with.

チ, *Tsi*, thousand; チ^ノ, *Tsi-tsi*, thousands.

ソタチ^ノ, *Fütá-tsi-tsi*, two thousand. — ナ^ノチ, *Naná-tsi*, nine thousand.

ヨロ^ヅ, *Yōró-dzu*, ten thousand. — モ^ノチ, *Momo-tsi*, a hundred thousand.

モ^ノヨロ^ヅ, *Momo-yōró-dzu*, a hundred times ten thousand, or a million.

ヤモヨロ^ヅ, *Yavo-yōró-dzu*, eight hundred times ten thousand, or eight millions.

§ 30. The Chinese cardinal numbers, after the Japanese pronunciation.

The first column contains the number in full.

壹。	一	イチ, Itsi, Itsū (<i>its'</i>)	one.
貳。	二	ニ, Ni	two.
參。	三	サン, San	three.
肆。	四	シ, Si ¹⁾	four.
伍。	五	ゴ, Go (<i>no, ngo</i>)	five.
陸。	六	ロク, Rokū, Rikū	six.
柒。	七	シチ, Sitsi (<i>s'itsi', at Yédo h'tsi</i>)	seven.
捌。	八	ハチ, Fatsi (<i>h'atsi</i>)	eight.
久。	九	キュ, Ku	nine.
拾。	十	ジユ, Ziyu (at Yédo <i>dzin, dzu, dži</i> , Eng. <i>ji</i>), ten.	
百	ヒャク,	Fiyak' (<i>hyak'</i>)	a hundred.
千	セン,	Sen	a thousand.
萬。	マン,	Man (<i>ban</i>)	ten thousand.

The number of the tens, hundreds, thousands and tens of thousands is more definitely determined by the units preceding them, thus:

イツジユ, Is-zipí, ten.	ゴ ヒヤク, Go-fiyak', five hundred.
ニ ジユ, Ni-ziyu, twenty.	ロク ヒヤク, Rok-piyak', six hundred.
サンジユ, San-ziyu, thirty.	シチ ヒヤク, Sitsi-fiyak', seven hundred.
シ ジユ, Si-ziyu, forty.	ハチ ヒヤク, Fap-piyak', eight hundred.
ゴ ジユ, Go-ziyu, fifty.	ク ヒヤク, Ku-fiyak', nine hundred.
ロクジユ, Rok'-ziyu, sixty.	イツセン, Is-sen, one thousand.
シチジユ, Sitsi- (<i>h'tsi</i>) ziyu, seventy.	ニ セン, Ni-sen etc., two thousand.
ハチジユ, Fatsi-ziyu, eighty.	イチマン, Itsi-man, once ten thousand.
ク ジユ, Ku-ziyu, ninety.	ニ マン, Ni-man, twice ten thousand.
イツヒヤク, Ip-piyak', one hundred.	ジユマン, Ziyu-man, 10 × 10000.
ニ ヒヤク, Ni-fiyak', two hundred.	ニジユマン, Ni-ziyu-man, 20 × 10000.
サンヒヤク, Sam-biyak', three hundred.	ヒヤクマン, Fiyak-man, a million.
シ ヒヤク, Si-fiyak', four hundred.	ニヒヤクマン, Ni-fiyak-man, two mill.

¹⁾ The numeral *Si* (4) is mostly avoided in composition with nouns, and superseded by the Japanese numeral *Yo* because *Si* also means „to die.”

²⁾ The written form 十 would, in all respects, answer rather to the Yédo pronunciation, is however, in

By the suffixing additional numbers all possible numbers are expressed; thus: *Ziyu man itsi*, 100 001. — *Is-sen fap-piyak' rokū zīyu rokū nen*, the year 1866. The number is intended here as an attributive definition belonging to this year. If however the meaning is 1866 years, then the number is preceded by the adverbial definition *Oyóso*, 凡^ヲ (pron. *ōyósso*), = in sum, together, and the number itself followed by a numeral substantive (see § 37). 凡^ヲ 六^ノ 年^ノ 間^ヲ, *Oyósō rokū ka nen no aida*, = within six years. The necessity of taking up *oyóso* in the translation, naturally disappears in every language, that has a plural.

To a Japanese word, the Chinese numerals are connected by the genitive termination *no*. — *Ziyu ni no iro*, twelve sorts.

§ 31. Ordinal numerals, the first, the second. As the most in use are:

1) The Chinese numbers *Itsi*, *Ni*, *San* etc., followed by 番^バ *ban*, that means watch, and number. To the question 幾^{ナニ} 番^バ, *Iku-ban*, = what number?, answer

一^{イチ} 番^バ, *Itsi-ban*, number one, i. e. the first.

二^ニ 番^バ, *Ni-ban*, number two, i. e. the second.

三^{サン} 番^バ, *Sam-ban*, number three.

四^ヨ 番^バ, *Yo-ban*, number four, exceptionally for *Si-ban*.

2) The Chinese numbers, preceded by 第^{ダイ} *Dai*, = series; thus: 第^{ダイ} 一^{イチ}, *Dai-itsi*, = one according to order, i. e. the first. — *Nippon-ki ken dai ni zīyu sītsi*, = Japanese chronicle, volume 27, literally: 27 according to the order of the volumes. 第^{ダイ} 三^{サン} 子^シ, *Dai-san si*, the third son.

3) The compounds *Itsi-ban*, *Ni-ban*, *Sam-ban*, etc., preceded by 第^{ダイ} *Dai*; thus *Dai-itsi-ban*, *Dai-ni-ban*, *Dai-sam-ban*, first, second, third. — *Dai-yo-ban*, fourth, exceptionally for *Dai-si-ban*; so also *Dai-zīyu-yo-ban* (14th), *Dai-ni-zīyu-yo-ban* (24th).

With the genitive termination *no*, these three sorts of compounds become attributive.

If only two objects are to be counted, the difference is made by 前^{ゼン} *Sen* and 後^ゴ *Go*, before and after. If the arrangement is limited to three classes,

Japan itself, not yet adopted. — By a mutation of the French letters *j* and *y*, in the Supplement to *RODR. Gr.* from page 15 *you* is generally found improperly for *jou* (ten).

they are distinguished as the topmost, middle and lowest, by 上^ジ *Ziyoo*, 中^チ *Tsiu* and 下^ケ (*Ge* ¹⁾). or as foremost, next and last, by *Saki*, *Tsugi* and *Ato* or *ūsivo*. — 上^ジ種^タ. 中^チ種^タ. 下^ケ種^タ is the seed of the first, second, third quality.

The first, with reference to the time, is expressed by ハツ *fātsū*, or ハジメノ *fazime no*, = first: *Fatsu-mono*, the firstlings, the first fruits; *Fazime no tosi*, the first year (of a period).

§ 32. The iterative numerals, once, twice etc., are:

Japanese, to the question:

Chinese, to the question:

Iku-tabi, 幾^ス度^タ, how often?

Nau-do, 何^{ナニ}度^タ, how often? ²⁾

Fitō-tabi, once.

一^{イチ}度^タ, *Itsi-do*, once.

Fatā-tabi, twice.

二^ニ度^タ, *Ni-do*, twice.

Mi-tabi, thrice.

三^{サン}度^タ, *Sau-do*, thrice.

Yō-tabi, four times.

四^ヨ度^タ, *Yō-do*, four times.

Itsū-tabi, five times.

Si-do, 4⁰.

Mū-tabi, six times.

五^ゴ度^タ, *Go-do*, five times.

Nānā-tabi, seven times.

六^{ロク}度^タ, *Rok-do*, six times.

Ya-tabi, eight times.

七^{シチ}度^タ, *Sitsi-do*, seven times.

Kokōno-tabi, nine times.

八^{ハチ}度^タ, *Fatsi-do*, eight times.

To-tabi, ten times.

九^ク度^タ, *Ku-do*, nine times.

In numbers higher than 10 the Chinese numbers also are compounded with *tabi*; thus

十^{ジュ}度^タ, *Zigu-do*, ten times.

Zigu-itsi-tabi, eleven times.

十^{ジュ}一^{イチ}度^タ, *Zigu-itsi-do*, eleven times.

etc.

etc.

Momo-tabi, 百^{ヒャク}度^タ, a hundred times; many times. — *Tsi-tabi*, 千^{セン}度^タ, a thousand times; many times. — *Tsi-tabi momo-tabi*, 千^{セン}度^タ百^{ヒャク}度^タ, a thousand times and a hundred times; often. — *Tabi-tabi*, 度^タ々^々, as often.

Tabi, with which the Japanese cardinal numbers form a compound word, means journey; *Tabi-bitō*, a traveller.

¹⁾ The *yomi*: *Kami*, *Naka*, *Simo*, is in the case in question, according to the oral communication of a native of Yēdo, there at least, not in use.

²⁾ Also how many degrees; *Itsi-do*, 1⁰; *Ni-do*, 2⁰, etc.

三^サ 四^ヨ 度^ド, *San yo do*, three to four times; *San si do*, 3^o to 4^o.

By suffixing *Me* (目^メ), which means eye and, figuratively, mark, these iterative numerals become ordinal numbers, which with the genitive inflection *no* are also attributive. — *Iku-tabi-me*, 幾^{ナニ} 度^ド 目^メ, what number of times? — *Fūtó-tabi-me*, or Chinese 一^{イチ} 度^ド 目^メ, *Itsi-do-me*, the first time. — *To-tabi-me no hanasi*, a story for the tenth time.

§ 33. The doubling or multiplying numerals, single, twofold etc., consist of the Jap. noun へ, *ve* or *he*, vulgo 工, *ye* or *e*, = fold (German *fach*), preceded by the Japanese cardinals. To the question *Iku-ye* (幾^{ナニ} 重^ヘ), = how manifold? answer:

<i>Fūtó-ye</i> , single.	<i>Itsu-ye</i> , five-fold.	<i>Yá-ye</i> , eight-fold.
<i>F'tó-ye</i> , two-fold.	<i>Mū-ye</i> ,	<i>Kōkōno-ye</i> , nine-fold.
<i>Mi-ye</i> , three-fold.	<i>Mū-vá</i> (obsol.),	<i>To-ye</i> , ten-fold.
<i>Yo-ye</i> , four-fold.	<i>Nānā-ye</i> , seven-fold.	<i>Fatá-ye</i> (obsol.), twenty-f.

Fūtó-ye no fána, a single flower (*flos simplex*). — *Yá-ye no fána*, an eight-fold, i. e. a full flower (*flos plenus*).

The counting by pairs is expressed by the Chinese 倍^{バイ} (also 陪), *bai*, double, pair, in connection with Chinese numerals, thus:

一 ^{イチ} 倍 ^{バイ} , <i>Itsi bai</i> , one (or a) pair.	四 ^ヨ 倍 ^{バイ} , <i>Yo bai</i> , four pair.
二 ^ニ 倍 ^{バイ} , <i>Ni bai</i> , two pair.	十 ^{ジュウ} 倍 ^{バイ} , <i>Ziyu bai</i> , ten pair.
三 ^{サン} 倍 ^{バイ} , <i>San bai</i> , three pair.	百 ^{ヒャク} 倍 ^{バイ} , <i>Fiyaku-bai</i> , a hundred pair.

Instead of *bai*, 雙^{ソウ} *Soo*, pair is also used. 一^{イチ} 雙^{ソウ} *Is-soo*, one pair.

§ 34. For sort numbers, as one sort, two sorts etc., serve the Chinese numbers compounded with the Chinese 種^{シュ} *sīyu* (pron. *su*), which means sort, kind. They are, after the Yédo pronunciation:

イ ツ シュ, <i>Is-su</i> one sort.	ロ ク シュ, <i>Rok'-su</i> six sorts.
ニ シュ, <i>Ni-su</i> two sorts.	シ チ シュ, <i>H'tsi-su</i> seven sorts.
サ シ シュ, <i>San-su</i> three sorts.	ハ チ シュ, <i>Hátsi-su</i> eight sorts.
ヨ シュ, <i>Yó-</i> (not <i>Si-</i>) <i>su</i> . . four sorts.	ク シュ, <i>Kú-su</i> nine sorts.
ゴ シュ, <i>Go-su</i> five sorts.	ト シュ, <i>Tó-sú</i> , etc. ten sorts.

Ren-ziyak' ra, *wo no nagaki to mizikaki to no ni-sīyu ári*, of the bird *Ren-ziyak* (*Bombyciphora*) there a two sorts: as well a long- as a short-tailed.

With the termination *no* these substantives are used attributively: *San-siyu no sin-too*, the spirit-service of three kinds.

§ 35. To express the distributive numbers, one at a time, two at a time, etc. are used:

1) the Jap. adverb 時々, *dzū-tsū*, pron. *dzts*, = at a time, preceded by the Jap. numerals *Fūtō-tsu*, *Fūtā-tsu* (= one piece, two pieces), or also by the Chinese numerals in connection with the object counted. *Dzūtsū* ¹⁾ is expressed by 宛. To the question *ikū-tsu dzūtsū*, 幾宛, how many pieces at a time? answer:

Fūtō-tsu dzūtsū, 一 宛, one piece at a time.

Fūtā-tsu dzūtsū, 二 宛, two pieces at a time.

Nava wó fūtā-sudzi dzūtsū fāru, ropes are spun (*fāru*), two pieces at a time. As it appears, here the accusative *nava wo* (rope) is the objective direct to *fāru*, whereas *fūtā-sudzi dzūtsū*, by way of adverbial definition, is placed between the object and verb. — 一日二 = 三度, *Itsi-nitsi ni san do dzūtsū*, twice or thrice a day each time. — In accordance with this is the saying: *Ano otoko no kodomo ni Too hūyākū* (當百) *wo itsi-mai dzūtsū O yari nasāre* ²⁾, = give to these boys a *Too hūyākū*, one piece at a time. 一色十 = 二反宛, *Fitō-iro ziyu-ni tan dzūtsū ari-māsū*, of one and the same color, twelve pieces at a time are at hand. — 二 = 丈八尺宛, *Ni ziyoo faššak dzūtsū no fūtā-kire* ³⁾, two pieces of 2 ziyoo 8 šak at a time (= 28 Jap. feet).

One, two, three or four at a time, when persons are spoken of, is expressed by *Fūtōri dzūtsū*, *Fūtāri dzūtsū*, *Mitāri dzūtsū*, *Yottāri dzūtsū*. — *Ikutāri dzūtsū*, = how many persons at a time? (see § 29.) — *Ko fūnéni fūtōri dzūtsū noritaru fūnākatā roku-ziyu fodo kogi-kitāri*, sailor to the number of sixty, seated one at a time in a small boat, came rowing.

¹⁾ The common written form 宛 is inexact, as it, according to the rule given on page 11, answers to *dzudzu*. Misled by indistinct examples in badly printed Japanese books we have in our *Spraakunst* of 1857, page 64 improperly adopted *Fito-dzudzu* instead of *Fito-tsu dzutsu*.

²⁾ R. BROWN, *Colloquial Japanese*, No. 171. — *Too hūyak*, i. e. „a hundred (cash) worth,” inscription on the new Jap. bronze coin of the period *Ten-boo* (vulgo *Tempo*).

³⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 33.

2) In the same manner, instead of *dzütsü Ate ni* (充_二^リ), the modal of *Ate* is used, which means an object, that is proportioned to another, and fully answers to it in respect of value or quality. We consider it equivalent to „per ration, in proportion.”

Ikü-tsu ate ni, 幾_レ箇_ツ 充_二^リ =, how many pieces per ration?

Fütó-tsu ate ni, 一_ト箇_ツ 充_二^リ =, one piece per ration.

Fütá-tsu ate ni, two pieces at a time.

§ 36. Fractional numbers or broken numbers are expressed by means of Chinese ciphers and numerals. The denominator as genitive, indifferently with, or without *no*, precedes the numerator, thus 金_キ兩_リノ四_シ分_フ一_{イチ}, *Kin-rýoo no si-bu itsi*, or *si-bu no itsi*, i. e. one of the four parts of a *Rýoo* gold, = a fourth *Rýoo* or $\frac{1}{4}$ *koban*.

半 _ハ 分 _フ ,	<i>Ham-bun</i> , = the half part, the half.
三 _{サン} 分 _フ 一 _{イチ} ,	<i>Sam-bu itsi</i> , a third (part).
四 _シ 分 _フ 一 _{イチ} ,	<i>Si-bu itsi</i> , a fourth.
五 _ゴ 分 _フ 一 _{イチ} ,	<i>Go-bu itsi</i> , a fifth.
六 _{ロク} 分 _フ 一 _{イチ} ,	<i>Rokü-bu itsi</i> , a sixth.
七 _{シチ} 分 _フ 一 _{イチ} ,	<i>Sütsi-bu itsi</i> , a seventh.
八 _{ハチ} 分 _フ 一 _{イチ} ,	<i>Fátsi-bu itsi</i> , an eighth.
九 _ク 分 _フ 一 _{イチ} ,	<i>Ku-bu itsi</i> , a ninth.
十 _{ジュ} 分 _フ 一 _{イチ} ,	<i>Ziyu-bu itsi</i> , a tenth.
十 _{ジュ} 一 _{イチ} 分 _フ 一 _{イチ} ,	<i>Ziyu-itsi-bu itsi</i> , an eleventh.
百 _{ヒャク} 分 _フ 一 _{イチ} ,	<i>Füyákü-bu itsi</i> , a hundredth.
千 _{セン} 分 _フ 一 _{イチ} ,	<i>Sen-bu itsi</i> , a thousandth.
一 _{イチ} 万 _{マン} 分 _フ 一 _{イチ} ,	<i>Itsi man-bu itsi</i> , a ten thousandth.
一 _{イチ} 万 _{マン} 分 _フ 三 _{サン} ,	<i>Itsi man-bu san</i> , three ten thousandths.

In broken numbers 分 is generally read *bu* instead of *bun*, and therefore often, but improperly superseded by 歩_フ, *bu*, the name of a superficial measure.

Mi-tsu itsi, *Mi-tsu ni* means one of three, two of three, properly of a number of three, being the denominator, which is expressed by a Japanese nu-

meral, the partitive genitive of the numerator expressed by a Chinese numeral. They count further:

Yo-tsu itsi, one of four.

Itsu-tsu itsi, one of five.

Mu-tsu itsi, one of six.

Naná-tsu itsi, one of seven.

Ya-tsu itsi, one of eight.

Kokóno-tsu itsi, one of nine.

Kokóno-tsu fatsi, eight of nine.

The division of a hundred by ten is called **Wari**, 割₇, = splitting. — $\frac{1}{10}$ 割₇, *Itsi wari*, = 10 per cent (10%). *Ni, san, si, go wari*, = 20, 30, 40, 50% . *Ku wari, žiyu wari*, = 90% , 100% .

Bu, 分₇, vulgo chiefly 歩₇, is called the tenth part of *Wari*. — $\frac{1}{100}$ 分₇, *Itsi bu*, = 1 per cent. *Ni, san, si, go bu*, = 2, 3, 4. 5% .

Rin, 厘₇, is the tenth part of *Bu*. — $\frac{1}{1000}$ 厘₇, *Itsi rin*, = a tenth per cent ($\frac{1}{10}\%$). And so further: *Ni, san, si, go rin*, = $\frac{2}{1000}$, $\frac{3}{1000}$, $\frac{4}{1000}$, $\frac{5}{1000}\%$. 四₇ 割₇ 五₇ 歩₇ 三₇ 厘₇, *Si-wari go-bu san-rin*, = $45,3\%$.

The definition, that the import duty of certain articles shall be paid for with 35 percent, in the *Regulations*, under which the Netherlands-Trade shall be carried on in Japan, belonging to the Treaty of the 18th Aug. 1859, edition of the Japanese text page 25 verso line 2, is expressed by 右₇ 三割五分ノ運上₇ ヲ納ムヘシ, *Migiwa san wari go bu no un-ziyurwo komu besi*, i. e. on the said articles a duty of 35% shall be paid.

§ 37. Numeral-substantives, or Numeratives.

Since the Japanese language, like the Chinese, is deficient in the grammatical distinction of singular and plural (see page 53 § 5), to distinguish what is enumerated as something in the singular, or in the plural as a repetition of singular objects, it must have recourse to certain names, which, joined to a numeral, express that the object, which is to be counted, is present as a unity so many times, as the numeral denotes. For „one cannon, six cannons,” the Japanese uses an expression answering to: „one-piece cannon, six-piece cannon,” in which case „one-piece” and „six-piece” have the value of an attributive definition to „cannon,” or, in its place, is found: „cannon one-piece, cannon six-piece.” The number of suchlike auxiliary names in Japanese is greater, than is really necessary. Considering objects in respect of their outward appearance, they are counted according to one or another noticeable characteristic, as stags, by heads, — fish, by their tails, — brooms and objects with

handles, by the handles. Hence has arisen a distribution of articles into classes, which are denominated either with Japanese or with Chinese names, and are usually indicated with Chinese characters. The Japanese names of classes are associated with Japanese numerals, the Chinese with Chinese. We have thus for „one piece of wood” either the Japanese expression 一本 *Fūtó*, *Fútó-moto no ki*, or the Chinese 一本 *Ippon* (or also *Ippon no ki*).

A list of these classes has been taken up in some Japanese Encyclopedias, under the head of 對名 *Tsui-nūyau*, i. e. names which are used for pendants or matches; a denomination, which very justly describes the character of these words. The Japanese-Chinese dictionaries also contain lists of these words, being amassed, the Japanese under *Fútó* (one), the Chinese under 一 *Itsi*, *Itsu*, but at the same time being mixed with words which indicate an idea of measure or of a quantity, as one grain of rice, one bale of rice. As the last mentioned properly belong to the names of the objects contained in the dictionaries, we limit ourselves here to those auxiliary names, which are alone used for fixing the idea of number, and then we divide into Japanese and Chinese.

I. Japanese Numeratives.

1. *Fasira*, 柱 *tsue*, post, column, for *Kamis* or gods of the Japanese myths. *Iku-fasira*, 幾柱 *iku tsue*, how many (gods)? — *Fútó-fasira no kami*, one god. — *Mi-fasira no kami*, three gods. — *Kono fútó-fasira wa kaze no kami nari*, both these are wind-gods. *Fúta-fasira*, here used substantively, includes alone the idea of „both.”

Applied to statues of Buddhist saints, *Fasira* is expressed by 軀 *ku*, = statue. 釋迦佛金銅像一軀 *Shakabutsu kintō zō ichi ku*¹⁾, one bronze statue of Śākya-Buddha.

The patrician compares himself with a tree (木 *ki*, old-Jap. *ke*), and counts the people, with whom he does not come in contact, as herbs (草 *kusa*).

2. *Kutsi*, 口 *kuchi*, month, for the number of souls. Also *Mānó*, breast.

3. *Kasira*, 頭 *atama*, head, for stags and wild boars. — *Siká mi-kasira*, or *Mi-kasira no siká*, three stags.

¹⁾ *Nippon-ki*, XIX, page 25 verso.

4. **Fami**, 鑣^{ふみ}, bit, for reined horses. — *M'ma no fütó-* (vulg. *fütótsu*) *fami*, one reined horse.

5. **Moto**, 本^{もと}。居^ゐ, pale, seat, for hunting-hawks, which are held on perches; for trees.

6. **Fa, Wa**, 羽^は。ヅ, feather, wing, for birds. — *Kisi no fütó-va*, one pheasant. Compare page 130, 7.

7. **O**, 尾^お, tail, for fish. — *Koi fütá-o*, two carp.

8. **Ori**, 折^{おり}, fragment, piece, for perch (*Tavi*), which are offered as a present, and from modesty are called a small piece.

9. **Sūdzi**, 筋^{すぢ}, line (from *sumi*, ink and *dzi*, way), for things that are long and thin. — *Nava, Tádžúná, Tsuru, Obi fütó-sudzi*, one line, one rein, one tendon, a girdle.

10. **Fira**, 張^{はり}。枚^{まい}, spot, stretched, for things which are flat and even. *Osi-gava fütó-jira*, one piece of leather.

11. **No**, 幅^{はち}, breadth, for rolls of writing. — *Maki-mono fütó-no*, one roll.

12. **Ma**, 間^ま, room, for apartments. — *Ne-dokóro fütó-ma*, one sleeping-apartment.

13. **Tomáya**, 苫^{とま}屋^や, vulgo *Tomai*, for warehouses. — *Kúra fütó-tomai*, a warehouse.

14. **Nagáre**, 流^{なが}, stream, for rivers and waving flags. — *Fütá-nagáre kava* or *fata*, two rivers, two flags.

15. **Yeda**, 枝^{えだ}, branch. — *Naginata fütó-yeda*, one pike.

16. **Füri**, 振^{ふり}, sway, for drawn swords. — *Katana fütó-furi*, one drawn sword.

II. Chinese Numeratives.

The scope of a Japanese Grammar excludes a complete list of this numerous class of words. For such we refer the reader, who wishes to see them all treated, to J. EDKINS, *Grammar of the Chinese Colloquial Language*, page 121 and further, and restrict ourselves here to those most in use.

In the union of the Chinese numerals with a successive numerative noun the Japanese spoken language allows itself a few modifications of sound, which arise as it were naturally from a rapid pronunciation, though in writing generally remain unnoticed.

The rule, which the spoken language follows in this respect is: if the enu-

merative noun begins with *k*, *s*, *t*, or with the labial *f* (*h*) and *p*, then the numeral unites itself more closely to it, and the final consonant undergoes an assimilation, which has been already illustrated on page 19.

<i>Itsu-k</i> ...	becomes	<i>Ik-k</i> ...	<i>San-f</i> ...	becomes	<i>Sam-b</i> ...
<i>Itsu-s</i> ...	„	<i>Is-s</i> ...	<i>Zīyu-k</i> ...	„	<i>Žik-k</i> ...
<i>Itsu-t</i> ...	„	<i>It-t</i> ...	<i>Zīyu-s</i> ...	„	<i>Žis-s</i> ...
<i>Itsu-f</i> ...	„	<i>Ip-p</i> ...	<i>Zīyu-t</i> ...	„	<i>Žit-t</i> ...
<i>Roku-f</i> ...	„	<i>Rop-p</i> ...	<i>Zīyu-f</i> ...	„	<i>Žip-p</i> ...

The combinations subject to assimilation are to be known by the numeral 一_ツ; e. g. 一_ツ 箇^カ, pron. *Ik-ka*.

No assimilation takes place, when the enumerative noun begins with one of the impure sounds *g*, *z*, *d*, which are pronounced as *ng*, *nz*, *nd*, or also with *m*, *n*, *r*, *y* and *w*. The characteristic of this class is the form 一_フ; e. g. 一_フ 枚^マ, *Itsi-mai*.

To the Chinese Enumerative nouns most in use belong:

1. 人_ニ, *Nin* (一_フ 人_ニ), man, for persons.

一_フ 人_ニ, *Itsi-nin*, = the Only, is applied to the Emperor (Mikado) alone. *Bon-si ni-nin*, two Bonzes. — 沙_シ 門_モ 十_{ジュ} 余_ヨ 人_ニ, *Sīya-mon zīyu yo nin*, ten Shamans. — *San-nin no onna*, three women. — *Go-nin no kwai-kokū-nin*, five foreigners; *Kwai-kokū-nin go-nin*, foreigner five persons.

The conversational language uses for one, two, three or four persons the words *Fūtōri*, *Fūtāri*, *Mitāri* and *Yottāri* (see page 145). — *Fītorino akindo*, one merchant. — *Fūtāri no sūi-fū*, two sailors.

2. 箇^カ. 個, by abbreviation 个 or ヶ, *Ka* (一_ツ 箇^カ), the most generally used enumerative noun, applicable to objects, which it is wished to characterize as individuals, as a piece, answers to the Japanese ツ, *tsu* (page 138).

The counting according to the Yédo-pronunciation is:

<i>Ik-ka</i> , イツカ 1.	<i>Go-ka</i> , ゴカ 5.	<i>Ku-ka</i> , クカ 9.
<i>Ni-ka</i> , ニカ 2.	<i>Rok-ka</i> , ロクカ 6.	<i>Žik-ka</i> , ジツカ . . . 10.
<i>San-ka</i> , サヅカ 3.	<i>Hītsi-ka</i> , シヅカ . . . 7.	<i>Žiu-ik-ka</i> , ジュイツカ . 11.
<i>Si-ka</i> , シカ 4.	<i>Hatsi-ka</i> , ハチカ . . . 8.	<i>Žiu-ni-ka</i> , ジュニカ . . 12.

一_ツ 箇^カ 所_{ショ}, *Ik-ka-sīyo*, a district (by counting). — 一_ツ 所_{ショ}, *Itsū-sīyo* (*is-šo*), one and the same district. — 三_{サン} 个^カ 日_{ニチ}, *San-ka nitsi*, three days. — 三_{サン} 日_{ニチ}, *San-zitsū*, the day three, the third day. — 四_シ ヶ, 大^{ダイ} 寺_ジ, *Sika no Dai-zi*, the four great temples.

To show that a quantity counted is spoken of, the word **Oyóso** (凡^ㇿ), pronounced **ōyósso**, = in sum, together, is generally placed before the number. — 凡^ㇿ 十月^ㇿ 月^ㇿ, *Oyóso ziyu-ka getsü*, ten months. — 凡^ㇿ 一年^ㇿ 間^ㇿ, *Oyóso ik-ka nen no aida*, the interval of one year (in counting), i. e. a year long.

3. 匹^ㇿ. 疋^ㇿ. 疋^ㇿ, **Fiki**, **Hiki** (一^ㇿ 匹^ㇿ), objects, which are paired or given in pairs, as horses, horned cattle, some sorts of fish, such as perch (*Tai*), woven stuffs etc. The counting at Yédo is:

<i>Ip-piki</i> 1.	<i>Go-hiki</i> 5.	<i>Ku-hiki</i> (<i>s'ki</i>). 9.	<i>Hiap-pi-ki</i> . 100.
<i>Ni-hiki</i> 2.	<i>Róp-piki</i> 6.	<i>Žib-biki</i> . . . 10.	<i>Sem biki</i> . . . 1000.
<i>Sam-biki</i> 3.	<i>S'tsi-hiki</i> . . . 7.	<i>Žiu ip-piki</i> . . 11.	
<i>Si-hiki</i> 4.	<i>Hátsi-hiki</i> . . . 8.	<i>Žiu-ni hiki</i> . . 12.	

M'má ip-piki, one horse. — *Sám-biki usi*, three oxen. — *Kinu ip-piki*, one piece of silk, of the length of 58 Jap. feet, or two pieces of 28 feet each.

4. 把^ㇿ, **Fa**, vulgo **Wa** (一^ㇿ 把^ㇿ), handful, bunch. *Budoo*, *Dai-kon*, *Kari-kúsá*, *Wara itsi-wa*, a bunch of grapes, radishes, hay, straw. At Yédo they count:

<i>Itsi-wa</i> 1.	<i>Si-wa</i> 4.	<i>Hütsi-wa</i> . . . 7.	<i>Žip-pa</i> 10.
<i>Ni-wa</i> 2.	<i>Go-wa</i> 5.	<i>Hatsi-wa</i> . . . 8.	<i>Žiu itsi-wa</i> (<i>ip-</i>
<i>Sam-ba</i> 3.	<i>Rokü-wa</i> 6.	<i>Ku-wa</i> 9.	<i>pa?</i>) 11.

This enumerative noun is applied to birds also (except birds of prey), and then expressed by 羽^ㇿ, **Fa**, vulgo **Wa**, feather. — *Oo-sagi itsi-wa*, a heron (not to be confounded with *üsági*, = hare). — *Ni-wa sira-sagi*, two white herons. *Sam-ba fibari*, three larks.

5. 尾^ㇿ, **Bi** (一^ㇿ 尾^ㇿ), tail, for fish. *Koi*, *Fasu*, *Funa itsi-bi*, *ni-bi*, carp, white fish, stone carp one piece, two pieces.

6. 口^ㇿ, **Ku** (一^ㇿ 口^ㇿ), mouth, for pots and pans.

7. 杯^ㇿ, vulgo 盃^ㇿ, **Fai**, **Hai** (一^ㇿ 杯^ㇿ), a saucer as a measure of what is drunk; also a numeral-substantive for muscles. People count:

<i>Ip-pai</i> 1.	<i>Rop-pai</i> 6.	<i>Žiu ip-pai</i> . . 11.	<i>Ni-žiu ip-pai</i> 21.
<i>Ni-hai</i> 2.	<i>H'tsi-hai</i> . . . 7.	<i>Žiu ni-hai</i> . . 12.	<i>San-žip-pai</i> . . 30.
<i>San-bai</i> 3.	<i>Hatsi-hai</i> . . . 8.	<i>Žiu san-bai</i> . . 13.	<i>Si žip-pai</i> . . 40.
<i>Si-hai</i> 4.	<i>Ku-hai</i> 9.	<i>Žiu si-hai</i> . . 14.	<i>Rok žip-pai</i> . 60.
<i>Go-hai</i> 5.	<i>Žip-pai</i> 10.	<i>Ni-žip-pai</i> . . 20.	<i>Hiap-pai</i> . . . 100.

Midzu ip-pai, a saucer or a glass of water. — *Tša ni hai*, two cups of tea.

8. 枚^ヰ, **Mai** (一^ヰ 枚^ヰ), handle, anything single, leaf, for things thin and flat, as boards, paper, prints, coined silver, some sorts of fish etc.

9. 本^ヰ, **Fon, Hon** (一^ヰ 本^ヰ), stem, stalk, handle, for trees, plants, in general things long and slender, which have the property of length, as a pencil (*Fude*), fan (*Ogi*), spoon (*Tsiya-siyákü*), whip (*Mutsi*), needles (*Fari*), salmon (*Sake*), etc. At Yedo, they count:

<i>Ip'-pon</i> 1.	<i>H'tši-hon</i> 7.	<i>Žiu sam-bon</i> . 13.	<i>Ni-žiu-ni hon</i> 22.
<i>Ni-hon</i> 2.	<i>Hatši-hon</i> 8.	<i>Žiu si-hon</i> . . 14.	<i>San-žip-pon</i> . 30.
<i>Sam-bon</i> 3.	<i>Ku-hon</i> 9.	<i>Žiu go-hon</i> . . 15.	<i>Si-žip-pon</i> . . 40.
<i>Si-hon</i> 4.	<i>Žip-pon</i> 10.	<i>Žiu rop-pon</i> . 16.	<i>Si-žiu ip-pon</i> . 41.
<i>Go-hon</i> 5.	<i>Žiu ip-pon</i> . . 11.	<i>Ni-žip-pon</i> . . 20.	<i>Hiap-pon</i> . . 100.
<i>Rop-pon</i> 6.	<i>Žiu ni hon</i> . . 12.	<i>Ni-žiu ip-pon</i> 21.	<i>Hiak ip-pon</i> . 101.

10. 端^ヰ, **Tan** (一^ヰ 端^ヰ), a folded piece, for silk and cotton goods. Vulgo 反^ヰ, sometimes 段^ヰ also. In answer to the question *Nan dan* (幾^ヰ 反^ヰ), how many pieces? the manner of counting is:

<i>It-tan</i> 1.	<i>Go-tan</i> 5.	<i>Žit-tan</i> 10.	<i>Si-žit-tan</i> . . . 40.
<i>Ni-tan</i> 2.	<i>Rok-tan</i> 6.	<i>Žiu-it-tan</i> . . . 11.	<i>Si-žiu it-tan</i> . 41.
<i>San-dan</i> 3.	<i>H'tsi-tan</i> 7.	<i>Ni-žit-tan</i> . . . 20.	<i>Hiak-tan</i> . . . 100.
<i>Si-tan</i> 4.	<i>Hatsi-tan</i> 8.	<i>Ni-žiu it-tan</i> . 21.	<i>Sen-tan</i> . . . 1000.

絹^ヰ 一^ヰ 端^ヰ, *Kinu it-tan*, one piece of silk. — 布^ヲ 二 反^ヰ, *Nuno ni-tan*, two pieces of hempen cloth. — 段^ヰ 匹^ヲ 三^ヲ 反^ヰ, piece-wares three pieces.

11. 挺^ヰ, **Tšoo** (一^ヰ 挺^ヰ), handle, for tools with handles. *Nomi it-tšoo*, a chisel. So also *Kiri*, borer; *Yasuri*, file; *Teppoo*, gun; *Naginata*, pike; *Sumi*, East-Ind. ink; *Roo*, wax; *Soku*, flat candlestick.

12. 柄^ヰ, **Fei, Hei** (一^ヰ 柄^ヰ), stem, handle, for pikes and articles with handles.

13. 腰^ヲ, **Yoo** (一^ヰ 腰^ヲ), the middle, the waist, for swords, which are stuck in the girdle. *Tatsi*, *Katana*, *Waki-sasi itsi-yoo*, one sword with belt, one large, one small sabre. *Utsiwo*, *Yebira itsi-yoo*, one quiver.

14. 蓋^ヲ, **Kai** (一^ヰ 蓋^ヲ), cover, for hats (*kasa*), umbrellas and parasols (*kara-kasa*). They count as with *Ik-ka*: *Ik-kai*, 1. *Ni-kai*, 2. *Žik-kai*, 10. *Ni-žik-kai*, 20. *Sen-gai*, 1000.

15. 脚^{キヤク}, **Kiyakū**, **Kiak** (一^{キヤク} 脚^{キヤク}), foot, for articles of furniture having feet. *Tsukue*, or *Keu-sok ik-kiak*, one desk. *Siyoo-gi san-kiak*, three couches.

16. 棹^{ツソ}, **Tsō** (一^{ツソ} 棹^{ツソ}), swing, for trunks and traveling-articles, which are carried hanging on a stick. *Norimono it-tsō*, a litter or sedan chair. *Naga-bitsu* or *Naga-motsi ni-tsō*, two traveling trunks.

17. 艘^ソ, **Soo** (一^ソ 艘^ソ), vessel, for ships. Counting is done:

<i>Is-soo</i> 1.	<i>Go-soo</i> 5.	<i>Kū-soo</i> 9.	<i>Ni-žis-soo</i> . . 20.
<i>Ni-soo</i> 2.	<i>Rokū-soo</i> 6.	<i>Žis-soo</i> 10.	<i>San-žis-soo</i> . . 30.
<i>San-zoo</i> 3.	<i>H'tsi-soo</i> 7.	<i>Žiu is-soo</i> . . . 11.	<i>Si-žis-soo</i> . . . 40.
<i>Si-soo</i> 4.	<i>Has-soo</i> 8.	<i>Žiu-ni-soo</i> . . . 12.	<i>Hiakū-soo</i> . . 100.

Is-soo-fūnē, one ship. *Is-soo gun-kan*, one war-ship. *Ko-būnē is-soo*, one boat.

18. 輻^{リヨウ}, **Riyoo** (一^{リヨウ} 輻^{リヨウ}), a pair of wheels, for carriages. *Kuruma itsi-riyoo*, one wagon.

19. 卷^{クワン}, **Kwan** (一^{クワン} 卷^{クワン}), roll, for writings and stuff, which are rolled up. *Siyō(šo)-motsū ik-kwan*, a roll of writing.

20. 幅^{フク}, **Fukū** (一^{フク} 幅^{フク}), breadth, for piece-goods, pictures etc.

21. 軸^{ジク}, **Ziku** (一^{ジク} 軸^{ジク}), axle, for pictures, which are hung on rollers. *Kake-mono itsi-ziku*, a hanging piece.

22. 面^{メン}, **Men** (一^{メン} 面^{メン}), face, for mirrors, flags, fiddles, drums. *Ka-gami itsi-men*, a looking glass.

23. 冊^{サツ}, **Sats'** (一^{サツ} 冊^{サツ}), volume, for books. *Is-sats' no šo-mots*, one volume. *Hon ni-sats'*, two volumes.

24. 通^{ツウ}, **Tsuu** (一^{ツウ} 通^{ツウ}), for open letters, written declarations, proofs of receipt etc. They count:

<i>It-tsuu</i> 1.	<i>Si-tsuu</i> 4.	<i>Žiu-it-tsuu</i> . . 11.	<i>San-žit-tsuu</i> . . 30.
<i>Ni-tsuu</i> 2.	<i>Rok' tsuu</i> 6.	<i>Ni-žit-tsuu</i> . . 20.	<i>Si-žit-tsuu</i> . . 40.
<i>San tsuu</i> 3.	<i>Žit-tsuu</i> 10.	<i>Ni-žiu it-tsuu</i> 21.	<i>Hiak' tsuu</i> . . 100.

一^{ツウ} 通^{ツウ}ノ書^{ショ} 壯^{ゾウ}, *It-tsuu no šo zōo*, or 書^{ショ} 簡^{カン}, *So-kan*, or *Tē-gami*, one letter. — 二^ニ 通^{ツウ}ノ請^{セイ} 取^ト 書^{ショ} or 請^{セイ} 壯^{ゾウ}, two receipts.

25. 封^{フウ}, **Fuu** (一^{フウ} 封^{フウ}), seal, for sealed letters. They count:

<i>Ip-puu</i> 1.	<i>Go-fuu</i> 5.	<i>Ku-fuu</i> 9.	<i>Ni-žiu-ip-puu</i> 21.
<i>Ni-fuu</i> 2.	<i>Rok-puu</i> 6.	<i>Žip-puu</i> 10.	<i>San-žip-puu</i> . . 30.
<i>San-puu</i> 3.	<i>H'tsi-fuu</i> 7.	<i>Žiu-ip-puu</i> . . 11.	<i>Hiak-fuu</i> . . . 100.
<i>Si-fuu</i> 4.	<i>Hatsi-fuu</i> 8.	<i>Ni-žip-puu</i> . . . 20.	

一^フ 封^フノ 書^シ 翰^カ or 手^テ 簡^カ, *Ip-puno šo-kan* or *te-gami*, one sealed letter.

26. 足^ゾ, *Sokū* (一^フ 足^ゾ), foot, for shoes. — *Tabi is-sokū*, one pair of stockings.

NOTATION OF TIME.

§ 38. Enumeration of years.

Year, Japanese トシ, *Tōsi*, old-Japanese トセ, *Tōsé*, Chinese 年^{ネン}, *Nen*.

1. The enumeration of years in pure Japanese is limited, on the question: *Ikū tōsé* (幾^イ 年^{ネン}), how many years?, to:

一^{ヒト} 年^{ネン}, *Fūtō tōsé*, a full year.

二^{フタ} 年^{ネン}, *Fūtā tōsé*, two years.

三^ミ 年^{ネン}, *Mi tōsé*, three years.

四^ヨ 年^{ネン}, *Yo tōsé*, four years.

五^{イツ} 年^{ネン}, *itsū tōsé*, five years.

六^ム 年^{ネン}, *Mū tōsé*, six years.

七^{ナナ} 年^{ネン}, *Nānā tōsé*, seven years.

八^ヤ 年^{ネン}, *Yā tōsé*, eight years.

九^ク 年^{ネン}, *Kōkōnō tōsé*¹⁾, nine years.

十^{ジュ} 年^{ネン}, *Tō tōsé*, ten years.

百^{ヒャク} 年^{ネン}, *Momo tōsé*, a hundred years.

千^{セン} 年^{ネン}, *Tsi tōsé*, a thousand years.

2. The Chinese enumeration of years, on the question: 何^{ナニ} 年^{ネン}, *Nan-nen*, how many years?

一^{イツ} 年^{ネン}, *Itsi-nen*, or 一^{イツ} 箇^カ 年^{ネン}, *Ik-ka-nen*, a year.

二^ニ 年^{ネン}, *Ni-nen*, „ 二^ニ 箇^カ 年^{ネン}, *Ni-ka-nen*, two years.

三^{サン} 年^{ネン}, *San nen*, „ 三^{サン} 箇^カ 年^{ネン}, *San-ka-nen*, three „

四^シ 年^{ネン}, *Yo-nen*, of *Yo-tosi*, „ 四^シ 箇^カ 年^{ネン}, *Si-ka-nen*, four „

五^ゴ 年^{ネン}, *Go-nen*, „ 五^ゴ 箇^カ 年^{ネン}, *Go-ka-nen*, five „

etc.

etc.

The Chinese *si* (four) before *nen* is continually superseded by the Japanese *yo*.

在^{ザイ} 位^イ 四^シ 十^{ジュ} 年^{ネン}, the year 40 from the accession to the throne.
四年^{シヨウネン} 目^メ = ナリマス, *Yo-tosi-me ni* or *Yo-nen-meni nari-masu*, it is now (it goes now in) the fourth year.

3. The question: how old? = Japanese *iku tōsé* (幾^イ 歳^{サイ}), how many years? is answered in the Chinese manner of counting. — 十^{ジュ} 七^シ 歳^{サイ} = テ 位^イ 七^シ = ツキユフ, *Zūyu-sitsi zai nite kūrāi ni tsuki-tamoo*, in the 17th year of his life he comes to the throne. — *Ni-zūyu no tosi ni* or *Tosi ni-zūyu ni*, in his 20th year.

¹⁾ Vulgo *Konō tōsé* also.

§ 39. Chronological notation of years.

1. Japan uses the Chinese enumeration of years, which was introduced by a buddhist missionary in A. D. 602 ¹⁾. After this the years, as well the months and the days, are counted by sexagenary periods, and named after the known sexagenary cycle, which itself consists of a cycle of ten and one of twelve series.

The cycle of ten series is called from the five elements: Wood, Fire, Earth, Metal and Water (Japanese *Ki*, *Fi*, *Tsütsi*, *Kane*, *Midzü*), which, each taken double, are distinguished as masculine and feminine, or, after the Japanese conception, as the elder and as the younger brother (兄^ㄟ, *Ye* and 弟^ㄞ, *To*).

The names of the ten-series cycle are:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. 甲 ^ㄟ , <i>Ki nó ye</i> . | 6. 巳 ^ㄟ , <i>Tsütsi nó to</i> . |
| 2. 乙 ^ㄟ , <i>Ki nó to</i> . | 7. 庚 ^ㄟ , <i>Kan nó ye</i> . |
| 3. 丙 ^ㄟ , <i>Fi nó ye</i> . | 8. 辛 ^ㄟ , <i>Kan nó to</i> . |
| 4. 丁 ^ㄟ , <i>Fi nó to</i> . | 9. 壬 ^ㄟ , <i>Mǐdzü nó ye</i> . |
| 5. 戊 ^ㄟ , <i>Tsütsi nó ye</i> . | 10. 癸 ^ㄟ , <i>Mǐdzü nó to</i> . |

The twelve-series cycle has relation to the division of the zodiac into twelve equal parts, and bears the names of the Chinese zodiac, for which Japanese names of animals are used, as:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. 子 ^ㄟ , <i>Ne</i> Mouse. | 7. 午 ^ㄟ , <i>M'ma</i> Horse. |
| 2. 丑 ^ㄟ , <i>Usi</i> Bull. | 8. 未 ^ㄟ , <i>Fitsüzi</i> Goat. |
| 3. 寅 ^ㄟ , <i>Tora</i> Tiger. | 9. 申 ^ㄟ , <i>Sarü</i> Ape. |
| 4. 卯 ^ㄟ , <i>U</i> Hare. | 10. 酉 ^ㄟ , <i>Töri</i> Cock. |
| 5. 辰 ^ㄟ , <i>Tats'</i> (spr. <i>Taats</i>) Dragon. | 11. 戌 ^ㄟ , <i>inü</i> Hound. |
| 6. 巳 ^ㄟ , <i>Mi</i> Serpent. | 12. 亥 ^ㄟ , <i>I</i> Swine. |

If both series are let proceed side by side, till both are run out, then the sixty-series cycle is obtained, of which the first year is called 甲子年 or *Kinó-ye neno tosi*, and the sixtieth 癸亥年, or *Mǐdzü nó to i no tosi*. The first year of the cycle now current answers to 1864.

¹⁾ See *Japan's Bezüge mit der Koreischen Halbinsel und mit Schina. Nach Japanischen Quellen von J. HOFFMANN*. 1839. Page 126.

SYNOPSIS OF THE SEXAGENARY CYCLE.

	甲 <small>キヲエ</small>	乙 <small>キント</small>	丙 <small>ヒノエ</small>	丁 <small>ヒント</small>	戊 <small>ツチノエ</small>	己 <small>ツチント</small>	庚 <small>カンノエ</small>	辛 <small>カンント</small>	壬 <small>ミヅノエ</small>	癸 <small>ミヅント</small>
子 <small>チ</small>	1		13		25		37		49	
丑 <small>ウシ</small>		2		14		26		38		50
寅 <small>トラ</small>	51		3		15		27		39	
卯 <small>ウ</small>		52		4		16		28		40
辰 <small>タテ</small>	41		53		5		17		29	
巳 <small>ミ</small>		42		54		6		18		30
午 <small>ウマ</small>	31		43		55		7		19	
未 <small>ヒツジ</small>		32		44		56		8		20
申 <small>サル</small>	21		33		45		57		9	
酉 <small>トリ</small>		22		34		46		58		10
戌 <small>イヌ</small>	11		23		35		47		59	
亥 <small>イ</small>		12		24		36		48		60

2. Enumeration of years by years of governments.

In the earliest times, was added to the cyclical enumeration of years, the calculation after the years of government of the Sovereign (anciently 人王 ニンヲウ, *Nin woo*, = King of men, called afterwards Mikado). According to the rule adopted, the first year of the reign of a Mikado is always reckoned to have begun with the year following the death of his predecessor. The Japanese New-year's day, on which ZIN MU, the founder of the Mikado-dynasty, ascended

the throne, was the 19th of Febr. (after the Julian style) of the year 660 B. C. ¹⁾.

The second year of king ZIN MU is called 神^ジ武^ム天^{テン}皇^ワ壬^ニ戌^セ二^ニ年^{ネン}.

§ 40. Enumeration of years by year-names.

In 645 A. D. the reckoning by years of government was superseded by a reckoning by year-names, *Nen goo* (年^{ネン}號^{ガウ} or 号^{ガウ}).

Just as in China, these are appointed by the Sovereign, so are they in Japan by the Mikado, and after the lapse of a larger or smaller number of years changed by him, this being one of the prerogatives of his crown. The adoption of his year-name pleads for the recognition of his sovereignty ²⁾.

The 68 Chinese words, from which the Japanese year-names are chosen, are:

○ 天^{テン} 元^{ゲン} 乾^{ケン} 建^{ケン} 延^{エン} 萬^{マン} 神^{ジン} 雲^{ウン} 文^{ブン} 寬^{カン} 養^{ヤウ}
 老^{ラウ} 久^{キウ} 中^{チュウ} 祥^{シヤウ} 正^{セイ} 承^{オウ} 應^{オウ} 寶^{ホウ} 保^{ホウ} 衡^{コウ} 康^{コウ} 享^{キヤウ}
 弘^{コウ} 慶^{ケイ} 貞^{チン} 靈^{レイ} 泰^{タイ} 平^{ヘイ} 禎^{テン} 大^{ダイ} 化^カ 字^ジ 嘉^カ 喜^キ
 德^{トク} 吉^{キツ} 景^{ケイ} 護^ゴ 鳳^{ホウ} 朱^{シュ} 鳥^{テウ} 和^ワ 壽^{シュ} 亨^{キヤウ} 龜^キ 錄^{ロク}
 祿^{ロク} 安^{アン} 仁^{ニン} 勝^{シヤウ} 昌^{シヤウ} 祚^ソ 福^フ 齊^{サイ} 同^{ドウ} 銅^{ドウ} 白^{ハク} 雉^チ
 永^{エイ} 明^{メイ} 至^シ 治^ヂ 長^{チャウ} 觀^{クワン} 歷^{レキ} 政^{セイ} 興^{キヤウ}

The successive year-names of the current century are:

享 ^{キヤウ} 和 ^ワ , <i>Kiyoo-wa</i>	辛元 1801.	嘉 ^カ 永 ^{エイ} , <i>Ka-yei</i>	戊元 1848.
文 ^{ブン} 化 ^カ , <i>Bun-kwa</i>	甲元 1804.	安 ^{アン} 政 ^{セイ} , <i>An-sei</i>	甲元 1854.
文 ^{ブン} 政 ^{セイ} , <i>Bun-sei</i>	戊元 1818.	萬 ^{マン} 延 ^{エン} , <i>Man-en</i>	庚元 1860.
天 ^{テン} 保 ^{ホウ} , <i>Ten-foo</i>	庚元 1830.	文 ^{ブン} 久 ^{キウ} , <i>Bun-kiu</i>	辛元 1861.
(<i>Tem-poo</i>)		元 ^{ゲン} 治 ^ヂ , <i>Gen-dzi</i>	甲元 1864.
弘 ^{コウ} 化 ^カ , <i>Koo-kwa</i>	甲元 1844.		

¹⁾ After the calculation of the Professor F. KAISER at eight o'clock in the morning of the said year, there was a New Moon at Miyako. Therefore the correctness of the Japanese chronology may not be called in question.

²⁾ The change of the year-names seems, in latter times, not to have been known early enough, as reckoning has been continued with one year-name, when another had taken its place.

§ 41. Division of the solar year.

The course of the sun and the solar year are divided into twelve equal parts (months), called after the zodiac, beginning with the arc of the Mouse, on half of which the winter solstice falls. If the twelve arcs are bisected, the 24 periods of 15 days 5 hours and 14½ minutes are obtained, by which the husbandman regulates his labour. These 24 divisions, called 節多氣キ, *Sek-kí* or modifications of the weather, are distributed by pairs over the twelve months of the year, the first of each pair being called 節多 *Setsü*, the second 中多 *Tsiu*.

{ 立 ^リ 春 ^シ , <i>Ris-šun</i> 3 Febr. Beginning of the spring.	{ 立 ^リ 秋 ^シ , <i>Ris-siu</i> 7 Aug. Beginning of the autumn.
{ 雨 ^ウ 水 ^{スイ} , <i>U-süi</i> 19 Febr. Rain water.	{ 處 ^シ 暑 ^シ , <i>S'yo-s'yo</i> 23 Aug. Local heat.
{ 驚 ^キ 蟄 ^チ , <i>K'yo-tsits</i> 5 March. Awakening of the insects.	{ 白 ^{ハク} 露 ^ロ , <i>Fákü-ro</i> 8 Sept. White dew.
{ 春 ^シ 分 ^{ブン} , <i>šun-bun</i> 20 March. Middle of the spring.	{ 秋 ^シ 分 ^{ブン} , <i>Siu-bun</i> 23 Sept. Middle of autumn.
{ 清 ^{セイ} 明 ^{メイ} , <i>Sei-mei</i> 5 April. Clear.	{ 寒 ^{カン} 露 ^ロ , <i>Kan-ro</i> 8 Oct. Cold dew.
{ 穀 ^{コク} 雨 ^ウ , <i>Kokü-u</i> 20 April. Seed rain.	{ 霜 ^{サウ} 降 ^{カウ} , <i>Soo-koo</i> 23 Oct. Fall of hoar-frost.
{ 立 ^リ 夏 ^カ , <i>Rik-ka</i> 5 May. Beginning of the summer.	{ 立 ^リ 冬 ^{トウ} , <i>Rit-too</i> 7 Nov. Beginning of the winter.
{ 小 ^{ショ} 滿 ^{マン} , <i>Seo-man</i> 20 May. Little plenty.	{ 小 ^{ショ} 雪 ^{セツ} , <i>Seo-sets</i> 22 Nov. Little snow.
{ 芒 ^{ボウ} 種 ^{シュ} , <i>Boo-siu</i> 5 June. Transplanting of the rice.	{ 大 ^{ダイ} 雪 ^{セツ} , <i>Dai-sets</i> 7 Dec. Great snow.
{ 夏 ^ケ 至 ^ジ , <i>Ge-zi</i> 21 June. Height of the summer.	{ 冬 ^{トウ} 至 ^ジ , <i>Too-zi</i> 22 Dec. Height of the winter.
{ 小 ^{ショ} 暑 ^{ショ} , <i>Seo-s'yo</i> 6 July. Little heat.	{ 小 ^{ショ} 寒 ^{カン} , <i>Seo-kan</i> 6 Jan. Little frost.
{ 大 ^{ダイ} 暑 ^{ショ} , <i>Dai-s'yo</i> 23 July. Great heat.	{ 大 ^{ダイ} 寒 ^{カン} , <i>Dai-kan</i> 20 Jan. Great frost.

The civil year begins with *Ris-šun* (beginning of the spring). *Ris-šun yori falsi z'yu nitsi me*, or the 80th day from the beginning of the spring is our 23th of April. Time is very commonly determined after the two equinoctial feasts *Bi-gan* (彼^ビ 岸^{ガン}), which last seven days each, the principal feast, that takes place on the fourth day, falling on the day of the equinox.

§ 42. Enumeration of months.

Months are reckoned in answer to the question *Iku-tsūki* (幾ヶ月), or *Nan-getsū*, how many months?

Japanese.	Chinese.	
<i>Fūtō-tsūki.</i>	一ヶ月 ¹⁾ <i>Itsi-gets</i> or 一ヶ月 <i>Ik-ka-gets</i> , one month.	
<i>Fūtā-tsūki.</i>	二ヶ月 <i>Ni-gets</i> „ 二ヶ月 <i>Ni-ka-gets</i> , 2 months.	
<i>Mi-tsūki.</i>	三ヶ月 <i>San-gets</i> „ 三ヶ月 <i>San-ka-gets</i> , 3 „	
<i>Yō-tsūki.</i>	四ヶ月 <i>Si-gets</i> „ 四ヶ月 <i>Si-ka-gets</i> , 4 „	
<i>Itsū-tsūki.</i>	五ヶ月 <i>Go-gets</i> „ 五ヶ月 <i>Go-ka-gets</i> , 5 „	
<i>Mū-tsūki.</i>	六ヶ月 <i>Rok-gets</i> „ 六ヶ月 <i>Rok-ka-gets</i> , 6 „	
<i>Nanā-tsūki.</i>	七ヶ月 <i>Sitsi-gets</i> „ 七ヶ月 <i>Sitsi-ka-gets</i> , 7 „	
<i>Ya-tsūki.</i>	八ヶ月 <i>Fatsi-gets</i> „ 八ヶ月 <i>Hak-ka-gets</i> , 8 „	
<i>Kōkōno-tsūki.</i>	九ヶ月 <i>Ku-gets</i> „ 九ヶ月 <i>Ku-ka-gets</i> , 9 „	
<i>Tō-tsūki.</i>	十ヶ月 <i>Žiu-gets</i> „ 十ヶ月 <i>Žik-ka-gets</i> , 10 „	
	十ヶ月一ヶ月 <i>Žiu-itsi-gets</i> „ 十ヶ月一ヶ月 <i>Žiu-ik-ka-g.</i> , 11 „	
	十ヶ月二ヶ月 <i>Žiu-ni-gets</i> „ 十ヶ月二ヶ月 <i>Žiu-ni-ka-g.</i> , 12 „	

To the question *Nan-gwats* (何ヶ月), at Yédo *Nan ngats*, which month? (of the year) the names following answer:

正月 ¹⁾ 月 ²⁾ , <i>Siyoo-gwats</i> , first month. (at Yédo <i>Soo ngátsū</i>).	七ヶ月 ³⁾ , <i>Sitsi-gwats</i> , seventh month.
二月, <i>Ni-gwats</i> , second „	八ヶ月, <i>Fatsi-gwats</i> , eighth „
三ヶ月, <i>San-gwats</i> , third „	九ヶ月, <i>Ku-gwats</i> , ninth „
四ヶ月, <i>Si-gwats</i> , fourth „	十ヶ月, <i>Žiu-(Džiu-)gwats</i> , tenth „
五ヶ月, <i>Go-gwats</i> , fifth „	十ヶ月一ヶ月, <i>Žiu-itsi-gwats</i> , eleventh month.
六ヶ月, <i>Rok-gwats</i> , sixth „	十ヶ月二ヶ月, <i>Žiu-ni-gwats</i> , twelfth „

These names are good for the intercourse of every day life; in chronological writings and in almanacs the months are also named after the sexagenary cycle.

The intercalary month. As the civil year of the Japanese is a lunar year connected with the solar year, the months continually begin with the new moon

¹⁾ *Itsi-gets*, = a whole month.

and have 29 or 30 days alternately. Thus to the common lunar year belong 354 or 355 days. To keep the four seasons even with the revolution of the sun, every two or three years an intercalary month (*Uruu-dzüki*) is added, which obtains the name of the moon, which it follows, preceded by the word *Uruu* (潤^ル). The intercalary month following the second month is thus called 潤^ル二^ニ月^{グヰ}, *Uruu nigwats*, = supernumerary second month.

§ 43. Enumeration of the days.

The natural day, from the rising to the setting of the sun, is called in Jap. 日, *Fi*, *Hi*; the night 夜, *Yo*; the midday *Firu*; the midnight *Yoru*. The compound *Firu-yoru*, = day and night, means the civil day; it is equivalent to the Chinese 晝^ヂ夜^ヤ, *Tsiu-ya*, and, just as it, applied to the astronomical day also.

In connection with the year and month, the civil day is called Jap. *Ka*, Chin. 日^{ニチ}, *Nitsi* (or *Zitsü*); both are used in counting the days.

1. After the Chinese manner they count, with or without the numerative 箇^カ or 个, *ka*, to the question: 幾^{イツ}日^{ニチ}, *Ikü-ka*, how many days?

一^{イツ}箇^カ日^{ニチ}, *Ik-ka nitsi*, 1 day.

二^ニ箇^カ日^{ニチ}, *Ni-ka nitsi*, 2 days.

三^{サン}箇^カ日^{ニチ}, *San-ka nitsi*, 3 days.

四^シ箇^カ日^{ニチ}, *Si-ka nitsi*, 4 days etc.

after the reckoning with the numerative 箇^カ, *ka* (page 150):

三^{サン}十^{ジュ}三^{サン}四^シ箇^カ日^{ニチ}ノ間^{アタ}, *Sanziu san-si-ka nitsino aida*, within 33 to 34 days.

If the numerative 箇^カ, *ka*, is left out, the *Si-nitsi* (4 days), because it also means dying-day, is superseded by the Japanese *Yok-ka*; for 14 days is said *Züyu-yok-ka*, for 24 days *Ni-züyu yok-ka*, for 34 days *San-züyu yok-ka* etc.

2. The Japanese manner of counting, which extends only to the first ten days, and to the 20th and 30th, refers to the days of a month, when the month is expressly named previously; this not being the case, the counting must then be considered to begin from another given date, which however is not included in the calculation.

The days of the month, — it generally begins with the new moon, — are called, after the question: *Idzü-ka* (何^{ナニ}日^{ニチ}), = which day? or *Idzüre no ji-ka*?

1. 朔^ツ 日^カ, *Tsüi-tatsi*.
2. 二^フ 日^カ, *Futsu-ká*.
3. 三^ミ 日^カ, *Mi-ká*.
4. 四^ヨ 日^カ, *Yok-ká*.
5. 五^イ 日^カ, *Its'-ká*.
6. 六^ム 日^カ, *Muyu-ká*, vulgo *Mui-ká*.
7. 七^ナ 日^カ, *Nanu-ká*, „, *Nanó-ká*.
8. 八^ヨ 日^カ, *Yoo-ká*.
9. 九^コ 日^カ, *Kokonó-ká*.
10. 十^ト 日^カ, *Too-ká*.
11. 十^ジ 一^{イチ} 日^ニ, *Žiyu-itsi-nitsi*.
12. 十^ジ 二^ニ 日^ニ, *Žiyu-ni-nitsi*.
13. 十^ジ 三^{サン} 日^ニ, *Žiyu-san-nitsi*.
14. 十^ジ 四^ヨ 日^カ, *Žiyu-yok-ká*.
15. 十^ジ 五^ゴ 日^ニ, *Žiyu-go-nitsi*.
16. 十^ジ 六^{ロク} 日^ニ, *Žiyu-roku-nitsi*.
17. 十^ジ 七^{シチ} 日^ニ, *Žiyu-sitsi-nitsi*.
18. 十^ジ 八^{ハチ} 日^ニ, *Žiyu-fatsi-nitsi*.
19. 十^ジ 九^ク 日^ニ, *Žiyu-gu-nitsi*.
20. 二^ハ 十^ツ 日^カ, *Fáts'-(Háts'-)ka*.
21. 井^ニ 一^{イチ} 日^ニ, *Ni-žiyu-itsi-nitsi*.
22. 井^ニ 二^ニ 日^ニ, *Ni-žiyu-ni-nitsi*.
23. 井^ニ 三^{サン} 日^ニ, *Ni-žiyu-san-nitsi*.
24. 井^ニ 四^ヨ 日^カ, *Ni-žiyu-yokká*.
25. 井^ニ 五^ゴ 日^ニ, *Ni-žiyu-go-nitsi*.
26. 井^ニ 六^{ロク} 日^ニ, *Ni-žiyu-rok'-nitsi*.
27. 井^ニ 七^{シチ} 日^ニ, *Ni-žiyu-sitsi-nitsi*.
28. 井^ニ 八^{ハチ} 日^ニ, *Ni-žiyu-fatsi-nitsi*.
29. 井^ニ 九^ク 日^ニ, *Ni-žiyu-ku-nitsi*.
30. 卅^サ 日^カ, *Mi-so-ka*, of *San-žiyu-n*.

Tsüi-tatsi, properly *Tsüki-tatsi*, signifies the moon's rising; the first day is called also *Tsüki-gásira*, head or beginning of the moon. The first day of the year is called 元^{ゲン} 日^{ジツ}, *Gwan* (or *Gan*) *zits*, or *Fazime no fi*. The old-Japanese *Ka* (日^カ) means daylight; *Fi*, as Chin. 日^ニ, *Nitsi*, means sun and day.

Still to be noticed, are the expressions:

昨^サ 夜^ヤ, *Sákü-ya*, last night.

昨^サ 日^{ジツ}, *Sákü-zits*, }
 昨^サ 天^{テン}, *Sákü-ten*, } yesterday.

昨^サ 朝^{チョウ}, *Sákü-tšoo*, yesterday morning.

昨^サ 今^{コン}, *Sákü-kon*, yesterd. and to day.

再^サ 昨^サ 日^{ジツ}, *Is-sakü-zits*, the day
 before yesterday.

今^{コン} 日^ニ, *Kon-nitsi*, to day.

明^{メイ} 日^ニ, *Miyoo-nitsi*, to morrow.

明^{メイ} 後^ゴ 日^ニ, *Miyoo go nitsi*, or

Asatte, the day after to morrow.

Ik-ká (幾^{イク} 日^カ) *de deki-másüká*, in how many days can it be done? *Ni-fiyákü nitsi utsi de deki-másü*, in two hundred days it can be done. — *Sore wa idzuka* (何^{ナニ} 日^カ。何時。早晚) *made ni deki-másüka?* till (on) what day can it be ready? *Ku-gwatsü fatsü-ka made ni deki-mášoo*, on the eighth day of the ninth moon it will be ready. (*Shopping-Dialogues*, page 9.)

If *Ka* or *Nitsi* be followed by 目^メ, *Me* (see § 32), then this expression is equivalent to an express definition of the day by an ordinal noun of number. 毎^毎日^日, *Mai-nitsi*, is said for: daily; 隔^隔日^日, *Kaku-zitsu*, the next day but one; *Mi-ka-me ni*, on the third day; *Mi-ka-me gōtōni fatsu ru nek-ki*, a fever which arises (recurs) every third day, the tertian ague. — *Kon-nitsi yori yok-ka-me ni*, on the fourth day from to day, to day as the point of departure from which the date is reckoned, not being included in the calculation. — *Yēdo mūkāsi yok-ka-me gōtōni itsi tātsisi nari*, at Yēdo, market has been, of old, held every fourth day (or every four days), thus either on the 4th, the 8th or the 12th, or on the 1st, 5th or 9th day etc.). — *Muika-meni deki agarimasta*, he accomplished it on the 6th day. 三^三十^十三^三四^四个^个カ^カ日^日目^目^メ =, *San-zū san si ka nitsi me ni*, on the 33rd or 34th day.

§ 44. Notation of hours.



This dial shows the two methods of marking the hours in use in Japan.

1. According to one method, the original Chinese astronomical, exhibited on the inside of the dial, is, as is seen, the civil day divided into twelve equal portions of time (時^{トキ}, *Toki*, times), which are named after the zodiac, as 子^{ネノ}時^{トキ}, *Neno doki*, Mouse-time, 丑^{ウシノ}時^{トキ}, *Usino doki*, Bull-time, etc. At Yédo they say *Kok* instead of *Toki*. The *Toki* is divided into two halves; the first is called 初^{ハジメ}, *Syô*, = first beginning, the second, 正^{マサ}, *Sei*, = the true or proper. Each half, being equivalent to an hour according to our reckoning, has four subordinate divisions, called 刻^{コク}, *Kok* or notches, each of 15 分^{ブン}, *Bun* (= 15 minutes), and the *Bun* has 60 秒^{セウ}, *Meo* (60 seconds). This cycle begins with the 子^{ネノ}時^{トキ}, *Neno doki* or *Neno koku*, the middle of which (正^{マサ}) falls at midnight; thus its beginning falls 60 min. before, its end 60 min. after midnight.

子^{ネノ}時^{トキ} *Neno doki*, Mouse-time.

初^{ハジメ} *syô*, = 11 o'clock in the evening.

正^{マサ} *sei*, = 12 o'clock midnight.

丑^{ウシノ}時^{トキ} *Usino doki*, Bull-time.

初^{ハジメ} *syô*, = 1 o'clock in the morning.

正^{マサ} *sei*, = 2 o'clock „

寅^{トウ}時^{トキ} *Tôranô doki*, Tiger-time.

初^{ハジメ} *syô*, = 3 o'clock in the morning.

正^{マサ} *sei*, = 4 o'clock „

卯^ウ時^{トキ} *Unô doki*, Hare-time.

初^{ハジメ} *syô*, = 5 o'clock in the morning.

正^{マサ} *sei*, = 6 o'clock „

辰^{タツノ}時^{トキ} *Tatsunô doki*, Dragon-time.

初^{ハジメ} *syô*, = 7 o'clock in the morning.

正^{マサ} *sei*, = 8 o'clock „

巳^ミ時^{トキ} *Mî nô doki*, Serpent-time.

初^{ハジメ} *syô*, = 9 o'clock in the morning.

正^{マサ} *sei*, = 10 o'clock „

午^{ウマノ}時^{トキ} *M'mánô doki*, Horse-time.

初^{ハジメ} *syô*, = 11 o'clock in the morning.

正^{マサ} *sei*, = 12 o'clock noon.

未^{ヒツ}時^{トキ} *Fitsúzinô doki*, Goat-time.

初^{ハジメ} *syô*, = 1 o'clock in the afternoon.

正^{マサ} *sei*, = 2 o'clock „

申^{サルノ}時^{トキ} *Sárû nô doki*, Ape-time.

初^{ハジメ} *syô*, = 3 o'clock in the afternoon.

正^{マサ} *sei*, = 4 o'clock „

酉^{トリノ}時^{トキ} *Tori nô doki*, Cock-time.

初^{ハジメ} *syô*, = 5 o'clock in the afternoon.

正^{マサ} *sei*, = 6 o'clock „

戌^{イヌノ}時^{トキ} *Inû nô doki*, Dog-time.

初^{ハジメ} *syô*, = 7 o'clock in the evening.

正^{マサ} *sei*, = 8 o'clock „

亥^{イノ}時^{トキ} *Inô doki*, Swine-time.

初^{ハジメ} *syô*, = 9 o'clock in the evening.

正^{マサ} *sei*, = 10 o'clock „

Our 11 hours 48 min. 2 sec. before midnight is expressed by 子^{ネノ}初^{ハジメ}

三^サ 刻^{コク}ヲ 三^サ 分^{ブン}ニ 二^ニ 秒^{ミョウ}, *Neno sîyo san-kokû san-bun ni-meo*, i. e. $3 \times 15 + 3 \text{ min.} + 2 \text{ sec.}$ from the beginning of the Mouse-time. Our 12 o'clock midnight is 子^コヲ 正^{セイ}, *Neno sei*; our 12 o'clock 15 min. after midnight 子^コヲ 正^{セイ} 初^{ハツ} 刻^{コク}ヲ, *Nenô sei sîyo kokû*.

2. The second method, the Japanese proper, supersedes the names of the zodiac with numbers, by which the hour is made known by strokes on the bell or drum. The civil day retains the division into 12, or properly 2×6 times (時^{トキ}, *Tôki*); the *Tôki* however is subject to the decimal division into 10 刻^{コク}, *Kokû* (notches), which are also called 分^{ブン} *Bun* (tenths), the *Bun* into 10 厘^{リン} *Rin*. The *Kokû* or *Bun* is now = 12 min. The numbers which have been added to the successive twice six *Tokis*, are from midnight till noon 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, and the same from noon till midnight; these numbers are obtained, when the number, which should properly belong to a *Tôki*, is subtracted from the number 10; thus $1 - 10 = 9$. The numbers 1, 2 and 3 are not included in the hour-numbers, as 1, 2 and 3 strokes on the drum or clock belong to the signals of the military and convent service, and a confusion of the two signals has to be prevented.

The newest information respecting this notation of hours does not quite agree with the notices of it formerly obtained, and people in Japan itself, it seems, do not reckon more consistently. Therefore we confine ourselves to the clocks at Yédo. There, at 12 o'clock at noon, the clock strikes 9 ¹⁾, and the Japanese calls this time *Firu kôkônôtsû dôki*, = noon, time of the nine number, or in short, *Kôkônôtsû-dôki*, or *Kôkônôtsu*, or even *M'máno kôkû*. From 12 to 2 o'clock according to our reckoning of time he counts 10 *Bun* and calls our 1 o'clock in the afternoon *Firugo kôkônôtsu han dôki*, = afternoon 9½ time, or, in short, *Firu kôkônôtsu han*; our 2 o'clock *Firugo yatsu-doki*, or *Firugo yatsu*, or also *Hitûzi no kokû*; our 3 o'clock *Firugo yau han*, etc., till after the end of the fourth *Toki*, at midnight the clock strikes nine again, and beginning with *Yoru kôkônôtsu dôki*, the other six *Tokis* continue till noon. In consequence of this, for the Japanese *Tokis* the following definitions of time are obtained.

¹⁾ First a stroke is heard, about a minute afterwards a second and immediately after that a third, being the warning. A minute later the strokes of the hour follow, each stroke with a pause of 10 or 12 seconds, except the last two, which follow quickly on each other and show that the clock has finished striking.

夜^{ヨル}, *YORU* or *YO*, at night.

九^{コノツ}時^キ, *Kōkōnōtsu-dōki*, 9th time,
= 12 o'clock midnight.

九 半^ン, *Kōkōnōtsū-han*, 9½,
= 1 o'clock after midnight.

八^{ヤツ}時^キ, *Yātsu-dōki*, 8th time.
= 2 o'clock after midnight.

八^{ヤツ}半^ン, *Yāu-han*, 8½,
= 3 o'clock after midnight.

明^{アケ}, *AKE*, in the morning.

七^{ナナツ}時^キ, *Nānātsū-dōki*, 7th time.
= 4 o'clock in the morning.

七 半^ン, *Nānātsū-han*, 7½,
= 5 o'clock in the morning.

明^{アケ}, *AKE*, in the morning.

六^{ムツ}時^キ, *Mutsū-dōki*, 6th time,
= 6 o'clock in the morning.

六 半^ン, *Mutsū-han*, 6½,
= 7 o'clock in the morning.

朝^{アサ}, *ASA*, in the morning.

五^{イツ}時^キ, *Itsūtsū-dōki*, 5th time,
= 8 o'clock in the morning.

五 半^ン, *Itsūtsū-han*, 5½,
= 9 o'clock in the morning.

昼^{ヒル}前^{マエ}, *FIRU MAE*, in the fore noon.

四^{ヨツ}時^キ, *Yōtsū-dōki*, 4th time.
= 10 o'clock in the morning.

四 半^ン, *Yōtsū-han*, 4½,
= 11 o'clock in the morning.

昼^{ヒル}, *FIRU*, at noon.

九^{コノツ}時^キ, *Kōkōnōtsu-dōki*, 9th time,
= 12 o'clock at noon.

九 半^ン, *Kōkōnōtsū-han*, 9½,
= 1 o'clock in the afternoon.

昼^{ヒル}後^ゴ, *FIRU-GO*, in the afternoon.

八^{ヤツ}時^キ, *Yātsū-dōki*, 8th time,
= 2 o'clock in the afternoon.

八^{ヤツ}半^ン, *Yāu-han*, 8½,
= 3 o'clock in the afternoon.

夕^{ユフ}, *YUU*, in the evening.

七^{ナナツ}時^キ, *Nānātsū-dōki*, 7th time,
= 4 o'clock in the afternoon.

七 半^ン, *Nānātsū-han*, 7½,
= 5 o'clock in the afternoon.

暮^ク, *KURE*, in the evening.

六^{ムツ}時^キ, *Mutsū-dōki*, 6th time,
= 6 o'clock in the evening.

六 半^ン, *Mutsū-han*, 6½,
= 7 o'clock in the evening.

夜^{ヨル}, *YORU*, or *YO*, at night.

五^{イツ}時^キ, *Itsūtsū-dōki*, 5th time,
= 8 o'clock in the evening.

五 半^ン, *Itsūtsū-han*, 5½,
= 9 o'clock in the evening.

四^{ヨツ}時^キ, *Yōtsū-dōki*, 4th time,
= 10 o'clock in the evening.

四^{ヨツ}半^ン, *Yōtsū-han*, 4½,
= 11 o'clock in the evening.

In agreement with the preceding definitions are the notices of time, occurring in the *Shopping-Dialogues* page 17, after the Nagasaki original, page 42, where is to be read: 九^{コノツ}半^ン時^キヨリ 七^{ナナツ}時^キ迄^{マデ}内^{ウチ}ニ, *Kōkōnōtsu han*

dōki yori nāndtsū made ūtsini, „between one and four o'clock.” — 八時半 頃 時 頃 $\frac{3}{4}$ =, *Yau-han dōki goroni*, „about three o'clock.”

On the contrary, not in agreement with it are the notices, occurring in R. BROWN'S *Colloquial Japanese. Grammar*, page XLVIII. where *Neno kokonotsū doki* is made equivalent to 10 o'clock in the afternoon till 12 o'clock midnight, and also the other *Tokis* begin 60 minutes earlier, than according to our notice.

The measurement of the *Tokis* fixed according to our hours. is, nevertheless, alone of value for an equinoctial day, and change (they become longer or shorter) in proportion as day and night in the different seasons are of unequal length. Thus each of the six *Tokis* from the longest day, if this day including the morning and evening twilight be reckoned at 17 hrs. 58 min. (notices are found which differ from it) has 2 hrs. 58 min. The Japanese almanacs contain, every 15 days, the definition of the changeable length of day and night, and the time-pieces are regulated accordingly, therefore they are so adapted, that the hour-ciphers are on loose plates. which are shifted, whilst the division of the hour-circle into *Kokū* or *Bun*, as also the cyclical division of the zodiac is fixed. The changing of the hours is called *Toki wo utsusū*.

MEASURES, WEIGHTS AND COINS.

The Japanese measures and weights, as well as the coinage are for a great deal reckoned after the Chinese decimal system, with which, as a rule, the Chinese names are used, preceded by the Chinese numerals, both modified by the Japanese pronunciation.

In consequence of the modifications, which since 1850 the Government at Yédo has introduced in the measures and money, the definitions here given differ from those given by us formerly and will, probably. sooner or later undergo modifications again, when people. in Japan itself, have agreed about the principle of the measures, viz. about the Japanese foot and its proportion to the French mètre or Netherlands ell.

§ 45. Measures of length, *Sasinome*.

尺 $\frac{1}{2}$, *Šákū*, foot (一 尺 $\frac{1}{2}$, *Is-šákū*, one foot). the iron foot (*Kane-sasi*, vulgo *Kane-šákū*), used by work-people, generally bent to a square and therefore called the bent foot (曲 尺 $\frac{1}{2}$, *Kiyok-šákū*). the unit of the Japanese measures, formerly (1831) was found by nice comparison with a standard-

mètre to be \approx 0,303 mètre or 0',11",11" of an English foot, since 1850 fixed by the Government at Yédo at 0,30175 mètre or 30,175 centimètre, the mètre being reckoned at 3,28889 Japanese feet. At the observatory at Yédo the Netherlands ell or French mètre is reckoned at 3,308 Japanese feet (*Kanežákū*) ¹⁾, whereas the Japanese Department of Marine has adopted 3,289248 Japanese feet for it ²⁾, and a manual published at Nagasaki ³⁾ gives 3,31 Japanese feet as the measure of the Netherlands ell. When, in 1864, the manufacture of some comparative measures was ordered of A. VAN EMDEN, by the „Nederlandsche Handelmaatschappij,” the Japanese foot was fixed at 0,3035 Netherlands ell.

For piece-goods, except woolen stuffs, a whalebone foot (鯨^フ尺^シ, *Ku-zira šákū*) is used, being 1.25 iron feet.

Divisions of the *Šákū*:

	Jap. foot.	Mètres.
尺 ^シ , <i>Šákū</i> (一 ^フ 尺 ^シ), 1		0,30175
寸 ^サ , <i>Sun</i> (一 ^フ 寸 ^サ), 0,1		0,030175
分 ^フ , <i>Bun</i> (一 ^フ 分 ^フ), 0,01		0,0030175
釐 ^リ , <i>Rin</i> (一 ^フ 厘 ^リ), 0,001		0,00030175
毫 ^ゴ , <i>Goo</i> (一 ^フ 毫 ^ゴ), 0,0001		0,000030175
絲 ^シ , <i>Si</i> (一 ^フ 絲 ^シ), 0,00001		0,0000030175
忽 ^コ , <i>Kot</i> (一 ^フ 忽 ^コ), 0,000001		0,00000030175

Multiples of the *Šákū*.

間^{ケン}, 間^{ケン}, *Ken* (一^フ 間^{ケン}, *Ik-ken*), as measure of distance = 6 *Šákū* (1,8105 mètres); as measure for piece-goods 6,5 *Šákū*.

丈^{ゾウ}, *Zoo* (一^フ 丈^{ゾウ}, *Itsi-zoo*), = 10 尺^シ *Šákū* (3,0175 mètres).

町^{チヨウ}, 丁^{テイ}, *Tšao. Tsoo*, street (一^フ 町^{チヨウ}, *It-tšoo*), = 60 間^{ケン} *Ken* (108,63 mètres).

里^リ, *Ri*, Japanese mile; 一^フ 里^リ, *Itsi-ri*, one mile. = 36 丁^{チヨウ}, *Tšoo*

¹⁾ From a communication by OONO YASABUROO, instrument-maker to the observatory at Yédo.

²⁾ Introduction to the Japanese translation, published at Yédo in 1854, of J. N. CALTEN, *Leidraad bij het onderrigt in de Zee-artillerie*. Delft, 1832. The title of the work is: 海上砲術全書 *Kai soo bo-sjutsu zen syo*, or „the book on Marine artillery.”

³⁾ 蕃^バ語^ゴ小^コ引^{イン}, „Japanese Translation of the English and Dutch with pronunciation Numbers. First part, N^o. 2. Nagasaki, October, 1860.” Page 120, 121.

or streets, = 3910,68 mètres, if the Japanese foot is reckoned at 0,30175 mètres.

According to the Treaty between Japan and America, concluded in 1858, Art. 7, the Japanese *Ri* is = 4275 yards (the yard at 0,91438 Neth. ell), thus = 3908,9745 N. ells, whereas it is said to amount to 33 町^{チヨウ} 48 間^{カン} 1 尺^{シツ} 5 分^{ブン}.

In the Japanese-Russian Treaty of 19 Aug. 1858, Art. 8, on the contrary the Japanese *Ri* is made equivalent to 3 wersts 332 saschen, which gives to one *Ri* 3908,68192 Neth. ells.

§ 46. Superficial measures.

步^フ, *Pu* (— 1 步^フ) or Tsübó (— 1 坪^{ツブ}, *Fító tsübó*), = 一 間 四 方, i. e. a square *Ken*, or 方 六 尺, i. e. 6 square feet (3,27791025 square mètres).

畝^セ. 畝^セ. 畝^セ, *Se* (— 1 畝^セ, *Fító se*), a rectangle of 6 步^フ *Pu* length and 5 *Pu* breadth, = 30 square *Pu*.

段^{タン}, *Tan* (— 1 段^{タン}, *It-tan*), a plane of 20 *Pu* length and 15 *Pu* breadth, = 300 square *Pu*. *It-tan* is the regular plane of a rice-field.

町^{チヨウ}, *Tšao*, *Tšoo* (— 1 町^{チヨウ} 四方, *It-tšoo yomo*), a plane of 60 *Pu* length and 50 *Pu* breadth, = 3000 square *Pu*.

§ 47. Measures of capacity (*Masüme*) for dry and liquid wares.

升^{シヨウ}, *Šoo*, *Šao* (— 1 升^{シヨウ}, *Is-šoo*), unity of the measures of capacity, formerly distinguished by Europeans with the Malay name *Gantang*, is 0,49 Jap. feet long and broad and 0,27 Jap. feet deep, containing 0,064827 Jap. cubic feet, = 1,893365719029 cubic decimètres, or 1 litre, 8 decilitres, 9 centilitres etc.

Subdivisions of the *Šoo*.

伍 合^{ゴカフ}, *Go-goo*, pron. *go-ngoo*, a measure of 5 合^{カフ} *Goo*, = $\frac{1}{2}$ 升^{シヨウ} *Šoo* full 9 decilitres.

合^{カフ}, *Goo*, pron. *ngoo* (— $\frac{1}{5}$ 合^{カフ}, *Itsi goo*), = $\frac{1}{10}$ 升^{シヨウ} *Šoo*.

勺^{シヨウ}, formerly 龠^{ユン}, *Siyáku*, pron. *Šákü* (— $\frac{1}{10}$ 勺^{シヨウ}, *Is-šákü*), = $\frac{1}{100}$ 升^{シヨウ} *Šoo*.

伍 勺^{ゴシヨウ}, *Go siyákü*, a measure of $\frac{5}{100}$ 升^{シヨウ} *Šoo*, or 1 合^{カフ}.

才^{サイ}, formerly 抄 and 撮^{サツ}, *Sai* (— $\frac{1}{100}$ 才^{サイ}, *Is-sai*), = $\frac{1}{1000}$ 升^{シヨウ} *Šoo*.

Multiples of the *Šoo*.

伍 升^{ゴシヨウ}, *Go šoo*, a measure of 5 升^{シヨウ} *Šoo*, = 9,46682595145 cubic decimètres.

俵^{ヒョウ}, *Pioo*, or *Tawára* (— 1 俵^{ヒョウ}, *Ip-pioo* or *Fító-tawára*), a sack or bale (rice), at present contains 米 三 斗 五 升^{ト 五 シヨウ} or 3 *To* 5 *Šoo* rice.

斗^ト, *To*, formerly 斗^ト (— 1 斗^ト, *It-to*), as vessel *Tomásu*. 10 升^{シヨウ} *Šoo*.

石^フ, Gókū (pron. ngókū), formerly 斛^フ (一^フ 石^フ, *Itsi gókū*), = 100 升^{シヨ} Šoo, or 189,3365719029 litres.

Remark. The fixed salaries of Government functionaries are based on the quantity of rice, which is allowed them per year or per day, and which is paid in money according to the market-price. The money value of a góku (石) was in 1865 *f* 12,50 Netherlands currency, or according the Japanese exchange 金^{キン} 二 = 兩^{リョウ} 二 = 步^フ, i. e. $2 \times f\ 5 + 2 \times f\ 1,25$. 百^フ 石^フ 高^{タカ} Fákū gókū takásu is an income of 100 Kok or *f* 1250 Netherl. currency. The pay of a common man (一^フ 人^{ニン} 扶^フ 持^チ) is 伍^フ 合^カ, or 6 cent a day.

§ 48. Weights, *Hakarime*.

1. 才^サ, Sai (一^フ 才^サ, *Is-sai*), = $\frac{1}{10}$ 勺^{シヨウ} Šak'.
 勺^{シヨウ}, vulgo 々^{シヨウ}, Šak' (一^フ 勺^{シヨウ}, *Is-šak'*), $\frac{1}{10}$ 合^カ Goo.
 合^カ, Goo (一^フ 合^カ, *Itsi goo*), $\frac{1}{10}$ 斤^{キン} Kin.

斤^{キン}, Kin (一^フ 斤^{キン}, *Ik-kin*), the Japanese pound, called by Europeans *Catty* (ct.), weighs according to former notices ¹⁾ 0,6 kilo, according to the latest definition ²⁾ 0,597 kilo. They reckon, at Yédo:

<i>Ik-kin</i>	1 ct.	<i>Rok-kin</i>	6 ct.	<i>Žiu ik-kin</i> . .	11 ct.	<i>Hiak'-kin</i> , . .	100 ct.
<i>Ni-kin</i>	2 „	<i>S'tsi-kin</i>	7 „	<i>Žiu go-kin</i> . .	15 „	<i>Sen-gin</i> , . . .	1000 „
<i>San-gin</i>	3 „	<i>Hátsi-kin</i>	8 „	<i>Ni žik-kin</i> . .	20 „	<i>Man-gin</i> , . .	10000 „
<i>Si-kin</i>	4 „	<i>Ku-kin</i>	9 „	<i>Ni žiu ik-kin</i> , .	21 „		
<i>Go-kin</i>	5 „	<i>Žik-kin</i>	10 „	<i>Go žik-kin</i> . .	50 „		

五^フ 十^{シヨ} 斤^{キン}. Go žiu kin, = 50 catties (ct. 50), or half a picol (pl. 0,5).

百^{ヒャク} 斤^{キン}, Hiak'-kin, = 100 catties or a picol.

2. Silverweight.

Unity: Mon-me, pron. Momme, from 文^{モン} Mon, = farthing, and 目^メ Me, = eye, means characteristic, i. e. weight of a farthing. The signs used for *Mon-me* are 匁^{モン}, 匁^{モン}, 匁^{モン}, 匁^{モン}, 匁^{モン}, abbreviated forms of the Chinese 錢^{セン} ³⁾ Sen, = farthing. In stead of *Mon-me*, in connection with some numbers, only 目^メ, Me is used. The Europeans have therefore adopted the name **Mace**, Dutch

¹⁾ PH. FR. VON SIEBOLD, *Nippon-Archief*, Division IV.

²⁾ *Ban-go syoo in*, see page 167, note 3.

³⁾ 匁即 壹錢之重^チ.

Maas. One Mace (一匁 匁, *Itsi mon-me*, or 壹匁 目, *Itsi-me*, or 銀壹匁 錢, *Gin is-sen*), weighs 3,74799 grammes and has, as $\frac{1}{16}$ Tael, if the Tael is counted to be equal to *f* 1,60 Neth. cour., a value in silver of *f* 0,16 N. c.

The *Mon-me* is divided into

- 10 分, *Fun*, vulgo condrijn, condereijn, cent.
 100 厘, *Rin*, vulgo cassie, cash, mokje.
 1000 毛, *Moo*.
 10000 弗, *Hots*, vulgo wassie.

Itsi mon-me ni fun, = 1,2 *Mon-me*, or 1 *Mon-me* 2 condrijn. — *Ni mon-me san-bun*, 2,3 *Mon-me*. — *San-mon-me si-fun go-rin roku moo*, = 3,456 *Mon-me*, or 3 mace, 4 condrijn, 5 cent (or cash) 6.

五匁 匁, *Go-mon-me*, = 5 mace or half a tael.

十匁 匁, *Žiu-mon-me*, = 10 *Mon-me* or 10 mace, the weight, which, in silver, makes the imaginary coin Tael, Dutch Tail, = 37,4799 grammes, value in silver *f* 1,60 Neth. cour., being according to the Japanese text of Art. 12, alinea *d* of the Additional Articles to the Netherlands-Japanese Treaty of 30 January 1856, 6,25 匁 = *f* 1,00 Neth. cour. ¹⁾.

With *Mon-me* they count further: *Žiu-itsi mon-me*, *Žiu-ni mon-me*, *Žiu-ku mon-me* (19 *mon-me*), and in the tens (20, 30 etc.), and in the hundreds, thousands, ten of thousands etc. supersede *Mon-me* by 目 *Me*; thus 二 = 十 目, *Ni-ziyu me*. 20 *Mon-me*. 三 四 十 目, *San-si-ziyu me*, 30 to 40 *Mon-me*. 九 十 一 匁, *Ku-ziyu itsi mon-me*, 91 *Mon-me*.

百 目, *Híákú me*, 100 *Me* or *Mon-me*, = 10 taels or 374.799 grammes, or *f* 16 Neth. cour.

貫 目, *Kwan-me* (at Yédo *Kám-me*), — 一 目, *Ik-kwan-me*, or one rist (1000) *me* = 100 taels.

三 貫 五 百 目, *San-gwan go híákü mé*, 3500 *me* or 350 taels.

拾 貫 目, *Žik kám-mé*, 10 rists or 10000 *me*. = 1000 „

百 貫 目, *Híak kám-me*, 100 rists or 100000 *me*, = 10000 „

千 貫 目, *Sen ngam-me*, 1000 rists or 1000000 *me*, = 100000 „

萬 貫 目, *Mán ngam-me*, 10000 rists, = 1000000 „

¹⁾ In the official Dutch translation instead of it we find: „De zilveren Spaansche mat of pilaar-mat wordt gerekend tegen de waarde van *f* 2,50. De Mexicaansche dollar tegen *f* 2,55 Ned. cour.”

The Yédo Pound (江^エ 戸^ド 壹^ッ 斤^シ, *Yédo no ik-kin*), being = 16 taels or 百六十錢, 160 *Mon-me* or *Me*, or *Sen*, weighs $160 \times 3,747,99$ grammes, = 0,5996784 Neth. pound, for which in the above quoted *Ban-go syoo-in* „about 0,597 N. pound” has been given.

壹^ッ 字^ジ, *Itsi-zi*, 錢 *Sen* or *Mon-me*, is = 二^ニ 分^フ 五^ハ 厘^リ *Ni-jun go rin* weight.

§ 49. Iron, copper and bronze coins.

The unit is 文^{モン}, *Mon* (壹^ッ 文^{モン}, *Itsi mon*), the smallest exchange coin, in circulation 錢^{ゼン} *Sen* (= Chin. *Tsién*), Japanese also *Zeni*, and called by the Europeans cash, pitje or duit. The *Mon* has a value in silver of one 厘^リ, *Rin*, and 100 pieces (百^{ヒャク} 文^{モン}, *Hidaku mon*) are reckoned at one *Mon-me* or mace of silver. The exchange however varies, being reckoned in the towns of the Taikun only 96, and in the countries of princes at one time more and, at another less.

The cents with a square hole are strung upon straw-ropes to the number nominally of a hundred, representing the value of one *Mon-me* or mace of silver. Ten such strings joined in one bunch, are called 一^{イツ} 貫^{クワン} 文^{モン}, *Ik-kwan-mon* (at Yédo *Ik-kam-mon*) or one string of cents, and are worth one tael or 10 *Mon-me* of silver. 二^ニ 貫^{クワン} 文^{モン}, *Ni kwan-mon*, two taels; 三^{サン} 貫^{クワン} 文^{モン}, *San gwan-mon*, three taels.

The copper coins, which generally bear for superscription a year-name besides the word 通寶 *Tsu-boo*, = money, generally have the value of 1 *Mon*; nevertheless there are larger also, of the value of 4 and of 5 *Mon* (四^シ 文^{モン} 錢^{ゼン}, 五^ゴ 文^{モン} 錢^{ゼン}) and of 2×4 or 8 *Mon* (二^ニ 四^シ 文^{モン} 錢^{ゼン}, *Ni si mon sen*).

The new „hundred Mon-coin,” 當百錢, *Tou hidaku sen*, of the name-value of one *Mon-me* (f 0,16 Neth. cour.), was first cast in the 6th year *Ten-boo* (1835) at Yédo, with the superscription 天保通寶 *Ten-boo Tsuu-boo*.

§ 50. Silver coins.

The unit of the silver coins is the 兩^{リョウ} *Riyoo*, pronounced by some as *drygo*. 銀^{ギン} 壹^{イツ} 兩^{リョウ} 四^シ 匁^{モン} 三^{サン} 分^フ, i. e. one *Riyoo* of silver is = 4 *Mon-me* or mace 3 *Fun* or condrin, thus 68 $\frac{8}{10}$ cents Neth. cour. 10 *Riyoo* of silver, according to the old coinage represented by an oval silver lump (*Ita-gane*), which has been called 枚^{マイ} *Mai* (vulgo by the Dutch. schuitje, = little boat),

must have 43 *Mon-me* (= 1 tael 4 mace) silver-weight; in weighing the deficiency is made up by silverlumps. People reckon: *Itsi-mai*, *Ni-mai* etc.

The oblong coin with the superscription 一分銀 *Itsi bū gin*, first cast in 1837, has been found to have a value of *f* 0,80⁵ Neth. cour., is nevertheless worth 33 Dollar-cents or 84 $\frac{1}{10}$ cents N. c., and according to the temporary Dollar exchange more or less also. The weight of the pieces is unequal; there are some of 8,61 and others of 8,81 grammes.

The smaller square coin of silver with the superscription 一朱銀 *Is-šu gin*, of which 4 go to an *Itsi bū gin*, first cast 1854, is worth 8 $\frac{1}{4}$ Dollarcent, full 21 cents N. c.

§ 51. Gold coins.

The unit is the 兩 ^{$\frac{1}{2}$} *Riyoo*. 金 ^{$\frac{1}{2}$} 壹 ^{$\frac{1}{2}$} 兩 ^{$\frac{1}{2}$} , *Kin itsi riyoo*, or one *Riyoo* of gold, is represented by the 小 ^{$\frac{1}{2}$} 判 ^{$\frac{1}{2}$} *Koban*, which in virtue of its stamp is current without being weighed. According to the coinage now in force the *Riyoo* of gold or the *Koban* is worth 60 *Mon-me* of silver, or *f* 9,60 N. c., and divided into halves, fourths, eighths and sixteenths.

An oblong gold, but properly silver and lightly gilt coin with the superscription 二分 *Ni pu*, first cast in 1818 and declared worth in silver 30 *Mon-me* (*f* 4,80 N. c.) represents the half *Koban*.

The $\frac{1}{4}$ *Koban* is an oblong coin with the superscription 一分 *Itsi pu*, for which it is customary to write 一步. Its exchange value is for Japanese 15 *Mon-me* or 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ taels (*f* 2,40 N. c.).

The $\frac{1}{8}$ *Koban* is represented by an oblong coin of silver and gilt, with the superscription 二朱 *Ni šu*, for which in general *Nisī* is said; the newest cast in 1859, are worth 16 $\frac{1}{2}$ dollarcents or 42 cents N. c.

The $\frac{1}{16}$ *Koban*, also a small silver-gilt coin, has the superscription 一朱 *Is-šiu*, which is called *Is-si*.

CHAPTER V.

ADVERBS.

§ 52. The adverbs in Japanese which, as such, always precede the word (verb, adjective, or adverb) that they qualify, are, so far as their origin is concerned, to be distinguished as:

I. Adverbs proper.

1. Primitive adverbs, such as: *Ma*, truly, perfectly; *Ito*, very.
2. Adverbs ending in *kū* (in the spoken language simply *u*), formed from adjectives in *ki* (p. 106), as *Hayókū*, early; *Osókū*, late.

II. Improper adverbs or adverbial expressions.

1. Nouns with or without the modal case *ni* or *de*, included among which the adjectives in *ki* (p. 106, *b*), *ka* (p. 116 § 13) and *yaka* (p. 117 § 14), provided they are used as substantives concrete.

2. Verbs in the gerund, i. e. in the modal case, characterized by *te*, as: *Sadamete*, definitely; *Kessité*, certainly; *Kakite* (*kaite*), in writing.

If, for convenience, we distribute the Japanese adverbs and adverbial expressions in groups according to their signification, we shall get as:

§ 53. Adverbs of quality, to the question: how?

1. Adverbs in *ku*, derived from adjectives in *ki* (see p. 106, § 9, B. 2), as:

<i>Yókū</i> ,	能 ^{ヨク} ,	in the spoken language	<i>You, Yōo</i> , well. (See p. 112. II.)	1.
<i>Yorósikū</i> ,	宜 ^{ヨロシク} ,	"	"	<i>Yorósiu</i> , well, good.
<i>Wáruku</i> ,	惡 ^{ワルク} ,	"	"	<i>Waruu</i> , bad, ill.
<i>Hayákū</i> ,	速 ^{ハヤク} ,	"	"	<i>Hayáu, Hayóo</i> , quickly.
<i>Osókū</i> ,	遅 ^{オソク} ,	"	"	<i>Osóu, Osóo</i> , slowly. 5.
<i>Kátakū</i> ,	難 ^{カタク} ,	"	"	<i>Kátqu, Kátoo</i> , hardly, with difficulty.
<i>Yásukū</i> ,	易 ^{ヤスク} ,	"	"	<i>Yásuu</i> , easily.
<i>Kávásikū</i> ,	委 ^{カハシク} ,	"	"	<i>Kávásiu</i> , neatly, exactly. 8.

2. Adverbs in *ka*, with the terminational *ni* (see p. 116, § 13):

<i>Sidzūká ni</i> ,	靜 ^{シヅカ} ニ,	calmly, in stillness.	9.
<i>Tsūmábíráká ni</i> ,	詳 ^{ツミラカ} ニ,	clearly and distinctly.	10.
<i>Sumiyaká ni</i> ,	速 ^{スミヤカ} ニ,	quickly, swiftly.	
<i>Tasíká ni</i> ,	慥 ^{タシカ} ニ,	certainly.	
<i>Tamasaka ni</i> ,	邂逅 ^{タマサカ} ,	by chance, fortuitously, accidentally.	
<i>Dan-dan ni</i> ,	段 ^{ダン} 々 ^々 ニ,	by degrees, gradually.	
<i>Zen-zen ni</i> ,	漸 ^{ゼン} 々 ^々 ニ,	by degrees.	15.
<i>Soro-soro, Soro-soroto</i> ,	徐 ^{スロ} 々 ^々 ニ。	by degrees, gradually.	
<i>Yara-yara</i> ,	slowly.	<i>Yara-yara yukū</i> , to go slowly, saunter, lounge.	
<i>Mū-sáto</i> ,	無 ^ム 差 ^サ ニ,	<i>Musá-musáto</i> , without forethought, in confusion, in opposition to <i>Kávásikū</i> , exactly. 18.	

§ 54. Adverbs of degree, in answer to the question: in what degree?

The expressions cited in § 23 and 24 p. 130: *Ma*, quite; *Itsi-dan*, wholly; *Ikanimo*, in all respects; *Mo*, still more; *Óókini*, very; *Súkósi*, little; *Nao*, once more so, so much the; *Iyá, ŷyó*, again so; *Másü-másu*, more and more; *Fana-fada*, very; *Mottomo*, utmost; *Ito*, very; *Itótte*, utmost, highest.

Besides these:

<i>Ikura, Nani-fodo</i> ,	何 ^{ナニ} 程 ^ハ ニ,	how much? in what degree?	19.
<i>Dore-dake, Dore-fodo</i> ,	how much?		
<i>Dono-kurai ooki</i> ,	何 ^{ナニ} 位 ^ハ 多 ^{オキ} ニ,	how much?	
<i>Yo-fodo</i> ,	餘 ^{ヨリ} 程 ^ハ ニ;	<i>Amóri, 餘^{アホリ}ニ</i> , too. (See p. 136 § 28.)	
<i>Mina</i> ,	皆 ^{みな} ニ,	together. — <i>Subéte, 總^{スベテ}ニ</i> , <i>Tonto</i> , in all.	
<i>Osī-nábete</i> ,	押 ^{オシ} 並 ^{ナヒ} ニ,	altogether.	24.

Koto-gotoku, 悉^{トゴトク}, all over, entirely. 25.

Nokorazu, 不^ズ 殘^レ, without surplus, without exception. (See p. 59.)

Mattakū, 全^{タツタ}, wholly, perfectly.

Ippai ni, 一^ツ 盃^ハ, full, abundantly. — *Ippan ni*, 一^ツ 盤^ハ, full (to the brim).

Isō ni, 一^ツ 緒^ヒ, together successively, altogether. 29.

Kātsū-te, 勝^カ 手^テ, wholly, entirely. With a subsequent negation, by no means, not at all, e. g.: *Kātsūte wakaranai*, it is by no means intelligible; *Kātsūte mairu mai*, I shall not go at all. 30.

Kātsū-gātsū, 且^カ 又^マ, wholly.

Kātsū-mata, 且^カ 亦^モ 且^カ 又^マ, so much the more.

Yo-kei ni, 餘^ヨ 計^ケ, in a greater degree, more.

Iyāsikū mō, 苟^イ 愈^{シクモ} 愉^ム, so much the more.

Sūi-bun, 隨^ス 分^{ブン}, proportionably, pretty, tolerably. 35.

Ziyu-bun ni, 十^ジ 分^{ブン}, fully, quite.

Itsi-bun wa, 一^{イチ} 分^{ブン}, partly.

Mabara ni, 疎^ス ラ, sparsely, in a scattered manner, here and there, partially, thinly.

Oyōsō, pron. *ōyōsso*, 凡^オ ヲ, in sum, together; very nearly, about.

Tākūsān ni (at Yēdo), 沢^タ 山^{サン}, richly, abundantly, in multitude. 40.

Tai-soo, 大^{タイ} 壯^{サウ}, excessively. *Tai-soo ooku*, far above measure.

Tai-gai, 大^{タイ} 槩^{ガイ},
Tai-tei, 大^{タイ} 抵^{テイ},
Oo-kata, 大^{オウ} 方^{ホウ}, } in general, more or less.

Sūkōburu, 頗^ス フル, pretty, tolerably, for three fourths of the full measure.

Sūkōburu fīsāsi, it is pretty long ago. 45.

Yoffodo, ヨツホド, contracted from *Yoi-fodo*, pretty.

Tsiygu-do, pron. *Tsōo-do*, 調^チ 度^ド, not チホド, proportionately, reasonably, just. *Tsiygu-do yoi*, it is just good.

Fotondo, 殆^ホ フ, almost, nearly; scarcely, hardly. *Sore wa fotondo taru*, it is hardly enough.

Fodo-fodo, *Naka-naka*, 中^ナ ナ, almost.

Sukundku mō oōkūmō naku, 少^ス ナクモ 多^{オウ} ナクモ ナク, neither less nor more. 50.

Tsito, *Tsitto*, 微^チ。些^チト。少, a little. *Tsito mo*, as little as possible, with a subsequent negation, not in the least. 51.

Yau-yau- (*yoo-yoo-*) *sité*, scarcely, hardly; almost. 52.

Bakári, 許^バカ^リ, merely, only. *Kore bakari*, only this.

Fu-sokü ni, 不^フ足^ゾ =, not enough.

Bétsü ni, 別^ベツ^ニ =, in particular, particularly. 55.

§ 55. Adverbs of circumstance.

Mü-yákü ni, 無^ム益^ゾ =, vainly. — *Müdá ni*, 虚^ムダ^ニ =, in vain. 56.

Münásikü, 虚^ムナ^シク, in vain.

Ayamátte, 謬^ママ^ツテ, by mistake.

Ukegate, 諾^ウカ^ツテ, willingly.

Kononde, 好^コン^デ (contracted from *Konomite*), gladly, willingly, readily. 60.

Tasinde (= *Tasimite*), 嗜^タシ^ンデ, gladly. — *Nengoro ni*, 懇^ネン^ゴロ^ニ =, gladly.

Iya-nagara mó, against the grain, reluctantly.

Tomo ni, 俱^トニ。共, with, together, alike.

Itsü ni, *Fütótsü ni*, 一^{イツ}ニ =, together. 64.

Onáziku, 同^オナ^ジク, in the spoken language *ónázü*, together, at the same time.

Tada, 只^タダ。唯, only, alone, but. *Tada san ka nitsi nomi*, or *Tada san ka nitsi bakári*, only three days. 66.

Saye, サ^エ。サ^ヘ, originally park, enclosure for cattle; used adverbially it limits the idea exclusively to what has been mentioned immediately before and answers to but, as it is as much as the Lat. *modo* only. — *Sono na saye siru*, to know by name only. — *Ki-den to saye napsu*, say only: „Sir.” — *Sake wo nomi saye suru mono*, some one, who does nothing but drink spirits. — *Sake wo nomi saye suréba*, *yevu*, if one does nothing but drink spirits, he gets drunken.

In connection with a subsequent negation *Saye* is equivalent to not even. Lat. *nec quidem*, e. g.: *Mma saye nakari*, there are not even horses. — *Sono na saye siranu*, not even to know by name. — *Zi saye mi-siránu mono*, anyone who does not even know the letters.

Dani, ダ^ニ =, cognate to *Saye*, as an adverb, has the word to which it exclusively limits the idea, before it with or without inflection, e. g.: *Ima dani nanori si-tamare*, assume but for as yet a name. — *Ima sibási dani orase nan*, now it will only last a short time. 68.

Sûrû, スラ, even, (German. *sogar*, indicates that an unexpected predicate is emphatically given to the subject of a sentence, e. g.: *Kisaki sura kavi-kowo kuruse tamaru*, even the queen has silkworms fed. — *Kare sura korewo siranu*, he even does not know this.

Kata-gata, 隻, single, alone. 70.

Suku-naku-tomo, 少^クナクモ, at least. *Sukunau sitemo san ka getsu*, at least three months. — *Sa-naku-tomo*, at least.

Nârû-duke, 成^ル丈^ヅ, if possible.

Ze-hi, 是^レ非^レ, so or not so, in any case; necessary. *Ze-hi itâsi-mašoo*, I shall do it in any case.

Don bo-don, 動^レ不^ホ動^レ, either active or not active, = in any case. 74.

To-mo kâkû-mo, トモカクモ, *To-mo kûu-mo*, トモカウモ, however, in any case. Also *To-kaku* [免^ト角^ク], if possible, synonym to *Nârû-duke*. — *To-kaku itsi-gau ni nârû-besi*, if possible it should happen in one and the same way.

Fu-i ni, 不^フ意^イ, suddenly, at once. 76.

Tama-tama, 偶^{タマ}, unexpectedly, by chance.

Sai-siyo ni vá, 最^{サイ}初^{シヨ} = ハ | firstly.

Dai-itsi ni vá, 第^{ダイ}一^{イチ} = ハ |

Dai-ni ni vá, 第^{ダイ}二^ニ = ハ, secondly.

Itsü ni vá, 一^{イチ} = ハ, partly, on the one hand. — *Matá*, 又^{マタ}, also. 81.

Mata itsü ni vá, 復^{マタ}一^{イチ} = ハ, on the other hand. *Itsü ni vá makoto*, *mata itsuni vá itsuvâri*, on one hand truth, on the other falsehood. 82.

Nákabá va, 半^{ナカバ} = ハ, half. *Nákabá va ...*, *nákabá va ...*, partly ..., partly ...

Sara ni, 更^{サラ} = ハ, again, anew.

Sono fóká ni, 其^{ソノ}外^{ガハ} = ハ, further, farther.

Sono üyeni, 其^{ソノ}上^{ノウ} = ハ, = besides; moreover. 86.

§ 56. Our adverbs of place and space, such as of, by, for, in, after, on etc. are generally expressed in Japanese by connectives expressive of relation, which, when they are accompanied with another definition, have the latter before them (see Introduction p. 44, § 15, B. 1.); e. g.: *ye* or *he*, = wards; *Kotsira-ye*, hitherwards; *yorî*, = of, out; *Kotsira yorî*, from here. Since compounds with adverbs of place, belonging to this group, have been already treated at pages 81, 82, 83, we confine ourselves here to a mere citation.

Dokoni, where? *Doko ye*, whither? *Doko yorî*, whence? *Doko ni mo*, wherever. 87.

Idzükun zo, *Dotsira*, where? — *Asókó ni*, somewhere. — *Atsira*, anywhere. 88.

Kásikó ni, there. — *Koko ni*, *Kotsira*, here.

Konó tokóro ni, here. — *Sono tokóro ni*, there.

Yoso ni, elsewhere. — *Yoso ye*, to elsewhere. — *Yoso kara*, from elsewhere.

Ta-síyo, pron. *Ta-šo*, 他^タ處^ニ, elsewhere. 92.

Besides these, for the definition of place and space, come under notice:

Amánekü, 徧^アチ^チク, everywhere. *Síyo-síyo*, pron. *šo-šo*, 處^ニヲ^レ, everywhere.

Tsikákü, 近^チカ^ク, near.

Tooku, 遠^トホ^ク, far; *Yen-foo ni*, 遠^ニ方^ニニ^ニ, far. 95.

Is-šo ni, 一^ニ所^ニニ^ニ, at or to one and the same place. — *Is-šo ni yukü*, to go with, to accompany.

Naka ni, or *Tsiu*, 中^ニニ^ニ, in the midst, amidst, amongst. 97.

Utsi ni, *Urá ni*, 内^ニニ^ニ, within. — *Foká ni*, *Soto ni*, 外^ニニ^ニ, without.

Maye ni, *Sakí ni*, 前^ニニ^ニ, before. — *Usiró ni*, *Ato ni*, *Notsi ni*, 後^ニニ^ニ, behind.

Uyé ni, 上^ニニ^ニ, above. — *Sitá ni*, 下^ニニ^ニ, beneath. 100.

Sóbá ni, *Kata ni*, *Katawara ni*, 側^ニニ^ニ, near, at the side, beside.

Migi ni, 右^ニニ^ニ, to the right. — *Fúlári ni*, 左^ニニ^ニ, to the left.

Mawári ni, 廻^ニニ^ニ, round, around.

Guru-guru, around. — *Gururi to*, round about.

Mukái ni, 向^ニニ^ニ, against, opposite. — *Ai-tai*, 相^ニ對^ニニ^ニ, opposite. 105.

Yoko ni, *Yoko sama ni*, 横^ニニ^ニ, across. — *Nana-me ni*, 斜^ニニ^ニ, aslant.

Sudzi-mükávi ni, スヂムカビニ, vulgar. *Suzi-kai ni*, almost opposite. 107.

§ 57. Adverbs of time, to the question: when? how long?

Itsü zo, 何^ニ時^ニニ^ニ, when? 108.

Itsü-ka, 何^ニ日^ニニ^ニ, what day of the month? See p. 161.

Itsü mo, 恆^ニニ^ニ。恒, whenever, ever. — *Itsü de mo*, whenever, always, ever; with a negative verb, never. 110.

Imá (ímá) 今^ニニ^ニ, now. — *Ima ni*, 于^ニニ^ニ 今^ニニ^ニ, now. — *Imá yori*, 自^ニ今^ニニ^ニ, henceforth. 111.

Ima-made, 今^ニ迄^ニニ^ニ, hitherto, heretofore.

Ima-made ra, contracted *imáda*, in the spoken language usually *Mada*, 猶, hitherto, still. Lat. *adhuc*; in connection with negation included in the subsequent verb, not yet, 未^ニニ^ニ. 113.

Tadd-ima, 只今^{いま}。即今^{いま}。向來^{いま}, just now. 114.

Maye-kata, 前^{まへ}方^{かた}, *Mač-kata yori*, beforehand. — *Madzu*, 先^{まづ}, first, beforehand.

Hayákū, 速^{はや}。早^{はや}, *Haygu*, *Hayoo*, 1. soon, very soon; 2. early.

Mo-háya, *Mo-haygu*, contracted *Moo*, already. — *Moo O kairi-de gozarimásuká*, do you go again already? 117.

Osóku, 晩^{おそ}。晚^{おそ}, late.

Arū toki ni, 一時^{いちじ}, once, at a certain time.

Tsiká-goro, 近^{ちか}日^ひ。近來^{ちか}, lately. — *Tsiká-dzóká-ni*, shortly, speedily.

Mukási, 昔^{むかし}。古^こ, of old, formerly, of yore. *Mukási yori*, of yore.

Inisi hé, 往^い昔^き, of old time, formerly.

Tsui ni, 終^{つい}。終^{つい}, at the end, finally, at last; ever; with a negative verb, never.

Sikiri ni, 頻^{しきり}。頻^{しきり}, every moment, without ceasing. 124.

Otte, 追^お而^て, afterwards, consequently: late, henceforth, = *sono notsi*.

Ots'ké, オツ、ケ。刻下^{こくげ}, forthwith, immediately, directly, = *suguni*, *ai-no nai*.

Sugu ni, 直^す。直^す, directly, straight.

Ziki ni, 直^{じき}。直^{じき}, directly, forthwith.

Sibaráku, 暫^{しばらく}。暫^{しばらく}, in short, shortly. quickly.

Ygu-yaku, *Yoo-yaku*, 漸^{やがて}。漸^{やがて}, by degrees. 130.

Tatsi-matsi, 立^{たち}待^{まち}。忽^{たちまち}, at once, directly; suddenly.

Yagate, 頓^{たちまち}而^て, suddenly.

Sokū-zi ni, 即^{すなはち}時^{とき}。即^{すなはち}時^{とき}, directly.

Fisásiku, 久^{ひさ}シク, long. *Hisá-bisá*, long ago. *Fisásii áto*, long ago.

Sai-zen, 最^{さい}前^{ぜん}。最^{さい}前^{ぜん}, just now. 135.

Kore-kara, hereafter, thereupon.

Ik-kóo, 一^{いっ}向^{こう}。一^{いっ}向^{こう}, henceforth, in connection with a subsequent negation, no more.

Südéni, 既^{すで}。已^{すで}, already.

Kūni, 急^{きゅう}。急^{きゅう}, quickly, hastily. 139.

Tšiyoto, *Tšiótto* (チヨット), vulgo *Tšóito*, 卒^つ度^ど。卒^つ度^ど, once, for a moment.

チヨトキケ, just hear! — *Tšióito O matsi nasare*, wait a moment!

Sono toki, 當^た時^{とき}。當^た時^{とき}, then, at that time. 141.

Sono notsi, 其^レ後^ノ時^ト, thereafter. 142.

Notsi-hodo, 後^ノ程^ト, by and by. — *Notsi-notsi*, later.

Kono i-go, 此^ヲ以^テ後^ニ, after this.

Kono-goro, 間^ノ日^ト, there, then. 145.

Kono hodo, 此^ヲ程^ト, shortly, lately.

Kono aida, 此^ヲ間^ト以^テ前^ニ, shortly.

Saki ni, 昨^キ者^ニ。以^テ前^ニ, before, the time, that has immediately preceded the present, just now. *Mo sūkósi saki ni*, a short time ago. 148.

Saki-goro, 先^キ頃^ト, lately.

Saki-hodo, 先^キ刻^ト, just now, presently. 150.

Definite notices of time like to-day, yesterday, to-morrow etc. are expressed by nouns with or without a previous adjective definition. e. g.:

Kon-nitsi, 今^ニ日^ニ, *Kon-nitsi wá*; 今^ノ日^ヲ, *Keo*, *Kioo*, this day, to-day.

Kesa, 今^ノ朝^ヲ, this morning. 152.

Sákü-zits, 昨^ヲ日^ヲ, *Kinou*, キノフ (contr. from *Saki no ji*, 前^キ日^ニ), yesterday.

Sákü-gétsü, 昨^ヲ月^ヲ, last month.

Sákü-nen, 昨^ヲ年^ヲ, last year. 155.

Asü, *Asüta* (Asita), 明^ス日^ト, to-morrow. — *Asü-made*, till to-morrow.

Miyoo-nitsi, 明^ニ日^ニ, to-morrow. — *Miyoo-nitsi no jiru*, to-morrow noon.

Miyoo (nitsi no) ása, to-morrow morning. — *Miyoo-ban*, 明^ニ晩^ト, to-morrow evening.

Miyoo-gétsü, 明^ニ月^ヲ, next month.

Miyoo-nen, 明^ニ年^ヲ, next year. 160.

Miyoo-go-nitsi, 明^ノ後^ノ日^ニ, the day after to-morrow; also *Asatte*, アサツテ.

Ake no tosi, *Akuru tosi*, 明^ス年^ト, next year.

Akuru ji, 明^ス日^ニ, to-morrow.

Rai-nen, 來^ニ年^ト, the year still to come, the next year.

Rai-gétsü, 來^ニ月^ヲ, next month. 165.

Firu ni, 晝^ニ, by day.

Ya-bun ni, 夜^ニ分^ニ, *Ya-tsin*, 夜^ニ中^ニ, at night. 167.

For adverbial definitions, to the question: how often? are used

1. the repeating numbers cited in § 32, p. 143: *Fútó-tabi* or *Itsi-do*, once; *Fútá-tabi* or *Ni-do*, twice; *Fútá-tabi mi-tabi*, twice, thrice, continually, etc.

2. *Mare ni*, 希_レニ, seldom. 165.
Saku naki toki wa, 少_クナキ 時_キハ, seldom.
Ôô ki toki wa, 多_クキ 時_キハ, often. 170.
Ori-ori or *gori-gori*, 時_キ々, now and then.
Ori-fûzi, 折_リ節_ズ 時_キ節, from time to time, now and then.
Fu-tosite, 非_レ時, sometimes.
Sibi-sibi, 數_ニ々, often. — *Setsû-setsu*, 節_ズ々, often.
Tabi-tabi, 度_ニ々, at every turn. 175.
Tsûné ni, 常_ニニ 恒, generally, always. — *Tsûné-dzûné*, continually.
Obitûdûsiku, 夥_シ々, manifold, often. 177.

§ 58. Adverbs of manner, indicating the form of thought or speech, in which the speaker represents the idea expressed in the predicate.

1. Affirmative.

- Hî*, ヒ, with its variations: *hîhi*, *hî*, vulgo *hûi*, *ha*, yes. 178.
Sa-yoo, 左_サ 様_ヤ, contracted *soo*, so, thus, considered more polite than *Hî*. — *Soo mûsoo*, it will be so.
Sikâto, 寔_シト, certainly, truly. 180.
Tâsikani, 慥_シカニ, certainly, truly.
Makôto ni, *Zûsu ni*, 眞_{マコト}實_ニ, in truth, truly, forsooth, indeed. — *Musa ni*, 正_{マサニ}, indeed.
Geni, or *Geni-geni*, 現_{マカ}ニ, evidently, doubtlessly.
Késsité, 決_{マカ}テ 而_{シテ}, surely; with subsequent negation: by no means, not at all.
Ari-te ni, 有_{アリ} 体_ニ, solidly, to the purpose. 185.
Kittô, 急_{マカ} 度_ト, certainly.
Fît-zen, 必_{マカ} 然_ゼ, certainly. *Fît-dziyoo*, 必_{マカ} 定_ヂ, certainly, definitely.
Itsi-dziyoo, 一_{イチ} 定_ヂ ヲ, definitely.
Ka-nârazu, 必_{マカ} ラズ, certainly, doubtlessly, without doubt.
Motsi-ron, *Mu-ron*, *Ron-nîku*, *Ron-nau*, 勿_ム 論_ロ, = do not reason! = without contradiction; not to be contradicted. 190.
Sappari, サツハリ, in all respects: with subsequent negation: by no means.
Sappari . . . sezu, to do by no means.
Tau-zen, *Tôo-zen*, 當_{マカ} 然_ゼ, properly.
Isasaka, 聊_{イサカ} カ, in short. 193.

2. Negative.

Iiye, イ、エ, vulgo *üya*, no. *Iiya-üya*, no, no. 194.

Remark. The negative: not, expressed in Japanese by *n*, as a rule, is included in the inflection of the verbs, by which a peculiar negative conjugation arises.

Fu-sin ni, 不^フ審^シ=, uncertainly, doubtfully. 195.

Fu-dó-sité, 不^フ圖^ドシテ, suddenly, by chance.

3. Optative.

Doozo, 何^{ナニ}ト卒^ゾ, though, than, Pray! *Doozo*, *kikare yo*, hear, if you please, hear though! 197.

Negavákúvá, 願^{ネガハク}ハ, though (contracted from *Negai*, wish, and *Ivaku vá*, so as they say), so as one wishes. (See *Shopping-Dialogues* p. 11.) 198.

4. Supposing.

Makotorásikü, probably. — *Tá-bun*, 多^タ分^{ブン}, perhaps. 199.

Toki ni yotte vá, *Koto ni yottará*, perhaps, according to circumstances.

Zi-gi ni yori, 時^ジ宜^ギ寄^{ヨリ}, or *Zi-gi ni yotte* or *yottará*, if time be favorable, according to circumstances; under favorable circumstances. 201.

Utágavüráküva, 疑^{ウタガハス}ハ, probably. 202.

Zon-bun nó sí-dai, 存^{ゾン}分^{ブン}次^ジ第^{ダイ}, as I think; also *Zon-bun ni sitagátte*. — *Zon-bun no sí-dai siyo-mótsü ari-másu ka*, are there books also?

§ 59. Adverbs connecting propositions, such as nevertheless, however, since they are conjunctional adverbs, are treated in the Chapter VIII on the Conjunctions.

ALPHABETICAL SYNOPSIS OF THE ADVERBS CITED.

The numbers correspond with those placed after the adverbs treated in § 53—59.

<i>Ai-tai</i> 105.	<i>Asókó ni</i> 88.	<i>Bétsü ni</i> 55.	<i>Don bo-don</i> . . . 74.
<i>Ake no tosi</i> . . 162.	<i>Asü</i> 156.	<i>Dai-itsi ni vá</i> . 79.	<i>Dono-kurai ooki</i> 21.
<i>Akuru ji</i> 163.	<i>Asü-made</i> . . . 156.	<i>Dai-ni ni vá</i> . . 80.	<i>Doozo</i> 197.
<i>Akuru tosi</i> . . 162.	<i>Asta</i> 156.	<i>Dan-dan ni</i> . . . 14.	<i>Dore-dake</i> 20.
<i>Amánekü</i> 93.	<i>Asüta</i> 156.	<i>Dani</i> 68.	<i>Dore-fodo</i> 20.
<i>Amári</i> 22.	<i>Ato ni</i> 99.	<i>Doko ni</i> 87.	<i>Dotsira</i> 88.
<i>Ari-tei ni</i> 185.	<i>Atsira</i> 88.	<i>Doko ni mo</i> . . . 87.	<i>Fídári ni</i> 102.
<i>Arn toki ni</i> . . . 119.	<i>Ayamátte</i> 58.	<i>Doko ye</i> 87.	<i>Fíru ni</i> 166.
<i>Asatte</i> 161.	<i>Bakári</i> 53.	<i>Doko yori</i> 87.	<i>Físásü áto</i> 134.

<i>Fisásikü</i> 134.	<i>Ippai ni</i> 28.	<i>Kono goro.</i> . . 145.	<i>Moo</i> 117.
<i>Fit-dziyoo</i> . . . 187.	<i>Ippan ni</i> 28.	<i>Kono hodo.</i> . . 146.	<i>Motsi-ron</i> . . . 190.
<i>Fatótsü ni</i> 64.	<i>Isasaka.</i> 193.	<i>Kono i-go.</i> . . 144.	<i>Mü-dá ni</i> 56.
<i>Fit-zen.</i> 187.	<i>Is-šo ni</i> . . . 29, 96.	<i>Kononde.</i> . . . 60.	<i>Mükái ni</i> 105.
<i>Fodo-fodo.</i> . . . 49.	<i>Itsi-bun ra</i> . . . 37.	<i>Kono tokóro ni</i> . 90.	<i>Mukási.</i> 122.
<i>Fokú ni</i> 98.	<i>Itsi-dziyoo.</i> . . 188.	<i>Kore-kara.</i> . . 136.	<i>Mükási yori.</i> . 122.
<i>Fotondo</i> 48.	<i>Itsü de mo</i> . . . 110.	<i>Koto-gotokü</i> . . 25.	<i>Münásikü</i> . . . 57.
<i>Fa-dó site.</i> . . . 196.	<i>Itsü-ka.</i> 109.	<i>Koto ni yottará</i> 200.	<i>Mu-ron</i> 190.
<i>Fu-i ni</i> 76.	<i>Itsü mo.</i> 110.	<i>Kotsira</i> 89.	<i>Musa-musá to.</i> 18.
<i>Fu-sin ni</i> 195.	<i>Itsü ni.</i> 64.	<i>Kürá)sikü, -sü</i> . 8.	<i>Müsáto.</i> 18.
<i>Fu-sokü ni</i> . . . 54.	<i>Itsü ni vá</i> 81.	<i>Mabara ni</i> . . . 38.	<i>Mü-yákü ni</i> . . 56.
<i>Fu-tosite.</i> . . . 173.	<i>Itsü zo.</i> 108.	<i>Mula</i> 113.	<i>Náka bá va</i> . . . 83.
<i>Geni, Geni-geni</i> 183.	<i>Iya-nagara mo</i> . 62.	<i>Mudzu.</i> 115.	<i>Naka-naka</i> . . . 49.
<i>Guru-guru</i> . . . 104.	<i>Iyásikü mó.</i> . . 34.	<i>Makóto ni</i> . . . 182.	<i>Naka ni.</i> 97.
<i>Gururi to</i> . . . 104.	<i>Ka-nárazu</i> . . . 189.	<i>Makotorásikü</i> . 199.	<i>Nana-me ni.</i> . . 106.
<i>Hái, Ha</i> 178.	<i>Kata-gata.</i> . . . 70.	<i>Mare ni</i> 168.	<i>Nani-fodo.</i> . . . 19.
<i>Hayáku</i> . . . 4, 116.	<i>Kátakü.</i> 6.	<i>Masani</i> 182.	<i>Náru-dake</i> . . . 72.
<i>Hayáü.</i> . . . 4, 116.	<i>Kata ni</i> 101.	<i>Matá.</i> 81.	<i>Negarákuvá.</i> . 198.
<i>Hayó.</i> 4, 116.	<i>Kótgu</i> 6.	<i>Mata itsü ni va</i> . 82.	<i>Nengoro ni</i> . . . 61.
<i>Hä, Hhi.</i> . . . 178.	<i>Kátoo</i> 6.	<i>Muttakü.</i> 27.	<i>Nokorázu</i> 26.
<i>Hi</i> 178.	<i>Katuwara ni</i> . 101.	<i>Marári ni.</i> . . . 103.	<i>Notsi-hodo</i> . . . 143.
<i>Hisá-bisá</i> 134.	<i>Kásikó ni.</i> . . . 89.	<i>Maye-kata.</i> . . 115.	<i>Notsi ni</i> 99.
<i>Hísásiku</i> 134.	<i>Kátsü-gátsu.</i> . 31.	<i>Maye ni.</i> 99.	<i>Notsi-notsi</i> . . . 143.
<i>Idzükun zo</i> 88.	<i>Kátsü-mata</i> . . 32.	<i>Migi ni</i> 102.	<i>Obítadásiku</i> . . 177.
<i>Iiya</i> 194.	<i>Kátsü-te</i> 30.	<i>Mina.</i> 23.	<i>Onáziku</i> 65.
<i>Iiya-iya.</i> 194.	<i>Keo</i> 151.	<i>Miyoo-ása.</i> . . 158.	<i>Oo-kata</i> 44.
<i>Iiye</i> 194.	<i>Kesa</i> 152.	<i>Miyoo-ban.</i> . . 158.	<i>Oóki tóki va.</i> . 170.
<i>Ik-koo</i> 137.	<i>Késsite.</i> 184.	<i>Miyoo-gétsü</i> . . 159.	<i>Ori-füzi.</i> 172.
<i>Ikura</i> 19.	<i>Kinou</i> 153.	<i>Miyoo-go-nitsi</i> 161.	<i>Ori-óri</i> 171.
<i>Imá</i> 111.	<i>Kioo</i> 151.	<i>Miyoo-nen.</i> . . 160.	<i>Osí-nábeta.</i> . . 24.
<i>Imáda</i> 113.	<i>Kittó.</i> 186.	<i>„ nitsi</i> 157.	<i>Osókü</i> 5, 118.
<i>Ima-made</i> . . . 112.	<i>Kü ni.</i> 139.	<i>„ „ no ása</i> 158.	<i>Osóu, Osóo.</i> . . 5.
<i>Imá ni.</i> 111.	<i>Koko ni</i> 89.	<i>„ „ no jiru</i> 157.	<i>Otte</i> 125.
<i>Imá yori</i> 111.	<i>Kon-nitsi</i> . . . 151.	<i>Mo-haya.</i> . . . 117.	<i>Ots'ské.</i> 126.
<i>Inisihé.</i> 121.	<i>Kono aida</i> . . . 147.	<i>Mo-haygu</i> . . . 117.	<i>Ojóso</i> 39.

<i>Rai-gétsü</i> . . . 165.	<i>Soro-soro</i> . . . 16.	<i>To-kaku</i> . . . 75.	<i>Yásukü</i> . . . 7.
<i>Rai-nen</i> . . . 164.	<i>Soro-soro to</i> . . 16.	<i>Toki ni yotte ra</i> 200.	<i>Yásuu</i> . . . 7.
<i>Ron-náku</i> . . . 190.	<i>Šo-šo</i> 93.	<i>To-mo kákü-mo</i> 75.	<i>Ya-tsiu</i> . . . 167.
<i>Ron-nyu</i> . . . 190.	<i>Soto ni</i> 98.	<i>Tomo ni</i> 63.	<i>Yau-yaku</i> . . . 130.
<i>Sai-síyo ni rá</i> . 78.	<i>Sübete</i> 23.	<i>Tonto</i> 23.	<i>Yau-yau sité</i> . 52.
<i>Sai-zen</i> 135.	<i>Süde ni</i> 138.	<i>Tooku</i> 95.	<i>Yen-foo ni</i> . . . 95.
<i>Saki-goro</i> . . . 149.	<i>Sudzi-mükáviní</i> 107.	<i>Too-zen</i> 192.	<i>Yoffodo</i> 46.
<i>Saki-hodo</i> . . . 150.	<i>Sugu ni</i> 127.	<i>Tsiká-dziká ni</i> 120.	<i>Yo-fodo</i> 22.
<i>Sakí ni</i> . . 99, 148.	<i>Süi-bun</i> 35.	<i>Tsiká-goro</i> . . 120.	<i>Yo-kei ni</i> . . . 33.
<i>Sáku-gétsü</i> . . 154.	<i>Sükóburu</i> . . . 45.	<i>Tsikákü</i> 94.	<i>Yoko ni</i> 106.
<i>Sákü-nen</i> . . . 155.	<i>Suku-naki toki</i>	<i>Tsíyoto</i> 140.	<i>Yoko-sama ni</i> . 106.
<i>Sákü-zits</i> . . . 153.	<i>ra</i> 169.	<i>Tššóto</i> 140.	<i>Yóku</i> 1.
<i>Sa-náku-tomo</i> . 71.	<i>Sukundü mó</i> . 50.	<i>Tsito</i> 51.	<i>Yóo</i> 1.
<i>Sappari</i> 191.	<i>Suku-náku-tomo</i> 71.	<i>Tsitto</i> 51.	<i>Yoo-yaku</i> . . . 130.
<i>Sara ni</i> 84.	<i>Sunniyaká ni</i> . . 11.	<i>Tšyau-do</i> . . . 47.	<i>Yoo-yoo sité</i> . 52.
<i>Saye</i> 67.	<i>Sürá</i> 69.	<i>Tsiu</i> 97.	<i>Yori-yori</i> . . . 171.
<i>Sa-yoo</i> 179.	<i>Suzi-kai ni</i> . . 107.	<i>Tšóito</i> 140.	<i>Yorosikü</i> 2.
<i>Setsü-setsü</i> . . 174.	<i>Ta-bun</i> 199.	<i>Tšoo-do</i> 47.	<i>Yoróšün</i> 2.
<i>Sibaráku</i> . . . 129.	<i>Tabi-tabi</i> . . . 175.	<i>Tsui ni</i> 123.	<i>Yoso kara</i> . . . 91.
<i>Sibá-sibá</i> . . . 174.	<i>Tada</i> 66.	<i>Tšümábirakáni</i> 10.	<i>Yoso ni</i> 91.
<i>Sidzáká ni</i> . . . 9.	<i>Tadá-ima</i> . . . 114.	<i>Tšüné-dzüné</i> . 176.	<i>Yoso ye</i> 91.
<i>Sikáto</i> 180.	<i>Tai-gai</i> 42.	<i>Tšüne ni</i> 176.	<i>You</i> 1.
<i>Sikiri ni</i> 124.	<i>Tai-soo</i> 41.	<i>Ukegatte</i> 59.	<i>Ze-hi</i> 73.
<i>Sitá ni</i> 100.	<i>Tai-tei</i> 43.	<i>Urá ni</i> 98.	<i>Zen-zen ni</i> . . . 15.
<i>Siyo-síyo</i> 93.	<i>Táküšan ni</i> . . 40.	<i>Uširo ni</i> 99.	<i>Zi-gi ni yottara</i> 201.
<i>Sobá ni</i> 101.	<i>Tamasakani</i> . . 13.	<i>Utágwüráküwa</i> 202.	<i>Zi-gi ni yotte</i> . 201.
<i>Sokü-zi ni</i> . . . 133.	<i>Tata-tama</i> . . . 77.	<i>Utsí ni</i> 98.	<i>Ziki ni</i> 128.
<i>Sono foká ni</i> . . 85.	<i>Tasikáni</i> . 12, 181.	<i>Uyé ni</i> 100.	<i>Zitsü ni</i> 182.
<i>Sono notsi</i> . . . 142.	<i>Tasinde</i> 61.	<i>Wáruku</i> 3.	<i>Ziyu-bun ni</i> . . 36.
<i>Sono toki</i> . . . 141.	<i>Ta-síyo</i> 92.	<i>Waruu</i> 3.	<i>Zon-bun nó ší-</i>
<i>Sono tokóro ni</i> . 90.	<i>Ta-šo</i> 92.	<i>Ya-bun ni</i> . . . 167.	<i>dai</i> 203.
<i>Sono üe ni</i> . . . 86.	<i>Tatsi-matsi</i> . . 131.	<i>Yagate</i> 132.	
<i>Soo</i> 179.	<i>Tyü-zen</i> 192.	<i>Yara-pura</i> . . . 17.	

CHAPTER VI.

WORDS EXPRESSIVE OF RELATION.

(POSTPOSITIONS.)

§ 60. Our prepositions which show the relation, in which the chief idea of a sentence stands to other objects or ideas, are superseded in Japanese by postpositions. We call them words expressive of relation.

Chief among these words are the inflections (see Chapter I, p. 61), viz:

へ, *ve*, *he*, or へ, *ye*, *e*, = wards, to. Dative and Terminative (see p. 68).

に, *ni*, = with relation to, in, to (see p. 68).

と, *to*, = to (see p. 70).

に, *ni*; テ, *te*,
ニテ, *nite*; デ, *de* (pron. *nde*), } Local, Modal and Instrumental (see pp. 68,
70.

ヨリ, *yorì*; カラ, *kara*, = out of, from. Ablative (see p. 71).

§ 61. All other relations are expressed either by:

1. nouns which, as such, are declinable and have the further attributive definition, as genitive, before them. as *Yama ūyé* or *Yama no ūyé*, the topmost of a mountain; *Yama ūyénì*, on the top of a mountain; or

2. verbs, which being, either in their radical form, or in the gerund in テ, *te*, in proportion as they govern the accusative, the modal, or the dative have their object with the inflectional termination ヲ, *wo*, or に, *ni*, or へ, *ve*, before

them, indifferently, whether this object is a noun-substantive or a verb used substantively.

§ 62. Nouns, used as expressive of relation, are:

1. **Uvé, Uyé, 上^{ウエ}。** 1) above, upon (with reference to a place).

Tsūká no ūvé ni ki wo uyuru, to plant a tree upon the grave. — *Tsūká no uve no ki*, a tree upon the grave. — *Aru ūyé ni mata fítotsu*, above which there is still one. — *Kono ūyé wa deki-masénū*, = what is above that, does not happen, = more I can not give for it ¹⁾. — *Sono uyewa nai* (or *ari-masénū*), there is nothing above that ²⁾.

2) upon, after (with reference to time).

Gin-mi (or *Tadási*) *no ūvé fatto wo motte bassu* (吟^{ギン}味^ミ (or 糾^{キウ}) / 上^{ウエ}法^{ホウ}度^ド以^{モッテ}罰^{バツ}), upon inquiry punish according to law ³⁾. — *Un-ziyan nou-sai no uvé vá* (運^{ウン}上^{ウエ}納^{ナツ}濟^{セイ} / 上^{ウエ}), upon payment of the duty ⁴⁾. — *Sina-mono wo uke-totta ūyéde* (*dai-kin wo*) *age-mašoo*, after having received the goods I shall pay (the price) ⁵⁾.

Chinese compounds with 上^{ウエ} *ziyan*, *šoo*, upon.

山^{サン}上^{ウエ}, upon mountains. — 雲^{ウン}上^{ウエ}, upon clouds. — 座^ザ上^{ウエ}, upon the throne. — 以^イ上^{ウエ}, upwards, prior to a time, = *sore yori mae*. — *San nen i-ziyan*, prior to three years ago.

2. **Sítá, 下^カ。** beneath, under, below.

Sítá-ni sítá-ni, down! down! = kneel! — *Síta yori waki-idzuru midzu*, water springing up from beneath. — *Šákū no sítá*, what is under a foot measure, the divisions of a foot ⁶⁾. — *Watákūsi wa anáta yori sítá de gōzaru*, = I am beneath you, I am less than you.

Chinese compounds with 下^カ。ケ。ケ。

天^{テン}下^カ。宇^ウ下^ケ, *Ten-ku, U-ke*, what is under the heavens, under the firmament, the earth. — 地^チ下^カ, under (in) the earth. — 山^{サン}下^ケ, *San-ke*, the foot of a mountain. — 以^イ下^カ, = *Sono ato*, after, since. — *San nen i-ka*, three years since.

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 38.

³⁾ Treaty f. 1858. Art. V. al. 2.

⁵⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 13.

²⁾ *Ibid.* p. 29.

⁴⁾ *Ibid.* III. 6.

⁶⁾ *Ibid.* p. 29.

3. **Mave, Maye**, vulgo **Mai**, 前^マ。後^コ (of *ma*, eye, and *re*, side, direction), before, local or temporary.

Matsu-maye, = before the pine-trees. — *Yei-zi wo mün'no mave ni kakavte niu-you su*, she holds the suckling to the breast and suckles it. — *Itsu-ka nen mave ni*, a year previous ¹⁾. — *Kaviko idzúru maye ni*, before the silkworm comes out. — *Go nen yori mave*, = from the fifth year forward, i. e. before the fifth year.

Chinese compounds with 前^{ゼン}, *zen*, before.

面^{オモテ} 前^{ゼン}, before the front of. — 門^{カド} 前^{ゼン}, before the door. — 以^イ 前^{ゼン}, previous to. — *Kono ji-giri aruwa sono i-zen nite mo*, at this date or even earlier ²⁾.

4. **Notsí**, 後^{ノチ}, (from *no*, back, whence *nóku*, retreat, and *tsi*, place), behind, after, with a definition of time, refers to a time which is behind, with reference to the present, future.

Kaze okiru notsí, after the rising of the wind. — *Kaze ga fukite notsí*, after the wind has blown. — *Sono notsí*, thereafter. — *Ima yori oyóso ziju fatsi ka gétsü no notsí yori fütótsu minato wo jiraku bési*, after the lapse of 18 months from now a harbour shall be opened ³⁾. — 自^ジ 今^{イマ} 以^イ 後^{ノチ}, from now for the future.

5. **Omote**, 面^{オモテ}。表^{オモテ}, the face, the countenance, the fore-side, before.

6. **Urá**, 裏^{ウラ}。裡^{ウラ}, the internal, the inside of a garment; the reverse of a coin; the opposite.

Iyé no urá, the inner side of a house. — *Urámi won no urá nari*, disgust is the reverse of inclination.

7. **Usiro**, 後^{ウシロ}, after.

Yama wo usiro ni si, *kawa wo omote ni su*, (the village) has mountains for background, a river for fore-ground, = it has mountains behind and a river before it. — Also the inside of a garment, as reverse, is called *usiro*.

8. **Saki**, 先^{サキ}。前^{サキ}, point, with reference to time, beforehand, past.

Saki no tosi, a former year. — *Saki ni*, earlier, before. — *Go nen bakári saki yori va*, only since the last five years. — 卽^{イッ} 先^{サキ}, *O saki!* you before! you first! after you!

9. **Ato**, 趾^{アト}。跡^{アト}, footstep; behind.

Fito no ato ni tsuite yuku, go behind any one. — *Sono ato*, afterwards.

¹⁾ Treaty Art. X. al. 1.

²⁾ Ibid. XI. 1.

³⁾ Ibid. II. 2.

10. Utsi, 内_チ。中。 within.

Iyē no ūtsi ni arū, to be within the house. — *Kiyo-riu-ba no ūtsi ni* (居_キ留_リ場_バ, 内_チ=), within the ground, where one has residence ¹⁾. — *Riyoo kōku no ūtsi yori*, from out both empires ²⁾. — *Utsi yori fōkā wo ukāgaru*, to spy from within what is without. — *Mado no ūtsi ve fairu*, to go in by the window. — *Teki no ūtsi ve seme-iru*, to press into the enemy. — *Yuné no ūtsi de aru*, to meet in the dream. — *Fuyu no utsi ni*, as long as it is winter. — *San-nen no utsi ni*, within a space of three years. — *San nitsi utsi de deki-masū*, it may happen within three days' time ³⁾. — *Hiyākū me utsi de wa ūrē-masēnū*, within (under) ten taels will I not sell it ⁴⁾. — *Kono ni zi no ūtsi idzure naritomo motsi yu bēsi*, of the two signs each (whichever it be) may be used. — *Kuru ūtsi ni*, while one is eating. — *Sina-mono wo uke-torānu utsi wa, dai-kin wa agerare-masēnu*, = within the not receiving of the goods (as long as I have not received the goods), no payment will be made ⁵⁾. — *Men-kiyo nakārisi ga ūtsi nite*, as long as there was no permission.

Much in use also, are Chinese compounds with 内_チ。𠂔, dai or nai: *Kai-dai* (海_チ内_チ), what is within the seas, the continent. — *Kōkū-dai* (國_コ内_チ), within the borders of a country. — *Kōkū-dai no dai-ūtsi no gākū-siya*, the first scholar of the empire. — *Kono deu (deo) wa Nippon kōkū-dai re furē-watāsu bēsi*, this article shall be made known throughout the Japanese empire ⁶⁾. — *Bu-nai* (部_ブ内_チ), the inmost, interior. — *Nippon no bu-nai wo niyokan-su*, to travel over the interior of Japan ⁷⁾. — *Ka-nai* (家_カ内_チ), what is within the house, the family.

11. Fōkā, Hōkā, 外_チ, without; except, besides.

Kono fōkā hōkā-kōkū kisi ni ōtē fītōtsu minato wo firākū bēsi, besides on the north coast a harbour shall be opened ⁸⁾. — *Yākū-siyo no fōkā ve uru bēkarāzū*, except to the government may not be sold ⁹⁾. — *Kei-sei no fōkā onna*, women except wry castles (prostitutes). — *To wo fōkā yori todzuru*, to shut a door from without. — *Dai-ku sono fōkā šōku-nin wa kane-šōku wō motsū-masu*, carpenters and other workmen use the iron-foot. — *Tan-mono to ara-mono sono fōka ari-masū*, there are piece-goods, and raw materials and so forth.

¹⁾ Treaty. Art. VIII. al. 1.²⁾ Ibid. X, 1.³⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 9.⁴⁾ Ibid. p. 4.⁵⁾ Ibid. p. 13.⁶⁾ Treaty. Art. II. al. 17.⁷⁾ Ibid. Art. I. al. 3, 5.⁸⁾ Ibid. II. 2.⁹⁾ Ibid. II. 18.

Chinese compounds with 外^ヱ, *gwai*, outside, without, out of:

門^モ 外^ヱ, *Mon-gwai*, without the gate. — 口^コ 外^ヱ, *Koo-gwai*, out of the mouth, out of the mouth of a river or harbor.

12. **Soto**, 外^ヱ, originally the back door, at present generally: without.

Sotó-mo for *Soto-omo*, the back- or winter-side of a mountain. — *Sato no soto ni*, without the village.

13. **Mūkái**, **Mūkái**, 向^{ムカ} 𠵼^カ, vulgo also **Mūkáu**, **Mukoo**, as substantive, the opposite quarter, the direction opposite anything.

Kare ga sūmī-ka wa waga-iyé no mūkái ni áru, his dwelling is opposite my house. — *Mukáu no kisi ve fító wo watásū*, to put people over to the opposite side (of a river).

14. **Avída**, **Aída**, 間^{アイ} 𠵼^ダ, the interval, space between things, between; space between two points of time, while.

Aida no fima, pause, leisure, opportunity for anything. — *Kono aida*, between. — *Sono aida*, meanwhile. — *Yama no aida ni midzū ári wo tani-gawa to iwā*, the appearance of water between mountains is called a valley-brook. — *Oyóso ik-ka nen no aida*, for the time of one year ¹⁾. — *Tada siyau-bai wo nasu aida ni nomi*, *tau-riu-suru koto wo u-bési*, only while they carry on trade, may they hold residence (there) ²⁾.

Chinese compounds with 間^{カン} 𠵼^{ゲン}, *kan*, *gen*:

田^チ 間^{カン}, between rice-fields. — 石^{イシ} 間^{カン} = 生^{シユ} 𠵼^ス, to grow between rocks. — 人^{ニン} 間^{カン}, *Nin-gen*, among men; mankind.

15. **Naka**, 中^{ナカ}, the middle, in the midst of, amidst; among.

Ta no naka no iyé, a hut in the middle of the field. — *Riyū san no naka no riu-sūi* (兩^{リウ} 山^{サン} 中^{ナカ} 流^{リウ} 水^{スイ}), streaming water just between two mountains. — *Yo-naka*, the middle of the night, midnight. — *Kūsá no naka de náku kera*, crickets that chirp in (between, among) the grass.

Chinese compounds with 中^{チュウ}, *tsiu*, in the midst:

Sūi-tsiu ni (水^{スイ} 中^{チュウ}) *sumi mono*, beings which live in fresh water. — 海^{カイ} 中^{チュウ} 物^{モノ}, *Kai-tsiu no mono*, something that is in the sea, a production of the sea. — *Kai-tsiu ni irite avábi wo toru*, to dive into the sea and fetch up pearl-mussels. — 地^チ 中^{チュウ}, *Tsi-tsiu ni*, in the earth. — 土^ド 中^{チュウ}, *Do-tsiu*,

¹⁾ Treaty. Art. IV, al. 3.

²⁾ Ibid. II. 13.

in the ground. — 道^{ミチ}中^{ナカ}, *Dau-tsiu*, = mid-way, half-way, on the way. — 雲^{クモ}中^{ナカ}, *Un-tsiu*, in clouds.

16. **Soba**, 側^{ソバ}。傍^{ホウ} (from *sóvü*, come near and *ba*, place), the neighborhood, next, at the side of, by.

Fì no soba ni koi, come next (or by) the fire!

17. **Kata**, 方^{カタ}。邊^ヘ, side; with reference to time, as much as about, against.

Figási-kata, *Nisi-kata*, *Kita-kata*, *Minami-gata*, the east-, west-, north-, south-side. — *Kita-kata no kazé*, wind from the north. — *Yo-ake-kata*, = the side, on which the night goes open, i. e. about the dawn of the day. — *Sono fì no yuvu-kata ni*, against the fall of the evening. — *Sore yori kono kata*, = from there to this side, i. e. since that time.

Chinese compounds: 海^{カイ}邊^{ベン}, *Kai-ben*, on sea. — *Kai-ben no min*, people that live on (at) sea. — 葦^{アシ}水^{スイ}邊^{ベン} = 生^{シユ}ズ, *Asi va sui-ben ni siygu zu*, the reed grows on the water.

The spoken language often supersedes *Kata* with the Chinese **Fóo** (Hóo), 方^{ホウ}。𠵼^{ホウ}, side, quarter. — *Doko ni O ide nasáruká?* whither are you going? ... *san no hoo ni* (or *hóoye*), to Mr. N's. — *Anátano hóoni*, at or to your side, by or to you ¹⁾. — *Sono fóo*, his side, you. See p. 84.

18. **Fotori**, 邊^{ホトリ}。𠵼^{ホトリ}, round, round about.

Ike no fotori no tsutsumi, a dike round a fish pond.

19. **Mavari**, 回^{マバリ}。廻^{マバリ}。周^{シユウ}, circumference, round about, round.

Yasiki-mavari ni, within the compass of dwellings.

Chinese expression: 周^{シユウ}圍^イ, *Siu-i*, round about. — 其^{コノ}留^ル場^バ, 周^{シユウ}圍^イ = 門^{カド}モ 牆^{シユウ}ヲ 設^{セツ}ズ, round about their dwelling place people place neither gate nor fence ²⁾.

20. **To**, 與^ト, with, Lat. *cum*, indicates the express coupling of two or more objects; it is a declinable suffix and, so far, a word expressive of relation.

Dare-to onázikoto (與^ト 誰^{タレ} 同^{ドウ}), = identicalness — with which? — *Yebisü-to wa-bókü sitá*, peace has been made with the barbarians. — *Kimi-to tomoni suru*, to hold with his master, to be attached to him. — *Hana, tori*, = flowers, birds. — *Hana-to tori wo yekaku*, = to paint birds with (and) flowers. —

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 16.

²⁾ Treaty. Art. 11. al. 10.

Hana tori-to wo yekaku, to paint flowers and also birds. — *Sisi*, lion; *Torá*, tiger. — *Sisi-to torá wa*, as for the tiger with the lion; or also: as for the lion and the tiger, provided the principal accent be placed on „tiger.” — *Kane-ziyákú-to kuzira-ziyákú wa doo-kawari másüka?* = as for the whalebone and the iron foot, what difference is there? ¹⁾. — *Atsi*, there; *Kotsi*, here; *Atsi kotsi-to*, there and also here.

...to ...to, repeated after two nouns coordinate, answers to our both... and..., as well, as... also..., Lat. *et..et*, *que..que..* — *Hana-to tori-to*, both flowers and birds. — *Olanda kókú-wa to Dai Nippon Tai-kun to riyaku-kókú no konsin kátsü siygu-bai no tsünámi wo jirókü-sen koto wó hóssite*, the King of Holland and the Tai-kun of Japan wishing to extend the relations of friendship and commerce of both countries etc. ²⁾. — *Nippon-to San-kan-to no atsukai no koto*, negotiations of (between) Japan and the Three states. — *Hana-to tori-to wo yekáku*, to paint flowers as well as birds. — *Yuku-to kaveru-to ni mato wo íru*, in going to and fro to shoot at the mark. — *Faravu ni Nippon to gwai-koku to no kwa-heiwo motsirü koto samadake nási* ³⁾, = there is no obstacle to using either Japanese or foreign money in payments. — The characteristic of the coupling is necessary here, as without that it does not attract notice.

Remark. If, as in the expression: a valley with or without water, the presence or absence of one object near the other is intended, then the verbs *áru*, present and *náki* (see p. 108, n^o. 30), not present, are used, thus: *Midzú áru tani*, a valley with water; *Midzú náki tani*, a valley without water.

21. **Tonari**, 隣 ^{トナリ} (from *to*, door, family, and *narabi*, row), neighborhood; next, close to.

Yákü-siyo no tonari ni, next the government house. — **Kin-ziyo** (*kinžo*), 近 ^{キン} 所 ^{ショ}, a place near, neighborhood.

22. **Si-dai**, 次 ^ジ 第 ^{ダイ}, rank, following, in proportion to.

Negai-si-dai, according to wish, in proportion as it is wished ⁴⁾.

23. **Toóri**, 通 ^{トオリ}, passage; along.

Warada no ferí toóri ni wítarü kaiko, silkworms lying along the edge of the straw-tray. — *Fama toóri no mürá mina...*, all the villages along the strand. —

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 31.

²⁾ Treaty, at the beginning.

³⁾ Treaty. Art. IV. al. 2.

⁴⁾ Ibid. IV. 3.

道多理^リ、通^ト_リ =, *dan-ri no toóriní*, according to right. — 別^ツ冊^サ、通^ト_リ =, following a separate writing ¹⁾. — *Waga kokóro ye no toóriní*, after (in) my opinion.

24. Tamé, 爲^{タメ}, purpose, aim, end, the destination of a thing. Tamé ni, for, for the service of, on behalf of, for the sake of, on account of.

Fító no tame ni, for, on account of others. — *Waga-tame ni*, for my sake. — *Simo kami no tame ni su*, the less is for the service of the greater. — *Tate-mono no tame ni kari-uru ikka no ba-siyo*, a place hired for building ²⁾. — *Kono okite wo katakū-sen tame ni*, for the maintenance of this article ³⁾. — *Uru tame ni*, for sale.

25. Kavari, 替^カ_リ。代, barter. Kavarini, in exchange for, instead of, for. — *Kono fító no kavari ni*, for (instead of) this man.

26. Máde, 迄^{マデ}。迄, the aim towards which a movement is directed; to, into, till, until, with reference to place or time, opposed to *yori*, from.

Firato yori Nagasaki máde san ziyu fatsi ri ari, from Firato to Nagasaki it is 38 ri. — *Itsu made watákusi mataneba naranú ka?* till when (how long) must I wait? — *Asu made*, till to-morrow. — *Ten-si yori mótte siyo-zin ni itáru made*, = from the emperor himself till one comes (*itáru made*) to the common man ⁴⁾. — *I-fúkú, ya-gu, tabi no rui made ge-sarú*, clothes, bedding, even to shoes, are distributed. — *Kókónótsu han doki yori nanátsu made utsí ni*, = within one till four o'clock, between one and four o'clock ⁵⁾. — *Yok-ka made ni deki-másü*, by the fourth day (of the month) it will be ready ⁶⁾.

§ 63. Verbs in the gerund, used as words expressive of relation, are

A. With a previous accusative, シ, **wo**:

1. Motte, 以^モ_テ, using, by means, with, the gerund of *Motsi*, to seize, hold, use.

The object that is seized, or taken with the hand, is either the object direct of an action later to be mentioned, or the means of carrying it out.

It is object direct in sentences as:

將^モ_テ 詩^シ = 莫^ナ_カ 浪^ナ_ミ 傳^ツ_ル =, *Sí wo motte nami ni tsutauru koto nakáre*, i. e. literally: Taking the poem let it not be abandoned to the waves! = let not the poem be abandoned to the waves.

¹⁾ Treaty. Art. III. al. 1.

²⁾ Ibid. II. 8.

³⁾ Ibid. II. 6.

⁴⁾ *Dai Gaku*, § 6.

⁵⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 17.

⁶⁾ Ibid. p. 10.

The object of *Motte* is used as the means of carrying out an action in sentences as:

以^モテ 人^{ヒト}ヲ 治^ヲス 人^{ヒト}ヲ, *Fitó wo motte fitó wo osámü*, to treat mankind as mankind. — Irova wo motte rui wo wakátsü, to divide the classes according to the Irova.

2. *Tovorite*, *Toórite*, contracted *Toótte*, 通^ホテ, going through or along..., the gerund of *Tovóri*, go through, pass.

Mon wo toótte, going through the gate. — *Fino naka wo toótte*, through the midst of the fire. — *Mitsi-suzi wo toótte yúkú*, go along a way.

3. *Tsütáite*, vulgo *Ts'tatte*, along, the gerund of *Tsútái*, go along.

Kai-gan wo tsütáite itsi ri bakári yukéba, if one goes a *ri* along the coast.

4. *Fete*, 經^ヘテ, through, along, during, the gerund of *Fe*, *Füru*, to go away, to go along.

Sono fa fuyu wó fete sibomazu, the foliage does not fade in the winter.

5. *Nozókité*, *Nozóité*, 除^クテ, setting behind, excepted, except, the gerund of *Nozóki*, *u* (contracted from *notsi ni oki*, to set behind).

Nippon siyo kwa-fei va, *tou-zen wo nozóku*, *yn-syuts-su lési* (日^ニ 本^ン 諸^シ 貨^ズ 幣^ハ 銅^ブ 錢^シ 除^ク 輸^ス 出^ス スベシ), all Japanese money, except copper money, may be circulated ¹⁾.

B. Verbs, used as words expressive of relation, with a previous local or dative, ニ, *ni*:

1. ..*ni óité*, in, at, strengthened local form, of *ni* (in, at) and *óité*, or *wóité*, (於^オ 于), = establishing, Fr. *en établissant*, the gerund of *oki*, 置^キ, to place, establish, erect. When merely *ni* and when *ni óité* is used, will appear from the following examples. The expression: „The Dutchmen staying in Japan, = the Dutchmen in Japan,” is rendered by *Nippon ni áru Oranda-zin* ²⁾; in the expression: „this document shall be exchanged at Nagasaki,” on the other hand the local is expressed by *ni óité*, and the translation runs: *Kono fon-siyo wo Nagasaki ni óité tori-kayésü-bési* ³⁾. In the first case the definition of place where? is governed by the *áru* or *óru*, dwell, immediately following; in the second case the definition of place, where?, because not dependent on the verb, exchange, it is, by the addition of *óité*, made an adverbial phrase. — This remark agrees

¹⁾ Treaty v. 1858. Art. IV, al. 4.

²⁾ Ibid. VII. 1.

³⁾ Ibid., after the Japanese text Art. XI, al. 1; after the Dutch text Art. X, al. 4.

with all the definitions of place, occurring in the Japanese text of the document cited.

The object of *óté* may also be an action, one is engaged in, e. g.: *Fau-sókū wó okásū ni óte vá* (法^{ホウ}則^{ゾク}ヲ犯^{ハム}ス於^オテ), by violating the Regulations ¹⁾.

The derivative from *oki*, viz *ókéru*, = to be fixed or placed, preceded by a local in *ni*, answers to the expression: the position with relation to; e. g.:

而^ニ物^{モノ}君^{クニ} *Kun-si no mono ni okéru*, *kore wo ai-site zin-sezu*, = relation of the philosopher to the creatures: he loves them, 弗^ズ也^ヤ子^シ *is however not humane toward them. Hia Meng, Cap. 仁^ニ愛^{アイ}之^ノ VII, § 61.*
 之^{コレ}於^オテ

2. *Yorite, Yotte*, 依^{ヨリ}テ。ヨッテ。寄。據。因, = having its point of departure and thus also its point of support in, from, in consequence of, on the ground of, the gerund of *yorí, yoru*, to get out from. Compare p. 71, 72.

Korera nawo siro ni yorite, teki ni kudárazu, those yet relying on a castle, do not submit to the enemy. — *Koreni yotte*, in consequence of that, therefore. — *Tsi-kára ni yotte*, in proportion to his strength. — *Toki ni yotte vá*, in proportion to time. — *Iro ni yotte nedan ga kawari másu*, as the colors are different there is a difference in price ²⁾. — *Negaini yotte* ³⁾, on entreaty. — *Aru ni yotte*, because there is.

3. *Tsukite*, vulg. *Tsuíte*, 付^{ツキ}テ。ツヅ。就, concerning, the gerund of *Tsuki*, concern, come to.

Fäné kisi ni tsukü, the ship touches the coast. — *Kore ni tsuki*, or *tsuite*, or *tsuite va*, concerning that, what concerns this.

The attributive form is *Tsuite no*, e. g. 宗^{シウ}旨^ジニ付^{ツキ}テ。爭^{ソウ}論^{ロン}, *Siu-zi ni tsuite no soo-ron*, dispute concerning (about) religion ⁴⁾.

Remark. To *Toote va* also, for which the written forms: *Tòtewa* and *Tat-tewa* ⁵⁾ have crept in, the meaning of: concerning, *quand à*, have been given, without reference to the limitation of its use. As gerund of *Torí*, *u* (問^トフ), to ask, *Toote va* means: if one ask, to the question; and the expression: *Oose va mottomo naredomo, waga-mi ni toote va, kanai-gútai*, thus

¹⁾ Treaty. Art. V. al. 4.

²⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 34.

³⁾ Treaty. Art. VIII. al. 1.

⁴⁾ Ibid. VII. 4.

⁵⁾ COLLADO. p. 57. RODRIGUEZ p. 86.

means: the command is indeed reasonable, but if one ask me, it is not easy to be carried out.

4. **Itárite**, vulg. **Itátte**, 至^イテ。對^カテ, = coming to, respecting; with definitions of time: against, towards, the gerund of *Itári*.

Taikun ni itátte vá, does it come to the Taikun, what concerns the Taikun. — *Fárrāni itátte vá*, towards the spring.

5. **Tai-síté**, 對^カシテ, standing opposite, towards, the gerund of *Tai-si*, to be opposite, being the further definition, opposite to which, characterized by *ni* or *re*, sometimes also by *to*. Compare p. 68.

Oranda-zin ve tai-si fou wo okáseru Nippon-zin va, Japanese, who have transgressed the law, towards Dutchmen. — *Nippon-zin ni tai-si fou wo okasitaru Oranda-zin va*, Dutchmen, who have transgressed the law, towards Japanese ¹⁾.

6. **Mūkávite**, **Múkáite**, also *Múkávute*, *Mukóote*, 向^カテ。向^カテ, against, the gerund of *Mukavi*, to be pointed against something.

Fito ni múkáite (or *mukóote*) *ku-ron-zuru*, to contend against some one.

Mukárite, *Mukátte*, 向^カテ, the gerund of *Mukári*, be turned against something; e. g. *Kazé ni mukátte hásiru*, to run against the wind.

Mukité, *Muité*, 向^カテ, against, the gerund of *Muki*, to turn against. — *Ráyau bāu ni muité*, towards both sides.

7. **Sitagaute**, **Sitagoote**, 從^カテ, according to, complying with, the gerund of *Sitagari*, *Sitagai*, to submit, to yield, to follow.

Sitagátte, 從^カテ, according to, the gerund of *Sitagari*, to be subordinate. — (*Ni motsu no*) *atavi ni sitagatte un-ziyau wo ósámu besi*, according to the value (of the goods) shall customs be paid ²⁾. — *Ki-ini sitagatte* (貴^キ 意^イ = 從^カテ), according to the noble (i. e. your) pleasure.

ALPHABETICAL SYNOPSIS OF THE WORDS EXPRESSIVE OF RELATION TREATED.

<i>Aida</i> = <i>Avida</i> . . . § 62. 14.	<i>De</i> = <i>Níte</i> § 60.	<i>Go</i> = <i>Notsi</i> § 62. 4.
<i>Ato</i> , behind. 62. 9.	<i>Fete</i> , through. . . § 63. A. 4.	<i>Gwai</i> = <i>Foka</i> 62. 11.
<i>Avida</i> , between . . . 62. 14.	<i>Foká</i> , without. . . § 62. 11.	<i>He</i> = <i>Ve</i> 60.
<i>Ben</i> = <i>Kata</i> 62. 17.	<i>Fotori</i> , round about 62. 18.	<i>Hoká</i> = <i>Foka</i> 62. 11.
<i>Dai</i> = <i>Utsi</i> 62. 10.	<i>Ge</i> = <i>Sitá</i> 62. 2.	<i>Itárite</i> = <i>Itátte</i> . . § 63. B. 4.

¹⁾ Treaty. Art. V. al. 1, 2.

²⁾ Ibid. III. 3.

<i>Itátte</i> , to, concerning,	<i>Müité</i> = <i>Mükité</i> . . § 63. B. 6.	<i>Tsiu</i> = <i>Naka</i> . . . § 62. 15.
respecting . . § 63. B. 4.	<i>Mükité</i> , against. 63. B. 6.	<i>To</i> , to, with. . . 60.
<i>Ka</i> = <i>Sita</i> § 62. 2.	<i>Mükoo</i> = <i>Mükqu</i> . . § 62. 13.	<i>To</i> , with, together,
<i>Kan</i> = <i>Aida</i> 62. 14.	<i>Mükóote</i> , against § 63. B. 6.	and 62. 20.
<i>Kara</i> , out 60.	<i>Nai</i> = <i>Utsi</i> § 62. 10.	<i>Tonari</i> , next . . . 62. 21.
<i>Kata</i> , next, to;	<i>Naka</i> , in the midst of 62. 15.	<i>Toótte</i> = <i>Tovorite</i> § 63. A. 2.
against, about 62. 17.	<i>Ni</i> , at, in. 60.	<i>Toote va</i> 63. B. 3.
<i>Kavari</i> , for, in-	<i>Nite</i> , in, with . . 60.	<i>Toóri</i> , along . . . § 62. 23.
stead of 62. 25.	<i>Notsi</i> , behind, after 62. 4.	<i>Tovorite</i> , through § 63. A. 2.
<i>Ke</i> = <i>Sitá</i> 62. 2.	<i>Nozóite</i> = <i>Nozókite</i> § 63. A. 5.	<i>Tsuíte</i> = <i>Tsukite</i> 63. B. 3.
<i>Máde</i> , to 62. 26.	<i>Nozókite</i> , except. 63. A. 5.	<i>Tsukite</i> , concerning
<i>Mai</i> = <i>Mave</i> 62. 3.	<i>Oüte</i> , in 63. B. 1.	§ 63. B. 3.
<i>Mavari</i> , round	<i>Omote</i> , before. . . § 62. 5.	<i>Tsütáite</i> , along. 63. A. 3.
about 62. 19.	<i>Saki</i> , before hand 62. 8.	<i>Ts'tatte</i> = <i>Tsütáite</i> 63. A. 3.
<i>Mave</i> , <i>Maye</i> , before 62. 3.	<i>Si-dai</i> , following. 62. 22.	<i>Urá</i> , inwards . . § 62. 6.
<i>Motte</i> , by means	<i>Sita</i> , beneath. . . 62. 2.	<i>Usiro</i> , behind . . 62. 7.
of, with . . . § 63. A. 1.	<i>Sitagátte</i> , accord. to 63. B. 7.	<i>Utsí</i> , within . . . 62. 10.
<i>Múkái</i> = <i>Mukavi</i> . § 62. 13.	<i>Sitagáute</i> , „ 63. B. 7.	<i>Uce</i> = <i>Uyé</i> , up . . 62. 1.
<i>Múkáite</i> = <i>Múkávite</i>	<i>Sitagoote</i> . „ 63. B. 7.	<i>Uyé</i> , up. 62. 1.
§ 63. B. 6.	<i>Siu-i</i> , round about § 62. 19.	<i>Ve</i> , wards, to . . 60.
<i>Múkávi</i> , contrary § 62. 13.	<i>Soba</i> , next. 62. 16.	<i>Yori</i> , out, from. 60.
<i>Múkávite</i> , against § 63. B. 6.	<i>Soto</i> , without. . . 62. 12.	<i>Yorite</i> , on the
<i>Múkárite</i> , against 63. B. 6.	<i>Tai-síte</i> , towards § 63. B. 5.	ground of . . § 63. B. 2.
<i>Múkátte</i> = <i>Múkárite</i> 63. B. 6.	<i>Tamé</i> , for, on ac-	<i>Yotte</i> = <i>yorite</i> . . 63. B. 2.
<i>Múkqu</i> = <i>Múkávi</i> § 62. 13.	count of. § 62. 24.	<i>Zen</i> = <i>Mave</i> § 62. 3.
<i>Múkavute</i> , against § 63. B. 6.	<i>Te</i> , in, with . . . 60.	<i>Ziyqu</i> = <i>Uyé</i> . . . 62. 1.

CHAPTER VII.

THE VERB.

Man begreift nichts, dessen Entstehung man nicht einsieht.

STEINTHAL.

In the treatment of this chapter, the question, which presents itself most prominently, is, what are the conjugational forms of the Japanese verb, and what do they mean. Included in it is the answer to the question, how are the conjugational forms of the Western languages expressed in the Japanese.

§ 64. The voices of the Japanese verb are:

Intransitive.

Transitive, Factive or Causative.

Passive, but in the form of an Active.

Negative, since the verbal terminations contain in themselves a negative element, *n*.

§ 65. The Moods are: the indefinite Root-form; the Imperative which, at the same time, is the basis of the Optative; the indicative Closing form; the Substantive-form (Infinitive), at once Attributive form (Participle), and a derivative Adverbial form (see § 107). — The Root and the Substantive forms are declinable, and by declension express the mood definitive of time and cause (Subjunctive) and the Conditional etc.

§ 66. The Tenses are root-tenses (Present, Preterit, Future, 現在 *Gen-zai*; 過去 *Kwa-ko*; 未來 *Mi-rai*), and derivative tenses. A root-tense is indefinite (aorist), when the action with reference to the speaker is present, past, or future, and is not, with reference to a given period of time, represented as perfect or imperfect. The Japanese verb pays attention to this distinction, and also expresses the beginning, the continuance and the ending, as well as the repetition of an action by peculiar forms.

§ 67. Person and number are not noticed in the verb, whereas the grammatical distinction of three persons (I, thou, he) as well as that of singular and plural, have remained foreign to the language. (See pp. 73 and 53).

Instead of a grammatical distinction, a qualifying one steps in, noticeable by the choice of the verb, by which the speaker distinguishes his own being or acting from that of another person, but particularly noticeable, because he adds the augmentative prefix *On* or *O*, which plays so important a part in the domain of the pronouns (see p. 75), to the verb also, as soon as the action that it expresses, proceeds from a person, to whom he bears respect, or is a condition imputed to that person. The want of a grammatical distinction of three persons is fully made good by the manner in which a courtly speaker qualifies his own being or acting and that of another.

The way in which courtesy expresses itself in the verbs, is further explained in an Appendix to this chapter.

§ 68. The verbal root. Every verbal root (the essential part or the root of a verb) terminates either in *e* or *i* (compare the Latin *doce* and *audi*). These terminations are the verbal element proper, which is subject to transformation or declension. Whereas we, by means of the European letters are able to disengage these elements from the verbal root and treat them separately, the Japanese syllabic system of writing represents them as bound to the final consonant of the verbal root.

As the element *i* undergoing a strengthening, in certain cases becomes *a* or *o*, whereas the element *e*, in the same cases remains unchanged, this leads naturally to a division of the verbs into two conjugations: a nondeflecting one in *o*, and a deflecting one in *i*, called by some a regular conjugation in *o* and an irregular one in *i*.

There is a group of about forty verbs derived by a nondeflecting element *i*, which in respect of their transformation are ranked under the nondeflecting conjugation in *e*. They are enumerated and explained in § 99.

The verbal root or the root-form answers logically, but not formally, to our Infinitive. *Ake*, to open; *Kaki*, to write; *Yuki*, to go.

A verb is in the indefinite root-form, when it is the first member of a compound verb, as well as in the coördinate connection of propositions which has the peculiarity, that only the last of the propositions linked together expresses the definition of time and manner, whereas in the preceding sentences the verb is left in the indefinite root form (compare p. 46).

The dictionaries of Japanese origin do not point out the root-form. But as a knowledge of it is necessary to being able to conjugate a verb, we, here, as in our Dictionary, place the root-form on the foreground.

The root-form is equivalent to a substantive, and is declinable by means of suffixes (see § 7).

Ake ni, to the opening, to open. Dative and Terminative; Supine.

Ake ni va, = *Akenba*, = *Akeba*, while one opens. Local. Modal.

Ake te, by opening. Instrumental. Modal.

On this principle forms are obtained, which answer to some of our moods.

§ 69. The imperative mood, *Ge-dzi no kotoba*. The Imperative terminates in the accented *e*.

In the nondeflecting verbs the root is at once imperative: *Aké*, open! — in the deflecting the termination *i* changes into *e*: *Káki*, to write; *Kaké*, write! *Kuvi*, to eat; *Kuvé*, *Kuyé*, eat!

This form may be strengthened by suffixing the exclamation *yo* (see p. 62), for which in the eastern countries *ro* is in use ¹⁾. *Akéyo* or *Akéro*, open! *Yukéyo* or *Yukéro*, go! *Seyo* or *Sero*, do!

Instead of *eyo* the conversational language of *Si-kok* uses *ei* also, thus *Akéi* for *Akéyo*, open! *Sei* for *Seyo*, do! *Yóku O'ide nasarei*, for *nasare*, = well may your arrival happen, i. e. be welcome! — *Ki*, come, has *Koyo*, *Koi*, in *Sikok Kéi* ²⁾, come! — From *Mi*, to see, and *Kiki*, to hear, appear also in the old-Japanese *Mi so* and *Kiki so* (見^三 且^ノ。聞^キ 且^ノ) as imperatives.

¹⁾ *Wagun siwori*, under *Ro*.

²⁾ *Ibid.*, under *Ko*.

The termination ち, *tsi* (= *ti*) changes into テ *te*; from *Matsi*, to watch; *Utsi*, to beat, becomes *Maté*, *Mate yo*, watch! *Ute*, *Ute yo*, beat!

The imperative thus obtained is with respect to its form the vocative of the verbal root (see p. 62). The categorical imperative, used only to inferiors, is avoided in polite conversation and superseded by more elegant expressions.

The imperative, followed by *kasi* or *gana*, has the force of our optative. *O ide nasarei kasi*, oh that you came!

§ 70. Closing form of the verb.

If a verb closes the sentence in the quality of verb predicate, i. e. as finite verb, then the termination *e* or *i* of the root form passes over to the mute *u*. From *Ake* is *Akü*, one opens; from *Yuki*, *Yükü*, one goes. Logically this form answers to our indicative present. The historian uses it for the past also, which he, in his relation, represents as an event taking place before his eyes. (Historical present).

In the application of this rule the following phenomena present themselves:

The terminations *ai*, *ei*, *ii*, *oi*, *ui* pass into
au, *eu*, *iu*, *ou*, *uu*, which in the spoken language resolve into
go, *čö*, *iu* or *iyu*, *ou*, *uu*. Compare pp. 12, 13.

Ai becomes *au*, it suits; *Ei*, *eu* (エウ or エフ), one gets drunken; *Ii* (イゝ), *iyu* (イユ), one says; *Oi*, *oyu* (オユ), one grows old; *Kui* (クイ), *Kuyü* (クユ), one regrets; *é* (エ), to get, *u* (ウ), one gets; *Iyé*, *iyu* (イユ), it heals. The terminations:

<i>ke</i> , ケ, and	<i>ki</i> , キ, become	<i>ku</i> , ク.	<i>ge</i> , ゲ, and	<i>gi</i> , ギ, become	<i>gu</i> , グ.
<i>se</i> , セ, „	<i>si</i> , シ, „	<i>su</i> , ス.	<i>ze</i> , ゼ, „	<i>zi</i> , ジ, „	<i>zu</i> , ズ.
<i>te</i> , テ, „	<i>tsi</i> , チ, „	<i>tsu</i> , ツ.	<i>de</i> , デ, „	<i>dzi</i> , ズ, „	<i>dzu</i> , ヅ.
<i>ne</i> , ニ, „	<i>ni</i> , ニ, „	<i>nu</i> , ス.	<i>re</i> , ヘ, „	<i>ri</i> , リ, „	<i>ru</i> , フ.

The terminations アヒ, エヒ, イヒ, オヒ, シヒ (*avi*, *evi*, *ivi*, *ovi*, *uri*), for which the spoken language uses *ai*, *ei*, *ii*, *oi*, *ui* ¹⁾, pass into アフ, エフ, イフ, オフ, ウフ (*avu*, *evu*, *ivu*, *ovu*, *uvu*), in the spoken language *au* (*go*), *eu* (*čö*), *iu*, *ou*, *uu*. See pp. 12, 13.

キラフ (*Kirávü*, one shuns) and ニガフ (*Negávü*, one wishes) sound in the

¹⁾ Compare p. 16, line 7.

street language of Yédo *Kira-u*, *Nega-u*, but in the mouth of a polite person *Kirao* and *Negao* ¹⁾.

The difference between *qu* and *ou*, for which LÉON PAGÈS uses *ô* and *ô* ²⁾, mostly remains unnoticed in the spoken language, and both forms are then expressed by *oo*; for the sake of etymology, however, a distinction of the two is highly desirable.

To the deflecting verbs of this class belong:

Aei, vulg. *Ai*, to like; *Ivari*, pray; *Kanari*, to be sufficient; *Kandvu*, it is sufficient; *Samürävi*, pron. *Sooräi*, wait on; サムラフ, *Samürävu*, pron. *Sooroo*, vulg. *soro* (候 _ム _ナ), one waits on, is at the service of ³⁾.

Evi, vulg. *ei*, to get drunken, エフ or エウ, one gets drunken.

Ivi, vulg. *ii*, say; イフ, *ivu* or イエ, *iyu*, one says.

Omövi, vulg. *ömöi*, think; *ömörä* or *ömou*, one thinks.

Yuri, vulg. *yui*, bind; *yüvu* or *yuu*, one binds.

be, ベ, and *bi*, ビ, become *bu*, ブ. *me*, メ, and *mi*, ミ, become *mu*, ム.
re, レ, „ *ri*, リ, „ *ru*, ル.

Ari, *tari* and *nari* (to be) remain, when they close the sentence as verb predicate, unchanged. See § 96.

§ 71. The substantive and attributive form.

Used as noun substantive (Infinitive) and attributive (by way of participle), the nondeflecting verbs supersede their termination *e* with *erü* or *uru*, *i* with *irü*, and the deflecting their *i* with *u*.

Ake, to open, becomes *Akuru* or *Akeru*.

Mi, to see, „ *Miru*.

Yuki, to go, „ *Yuku*.

The terminations *eru*, *iru*, *oru* have more or less continuative force, *Akeru*, *Akuru* and *Miru* being equivalent to *Ake-te-oru*, *Mite-iru* or *Mite-öru*, see § 78.

The form *uru* of *Akuru* belongs to the written language and in Kiusiu to the spoken language also; *üru*, less in use, is confined to the spoken language ⁴⁾.

¹⁾ From an oral communication by the native of Yédo KITAROO.

²⁾ See p. 13, note.

³⁾ On account of the important part, which *Soro* plays as auxiliary verb in the epistolary style, it will be treated still more particularly hereafter (§ 102).

⁴⁾ From an oral communication by TSUDA SIN ITSIROO.

As noun substantive, the verb is, like every substantive declinable, e. g.

Toóki ni yuku vá, going into the distance. — *Kun-si no mitsí tatóyě vá tooki ni yúku gá gótóší*, the way of a philosopher is, to use an instance, as a going into the distance. — *Tera wó mirū ni yukū*, to go to see a temple. — *Ki áru wó mótte*, on account of the presence of trees, because there are trees. — *Age-masu kara*, after presentation. — *Sikáru ni yotte*, = on account of its being thus; since it is so. — *Yuku yori va yukánu ga masi*, it is better not to go than to go. — *Se*, to do; *Sūru*, the doing; *Sūrūni vá*, in the doing. — *Mi*, to see; *Miru*, the seeing; *Mirūni vá*, as one sees. — *San fāo yóri mirūni* (or *mirūni vá*) *yámāno sūgáta ondzikóto nari*, on looking out from three sides, the form of the mountain appears to be the same. Compare § 73, page 206. Remark.

Kawákitáru, the become dry, is substantive in *Fa nó kawakitárū wo uómū*, = what has become dry of the leaves one rubs; on the other hand in; *Kawakitárū fa wo te nite mómū*, = one rubs the foliage become dry, it is attributive.

All the relations, which in a noun are expressed by the forms of declension, may, thus, by the same means, be attributed to a proposition, just as it may be desired to characterise it as subjective, objective or adverbial.

The substantive form with *ka* as suffix is the form of the question direct. *Arū ka?* or *Ari-másū ka?* is there? *Ari* or *Ari-másū*, there is!

The verbal substantive becomes attributive by its mere subordination to a noun following. *Akuru-koto*, the deed of opening. the opening. — *Yuku-mono*, the going something, that which goes.

§ 72. Gerund.

1. The inflectional termination ず, *te*, or ず, *de*, which in substantives indicates the local, modal or instrumental relation, added to the verbal root forms a gerund, which characterises the action expressed by this verb as a subordinate local, modal or instrumental definition of another action succeeding it.

Ake te, by, on or at opening, Fr. *en ouvrant*. — *Mite*, on seeing. — *Yukite*, on going. — *Oyóbi*, to come to. — *Kūrē-gātá ni oyóbite wagiyé ni kahéi ki*, = when it came to the evening twilight, or, in short, at evening, one returned home. — *Tewo agété fūworo man'ki-yóbū*, raising his hand (he) winks and calls people to himself.

2. Modifications introduced into the original form of the gerund by the spoken language:

a. The polysyllabic verbs ending in the deflecting **ki** or **gi**, mostly drop the *k* and *g*; *kite* or *gite* becomes *ite*. Thence:

<i>Yuite</i>	for	<i>Yakite</i> ,	from	<i>Yaki</i> ,	焼 ^キ , to burn, <i>trans.</i>
<i>Tuïte</i>	„	<i>Takite</i> ,	„	<i>Taki</i> ,	焚 ^キ , to burn, <i>intrans.</i>
<i>Kiïte</i>	„	<i>Kikite</i> ,	„	<i>Kiki</i> ,	聞 ^キ , to hear.
<i>Oitê</i>	„	<i>Okite</i> ,	„	<i>Oki</i> ,	置 ^キ , to place.
<i>Suitê</i>	„	<i>Sukite</i> ,	„	<i>Saki</i> ,	好 ^キ , to like.
<i>Tsüitê</i>	„	<i>Tsukite</i> ,	„	<i>Tsuki</i> ,	付 ^キ , to come to.
<i>Kaide</i>	„	<i>Kagide</i> ,	„	<i>Kagi</i> ,	麁 ^キ , smell, <i>trans.</i>
<i>Soïte</i>	„	<i>Sogite</i> ,	„	<i>Sogi</i> ,	扮 ^キ , split.
<i>Toïte</i>	„	<i>Togite</i> ,	„	<i>Togi</i> ,	磨 ^キ , grind.

The undeflecting *Dé-k)i, iru* (出^テ 來^キ), to come out of, proceed, happen (see § 99, N^o. 3), has *Dékité*.

b. In verbs in **tsi** and **ri**, **tsite** (チテ) and **rite** (リテ) change into **tte**, that is written ツテ but not pronounced *tsütê* or *tste*. Thence:

<i>Tatte</i> ,	タツテ,	for	<i>Tätsité</i> ,	from	<i>Tatsi</i> ,	to rise, to stand up.
<i>Matte</i> ,	マツテ,	„	<i>Mötsite</i> ,	„	<i>Matsi</i> ,	to watch, to wait.
<i>Motte</i> ,	モツテ,	„	<i>Mötsite</i> ,	„	<i>Motsi</i> ,	to hand, to take.
<i>Atte</i> ,	アツテ,	„	<i>Arîte</i> ,	„	<i>Ari</i> ,	to exist, to be.
<i>Otte</i> ,	オツテ,	„	<i>Orîte</i> ,	„	<i>Ori</i> ,	1. to dwell; 2. to break.
<i>Natte</i> ,	ナツテ,	„	<i>Narite</i> ,	„	<i>Nari</i> ,	1. to be; 2. to sound, <i>intr.</i>
<i>Yotte</i> ,	ヨツテ,	„	<i>Yorîte</i> ,	„	<i>Yori</i> ,	to go out from.
<i>Kahette</i> ,	カヘツテ,	„	<i>Kahérîte</i> ,	„	<i>Kahéri</i> ,	to turn back.
<i>Müsäte</i> ,	ムシツテ,	„	<i>Müsárite</i> ,	„	<i>Müsári</i> ,	to pluck.
<i>Tsünótte</i> ,	ツノツテ,	„	<i>Tsünórite</i> ,	„	<i>Tsünóri</i> ,	to be steady, steadfast.

Here, after the suppression of the weak termination *i* an assimilation of **ts** (originally **t**) and of **r** with the **t** succeeding takes place.

c. In deflecting verbs the forms *bite*, ビテ, and *mitê*, ミテ, dropping the weak *i*, in pronunciation change into **nde**. Thence:

<i>Eránde</i> ,	エラ ンテ,	for	<i>Erámī-te</i> ,	from	<i>Erámi</i> ,	to select.
<i>Ayúnde</i> ,	アユ ンテ,	,,	<i>Ayámī-te</i> ,	,,	<i>Ayumi</i> ,	to walk.
<i>Yónde</i> ,	ヨ ンテ,	,,	<i>Yomī-te</i> ,	,,	<i>Yomi</i> ,	to read.
<i>Nonde</i> ,	ノ ンテ,	,,	<i>Nomī-te</i> ,	,,	<i>Nomi</i> ,	to drink.
<i>Nomikonde</i> ,	ノミコ ンテ,	,,	<i>Nomikomi-te</i> ,	,,	<i>Nomikomi</i> ,	to conceive, to under-
<i>Monde</i> ,	モ ンテ,	,,	<i>Momī-te</i> ,	,,	<i>Momi</i> ,	to rub. [stand.
<i>Sūsūnde</i> ,	ス・ンテ,	,,	<i>Sūsūmī-te</i> ,	,,	<i>Sūsūmi</i> ,	to advance, to go forwards.
<i>Mūsūnde</i> ,	ムス ンテ,	,,	<i>Mūsūbī-te</i> ,	,,	<i>Musūbi</i> ,	to tie.
<i>Yonde</i> ,	ヨ ンテ,	,,	<i>Yobī-te</i> ,	,,	<i>Yobi</i> ,	to call.

The nondeflecting in *nū* and *bi* retain *nūte*, *bīte*. *Horóbi*, to ruin, v. i., *Horóbīte*. See § 99. N^o. 24.

As the old manner of writing used ㇿ instead of ン, thus ㇿテ instead of ンテ, and ㇿ also passed for ヱ, for the terminations *ande*, *onde*, *unde*, the forms *aude*, *oude*, *uude*, were obtained; which in the pronunciation pass into *gode* (*oode*), *oode*, *uude*; thence: *Ergode* for *Erande*, *Yood* for *Yonde*, *Ayurude* for *Ayunde*.

d. In the deflecting verbs in アビ, *avi*, オビ, *ovi* (in the spoken language *ai*, *oi*) the substantive form is really アフ, オフ, pron. *ao*, *eo*, to which the termination *te* is added.

Avi, pron. *Ái*, to meet, becomes アフテ, *ávüté*, in the spoken language *gote*, *oote*.

Narávi, pron. *Narái*, to learn, becomes ナラフテ, *Narávüté*, in the spoken language *Narágote*, *Naroote*.

Šimávi, pron. *Šimái*, to cease, becomes シマフテ, *Šimávüté*, in the spoken language *Šimágote*, *Šimóote*.

Warávi, pron. *Wardī*, to laugh, becomes ワラフテ, *Warávüté*, in the spoken language *Warágoté*, *Waróoté*.

Farávi (*Harádi*), to sweep away, remove, becomes ハラフテ, *Fargote* (*Harooté*), in the street language of Yédo *Harátte* also ¹⁾.

Omóvi, pron. *Omói*, to think, becomes オモフテ, *Omóvüté*, in the spoken language *ómóoté*.

Núci, pron. *Nui*, to sew, becomes スフテ, *Nuvuté*, in the spoken language *Nnute*, *Nûte*.

¹⁾ See R. BROWN. *Colloquial Japanese*, X

But if it be admitted, that after dropping the weak *i*, the remaining semi-vowel *v* equivalent to *u*, with the preceding *a* or *o* passes into *go* or *oo* (\check{o} , \hat{o}), then the forms *Aote*, *Nargote*, *Omoote*, also, are only euphonic modifications of the regular forms *Aete*, *Narárite*, *Omórite* etc.

Instances of the use of the gerund.

Kasiráwó idásité míru, to stick out the head and look. — *Idási*, to produce, the causative form of the disused *idí*, to appear. — *Kudáwo mótti ten wo ikagáo* (クダヲ モツテ テンヲ ウカスウ), to observe the heavens with a tube, i. e. not to have a broad view. — *Mótté*, from *Motsi*, deflecting verb, to catch hold of with the hand, to use anything. — *Oyóso jitónó sgo-joo wó ikagáurá, kasirawó mótté sign tó sū*, he who pays attention to another's appearance, considers the head as the principal: literally: taking the head, he makes (it) the chief or the principal.

Isolated by *va* the gerund becomes an adverbial phrase definitive of time, *te va* being equivalent to *ebá*. See § 73. Examples:

Hutóno kimi to nátte rá, zin ni órū ¹⁾, if he becomes another's lord, he dwells in (his position is that of) humanity. — *Natte* = *Narite*, from *Nari*, = to be, and, when an appositive definition with *to* precedes, = to become. See § 100. III. — *Fibári takáku tóndé anèní itári bu-mei-su; kütábirète rá, tobi-sagárité kúsá-murá náká ní írū*, the lark, soaring high, goes to the skies, dances and sings; if he is tired, then he descends and goes into his grass dwelling. — *Tonde*, gerund from *Tobi*, to soar. — *Kütábirète rá*, = by fatigue, the gerund isolated by *ra*, from *Kütábire*, to grow tired. — *Tobi-sagári*, literally: fly-descend, i. e. fly downwards. — *Iri, írū*, go in, with the local, where? one goes in.

Instead of the isolated gerund *Nátte rá* (by the being, or becoming) often occurs the expression *Nátte sakúsité*, — becoming, so, etc.

§ 73. The verbal root in the Local for the forming of adverbial phrases definitive of time (Conjunctive or Subjunctive form).

The predicate verb of subordinate adverbial sentences, which describe a time really present, or supposed as present, in the past, and which in our languages are connected with the principal proposition by conjunctions such as when, since, as, in the Japanese is placed in the Local in *ni*, followed by the isolating

particle *va*. Thus is obtained *ni + va* as termination, which fuses into *va*, *ba* (= *nva*, *nba*). The subordinate precedes the principal proposition.

This termination in the nondeflecting verbs in *e* and *i* is joined to the root form, thus *Akébá*, on opening, as or when he opens; *Nedzi*, *iru*, to twist, *Nedzibá*, as one twists; *Motsü*, to use, *Motsübá*, as one uses; *Sü*, to die, *Sübá*, as one dies.

In the deflecting verbs the verbal element *i* first undergoes a strengthening of sound, and changes into *e*, by which *eba* is obtained in the same manner: *Yuki*, to go, *Yukébá*, on going, as or when one goes, or when one went.

Hóssi, 欲^{ホッス}, to long for. *Hosseba*.

Tatsi (= *Tati*), to arise, *Tateba*.

Matsi (= *Mati*), watch, *Mateba*.

Tatóri, serve for example, *Tatóreba*, for instance.

Ivi, to say, *Ivébá*.

Yomi, to read, *Yomebá*.

Ari, to be, *Arébá*.

Nari, to be, *Narébá*.

Nákeri, not to have been, *Nákërebá*.

Examples of the use of this form.

Satoo wó mazebá tsya-yu adzŭwái amáku nóru, = by the mixture with sugar the tea becomes sweet of taste. *Maz)e*, *uru*, mix in. — *Mi wó osámürü yŭen wó sirébá*, *sunawátsi fitówo osámürü yŭen wó sirü*, if one knows the means to govern oneself, then one knows the means to govern others. *Sir)i*, *u*, to know. — *Tsitsi si-seru toki sŭo-siki wó su-beki tsikára nákérebá*, *waga-ni wó urite sŭo-rei wó itonámu*, at the time of his father's death not having the means to bury him, he (the son) sold himself and performed the funeral rites.

Remark. In nondeflecting verbs in *e* and *i*, instead of the form *eba*, here explained the substantive form of the verb with the isolated local termination *niva*, vulgo *niwa* is also used. — *Motome*, to strive for, to seek; *Motomuru*, the seeking; *Motomuruniva*, in the seeking, as one seeks. See § 71.

§ 74. The concessive form.

The concessive adverbial phrase, which we connect with the principal proposition by means of conjunctive adverbs such as *though*, *although*, *however*, *but*, is characterized in Japanese by the strong accented form-word *mó* or *tómó* (= Lat. *quoque*) and precedes the principal proposition.

Opposed to *Ama-gumó árité vá* (pron. *attera*), *amega furu*, = while rain-clouds are present, rain falls, and *Ama-gumo arébá*, *amega furu*, = as rain-clouds are

present, it rains, is: *Ama-qumo arité-mó* (*átémó*), *jurázu*, = also in the presence of rain-clouds it does not rain, that is: although there are rain-clouds, it does not rain.

Consequently the following forms are opposite to each other.

The verb as substantive.

<i>Akuru vá</i> , the act of opening.	<i>Akuru mó</i> , or <i>Akuru tomo</i> , the act of opening being granted.
<i>Tatsuru vá</i> , the act of erecting.	<i>Tatsuru mó</i> , or <i>Tatsuru tomo</i> , though erecting.
<i>Miru vá</i> , the seeing.	<i>Miru mó</i> , or <i>Miru tomo</i> , also (or even) the seeing.
<i>Yuku vá</i> , the going.	<i>Yuku mó</i> , or <i>Yuku tomo</i> , also (or even) the going.
<i>Akuruni vá</i> , on opening.	<i>Akuruni mó</i> , even on opening.
<i>Tatsuruni vá</i> , on erecting.	<i>Tatsuruni mó</i> , even on erecting.
<i>Miruni vá</i> , on seeing.	<i>Miruni mó</i> , even on seeing.
<i>Yukuni vá</i> , on going.	<i>Yukuni mó</i> , even in going.

Gerund.

<i>Akéte vá</i> , on opening, as one opens.	<i>Akéte mó</i> , though opening, or even if one opens.
<i>Tatte vá</i> , by erecting, as one erects.	<i>Tatte mó</i> , though erecting.
<i>Mite vá</i> , on seeing.	<i>Mite mó</i> , even if one sees.
<i>Yukite vá</i> (pron. <i>Yuite vá</i>), by going.	<i>Yukite</i> (<i>yuite</i>)- <i>mó</i> , though going.

Time-defining local.

<i>Ake bá</i> , contracted from <i>Ake-ni-va</i> , as one opens.	<i>Ake domo</i> , contracted from <i>Ake-ni-tomo</i> . <i>Akendomo</i> , though one opens.
<i>Tate bá</i> , contracted from <i>Tate-ni-va</i> , as one is erecting.	<i>Tate domo</i> , contracted from <i>Tate-ni-tomo</i> . <i>Tatendomo</i> , though one is erecting.
<i>Yuke bá</i> , contracted from <i>Yuke-ni-va</i> , as one is going.	<i>Yuke domo</i> , contract. from <i>Yuke-ni-tomo</i> . <i>Yukendomo</i> , though one goes.
<i>Tatsure bá</i> , contract. from <i>Tatsure-ni-va</i> , as one is erecting.	<i>Tatsure domo</i> , contracted from <i>Tatsure-ni-tomo</i> , though one is erecting.

From this analysis it is evident why it is necessary at one time to say and to write *cá* and *tomo*, and at another *bá* and *domo*. Just as the impure *b* in *ba* is a fusion of *n* + *v*, so the impure *d* in *domo* is a fusion of *n* + *t*. The Japanese themselves seem not to appreciate this distinction and forget to characterize *ハ* (*va*) and *ト* (*to*) by adding the *Nigóri*-mark ¹⁾ as *バ*, *ba*, and *ド*, *do*.

Instead of *domo*, *îedômó* (イヘドモ。イエドモ) is also used. This is the concessive form of conjugation of *Iei* or *Ii* (イヒ イハ), to say, to be called, and therefore means: though one says, though it be called. This verb is preceded by the definition, how or what one calls something, as apposition with the suffix *to* ²⁾; e. g. *Kuni ari, sono na wo Nippón to ieu*, there is a kingdom. its name is called Nippon. — *Sorewa nani to iu ka*, how is that called? — If the apposition is a verb, then this stands in the substantive- or in the root-form: *Akuru to iu*, *Yuku to iu*, it is said that one opens, it is said that people go. — *Akuru to îedômó*, *Yuku to îedômó* thus means: though it is said that one opens, or that one is going, expressions which answer to: although one opens, or might open, although one is going. — *Ari to îedômó*, even granting the existence, although there is.

§ 75. The form of the Future (未² 来³, *Mi-rai*).

There are different expressions, that signify that an action or state which is still in perspective, is objective to the willing, being able, having permission or being obliged. Here the derivative form, which expresses the effort, the inclination or tendency to realize what the verb points out, comes first under notice. As it at the same time includes the uncertainty, if anything is happening, has happened or will happen, it has been called *Futurum dubium*. For convenience' sake we retain this name, even were that of *modus dubitativus* better fitted.

With regard to the form we distinguish the simple and the periphrastic future.

I. The simple future of *Yamato*-language has for characteristic the terminations *me* and *mu*, which in nondeflecting verbs in *e* or *i* are immediately added to the root, in the deflecting in *i*, however, only after this *i* by a strengthening of sound has been changed into *a* (or sometimes for vocal harmony into *o*). The termination *mu*, according to the oldest writing 未² or 牟³ and pronounced *m*, has been in later times superseded by *u*, *n*, and in the spoken language by *u*, *n*. In measure this *u* (*n*) counts as a syllable.

¹⁾ See p. 9.

²⁾ See p. 70. V.

³⁾ As in the chronicle *Nippon-ki* and in the oldest poems.

Ake, to open, future *Akemü* (アケム), *Aken* (アケン), in the spoken language *Akéu* (アケウ), passing to *ákeo*.

Mi, to see, future *Mimü* (ミム), *Min* (ミン), in the spoken language *Muu*.

Yuki, to go, future *Yukamü* (ユカム), *Yukan*, in the spoken language *Yukan* (ユカウ), passing to *Yukgo*, vulg. *Yukoo* also.

Remark. The Japanese writing of the forms of the spoken language varies: to express the pronunciation of アケウ, ユカウ, some write アケフ, ユカフ, and others アケフ, ユカフ, and even アケコウ, ユコジ; and instead of アロウ (*aroo*, shall be, from *Ari*, to be), アラン, アロウ, アロン, and even ア⁷₁ is written.

S)i, u, to do; future *Samu*, *San*, in the spoken language *Soo*, at Yédo *šoo*, expressed by シ⁷_ウ.

Mas)i, u, to be present; future *Masamü*, *Masan*, in the spoken language *Masgo*, *Musoo*, at Yédo *Mašoo* (Eng. Mashoö).

Matsi, マチ, wait; future *Matamü*, *Matan*, in the spoken language *Matgu*, *Matgo*, *Matoo*.

Ari, pron. *Ai*, to fit; future *Aramü*, *Aran*, in the spoken language *Aegu*, *Aroo*, *Awoo*.

Negávi, pron. *Negái*, to wish; future *Negaramü*, *Negaran*, in the spoken language *Negargu*, *Negargo*, or *Negarwoo*.

Sämi, to nestle, sit up; future *Sämámü*, *Samán*, in the spoken language スマウ, *Sumgo*, for which the written form スマフ also appears.

Ni, to be (see § 100. I); future *Namü*, *Nan*.

Ari, to be (see § 96); future *Aramü*, *Aran*, in the spoken language *Argu*, *Argo*, *Aroo*.

The termination *mu*, as characteristic of the Future, is according to my idea the regular indicative closing form and the substantive form of a verb *mi*, that expresses a striving to be or to do something. *Aramü*, = *Aran*, the derivative of *Ari*, consequently indicates a striving after existence and what is called the dubious future, is according to its form, a present. The nondeflecting verb *Motom)e, u, uru* (求^{モト}_メ), generally considered as equivalent to „to acquire,” but which, as the regularly formed derivation from *Mots)i, u* (持^モ_テ), = to hold, really has the meaning of strive to hold, shows the nature of *Me, mu* in its full power. In the same way: *Akari*, red light, glow; lighten, glow; *Akaram)i, u*, strive to glow. in particular, the gradually becoming red and ripe of fruit.

In my opinion, there is also a connection between the form *me*, *mu* treated here, and the verbal derivative forms *mi*, *mu*, which from a number of adjective root-words cited on p. 107 forms a deflecting intransitive verb, that expresses the becoming such, as the root word indicates and is equivalent to a Latin inchoative verb in *-sco*, for instance:

<i>Siro</i> , white;	<i>Sirómi</i> , albescere, to grow white.
<i>Kuro</i> , black;	<i>Kurómi</i> , nigrescere, to grow black.
<i>Kura</i> , dark;	<i>Kurómi</i> , to grow dark.
<i>Taka</i> , high;	<i>Takómi</i> , to grow high.
<i>Fira</i> , flat;	<i>Firómi</i> , to grow flat.
<i>Firo</i> , roomy, broad;	<i>Firómi</i> , to grow broad.
<i>Kata</i> , hard;	<i>Katómi</i> , to grow hard.
<i>Nuku</i> , warm;	<i>Nukómi</i> , to grow warm.
<i>Maro</i> , round;	<i>Marómi</i> , to grow round.
<i>Ao</i> , green;	<i>Aómi</i> , to grow green.
<i>Kubo</i> , hollow;	<i>Kubómi</i> , to grow hollow.
<i>Naga</i> , long;	<i>Nagómi</i> , to grow long.
<i>Yásu</i> , easy, quiet;	<i>Yásumi</i> , to grow easy or quiet.
<i>Sige</i> , tight;	<i>Sigémi</i> , to grow tight.
<i>Arata</i> , new;	<i>Aratámi</i> , to grow new.
<i>Ara</i> , wild;	<i>Arámi</i> , to grow wild.

If we put in the place of *mi* nondeflecting *me*, *mu*, *muru*, then the intransitive verbs cited here become transitive or properly factive: *Siróm)e*, *u*, *uru*, to make grow white, = to whiten; *Kuróm)e*, *u*, *uru*, to make grow black, to blacken; *Nukúm)e*, *u*, *uru*, to warm, to incubate; *Yásüm)e*, *u*, *uru*, to make rest, whence *Yasime-zi* (休^レ字^ジ), = rest-word, an expletive particle, like *mo*, which causes a rest, but does not rest, itself. The difference between *mi* and *me* is frequently overlooked by the Japanese themselves.

We return to the Future. According to Japanese philologists the termination *en* or *an* of the Future signifying uncertainty, appears particularly in connection with a previous interrogative, i. e. in interrogative sentences, whereas the termination *me* is used, when the sentence has a definite subject, which is frequently strengthened by a successive *Koso* (= this here); a difference I have not found actually confirmed.

Examples of the use of the forms cited.

詩^シノ 見^ミエズ^{エズ}。 古^コ言^{ゴン}ナシ^{ナシ}ン

Yezora furiki kotoba ni miyetarazu. Yemisi no ten-go naran, the name of Yezo does not appear in the old language. It may be a corruption of Yemisi.

國^{コク}也^ヤ 多^タ無^ム望^{ボウ} 於^オ民^{ミン}鄰^{リン}之^ノ

Tani no rin-kôki yori ohokaran koto wo nozômu koto nasi ¹⁾, there is no prospect, that the population (here) will become more numerous than that of neighboring states.

Ohokûri, *u*, contin. form of *Ohoki* or *Ooki*, much. *Nozômi*, *u*, to hope on.... *Nasi*, there is not.

差^サ也^ヤ 久^{キウ}而^ニ恐^{オソ}其^{ソノ}

Sono jisûsiu sité tagaran kotowô osôru ²⁾, he feared that it (the doctrine) might degenerate in time.

Iraku: Kûu-rai tsuini forobimû sirusi ka ³⁾, behold, he said, a sign that Corea will at last perish.

Forobi, nondecting verb, to perish. See § 99. 24.

Ima sarûto omôru, Δ ⁴⁾ *Ima sarûto omô-i-mâsû*, now I think of going. 今欲去。

Niva-tori ra suman to su, Δ *Niva-toriga sumau to surû* (雞欲栖), the court-bird (the cock) is about to go to his roost. *Sumav*, *i*, *u*, to roost.

Nisiye wataran (Δ *watararu*) to *su* (將西度), I shall go westwards.

Idzûréno tokôro ni kû te wo kudasari (何處下手), where shall I lay down my hands? = Δ *Doko wo tekakûrini siygu-(šo-)zo?* = which part shall I take for handle? i. e. where shall I seize it? *S*, *i*, *u*, to do; future $\frac{\text{シヤ}}{\text{ゾ}}$, *Šô*.

Δ *ドレカラ ハジメウゾ*, *Dorekara hazimeo zo?* where shall I begin? — Δ *Do tsutsiye nigeyou zo?* whither shall I flee?

Nani ka aran (何有), what may there be? = Δ *Nanno si-nikui kotoga arau zo?* what may there be, that you do not gladly do? = Δ *Nani no narânu to îru kotoga arou zo?* = what should there be, that you blame?

Ani korewo nasanya? what, should I do this?

Δ *Nanivô O menî kake-maşoo ka?* what shall (or may) I show you? — *Sake wo age-maşoo ka?* shall, or may I offer you something to drink?

¹⁾ *Meng-tsze*, I. Book I. 3.

²⁾ *Tschung-yung*.

³⁾ *Nippon-ki*.

⁴⁾ The sign Δ indicates that the words and expressions, to which it is attached, belong to the spoken language.

△ *Kita no hoo ni kuro-gumo ga ats'matte orimas' kóra, Yedo no hoo wá imá ame ga f'tte ori-mášoo* ¹⁾, as in the north black clouds are heaped up, it will be raining at Yédo now. — If the definition of time *imá* (now) is superseded by *sákū ya* (last night), then the after sentence takes the signification of: it will have rained at Yédo last night. — △ *Sákū-ban ittaroo*, he will have gone yesterday evening.

The certain Future of the written language.

The adverb *Masáni*, = indeed, certainly (正。將), in connection with a future followed by *to su*, gives the expression the meaning that something will certainly happen or is at hand. (§ 103). — *Masáni sarán tó sū*, will certainly go.

子^シ天^{テン}道^{ミチ}天[○]
 爲^{セント}將^{マサニ}也^レ下^カ
 中^{ナカ}木^キ以^{モツテ}久^レ之^ノ
 上^{ウヘ}鐸^{タツ}夫^フ矣^{ナキ}無^{ナシ}
Ten-kano mitsi naki koto jisási. Ten masáni Fuu-si wo motte bókū-táku to sen tó sū ²⁾, it is long that the empire has been deprived of the way of truth and righteousness; but Heaven will certainly use the master (CONFUCIUS) for a signal bell (for a herald).

有^{アリ}興[○]國^{コク}
 禎^{テイ}家^カ
 一^{イチ}祥^{シヨウ}必^{スレバ}將^{マサニ}
Kokū-ka masani okoránto surebá, kanarázu tei-siyon-ari ³⁾, if a nation or a family is indeed on the way to raise itself, then there are certainly signs that give notice of it.

II. The periphrastic Future.

A. The periphrastic Future of the written language is formed

1. by grafting アラシ, *aran* or アラメ, *aramé* (= shall be) on the substantive form of a verb, by which *aran* by aphaeresis becomes *ran*. E. g.:

Mi, Miru, to see; *Miru-ran*, = the seeing will be, *videns erit*.

Kiki, u, to hear; *Kiku-ran*, = the hearing will be.

Ieji, u, or *Ii. Iu*, to say; *Iu-ran*, = the saying will be.

As the Japanese find these words expressed in the old rebus writing by 見^ミ覽^{ラン}. 聞^キ覽^{ラン} or 聞^キ焉^{ラン}. 云^{クニ}覽^{ラン}, they consider *ran* as a particle standing alone. RODRIGUEZ also, on p. 66 line 27, cites *ran* and, on line 8, *uran* as particles of the future.

¹⁾ R. BROWN, *Colloq. Jap.* XII.

²⁾ *Lan yü* III. 24. See J. LEGGE, *Chinese classics*, Vol. I. pag. 28.

³⁾ *Tschung-yung*, XXIV.

2. By suffixing *naramū*, = *naran*, or *narame* (= will be) to the substantive form of a verb. — *Miru-naran*, *Kiku-naran*, *Iu-naran*, = will see, hear, say. — *A..ru B..nari to ireru narame*, people will (*narame*) have said (*ireru*) that A is equal to B.

3. In negative verbs by suffixing *aranan* — a euphonic modification of *ari + nan*, = shall or may be, — to the substantive form. — *Kasimi tatazu mo aranan* ¹⁾, = also the not rising of fog will happen. See § 84.

4. By grafting *su*, *suru*, fut. *suran* (= to do) on the form of the Future, by which the *s* passes into the impure *ns = z*. — *Mi-tari*, have seen; *Mi-taran*, I shall have seen. — *Mitaran-zu*, = visurus est; *Mitaran-zuran*, = visurus erit.

5. By grafting the auxiliary verb *masi*, *u* (= to dwell, reside, see § 101) on the form of the Future of deflecting verbs, *..amu*, *..an*, by which *..an' + masi* or *..an + masi* passes into *..amasi*, e. g.:

Ni, to be, becomes *Namasi* (也^ナ猿^シ), contracted from *Nan + masi*.

Ari, to exist, becomes *Aramasi*.

Nari, to be, becomes *Naramasi* (ナラマシ。也^ナ馬^ラ矣^マ止^シ).

Kuvá-sikári, to be fair, neat, excellent (page. 120), becomes *Kuvá-sikáramasi*.

Siri, noscere, becomes *Siramási*, sciturum esse.

Mavusi (pron. *Mgosi*), to mention, becomes *Mavusamasi*.

Iv(i), *u*, to say, becomes *Ivamasi* (云^イふ^{マシ}).

Tamar(i), *u*, to grant, to bestow or confer on, becomes *Tamavamasi*.

Sak(i), *u*, to unclothe itself, to open, becomes *Sakamasi*.

Hito mo naki ¹⁾ *Yadono sakurava* ²⁾ *saru tosi no* ¹⁾ *Haru so sakamasi*, the plum-tree of the inn, though there was nobody, would nevertheless open in the spring of last year. The definition of time: *sáru tosi*, = last year, also transfers *masi* to the preterit.

If we compare the periphrastic Future *Iva-masi* with the periphrastic Present *Ivi-masi* (see § 101. 2. a), it will appear, that the difference of the two forms is not in *masi*, but that it is in the verb connected with it, in the one case being the Future, and in the other the root-form. Thus when the native, on old authority, seeks for the force of the Future *Ivamasi* in the termination *si*, and characterises it as the *Mi-rai no si* (未^ミ來^{ライ}ノ止^シ), i. e. the *si* of the Future, he errs. His *Mi-rai no si* does not exist ²⁾.

¹⁾ *Hiyaku-nin*, N^o. 73.

²⁾ This has reference also to the *Mi-rai no si*, adopted in RODRIGUEZ *Éléments* p. 66 line 8 and line 16—22.

In the rebus-writing this *Masi* is expressed by 間^マシ and the derivative form *Masiki* *i*, *u*, by 間^マ敷^シ; forms to which the Japanese philologist himself attributes the force of 欲^ホシ, *hossi*, = will, and 可^カシ, *besi*, = may, and which are to be distinguished from *mazi* (間^マジ, see § 95. 2. 2)).

B. The periphrastic Future of the spoken language.

It is formed 1. by grafting (zi) *zu* (ズ), *zuru*, *zureba*, on the form of the Future, proper to the spoken language, *zi*, *zu* etc. being the euphonic modification of *si*, *su*, *suru*, *sureba*, = to do. — アケウス, *Akeo-zu*, aperiturus est. *Min-zu*, visurus est. *Yukoo-zu*, iturus est.

2. By *mašoo* or *aroo*, the Future of *masi* and *ari*, = to be, the first suffixed to the root, the second to the gerund of a verb. — *Kaki-mašoo*, I shall write. *Kakite* (or *Kaite*) *aroo*, I shall write.

Remark. 1. Let us now just review the nine „particles for the Future” quoted by RODRIGUEZ *Élém.* pag. 66 lines 7 and 8.

Be)ki, *si*, = may, is a verb. See § 101.

Nan, the Future of *Ni*, 1. to go away, 2. to be in... See § 83.

Nuran, the Future of *Nuri*. See § 83.

Tsuran, a variation of *Nuran*. See § 84.

Taran, the Future of *Tari*, to be continually. See § 78.

Taran)zu, *zuru*, Future *zuran*, from *Tari*. See § 78.

Ten, = *Tariken*. See § 82.

Si, the *Mirai no si*, based on a misunderstanding. See § 75. II. 5.

Baya is a fusion of *m* or *n*, the characteristic letter of the Future, and *haya*, an exclamation, which, as an expression of complaint (*Nageki no kotoba*), answering to our „Alas,” suffixed to a Future, indicates that what is at hand is execrated (*Baya negavi-sutsuru kokoro no teniva nari*). — *Kanasiki mono to nara-baya*! Alas he will become a pitiful man!

Consequently *Motome-baya*, *Se-baya*, *Mi-baya* signify, he will, alas! strive for., he will, alas! do, or see. The same may be said of *Yoma-baya*, from *Yomi*, to read; *Narawa-baya*, from *Naravi*, to learn; *Nara-baya* (not *Naruwa-baya*), from *Nari*, to be or to become.

Remark 2. The Future is used as a softened Imperative. Thus the poet says: *Yakazu tomo* || *kusa wa moyé-nan* || *Kasuka-no wa* || *Tada faruno ji ni* || *makaseta-ranan*, even if it be not burned off, the grass will grow luxuriantly. therefore

only leave the field of Kasuka to the vernal sun. *Makasetai*, he has left it to. *Makasetai*, he shall or may have left it to, is used, according to the *Wagun Siori*, for the Imperative *Makasetai yo*. Just so in the colloquial: *O ide nasaré* for *Oide nasarei*, may your arrival happen, please come.

Remark 3. For so far as they point to something future, the verbs which express the permission or liberty, the power or the obligation to do anything, come under notice here. They are *Be)si*, *ki*, *ku*, I may; *Ata)ei*, *vu*, I am able, can, and 當多然 *Too-sen tari*, it ought to be, it must be, it shall be.

Further illustration of them is given in § 104.

THE SUPPOSITIVE FORM.

§ 76. The terminations *eba* or *iba* of nondeflecting, and *aba* of deflecting verbs are the characteristics of the suppositive adverbial proposition, which, as a rule, precedes the principal proposition. They are, in my opinion, a fusion of the form of the future *en* or *in* and *an* with the local termination *ni* and the isolating *va*. From *Aken-ni-va* comes *Akeba*, アケバ¹⁾, pronounced as *Akenba*, on being about to open or as one will open; from *Min-ni-va*, *Miba*, ミバ, (*Minba*), on being about to see; from *Yukan-ni-va*, *Yukaba*, ユカバ, on being about to go; from *Naran-ni-va*, *Naraba*, ナラバ, in the spoken language even fusing into *Nara*, ナラ, on being about to be, might it be.

In the deflecting verbs, clearly noticeable is the difference between the subjunctive *Yukeba* and suppositive *Yukaba*; not so in the nondeflecting verbs, since *Ake-ni-va* and *Aken-ni-va* both fuse into *Akeba*. For the definite indication of the suppositive character the help of the adverbial *Mosikuva*, vulgo *Mosi*, = albeit, in case of, is called in, and it is placed at the beginning of the suppositive proposition. — *Mosi to wo akeba*, might one open the door.

In the ordinary style of speaking the form *Nara* is used not only for *Naraba*, but for *Nareba* also, thus with the signification of „if it is,” and „as it is,” as appears from the examples following:

△ *Sore nara* (or *Sore de wa*) *kai mašoo*, as it is so (= then) I will buy it²⁾. —

¹⁾ The points, which characterise the impure *ba* (バ) are commonly left out by careless writers.

²⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 4.

Firu-maye ni wa mairi-ye masenü, before noon I cannot come. — *Sore nara, firu-goni*, then (the answer is), in the afternoon ¹⁾. — *Nokorazu O-kai nasarü nara, öndzi nedan dé age-mášoo*, if you buy all, I will sell them for the same price ²⁾. — *Yásui* (= *Yasuki*) *nara, tori-mášoo*, as (if) it is cheap, I will take it ³⁾.

The future in the Local and isolated by *va* (*Aken-ni-va*, on being about to open, if one shall open) mutates with the substantive form in the Local isolated by *va* (*Akuru-ni-va*, on opening), as appears from the passage following, taken from the introduction to a Japanese-Chinese Dictionary:

波ハ ノ 部フ ノ 生イ 植シヨク 門モン ノ 下シ 見ミ ルベシ。	花ハ ト 云 字ジ 求モト ムルニハ	比ヒ ノ 部フ ノ 氣キ 形ギョウ 門モン ノ 下シ 見ミ ルベシ。	人ト ト 云イ 字ジ 求モト メシニハ
--	-----------------------------------	--	------------------------------------

Fító to íu zi wo motomen ni va, Fí no bu no ki-giyoo-mon no sita wo miru besi.

Fána to íu zi wo motomuru ni va, Fa no bu no sei-siyóku mon no sita wo miru besi.

If one will seek for the word *Fító* (man), then one ought to look for it in the division *Fí*, under the class: breathing beings.

If one seeks for the word *Fána* (flower), one ought to look for in the division *Fa*, under the class: plants.

That the unfused forms *Aken-ni-va* and *Yukan-ni-va* appear in the written and spoken language as Terminatives as well, equivalent to the Latin *ad apertendum*, *ad eundum*, cannot surprise us, since the local termination *ni* is also used as characteristic of the Terminative. (See § 7. IV. b. g.)

Remark. When in the *Proeve eener Japansche Spraakkunst* of 1857, p. 146, I first explained the origin of the subjunctive and the suppositive form, I raised the question whether or not the Japanese themselves were clearly conscious of it, seeing that they so frequently confound the two forms. Mr. R. BROWN, who has adopted my theory, at p. VII gives the following as answer to it: „Japanese Teachers know nothing of the rational of these formations, and constantly affirm that the conjunctive is the same in sense as the conditional, and that *Yakaba* and *Yukeba* have the same signification; but Mr. HOFFMANN has ably and clearly demonstrated the distinction as above given. Indeed it is remarkable how many obscure points in the structure of Japanese words have been elucidated by

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 17.

²⁾ *Ibid.* p. 36.

³⁾ *Ibid.* p. 37.

one who has derived all his knowledge of Japanese from the study of books." — I admit the last, provided „Japanese books" be understood. Before that time I had not had the opportunity of intercourse with Japanese, which I enjoyed afterwards, in 1862.

THE CONTINUATIVE VERBAL FORM.

§ 77. The deflecting derivative forms *ari*, *iri*, *ori*, *uri*, as I have shown formerly ¹⁾, are continuative forms of the verbal element *i* (§ 68), and express the continuance of movement or being in a condition or in an action. The choice of them was originally, and still is under the influence of a vocal harmony, which requires that the vowels of the subordinate syllables be accommodated to that of the principal syllable.

Ari, *Iri* and *Ori* occur as substantive verbs with the signification of 1) to be or exist (有), and 2) dwell, stay (在。居。留), and have *i*, = to go, and *i* or *ji*, *wi*, = seat, as root. These three verbs will subsequently be treated, further in §§ 96, 97, 98.

Examples of the derivation of continuative verbs. Here is to be remarked, that the forms between [] have not hitherto occurred to me, yet they must be supposed as basis of the derivative forms.

<i>Aki</i> , light.		<i>Akár)i</i> , <i>u</i> , shine, beam.
<i>Káki</i> , hook; to hook, <i>v. i.</i>	<i>Kak)e</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>uru</i> , fasten, hang, <i>v. tr.</i>	<i>Kakár)i</i> , <i>u</i> , be hanging.
<i>Sak)i</i> , <i>u</i> , unclose itself, to open, <i>v. i.</i>		<i>Sakar)i</i> , <i>u</i> , be in blossom or bloom.
[<i>Ag)i</i> , <i>u</i> , rise.]	<i>Ag)e</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>uru</i> , raise.	<i>Agar)i</i> , <i>u</i> , be rising, ascending.
[<i>Sag)i</i> , <i>u</i> , droop. hang down.]	<i>Sag)e</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>uru</i> , cause to droop.	<i>Sagar)i</i> , <i>u</i> , to be drooping.
<i>Mas)i</i> , <i>u</i> , augment, <i>v. i.</i>		<i>Masar)i</i> , <i>u</i> , to be supe- rior.
... <i>zi</i> (= <i>n + si</i>), not to be.		... <i>zar)i</i> , <i>n</i> , continually not to be.
<i>Miz)i</i> , <i>u</i> , not to see.		<i>Mizar)i</i> , <i>u</i> , not to be seeing.

¹⁾ *Proeve eener Jap. Spraakkunst*, 1857. § 37, 41.

<i>Araz</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>n</i> , not to exist.		<i>Arazar</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , not to be existing.
[<i>Sadam</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , to be determined.]	<i>Sadam</i>) <i>e</i> , <i>n</i> , <i>uru</i> , to determine.	<i>Sadamar</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , being determined.
[<i>Fazim</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>n</i> , to begin, <i>v. i.</i>]	<i>Fazim</i>) <i>e</i> , <i>n</i> , <i>uru</i> , begin, <i>v. tr.</i>	<i>Fazimar</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>n</i> , to be beginning.
<i>Tsidzim</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , wrinkle; crimp.	<i>Tsidzim</i>) <i>e</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>uru</i> , to crimp, <i>v. tr.</i>	<i>Tsidzimar</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , to be crimped.
<i>Firom</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>n</i> , to widen, <i>v. i.</i>	<i>Firom</i>) <i>e</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>urn</i> , to widen, <i>tr.</i>	<i>Firomar</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>n</i> , to be widened.
<i>Tsum</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>n</i> , to accumulate, <i>v. intr.</i>	<i>Tsum</i>) <i>e</i> , <i>n</i> , <i>uru</i> , amass, <i>v. tr.</i>	<i>Tsumór</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>n</i> , to be amassed.
<i>Ok</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , rise.		<i>ókór</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , to be rising, the rise.
<i>Ok</i>) <i>i</i> (= <i>Iki</i>), <i>u</i> , breath; flame.		<i>ókór</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , to be flaming.
<i>Nok</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , recede.	<i>Nok</i>) <i>e</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>urn</i> , to put back, to bequeath.	<i>Nokór</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , to be remaining.
<i>Nob</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , stretch, to become longer or taller.	<i>Nob</i>) <i>e</i> , <i>n</i> , <i>uru</i> , stretch, to make longer or taller.	<i>Nobór</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>n</i> , to be growing higher, to ascend, as smoke. *
<i>Máts</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , wait, <i>trans.</i>		<i>Mátsür</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , to be waiting. **
<i>Ne</i> , sleep. <i>Nem</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , to be sleepy.		<i>Nemur</i>) <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> , to be sleeping.

* Thence: *Yama ni* (not *Yama wo*) *nobóri*, to ascend a mountain.

** *Kami wo mátsüru*, attend upon a god, make him a feast. *Mátsüri* (not *matsüri*), the attendance, the feast.

It is obvious that to this category the derivative adjectives in *karu* and *garu* also belong. See p. 113 § 10.

§ 78. ..to ari, ..to ori, ..to iri.

I. The continuative verbs **Ari**, **Ori**, **Iri** (= exist, dwell), in connection with a preceding gerund, form a continuative verb. — *Akete-ari*, *Mite-ari*, *Yukite-ari*, (he) is in the act of opening, he is seeing, is going, = *aperiens est*, *videns est*, *iens est*. — *Mátsuté-iru* (pron. *Mátte-iru*, or *Matsute-örü*, he is in the waiting, *Sité-oru*, = he dwells in the doing, he is doing.

In the choice of *Ari*, *Ori* or *Iri*, in the case before us, the vocal harmony, or rather the easy cadence, is noticeable, which had influence on one dialect more than another. In writings which pass for pure Japanese *te-ari* is found exclusively. If the assertion of a Japanese scholar ¹⁾ is just, which I may not doubt, the dialect of Yédo uses by preference, *íru*, seldom *áru*, whereas that of Miyako generally uses *óru* ²⁾. *Tabéte-órü*, to eat: *Nomute-* (*Nomde-*, *Nonde-*) *órü*, to drink: *Siríte-órü*, to know. Besides, the dialect of Nagasaki has *órü*. When the same writer at one time uses *te-árü*, then again *te-órü*, he seems to pay attention either to the difference of signification which exists between *ari* and *ori*, or to the ease of the cadence. — *Koto de aru*, the fact is. — *Sobá ni áru jító*, some one who is near to. On the other hand: *Tono soba-ni órü jító*, some one who stands near to the door. — *Inisihéno koto wo kónónde órü jító*, some one who is fond of antiquities.

Ari, *Ori* and *Iri* are inflected as deflecting verbs. See § 96, 97, 98.

11. *..tari*, *..taru*, the contracted form of *te-(ar)i*. *a*. in connection with a precedent noun, whether Japanese or Chinese, answers to our verb to be, or exist, when, connected with a word expressing a quality, it forms the predicate, e. g. he is glad. Forms of inflection, the same as of *Ari* (§ 96); *tari* is the closing form, *táru*, the substantive, as well as the attributive: *taran*, *ta-ran)zu*, *zurü*, *zuran*, frequently occur as forms of the future.

Examples:

臣^シ 君^{キミ} *Kimi kimi tareba, sin sin*
 爲^{タリ} 爲^{タレバ} *tari, if the master is a*
 臣^シ 君^{キミ} *master, then is the ser-*
 vant a servant.

王^{ワウ} 者^{シヤ} *Wau-siya tarü jító, a man*
 人^{ジン} 者^{シヤ} *who is a ruler.*

モ 拂^フ 代^{ダイ} *Dai-kin wo fararu sets'mo dou-you taru besi* ³⁾. = also at the
 同 節^{セツ} 金^{キン} *time of paying the price, it shall be just so (it shall be done*
 様 節^{セツ} *in the same way).*

¹⁾ Mr. TSUDA SIN ITSIROO.

²⁾ A native of Yédo also told me: „*Otóko wa ori-masu to mousi masi; kodomo onna wa ari-masu to mousi-másu*,” i. e. The men say *ori-masu*, women and children, *ari-másu*.

³⁾ Franco-Japanese Treaty of the 9 Oct. 1858, Art. VIII, al. 4.

尊^{タツキ} 德^{トク}
 爲^{タリ} 爲^{タリ}
 天^{テン} 聖^{セイ}
 子^シ 人^{ジン}

Tókū sei-zin tari, tattóki koto Ten-si tari, as to virtue he is a saint, as to worthiness he is a son of heaven (emperor).

有^{アリ} 茶^{チャ} 瞻^{ミレバ}
 斐^ヒ 竹^{チク} 彼^カ
 君^{クニ} 猗^イ 淇^{キノ}
 子^シ 猗^イ 澳^ク

Kano KI no kumá wo miréba, riyókū-tsikū i-i tari. Hi-tarū kun-si ári ¹⁾, if we look at the banks of you river KI, how luxuriant is the green bamboo! There is an elegant nobleman etc.

FORMS OF THE PAST TENSE.

(過^カ 去^コ, *Kwa-ko*).

The form-words of the past tense are auxiliary verbs of time, by means of which derivative verbs are formed.

§ 79. ..*tari*, ..*taru*, in the spoken language *ta*, contracted from *te-ari*. It, in connection with a verbal root, expresses continuance in the condition or action, which, by the radical form of the precedent verb, is named as something just becoming. „*E-tari*” and „I have gotten” are both what is called the completed present tense.

The spoken language shortens *tari* and *tárū* to *ta*, which *ta* has also been admitted into the familiar written language. Opposite to *Ta yá sonová fūrübátári*, field or garden have become old, is, in the spoken language: *Ta yá sono gá fūrübítá*; opposite to *Fūrübítáru ta yá sono*, field or garden become old, is, in the spoken language: *Fūrübítá ta yá sono*.

Since it is the form of the gerund in *te* or *de* on which, after dropping the *e*, *ari* (or in the spoken language *a*) is grafted, the rules given (§ 72) for the gerund are of application to the perfectum praesens also, in other words: the *e* of the gerund is, in the spoken language, simply superseded by *a*.

Akete becomes *Aketá*.

Mite „ *Mita*.

Yuite (= *Yukite*) „ *Yuita*.

Mas'te (= *Masite*) „ *Mas'ta*, = been.

Yonde (= *Yomite*) becomes *Yonda*, read.

Naragote (*Naracute*) „ *Naragota*, learned.

Atte (= *Aríte*) „ *Atta*, been there.

Maitte (= *Mairíte*) „ *Maitta*, has come.

¹⁾ *Dai Gaku*, III. 4

Whether the perfectum praesens formed by *tari* have an active or a passive, a transitive or an intransitive signification, depends on the precedent root-word.

Füné kisi ni tsüku, the ship comes to the shore, it lands; *tsükítáru*, has come to shore. — *Kisi ni tsükítáru fúné*, a ship that has come to shore. — *Fúné wó kisi ni tsükétári*, one has brought the ship to shore. — *Kisi ni tsükétáru fúné*, a ship, that one has brought to shore. — *Sina-mono wó mótsi watári*, to import goods. — *Mótsi watári táru sina-mono*, goods which one has imported.

Instances of the use of the Perfectum praesens.

Koy)é, uru, to become thick, fat, corpulent. *M'nú ame ni koyu*, the plum becomes thick from the rain. *M'mé koyétári*, the plum has become thick. *Ameni koyurü n'mé*, plums, that become thick from the rain. *Koyétáru n'mé*, plums, that have become thick. — *Tsuyu kavá ni tsükítári*, dew has attached itself to the mulberry leaf. *Tsuyu* (or *Tsuyu no*) *tsükítáru kavá*, leaves to which dew has attached itself. — *Kai-fen wo isi-kabe wo tsukite tsiyau-ka wo tsurane tari*, along the sea-shore one has built up a wall of stones and placed the houses of the place in a row. — *Mitsi wo satóritáru fító*, some one who has understood the way (the doctrine). — *Amana nó küní yóri kítáru fító jítá ni tsüno ari, fúné ni nórité Yetzi-zen nó Fi no-úra ni tsüki-tári; yügeni kono tokóro wó Tsünó-ká to nádzüku*, men come from the country of Amana, have had horns upon the forehead and sailing in a ship reached Fino-úra in Yetsizen; that is why people call that place: Tsünóka (hornshill). — *Ame no yamitáru ása*, in the spoken language: *yanda asa*, a morning when the rain has ceased. — *Watáksá O taonomi ni maitta*, I have come to beg you. — 承^ツ知^チ シマシタ, *Šoo-tsi si-mas'ta*, I have understood it, I shall not fail.

Remark. The perfectum praesens in *tari*, formed from transitive verbs, as *Ake*, to open; *Tsugi*, *u*, to pour in; *Ir)e, uru*, to make to go in, remains transitive even though expressions, as *To va aketari*, *Tsiya va tsugitari*, *Fi va ivetari*, because they are found translated: the door has been opened, the tea has been poured, the fire has been put in ¹⁾, seem to plead for the passive signification. Opposite to the subject, isolated by *va*, door, tea, or fire, stands as predicate: one has opened, poured, put in.

¹⁾ Japanese and Dutch Dictionary, by the Prince of Nakats.

§ 80. The form-word *..éri*, *..éru*, *éreba*, deflecting, when in deflecting verbs it takes the place of their verbal element *i*, expresses the continuance in the past, or the praeteritum praesens. — *Más)i*, *u*, to be; *Maséri*, has been.

Er)i, *u* [to be distinguished from *Er)i*, *u*, that as a substantive verb means to choose] is a variation of *ar)i*, *u* (see § 96), and, just as *ari*, is indicated in old-Japanese by 有. *Eri* is the closing form, *eru* the form of the substantive or attributively used noun; *erame*, *eramũ*, = *eran*, the form of the Future. Examples: *Fána sibómũ*, the flower fades; *Fana sibomeri*, the flower has faded; *Siboméru fána*, a flower which has faded. — *Um)i*, *u*, to bear; *Umeri*, to have born. — *Kisaki no umeru ko*, the son that the Queen has born; *Kisaki no umeran ko*, the son that the Queen shall have born.

Remark. The *eru* used substantively, or attributively is, particularly with the nondeflecting verbs in *e*, superseded by *esi* (§ 81), *etáru* (§ 78) or *erisi* (thus *Akési*, *Aketaru* or *Akerisi*), because the form *Akéru* already exists as a variation of *Akuru*, thus, as participium praesentis.

If it be admitted that, behind *eri* as I suppose, the form *Keri* (§ 82) is hidden, and thus that *Maséri*, by ellipsis has arisen from *Másikéri*, with the meaning of which it is equivalent, then its signification is clearly explained by the origin of the form.

Application of this rule.

..ki becomes *ker)i*, *u*.

<i>Kiki</i> , to hear; <i>Kikéri</i> , 聞 ^キ 有 ^ク .	<i>Siki</i> , to spread; <i>Sikéri</i> , 敷 ^シ 有 ^ク .
<i>Yuki</i> , to go; <i>Yukéri</i> , 行 ^ユ 有 ^ク .	<i>Iki</i> , to live; <i>Ikéri</i> , 生 ^イ 有 ^ク .
<i>Saki</i> , to open, <i>v. int.</i> <i>Sakéri</i> , 咲 ^サ 有 ^ク .	<i>Káki</i> , to write; <i>Kakéri</i> , 書 ^カ 有 ^ク .

..si becomes *ser)i*, *u*.

<i>Nasi</i> , to make be; <i>Naséri</i> , 成 ^ナ 有 ^ス .	<i>Yadósi</i> , to lodge; <i>Yadoséri</i> , 館 ^ヤ 有 ^ス .
<i>Nokósi</i> , to make stay behind, to post- pone; <i>Nókoséri</i> , 遺 ^ノ 有 ^ス .	<i>Utsúsi</i> , to remove; <i>Utsuséri</i> , 遷 ^ウ 有 ^ス .
	<i>Terási</i> , to make shine; <i>Teraséri</i> , 照 ^テ 有 ^ス .

Remark. The *seri* noticed here is arisen from *si*, the termination of factive verbs, and *eri*; it is to be distinguished from the derivative form *ser)i*, *u* which is a fusion of the *Kwa-kono si* and *eri*.

..tsi (= ti) becomes ter)i, u.

<i>Tátsi</i> , to stand up; <i>Tatéri</i> , 立 ^タ 有 ^テ η .	<i>Kátsi</i> , to overcome; <i>Katéri</i> , 勝 ^カ 有 ^テ η .
<i>Mátsi</i> , to watch; <i>Matéri</i> , 待 ^マ 有 ^テ η .	<i>Útsi</i> , to strike, beat; <i>Útéri</i> , 打 ^ウ 有 ^テ η .
<i>Mótsi</i> , to take; <i>Motéri</i> , 持 ^モ 有 ^テ η .	<i>Fonátsi</i> , to let loose; <i>Fánatéri</i> , 放 ^フ 有 ^テ η .

..vi becomes ver)i, u.

<i>Ivi</i> , to say, to be called; <i>Ivéri</i> , 云 ^イ η .	<i>Nivori</i> , to smell, c. int.; <i>Nivóvéri</i> , 匂 ^ニ η .
<i>Omóvi</i> , to think; <i>Omóvéri</i> , 思 ^{オモ} η .	<i>Avi</i> , to meet; <i>Avéri</i> , 逢 ^ア η .
<i>Sitagávi</i> , to comply, to suit; <i>Sitagavéri</i> , 従 ^{シタガフ} η .	<i>Tovi</i> , to ask; <i>Tovéri</i> , 問 ^ト η .
	<i>Naravi</i> , to learn; <i>Naravéri</i> , 習 ^{ナラフ} η .

..mi becomes mer)i, u ¹⁾.

<i>Sāmi</i> , to reside; <i>Saméri</i> , 住 ^サ η .	<i>Sūsāmi</i> , to advance; <i>Susuméri</i> , 進 ^ス η .
<i>Sidzūmi</i> , to sink; <i>Sidzuméri</i> , 沈 ^{シヅム} η .	<i>Sibomi</i> , to fade; <i>Siboméri</i> , 萎 ^{シボム} η .
<i>Kumi</i> , to bail out; <i>Kuméri</i> , 汲 ^{クム} η .	<i>Tsubómi</i> , to bud; <i>Tsuboméri</i> , 含 ^{ツブム} η .
<i>Umi</i> , to bear; <i>Uméri</i> , 産 ^ウ 有 ^ム η .	

..ri becomes rer)i, u.

<i>Nari</i> , 成 ^ナ η , to become; <i>Naréri</i> , <i>Komóri</i> , 籠 ^{コモリ} η , to stick in, int. <i>Komoréri</i> .
<i>Tsumóri</i> , 積 ^{ツム} η , to accumulate; <i>Tsumoréri</i> , <i>Masári</i> , 益 ^{マス} η , to exceed, <i>Masaréri</i> .
<i>Tsiri</i> , 散 ^{チリ} η , to scatter, intr.; <i>Tsiréri</i> , <i>Furi</i> , 降 ^フ η , to fall down, <i>Furéri</i> .

Examples of the use of the forms ..er)i, u.

[*Tsüdžük*)i, u, to succeed]. — *Tovi-ya akindvi-ya fitó südsini tate-tsüdžükéri. Sá-redó tokóro dokóroni ūrá-mútsi mo ari*, the custom-houses and shops (of Simono-seki) succeed one another in one line. Although there are back-streets also.

[*Más*)i, u, to be; *Maséri*, has been]. — *N... finéno kami ra NN... nusi no kami ya-jiro-wani ni narite, niavi-maséri*, as regards the goddess N., the god NN. having changed into a crocodile eight fathoms long, has paired with her. — *Anaterásu kami ra jidári no mi me-wo aravi-tamávi-si tokini nári maséru kami nari*, the heaven-illuminating god is a god, that came into existence (*nári-maséru*). when (both the creators) had washed their left eyes. — *Kova tsue ni nári-maséru* (or *tsue ni narerisi*) *kami nari*, this is a god that has become a staff.

¹⁾ To be distinguished from the auxiliary verb, *Meri*, explained in § 108.

[*Sirus*]*i*, *u*, to mention; *Siruséri*, he has mentioned]. — *Futa fusirano kami no misudzi koto ni simoni siruséri*, the pedigree of both the gods — one has noticed it particularly hereafter.

[*Okás*]*i*, *u*, violate.] — *Oranda-zin vo tai-si fou wó okáserü Nippon-zin va*, Japanese, who against Dutchmen have violated the law. — *Nippon-zin ni tai-si fou wo okasi-táru Oranda-zin va*, Dutchmen, who against Japanese have violated the law ¹⁾.

[*Tamaw*]*i*, *u*, to condescend, to grant, German *geruhen*, applied to princely persons]. — *Mikoto no faki-tanaweru hou-ken*, the costly sword that the prince has or had girded on.

[*Sir*]*i*, *u*, to get to know; *Síréri*, he knows]. — *Mitsi no okonawarezaru ware korewo siréri*, that the way is not practised, this I have gotten to know (this I know).

[*Itár*]*i*, *u*, come to (the point any one will reach); *Itáréru*, the having got at, having reached]. — *Sono itareruni oyónde*, getting at it, having reached it, = reaching the non plus ultra. — *Tsiu you sore itareru kana!* oh that one had reached the middle way!

[*Nokór*]*i*, *u*, to be left]. — *Nokórü mono*, somethat that is left. — *Nokoréru mono* or *Nokori-si mono*, something that has remained over.

§ 81. The form-words *..ki* (キ) or *..si* (シ), grafted on the verbal root in *e* or *i*, in the narrative style and in poetry characterise the simple perfect absolute, and, like the Aorist Indic. of the Greek, express the action as completed at a fixed time and without continuance or repetition. *Ki* is the indicative closing-form (= he was); *si*, which passes under the name of *Kwa-kono si* and is to be distinguished from the *Gen-zai no si* (page 107), the form in which the verb appears as noun substantive or even as attributive (as participle, = been); *komo*, *kémü*, *ken*, the future (= shall or may have been).

Ake-ki, *Mi-ki*, *Yuki-ki*, *Ari-ki*, = *aperuit*, *vidit*, *irit*, *fuít*, he opened, he saw, he went, he was there.

Ake-si, *Mi-si*, *Yuki-si*, *Ari-si*, to have opened it, to have seen it, having gone etc., or, attributive, the having opened, the having seen, etc.

¹⁾ *The Treaty between the Netherlands and Japan*, 1858. Art. V, al. 1, 2.

Ake-ken, *Mi-ken*, *Yuki-ken*, *Ari-ken*, = *aperuerit*, *viderit*, *iverit*, *fuerit*, = he will have opened, have seen, he will have gone, have been.

The action defined by the *Kwa-ko no si* is one, perfect or completed, with relation to the period, that is defined by the predicate verb which closes the sentence. With relation to a present, the time indicated by *si* is thus a simple preterit; with relation to a preterit it becomes, logically, our plusquamperfectum, with relation to a future on the other hand our futurum exactum.

Remark. The elements *ki* and *si* are verbs which signify coming and going and with the precedent verbal root, on which they are grafted, form compound verbs. *Ari-ki* and *Ari-si* thus mean the arrival and the departure of existence; forms which express the idea of having been. (Compare the expression: *Nous venons de le dire* ¹⁾).

In the pure Japanese style the *ki* of the past tense is found explained by 來 (*lai*, = to come), or also by 矣, e. g. *Kaheri-ki*, 飯^カ_リ 來^キ, he returned, and it mutates with *nu* and *tsu* (see § 84, 85).

As substantive verb with the meaning of come, *Ki* has the forms of *Ku*, *Kuru*, *Kite* etc., whereas *Si* with the meaning of go away occurs in *Sin)i*, *u*, *uru*, die; *Siv)i*, *iru*, to be dead; whence *Sivi-ne*, dead rice (*Oryza sterilis*); *Me-sivi*, dead to the eyes, = blind; *Mimi-sivi*, dead to the ears, = deaf. Derived from *Si*, is the continuative form *Sar)i*, *u*, to go away.

Ken, old-Japanese *Kémū* (= shall have been), is indicated in writing by 監^{カン} (*Kan*), and — by Japanese scholars themselves — explained as a word that „brings the past into doubt” ²⁾.

Examples of the use of *Ki* as closing form:

而 ^テ 隱 ^{カク} 御 ^シ 身 ^ミ 矣 ^キ	並 ^ニ 獨 ^{ヒトリ} 神 ^{ガミ} 成 ^{ナリ} 坐 ^シ	此 ^コ 三 ^ミ 柱 ^{ハシラ} 神 ^{ガミ} 者 ^ハ	
---	--	---	--

Kono mi fasirano kami wa mina fitori gami nari-masite, mi mi wo kākūsi tamari ki, these three Kamis were solitary Kamis, and kept their persons (themselves) concealed.

¹⁾ Here, is to be remarked what is mentioned by *The Notitia linguae Sinicae of Premare*, by J. G. BRIDGMAN, page 54, about 來 *lai* and 去 *ku*.

²⁾ ケ^ケニハ 過^カ 去^コ シ 疑^{ウタガハシ} フノ 辞^{コトバ} ヲ Wa-gun Siwori, under *Ken*.

a) Examples of the use of the form in *si* as noun substantive:

Ko-zin no iveri-si mo samo arinu besi, also what the ancients have said (of it), must have been of this nature. — *Iveri*, continuative past form of *Ivi*, *Ii*, to say. — *Samo*, = *Sikámo*, so, in this manner.

As noun substantive the form in *si* is declinable, thus:

1. *Ari-si va*, the having been, or what has been. *Ari-si mo*, also what has been (subjective substantive proposition). — *Nokorisi kavikono siyau* (性^ニ) *asiku nari si mo kono yūe naran*, this may be the reason why the silkworms remaining have become bad of nature.

2. *Ari-si ni*, 3. *Ari-si ni va*, 4. *Ari-site*, while there has been.

5. *Ari-si yori kono kata*, since there has been.

6. *Ari-si-yūé*, 7. *Ari-si ni yorite* or *yotte*, while, or as there has been.

8. *Ari-sikaba*, whereas or since there has been. — *Motome-sikaba*, *Yomi-sikaba*, *Narai-sikaba* ¹⁾, as one has sought for, read, learned.

9. *Ari-si nari*, = it has been there.

10. *Ari-si koto ari*, *Ari-si to ari*, = it is a fact (*koto*) that there has been. — *Ari-si to kaya*, it may be that there has been.

b) Examples of the use of the form in *si* as noun adjective:

Nokori-si kaviko, the remaining silkworms. — *Sari-si Fotóke*, the departed Buddha. *Sarji*, *u*, to go away. — *Kono tane wo motome-si fitó mare nari*, people who have procured this seed, are rare. — *Kan-ki wo sinogi si* (or *sinogi táru*) *rei no koto*, the manner in which people have kept off the frost. — *N... ga nori-si fūné*, the ship in which N... had sailed. — *Ame furazu* ¹⁾ *ji-no kasanareba*, ¹⁾ *take-si ta mo*, ¹⁾ *maki-si fatake mo* ¹⁾ *asa gotoni sibomi kare-yuku*, = when there is a repetition of not rainy days, then not only the sprouted field, but also the sown plough-land fades, and dries up every morning — it becomes more faded and drier every day. — *Sikáruni temo kako ni ya ariken*, he will thus have stood under Heaven's protection.

The *Kwa-kono si* shows itself also in both the words *Fígási*, pron. *Fingási*

¹⁾ By this, is what RODRIGUEZ page 66 line 7 v. o. says explained: „Le conjonctif a encore une forme particulière à la longue écrite, c'est *sikaba*, que l'on ajoute aux radicaux de tous les verbes, comme *motome sikaba*, *yomi sikaba*, *narai sikaba*.”

and *Nisi*, = East and West, *F'ingási* being a contraction of *F'ino-mäkdü-si kata*, = the side on which the sun has come to meet, and *Nisi* an abbreviation of *F'ino iní-si kata*, the side to which the sun has gone away.

§ 82. ..*keri*), *u* (= *ki* + *eri*, = has been), the deflecting continuative form of *ki* (= was), characterises the perfect present tense. Forms of inflection, the same as those of *eri*, thus:

Keri, *Kesi*, closing-form, = has been.

Kérü, form of the verb, used as substantive and adjective, = the having been, or having been; ... *Keru nari*, has been.

Kerebá, as, when, since it has been.

Keredomo or *Kerutomo*, although it has been.

Keran, commonly *Ken*, shall have been. — *Keraba*, if it has been.

Keráku, adverbial form, = as has been, e. g. *It-keraku*, as it has been said.

Keraz)i, *u*, negative, = has not been.

Ari, there is; *Ari-ki*, there was; *Ari-keri*, there has been.

Ideographically *keri*, *keru* is expressed by 來了, phonetically by 梟, the name of a bird, that cries *géri géri* and therefore is called *Keri* in Japan. 梟了則 stands for *Kereba*.

The adjectives in *ki* and *siki* (pp. 105---107 and 109), which form a continuative present in *kári*, instead of *kari* assume *keri* for the form of the praesens perfectum.

Taka)ki, *ku*, high; *Táka-kár)i*, *u*, is high; *Táka-keri*, was high.
Be)ki, *ku* (可^レ), possible; *Be-kari*, is possible; *Be-keri*, was possible.
Na)ki, *ku* (無^レ), without, ..less; *Na-kári*, there is not; *Na-keri*, there was not.

Distinguish: *Urésisá kagiri nasi*, = the joy is boundless; — *kagiri nakári*, = is continually boundless; — *kagiri nakeri* or *nakesi*, = was boundless; — *kagiri nakari-keri*, = has been continually boundless.

Since this distinction is confirmed by the Japanese spoken and written language, as will be seen by the following examples, we hesitate to agree with the opinion of those ¹⁾, who declare *kari* and *keri* to be identical. Nevertheless, we leave the spoken language of Yédo full right to use *keri*, where *kari* is meant.

¹⁾ R. BROWN, *Grammar*, XXIII. § 20.

Examples of the use of these forms.

[*Yásuki*, light, easy]. — *Nippon sei vá tsüdžuká nákü ki-teu suru koto yásu-kári kéri*, the unmolested return of the Japanese army was easy.

[*Nari* (*Nare*), to become]. — *Sono rei-kon ke site kaviko-to narikeru to kaya*, her soul transforming will have become a silkworm.

[*Siróki*, white]. — *Sei-nei Ten-wau mumare nagara ni site mi kusi sirokari kereba*, *Siragano Ten wau to nadzuke tatematsuru*, as Emperor Seinei's hair was white at his birth, they have called him Emperor White-hair.

[*Tsiisaki*, small]. — *Mayu tsisakereba ito fosokusu*, if the silk-cocoon was too small, the thread is too fine.

[*Asiki*, bad]. — *Kore yori te-ire asikereba, notsi ni iro-iro no yamari to nari*, as from that point, the treatment (of the silkworm) was bad, afterwards it gets to different diseases (different diseases arise).

[*Yorósiki*, good]. — *Ano kodžukai no tsútóme ga yorósikereba, watákusiwa nagákú tsukáe-mášoo tó ómói-mású*, = that servant's services having been good, I think I shall keep him.

The adverbial proposition closing with *kereba* may be understood either as causal or as conditional, as in R. BROWN'S *Japanese Colloquial* N°. 589, where that expression is translated: „If that servant behaves well (I think I will keep him).”

§ 83. ..*tari-ki*, ..*tari-si*, fut. ..*tari-ken*; ..*te-ki*, ..*te-si*, fut. ..*ten*. By grafting the form-word *ki*, *si*, *keri* on the continuative form *tari* (§ 79) the forms *tari-ki*, = he was being; *tari-ken*, = he shall have been; *tari-keri*, = he has been, are obtained.

The poet supersedes *tari-ki*, *tari-si*, *tari-ken* with *te-ki*, *te-si*, *ten*, also *Ómóvi-tesi* and *Tsikávi-tesi* are considered to be equivalent to *Ómóvi-tarisi* (having thought) and *Tsikávi-tárisi* (having sworn) ¹⁾.

Wasuraruru ¹¹ *miwoba omovázu*; ¹¹ *tsikavi tesi*

Fitono inotsino ¹¹ *osikumo aru kana!* ²⁾.

I do not think of myself as being forgotten; oh! the charmingness of the life of the man who has sworn (love) to me, exists still!

¹⁾ *Wa-gun Siwori*, under *Tesi*.

²⁾ *Hiyaku-min*, N°. 38.

§ 84. [.ni], nu, future nan; [nuri], nuru, nureba, future nuran.

Ni, a deflecting auxiliary verb of time, come, by aphaeresis, from *ini*, *inu*, = to go away (往。去), and expressed in the old written language, by 去 (to go or pass away), grafted on the root of a verb, by which its termination *e* fuses with *mu* into *énū*, and the termination *i*, with *mu* into *inū*, implies the passing away of a condition or of an action, i. e. the action coming to an end. Whereas *Ake* denotes the „opening” as an action first beginning, and *Akete-oru* „continuance in the opening,” *Ake-taru* „to have opened,” *Akenu* proper to the old written language, denotes „the ending of the opening.” *Sitsūni*, to sink; *Sitsūnīmu*, it sinks away, it goes away into the depth. *Fate*, disappear; *Fi iri fatēnu*, the sun sets (and) disappears. *Iri*, to go in, appears here as coördinated, in the indefinite root-form (see § 68). The rule on coördination excludes the use of the root-forms *ni* and *nuri*; since, however, they form the basis of further derivatives, they must be first brought under notice here.

SYNOPSIS OF INFLECTED FORMS OF THE AUXILIARY VERB **Ni, Nu**, = TO PASS
OR GO AWAY.

	Aorist of the Present.	Continuative Preterit.	Aorist of Preterit.	Continuative Preterit.
Root-form	[Ni.]	[Nuri.]	Ni-ki, 去來, <i>went away.</i>	Ni-keri 去來, <i>has gone away.</i>
Closing-form	Nu, 去 ^ス.	. . . . .	Niki.	Ni-keri, Ni-kesi.
Noun sub-stantive or attributive.	. . . . .	Nuru, 去 ^ル , <i>passing away.</i>	Ni-si, 既去, <i>gone away.</i>	Ni-keru, <i>having gone away.</i>
Gerund.	Ni-te, 去 = 而 ^テ .			
Local. . . . .	. . . . .	Nureba, <i>on pas- sing away.</i>		
Future.				
	Namū, ナム, Nan, ナン, 將去, <i>shall go.</i>	Nuramu, Nuran, <i>shall be going.</i>	Ni-ken, <i>shall have gone away.</i>	Ni-keran, Ni-kerasi, 去來, <i>shall have gone away.</i>
Conditional form.	Naba, 也則, <i>if it go.</i>	Nuraba, <i>if the passing away shall be.</i>	. . . . .	Nikeraba.

The auxiliary verb *Ni*, *Nu*, *Nuru* (to go away) is distinguished from the substantive verb *Ni* (to be) in-as-much as the latter has the appositive definition what something is, before it in the form of a noun. (See § 100. I.)

Remark 1. Attention must be paid to the three forms of the future *nan*, *nuran* and *niken*. From their derivation, as it appears in the synopsis, the logical result is, that they must have the signification there noticed: and this conclusion is confirmed by the definition which the *Wagun Siwori* gives of the three forms.

1. **Nan** *va mi-rai wo kakete iuu kotoba nari*, i. e. *Nan* is a word used with a view to the future.
2. **Ran** *va gen-zai wo utagavu no kotoba nari*, i. e. *Ran* (= *Aran*) is a word which brings the present into doubt (should it be?).
3. **Ken** *va kwa-ko wo utagavu no kotoba nari*, i. e. *Ken* is a word which brings the past into doubt (should it have been?).

Remark 2. Since *r + n* by assimilation becomes *nn*, *Owari-nu* (= it ends) passes into *Owannu*, オワンヌ, being the auxiliary verb *nu* (去^ヌ) with a view to this example, called *Owannu no Nu* or the *Nu* of *Owannu*.

Instead of *Ari-nan* (there shall or may be), in the dialect of Yamato *Ara-nan* also occurs for euphony.

Examples of the use of the auxiliary verb *ni*, *nu*.

[**Nu**.] *Fato va takani ōwārēte Sjaksan-no fudokōro-ni tōbi-iri nu*, the dove, pursued by the falcon, flew into S'akya's lap. — *Soreyori Sado ve tsuki-nu*. *Mata zyun fuu arazareba*, *ni zyu ji-me yo touriu-su*, thence they came to the island of Sado. As again there was no favorable wind, they stayed there till after the 20th day. — *Umi-nite kazeni aterare*, *kwan-gun ri wo usinawāte*, *Zin-muno mi iroje san nin* (御^ミ兄^イ三^{サン}人^{ニン}) *tokōro dokōro nite use-tamari nu*, as they were overtaken by wind at sea, and the government's troops lost the advantage, Zin-mu's three elder brothers were lost at different places. — *Kami-agari-si masi-nu*, he (the prince) has gone on high (died). *Agari*, going up; *Si*, do. — *Kō-zin no ōrerisi mo samo ari-nu besi*, also what the ancients have said, will have been so.

[**Nuru**.] *Yau-san wo set-šoo* (殺^{ころ}多^タ生^な少^シ) *no waza kokōroye-nuru jito mo arinu besi*, it may be that there were people, who considered the breeding of silkworms a murderous occupation. — *Fisāsiku kai-dei ni fanberi-nuru aida*, „during my long stay at the bottom of the sea,” the beginning of a speech by the sea-god, when he showed himself before the other gods.

[Nan.] *Midzūkara matsu-ori-sitogari-namu*, or: *Midzūkara matsu-ori-nomū* (自^ミカ^ラ 服^フス^レ 矣^ナ), one will come under subjection of oneself ¹).

[Naba.] *M'ma ro jikare-naba, asiki mitsi ni mo iri-nu besi*, if the horse is led, it may have turned into even a bad road.

[Nureba.] *Fide-yori mo Tsiygn-zen südñi yabure-nureba, sadamete Dai-Min yori sukurin-koto wó omónhakéte*, Fide-yori considering that, when Tschao-siën should at last have been brought under subjection, help would certainly come from China.....

[Nuran.] *Furiki irayu iku-yo fe-nuran?* the old stone house, how many ages may it still last? 古窟幾世將經. From the Chinese translation annexed, it appears that by *fe-nuran* the future (may last) is intended, whereas by *fe-niken* the fut. exactum (shall or may have lasted) would be indicated.

The poet, instead of *nu*, uses *yuku* (行^ユ), = goes, probably to fill up his verse, e. g. *Mákisi fatákemó sibomi kare yuku*, even the corn land, where one has sown, goes to fade (and) to dry up.

§ 85. ..tsü, ..tsütsü (ツ - ツ .): ..tsurji, u, eba, future an, an auxiliary verb of time proper to the Yamáto dialect and the narrative style. and as such, grafted on the root, as well as on future-form of a verb, it expresses the going away of an action, or of a condition, and characterises the past time absolute. *Tsu*, *tsuru* passes as a variation of *nu*, *nuru* ²) (§ 84). As predicate closing-form of a proposition *tsu* (or mostly *dzu*, ツ) is in use by preference, in the dialect of the districts from Owari to Yédo ³).

Tsütsü, as a doubling of *tsu*, implies the repetition (iterative form), *omóv-tsütsü* being made equivalent to *omóvtsü-omóvtsü*, = I thought and thought. **Tsuri**, continuative, = has been; *tsuru*, = having been; *tsürán* (*tsürómü*), = shall have been.

In the old rebus-writing *tsuru* lurks under the character 綴, which means *tsudzuru*, = to sew to; *Mi-tsuru*, to have seen, is denoted by 見綴; *Kiki-tsuru*, to have heard, by 聞綴. — Most common are the expressions 云^ツ云^ツ,

¹) *Nippon-ki*.

²) *Tsuru* is also considered as a modification of *te-arü*. — „*Te-arü, te-are*” *wo tsudzumete* „*tsuru, tsure*” *to iyu*, i. e. contracting *Te-arü* and *te-are*, one says *tsuru, tsure*. *Wagun Siwori* under *Tsuru*.

³) *Wa-gun Siwori*, under *Tsu*. Vol 16. p. 1. recto.

Iitsü, said; 見^ミ也^ツ, *Mitsü*, seen; 聞^キツ, *Kikitsü*, heard; 思^{オモ}ツ, *ömóvitsü*, thought; 暗^クツ, *Kurásitsü*, become dark.

Examples of the use of these forms.

坐^マ 御^ミ 惡^{ワル} ○
也^ツ 上^ウ 靈^{タマ} 給^{タマフ} 此^コ
。 而^ニ 穢^{ケガレ} 者^ハ
成^{ナリ} 穢^{ケガレ} 因^ヨ 下^カ

Kova kegare wo nikumi-tamavu mi-tama ni yorite nári masi tsü, this (goddess) has arisen, as an emanation from the spirit detesting uncleanness.

Remark. In the same author, instead of *nari-masitsu* (= has arisen), *nari-maseri*, *nari-maseru nari*, and *nareru nari* alternately occur. (Compare § 80).

Inúru tosi NN. ni towaresi koro, kasiko no fuu-do wo kiki tsu, when, last year inquiry was made of NN., I heard of the manners and customs of that country. — *Kono Kamino mi sudzi simoni sirúsi tsu* or also *siruséri*, = as to the pedigree of this Kami, one has made mention of (it) below ¹). — *Dasa yosasi tokoro ni yuite, Ten-egu no sono tsüma wo tsukavasi tsuru koto wo kikite, tasüké wo motomen to omóvü* ²), when Dasa, going to the place of his destination, heard, that the Emperor had had his wife sent to him, he begun to think of seeking help (for her). —

Pototógisu ¹¹ *náki tsúru káta wó* ¹¹ *nágamúreba*,

Táda áridákenó ¹¹ *tsuki zó nokórerú* ³),

If I look towards the side, where the cuckoo has called,

Then, there only the moon has remained shining by clear daylight.

Nokoréru fána va ¹¹ *keru mo tsiri tsutsu*.

Ware mo ukitaru ¹¹ *yo wo sugusi tsutsu*.

The remaining flower, has been strewed to day (leaf for leaf).

Oh I too have passed the floating time of life (step by step).

Fuzi no taká-ne ní ¹¹ *yuki rá furi tsutsu*.

On the high top of the Fuzi it has snowed (repeatedly).

Remark. In writing, *tsutsu* is frequently expressed by 𐤮, a sign used for *Nagára*, = in the midst of, while (Chapter VIII. III. 2). Probably some identify this *tsutsu*, with the *dzutsu*, = at a time, treated in § 35, p. 145.

¹) *Sudzi*, the object of the transitive *sirúsi*, to mention, is, by inversion, placed before the verb.

²) *Nippon-ki*, 14, 12

³) 百人一首 *Hyaku-nin issu*, N^o. 81.

§ 86. SYNOPSIS OF THE INFLECTED FORMS.

	Nondelicting conjugation.		Delicting conjugation.
	ROOT-FORM, declinable.		
	AKE, <i>open.</i>	MI, <i>see.</i>	YUKI, <i>go.</i>
Imperative = Vocative	Ake, <i>open.</i> Ake yo. .. Ake i, .. Ake ro. ..	Mi yo, <i>see.</i> Mi ro.	Yuke, <i>go!</i> Yuke yo, .. Yuke i, .. Yuke ro, ..
Terminative	Ake ni, <i>to opening, to open.</i>	Mi ni, <i>to seeing, to see.</i>	Yuki ni, <i>to going, to go.</i>
Instrumental, Modal (Gerund).	Akete, <i>by opening, opening.</i>	Mite, <i>by seeing, seeing.</i>	Yukite (Yuite), <i>by going, going.</i>
Isolated	Akete va, } <i>as one</i> Akete wa, } <i>opens.</i>	Mite va, } <i>as one</i> Mite wa, } <i>sees.</i>	Yukite va, } <i>as one</i> Yukite wa, } <i>goes.</i>
Concessive	Akete mó, <i>though one opens.</i>	Mite mó, <i>though one sees.</i>	Yukitemó, <i>though one goes.</i>
With suffixes definitive of time.	Akete kara, } <i>after the</i> " yori, } <i>opening.</i> " notsi, }	Mite kara, } <i>after the</i> " yori, } <i>seeing.</i> " notsi, }	Yukite kara, } <i>after the</i> " yori, } <i>going.</i> " notsi, }
Local, isolated	Ake ba (= Ake + ni + va), <i>as one opens.</i>		Yuke ba (= Yuke + ni + va), <i>as one goes.</i>
Concessive	Ake domo (= Ake + ni + tomo), <i>though one opens.</i>		Yuke domo (= Yuke + ni + tomo), <i>though one goes.</i>
INDICATIVE CLOSING-FORM.			
	Aku, <i>one opens.</i>	Miru, <i>one sees.</i>	Yuku, <i>one goes.</i>
SUBSTANTIVE AND ATTRIBUTIVE FORM.			
	Akeru or Akuru, 1. <i>the opening.</i> 2. <i>opening.</i>	Miru, 1. <i>the seeing,</i> 2. <i>seeing.</i>	Yuku, 1. <i>the going,</i> 2. <i>going.</i>
	Akeru vá, } <i>the opening.</i> Akuru vá, } <i>that o. opens.</i> " mó, <i>though opening.</i>	Miru vá, <i>the seeing, that one sees.</i> Miru mó, <i>though seeing.</i>	Yuku vá, <i>the going, that one goes.</i> Yuku mó, <i>though going.</i>
Terminative	Akuruni, <i>to the opening, to open.</i>	Miruni, <i>to the seeing, to see.</i>	Yukuni, <i>to the going, to go.</i>
Local, isolated	Akuruni va, <i>on the opening, as one opens.</i> Akureba, <i>as one opens.</i>	Miruni va, <i>on the seeing, as one sees.</i> Mireba, <i>as, or if one sees.</i>	Yukuni va, <i>on the going, as one goes.</i>

	Nondeflecting conjugation.		Deflecting conjugation.
Concessive	Akurédomó, <i>though one open.</i> Akuru tó iédomó, <i>though one opens.</i>	Mirédomó, <i>though one see.</i> Miru to iédomó, <i>though one sees.</i>	Yuku to iédomó. <i>though one goes.</i>
PRETERIT.			
Attribut. and declinable substantive form.	Akeki, <i>he opened.</i> Akesi.	Miki, <i>he saw.</i> Misi.	Yuki ki, <i>he went.</i> Yuki si, Yukesi.
Continuative	Akeker)i, u, <i>has opened.</i>	Miker)i, u, <i>has seen.</i>	Yuki ker)i, u, <i>has gone.</i> Yuker)i, u, <i>cha.</i>
Future	Akeken, <i>shall have opened.</i> Aketar)i, u, △ Aketa, <i>has opened.</i>	Miken, <i>shall have seen.</i> Mitar)i, u, △ Mitā, <i>has seen.</i>	Yuken, <i>shall have gone.</i> Yuki tar)i, u, △ Yuki ta, Yuita, <i>has gone.</i>
FUTURE.			
	Ake mu (<i>old Jap.</i>) Aken, <i>shall open.</i> △ Akeo, <i>shall open.</i> Aken to s)i, u, <i>to be about to open.</i> Aken to te, <i>syncope of</i> Aken to sité, <i>being about to open.</i>	Mi mu. Min, <i>shall see.</i> △ Mi u, also Miyoo. Min to s)i, u, <i>to be about to see.</i> Min to te, <i>syncope of</i> Min to site, <i>being about to see.</i>	Yuka mu. Yukan, <i>shall go.</i> △ Yukao, △ Yukoo. Yukan to s)i, u, <i>to be about to go.</i> Yukan to te, <i>syncope of</i> Yukan to site, <i>being about to go.</i>
Conditional	Akeba (= Aken + ni + va), <i>on being about to open, if one open.</i>		Yukaba (= Yukan + ni + va), <i>on being about to go, if one go.</i>

CAUSATIVE OR FACTIVE VERBS IN **Si** OR **Se**.

§ 87. The causative verbs, which denote a causing to take place or a carrying out of the action, such as our raise (make rise), drench (make drink), are formed by means of the deflecting verb *si*, *su*, future *san* (爲³), to do. In nondeflecting verbs in *o* or *i* this *si* is suffixed to the root, by which the derivative forms *esi* or *isi* (or sometimes instead of *isi*, *osi* and *usi*) arise, whereas in deflecting verbs their termination *i* at the same time passes into a (or some-

times, for vocal harmony, into *o*, see § 76), by which the derivative forms *asi* or *osi* are obtained; e. g. *Yuki*, to go; *Yukási*, make go. *Noki*, to go back; *Nokosi*, to make go back. — The verbs, which have *ori* or *uri* as continuative form (see § 88), have *osi* or *usi* as their causative form. In § 103 *Sí*, to do, is treated as a substantive verb.

Sometimes nondeflecting *se*, *suru*, future *sen*, takes the place of *S)i, u*. *Se* passes for a syncope of *sim)o*, *uru*, future *en*, 令^レ, have do. See § 88. *Icase*, have say, *Kíkase*, have hear, are at least in the *Man'yo sin*, explained by 令^レ言^ハ and 令^レ聽^ク.

The following may serve as examples of the derivation of causative verbs:

1. *Käy)e, eru*, 歸^ル, to return, *e. i.*: *Kayes)i, u*, to make turn back, to return.
v. tr. In Yédo: *Kairu*, *Kaisu*.
2. *M)i, iru*, 見^ル, to see; *Mis)e, eru, uru*, to make see, to show.
3. *N)i, iru*, 似^ル, to resemble; *Nis)e, eru, uru*, to make resemble, to imitate.
4. *Yuk)i, u*, 行^ク, to go; *Yukas)i, u*, to make go.
5. *Ugok)i, u*, 動^ク, to move. *v. i.*: *Uyokas)i, u*, to move, *v. tr.* to make move.
6. *Nom)i, u*, 飲^ム, to drink; *Nomas)i, u*, to give drink (*Fítóni mizuwo*, water to somebody).
7. *Yásūm)i, u*, 休^ム, to rest, *v. i.*: *Yasūnds)i, u*; also *e, uru*, to rest, *v. tr.*: contracted *Yasunz)i, u*.
8. *Sí*, 去^ル, to go away; *Sas)i, u*, 使^ス差^ス, to make go away.
to send, to dispatch (a messenger).
9. *S)i, u*, 爲^ス, to do; *Sas)e, uru*, to make do. *Ne-sase*, to make sleep.
10. *Kudz)i, uru*, 崩^ル, to fall, descend. *Kūdás)i, u*, to make fall, to precipitate.
Kudári, 行^ク, go from above to *v. tr.*
below; a line of Japanese writing.
11. *Ac)i, u*, 合^フ, to unite, *v. i.*: *Acas)i, u; e, uru*, to unite, *v. tr.*
12. *Tob)i, u*, 飛^ブ, to soar, fly; *Tobas)i, u*, to make soar or fly.
13. *Asob)i, u*, 遊^ブ, to play, to ramble. *Asobas)i, u*, to make ramble, to amuse,
to please.
14. *Ní*, to be; *Nar)i, u*, to be continually. *Nas)i, u*, 成^ル, to make be, to produce.

15. *Nas)i, u*, to make;
 16. *Nar)i, u*, 鳴^ナ_η, to sound, *v. i.*;
 17. *Ter)i, u*, 照^テ_η, shine;
 18. *Dzi¹⁾*, 出^ヂ, = *īdz)i, u*, to come out of;
 19. *Ni*, 荷^ニ, burden, load. *Nor)i, u*, to be a burden; to ride, go in a carriage;
 20. *K)i, uru*, 來^キ, to come;
 21. *Ok)i, iru*, 起^キ, to get up, to rise;
 22. *Nok)i, u*, 退^ノ_キ, to go back, to recede, retreat;
 23. *Ots)i, iru, uru*, 落^ツ_キ, to fall;
 24. *Ov)i, uru*, 生^オ_ヒ, to wax, grow;
 25. *Ov)i, u (O)i, u*, 負^オ_ヒ, to bear (on the back);
 26. *Uruv)i, u*, 潤^ウ_ヒ, to get moist;
 27. *Or)i, iru*, 降^オ_リ, to descend;
 28. *Or)i, u*, 居^オ_リ, to dwell;
 29. *Kor)i, u*, 凝^コ_リ, to clot;
 Korós)i, u, to kill;
 30. *I*, to go away. *Yor)i, u*, to be going away;
 31. *Tsük)i, iru, uru*, 盡^ツ_キ, to get exhausted or consumed;
 Nasas)i, u, to make produce.
 Narás)i, u, to make sound.
 Terás)i, u, to make shine, to illuminate.
 Das)i, u, or *īdas)i, u*, to make go out off. — *Fūne wo īdásū*, to make a ship start.
 Nos)e, uru, 乗^ノ_セ, to make ride, to carry, to convey.
 Kos)i, u, to make come.
 Okós)i, u, to raise.
 Nokós)i, u, to make go back: 還^ノ_ル, to leave behind.
 Otós)i, u, to make fall, to fell.
 Ovós)i, u, 生^オ_ヒ育, to make wax or grow.
 Ovós)e, uru, or *Oós)e, uru*, 仰^オ_ホ, obsol. オンセ, to burden; a charge.
 Uruvós)i, u, to moisten, quicken.
 Orós)i, u, 下^オ_ル, to make descend (*ika-rūco*, to throw out the anchor).
 Orós)i, u, 爲居, to make dwell.
 Korós)i, u, to make clot; to kill, 殺^コ_ル.
 Korósás)i, u, to make kill.
 Yos)e, uru, 寄^ヨ_セ, to make go away, to send.
 Tsükús)i, u, 悉^ツ_ク, to exhaust, to consume.

Remark. If we do not, as Japanese etymologists ²⁾, reduce *Nasi* (= to cause

¹⁾ The root *ヂ* is preserved in the family name 日出^ヂ山^ニ, *Fī zi yama*, = sunrise mountain. The change of *ヂ* into *ジ* is very common.

²⁾ *Wagun Sīwori*, under *Nasi*.

to be, to give existence to anything) to *Na* (名^ナ), = name, but derive it from *Ni*, - to be, the soundness of such a derivation is pleaded for, not only by the analogy of the Latin factivum *facio*, which comes from *fiō*, or the Sanscrit *bhā-rayāmi* derived from *bhū*, to be; but the Japanese causative verbs themselves concur in supporting it. Thus we are of opinion also, that *Asobasi* (= to please) is a causative form, whereas the Japanese philologists ¹⁾ see in it a contraction of *Asobi* + *masi* (遊^{アソビ} 坐^{マス}), = to be pleasing oneself; an opinion with which we could agree, if the passive form *Asobasare*, = be pleased, an ordinary expression of politeness, did not make us suppose a causative *Asobasi* (- to please), as a logical necessity.

The causative verbs derived from intransitive verbs have the object, which is made active, in the accusative before them. *Tsūki wa siro wo terōsu*, the moon makes the castle shine, enlightens it.

Examples of the use of the forms.

Tsitsi kore wo nasi, ko kore wo nobu ²⁾, the father originates it, the son continues it. — *Kimi taka wo tobāsū*, the prince lets the falcon fly. — *Is-seki wo motte kore wo tsūkuri nasi-tāri*, one has made this out of one stone. — *Tomu wa ōku wo ūrēōsi, tokū wa mi wo ūrēōsū* ³⁾, riches moisten (quicken) the house, virtue, the person. — *Zin-siya wa sai wo motte mi wo ōkōsi, fu-zin-siya wa mi wo motte sai wo ōkōsū* ⁴⁾, the humane man uses his fortune to exalt himself, the inhumane man his person to push his fortune higher. — *Midare, sidzūmarazaru wo yasūnzi otōsu*, he quiets and subdues those, who behave disorderly and unquietly. — *Seki-si wo yasūnzūru ga gotōsi* ⁵⁾, it is as if one quieted a suckling. — *Kimi ni tsūkōyuru toki wa sūnarōtsi inōtsi wo tsūkūsu*, when (I my) prince serve, then it is with all my life. — *Kotoba wo tsūkūsu*, to exhaust his language, i. e. say all that is to be said. —

其^{ソノ} = 盡^{ツク} ^〇不^ズ *Sono kotoba wo tsūkūsu koto wo ōzu* (pron. *ōzu*) ⁶⁾, he does
 辭^{ハナフ} 得^ズ *not get* (he does not succeed in) exhausting his reasonings.

¹⁾ *Wagon Siwori*, under *Asobasu*. *Yamato Kotoba*, II. 42, r.

²⁾ *Tschung yung* 13.

³⁾ *Dai Gaku*. VI. 2.

⁴⁾ *Dai Gaku*. X. 20.

⁵⁾ *Ibid*. IX. 2.

⁶⁾ *Ibid*. IV. 1.

CAUSATIVE VERBS IN **Sime**.(下^ケ知^デスル言^{コトバ}, *Ge-dzi-suru kotoba*.)

§ 88. The causative verbs in **sime** denote that an order, or in a less commanding tone, inducement is given to do an action or realise a condition. They are formed according to the same rule as the causative verbs in **si**, i. e. the causative *si* or *se* is superseded by the verb **Sim****c**, **u**, **uru**, **ureba**, gerund **Simete** (contracted **sīte**), future **Simen**, to charge, 令^シ。令^ス.

Ake, to open;*Ake-sime*, to make open.*Tairag***e**, *uru*, to subdue;*Tairage-simé*, to order to subdue, to make subdue....*s***e**, *uru*, do (termination of verbalized Chinese words);...*se-sime*, to charge to do, contrive that one does, have done.*Nasas***i**, *u*, to have made;*Nasa-sime*, to order one to have made.*Ye-sas***i**, *u*, to cause to get;*Ye-sasime*, to contrive to have gotten.*Ari*, there is;*Ará-sime*, to order that there be.*Nakari*, there is not;*Nakará-sime*, to order that there be not.*Mátsuri*, wait upon, to worship;*Mátsurá-sime*, to order to worship.

When *Sime* unites with the causative verbs in *si* a syncope takes place: from *Kacési* + *simé* comes *Kacésime*, to have sent back; from *Yukási* + *simé*, *Yuká-simé*, to order to let (him) go.

Examples of the use of the forms.

Kuni wo tairage-simū, he orders the country to be subdued. — *Tsūkavi wo kave-simu*, he orders the ambassador to be sent back. — *Kava-kami kore wo mite, itsūkúsiki onna narito ómóri, tádzüsárete is-syuku* (— 夕宿^シレ) *so-simu*, *Kava-kami*, seeing him, he thinks that he is a beautiful maiden, leads him by the hand, and charges him to stay the night. — *Yase-ki wo nirakáni sei-teu* (成^セ長^シ) *so-simén to te, koyási wo tsūyōku-sū bekarázu*, to make lean trees grow quickly, one may not manure too strongly.

達^{タツ}身^ミ欲^{ホツスレ}
 他^タ者^バ達^{タツ}
 人^{ニシ}先^シ令^{シスヨ}已^{オノレカ}

*Onóregá mī wo tassento hossarébá**Mádzū ta-nin wo tasse-sime yó.*

Will you advance yourselves.

First let others help themselves forward.

Fítóni geki (益) *aró-simúru wó sen-itsi* (專一) *tó su*, to manage that there be much advantage for others. I consider the only object. — *Kūramóki wo kiru koto nakūró-sime*, order that the chopping of mulberry-trees do not take place! — *Kami wo mátsūri*, to worship a Kami; *Kami wo mátsūrú-simu*, he gives order to worship the Kami. — *Tori i, u*, to take; *Torá-sime*, to have it taken. — *Sori takara kari ni motsūrite*, *tori wó toró-simuru tori nari*, the falcon is a bird, that is used for the chase, and (by which) people have birds caught. — *Fakári*, to consider; *Fákará-sime*, to charge to consider. — *Kūmáoso wo útsá koto wo fakarasime* ¹⁾ *tamau*, the Emperor has it taken into consideration to beat the (hostile) Kūmáoso.

Ni, to be; *Nasi i, u*, to make be; to produce; *Nasási*, make produce; *Nasási-sime*, charge to have made. He, who orders, charges a second person to have something done by a third. That then is the reason, why *Nasási-sime* plays so important a part in the courtly style; it is the same as if it were said that a prince gives order, to take measures that something be done. — *Kákūtei wo nasási-meri tó ári*, it is (said) that the Emperor N. has given order, that the wrestling games be held. — *Tsurugi wo sadzūkte*, *Ten-kwau wo korosásimen tó su*, handing him a sword, he will have the Emperor murdered.

Remark 1. The object, which precedes the verb in *sime* in the Accusative, Dative or Local, is, as appears from the examples quoted, the object of the action ordered, not the person who is ordered. If the latter is admitted into the sentence then the old style allows him, as a remote definition, to precede in the Accusative, e. g. *Sūkune wo fakáru koto wo okónarásimū*, (the prince) orders Sūkune to hold council. The new style uses the turn of phrase: „by ordering Sūkune he has council held.” and supersedes *simate* (ordering) by the syncopated form *síte*; thus *Sūkune wo site* (= *simate*) *fakaru-koto wo okónarásimu*. — *Ten-wau Nunaki Iri-fime wó síté N.N. kami wo mátsurásimu*, the Emperor charges the Lady Nunaki and has the god N.N. solemnly whorshiped.

祭^{サイ} 之^ノ 人^{ヒト} 使^{シテ} 天^{テン} 下^カ
 祀^シ 人^{ヒト} 使^{シテ} 天^{テン} 下^カ
 承^{ツカフ} 中^{ナカ} 天^{テン} 下^カ

Ten-ku no jító wo site . . sui-si ni tsukaru mátsurásimu ²⁾, the people of the realm are let pay their respects at the feasts.

¹⁾ Not *fakarisime*, as in the original state.

²⁾ *Tschung-yung*. XVI.

害カイ並ナラビ至イタル 爲ヲサス國コク家カ菑サイ 小コ人ジン之ノ使シムレバ

Seu-zin wó sítě, kokū-ka wo osāmě-simūrebá, sai-kai nārābi itáru ¹⁾), if one let a man of mean character govern the country and people, calamity and misfortune rise to the top.

Tsōo zu (長チ壽シ) no moto-wi wo ye-sasimen tamé, to manage that one gets the foundation of a long life. — *N... wo tsukawasite Idzūmono Oho-yásiro ni osámūrū tokórono kan-takára wo tadasásimū*, (the Emperor) sends N... and lets the Kami-treasure be inspected, which is kept in the Great chapel of Idzumo. — *Tamī ni takavesi uyuru koto wo osivésimū*, he (the Emperor Shin-nung) lets the people be taught ploughing and planting.

Remark 2. *Síte*, = *siméte*, is also superseded by *mei-zite (命メイジテ)* or *rei-site (令レイシテ)*, = giving order to..., with a precedent Dative. — *M.. to iu Dai-siyau-ni mēi-zité N.. wo itásimū*, giving order to the general named M.. he lets N.. be beaten (battle be given him). — *庶シ民ミンニ令レイシテカヒユヅカハシメタマフ*, (the prince) giving order to the people, lets silkworms be bred.

THE PASSIVE FORM.

§ 89. The Japanese language expresses the idea of „to be rewarded” by an active form, which answers to „get reward” and by means of the nondeflecting verb *e (得エ)*, = to get, appropriate) forms derivative verbs, which signify the appropriating of an action coming from without. The Japanese passive verbs, thus, in nature and form, are derivative active verbs; therefore mention can be made only of the manner in which they are derived, but, by no means of passive forms of inflection, for *e* follows the nondeflecting conjugation.

According to their derivation the passive verbs are arranged in three classes:

I. 1. All deflecting transitive verbs in *i* can become passive, when their verbal element *i* is superseded by *e*, *u*, *eru*, *uru*, e. g.:

Yaki, ヤキ, to burn; *trans.*

Yaké, ヤケ, to be burned, to burn oneself.

Kiki, キキ, to hear;

Kiké, キケ, to be heard, to sound.

Saki, サキ, to tear;

Saké, サケ, to be torn.

¹⁾ *Dai Gaku*. X. 23.

<i>Yomi</i> , ヲ ㇿ, to read;	<i>Yome</i> , ヲ ㇼ, to be read.
<i>Umi</i> , ウ ㇿ, to bear, bring forth;	<i>Ume</i> , ウ ㇼ, to be produced or born.
<i>Ari</i> , ア リ, to exist;	<i>Are</i> , ア レ, to become.
<i>Nari</i> , ナ リ, to be;	<i>Nare</i> , ナ レ, to become.
<i>Ori</i> , オ リ, to break, <i>v. tr.</i>	<i>Ore</i> , オ レ, to break, <i>intr.</i>
<i>Uri</i> , ウ リ, to sell;	<i>Ure</i> , ウ レ, to be sold, to be for sale.
<i>Tsüküri</i> , ツ クリ, to make;	<i>Tsüküre</i> , ツ クレ, to be made.

2. The nondeflecting transitive verbs in *i*, chiefly monosyllabic, attach *e* to their root-vowel, either with or, according to the dialect of Yédo, without interposition of the *y*. The writing has エ, ヌ, エ ヌ, ヌ ヌ; forms, which are frequently confounded with ヘ, フ, ヘ ヌ, フ ヌ.

<i>Mi</i> , ㇼ (<i>Mirü</i> , <i>Mité</i>), to see.	<i>Miye</i> , ㇼ エ (<i>Miyu</i> , ㇼ ヌ; <i>Miyürü</i> , ㇼ ヌ ヌ; <i>Miyéte</i> , ㇼ エ テ; <i>Miyétari</i> ; or <i>Mi</i>)e, <i>u</i> , <i>urn</i> , <i>etc. (tari)</i>), become visible, appear.
<i>I</i> , ㇿ (<i>irn</i> , ㇿ ヌ; <i>ite</i> , ㇿ テ), to shoot.	<i>Iye</i> , ㇿ エ (<i>Iyn</i> , ㇿ ヌ; <i>Iyurn</i> , ㇿ ヌ ヌ; <i>Iyete</i> , ㇿ エ テ), to get a shot, be shot. Thence <i>Iyn-sisi</i> , a shot stag.
<i>Ni</i> , ニ (<i>Niru</i> , ニ ヌ), to boil; <i>trans.</i> — <i>Tsja wo nírü</i> , boil tea.	<i>Níye</i> , ニ エ (<i>Niyu</i> , ニ ヌ; <i>Niyern</i> , ニ エ ヌ; * <i>Niyürü</i> , ニ ヌ ヌ; <i>Niyete</i> , ニ エ テ), boil; <i>intr.</i> — <i>Níye-yú</i> , boiling water.

Remark. If a nondeflecting verb followed by the verb *e* (= to get) remains in its radical form in *i*, the *e* retains its inherent signification of get; it is equivalent, however, to the expression: get something done, i. e. the being able to realize; thus *Mairi-yemu* (or in the spoken language *Mairi-yemasenü* 行_い得_えマゼヌ¹⁾), I cannot come.

II. Some deflecting verbs in *i* have *áye* or *óye* for their passive form, being the verb *e* suffixed to the root in *i*, after the *i*, by strengthening has become *a* or, on account of vocal harmony, has become *o*. This form comes from the old Japanese, and is considered particularly elegant.

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, page 17.

Iri, イリ, to say; to be called; *Iráye*, イハエ, or *Ivaē*, to be said or named. 所謂.
Siri, シリ, to know; *Siráye* ¹⁾, シラエ, to become or be known. 所知.
Ari, アリ, to exist; *Aráye*, アラエ, to become existing. 所有.
Kiki, キキ, to hear; *Kikóye*, キコエ, to be object of hearing. 所聞.
 Thence *Koyé*, the sound, voice.

Omóvi, オモヒ (*òmóí*), to think; *Omóroyé*, オモホエ (*ómóoye*), to be thought of or cogitable. 所思.

Inflection, regular: *Kikoye*, *u*, *uru*, etc. *etari* etc., *eba*, future *uran* (= *uru* + *aran*), thus *Kikoyuran*, to avoid *Kikoyen*, which too much resembles the negative *Kikoyenū*, not to be heard. — *Kikoyeken* (所聞 梟矣), it will have become loud.

Remark. The substantive forms *Iráyürü*, *Siráyürü*, *Kikóyürü*, *Omóroyürü* mean that which has been said, called, heard, thought, *Aráyürü*, that which has gotten existence, that which appears, and exists. Used attributively, they are equivalent to our passive participle of the past time. *Siráyuru mono* is, what has been brought to knowledge. — *Kono mi fasirano kami vá iráyürü Sare no kami nári*, these three Kamis are the so called Leading-gods. — *Ano tera no kane ga kokomade kikóyu* (in the spoken language *kikóye-másū*), the bell of that temple is to be heard here. — *Aráyuru mono, fütó, Hotóke*, the things, people, Buddhas that exist, = all the things, people etc.

The forms quoted, *Iráyürü*, *Siráyürü*, *Aráyürü* agree perfectly with the Chinese expressions: 所謂 *Sò wéi*, 所知 *Só tsi*, 所有 *Sò yèi*.

III. The most usual derivation of passive verbs is effected by means of the nondeflecting verb *Are*, *u*, *eru*, *uru*, etc etc., = to become, which is suffixed to the substantive form of a transitive verb, by which its weak termination *u* is elided; thus:

Ake, to open; *Akéürü*, opening; passive *Akéürü* + *áre* = *Akéáre*, to be opened.
Mi, to see; *Mirü*, seeing; .. *Mirü* + *áre* = *Miráre*, to be seen.
Fiki, to draw; *Fikü*, drawing; .. *Fikü* + *áre* = *Fikáre*, to be drawn.

¹⁾ The etymological dictionary *Wagon Sivoiri*, vol. 37 p. 2 recto splits *siraye* into *si* and *raye*, declares *raye* as a lengthening of *re*, and *siraye* as a lengthening of *sire*. What the lengthening means, the author does not say.

According to this rule the passive verbs following are formed.

Nondeflecting.

<i>Ag)e, eru</i> , to hoist, raise, lift;	<i>Agerar)e, u, uru</i> etc., to be hoisted.
<i>Wak)e, eru</i> , to share;	<i>Wakerar)e, u</i> , to be shared.
<i>Tat)e, eru</i> , to erect;	<i>Taterar)e, u</i> , to be erected.
<i>At)e, eru</i> , to touch, hit;	<i>Aterar)e, u</i> , to be touched.
<i>Sadam)e, eru</i> , to define;	<i>Sadamerar)e, u</i> , to be defined.
<i>Sim)e, eru</i> , to charge, to let;	<i>Simerar)e, u</i> , to be charged.
<i>Ir)e, eru</i> , to receive;	<i>Irerar)e, u</i> , to be received.
<i>I, Iru</i> , to shoot;	<i>Irar)e, u</i> , to be shot.

Deflecting.

<i>I, u</i> , verbal element, to be;	<i>Ar)e, u, uru</i> , to get existence, to become.
<i>N)i, u</i> , to be;	<i>Nar)e, u</i> , to become.
<i>Nag)i, u</i> , to throw anything forward at its full length. — <i>Kúsá wo nagu</i> . to mow grass.	<i>Nagar)e, u</i> , to stream. <i>Kawa, futa na- gáru</i> , the river, the banner streams.
<i>Nuk)i, u</i> , to draw out;	<i>Nukar)e, u</i> , to be drawn out.
<i>Kog)i, u</i> , to burn, seorch;	<i>Kogar)e, u</i> , to be burnt.
<i>Nas)i, u</i> , to cause to be, to produce;	<i>Nasar)e, u</i> , to be produced.
<i>Idás)i, or Das)i, u</i> , to bring to light. produce;	<i>Idasar)e, u</i> , to be produced.
<i>Kūdás)i, u</i> , to drop; <i>trans.</i> to let fall;	<i>Kudasar)e, u</i> , to be dropped, to descend.
<i>Os)i, u</i> , to press;	<i>Osar)e, u</i> , to be pressed.
<i>Korós)i, u</i> , to cause to clot; to kill;	<i>Korosar)e, u</i> , to be killed.
<i>Watás)i, u</i> , to set over; <i>trans.</i>	<i>Watasar)e, u</i> , to be set over.
<i>Fanas)i, u</i> , to loosen; <i>trans.</i>	<i>Fanasar)e, u</i> , to be loosened.
<i>Otos)i, u</i> , to make fall; to fell;	<i>Otosar)e, u</i> , to be felled.
<i>Fanats)i (tsi=ti), u</i> , to loosen;	<i>Fanatár)e, u</i> , to be loosened; to be banished.
<i>Uts)i, u</i> , to beat;	<i>Utár)e, u</i> , to be beaten.
<i>Mots)i, u</i> , to catch hold of;	<i>Motár)e, u</i> , to be held.
<i>Ie)i, u (Ii, Iu)</i> , to say; to be called;	<i>Irár)e, u</i> , to be called.
<i>Or)i, u</i> , to pursue;	<i>Orár)e, u</i> , to be pursued.
<i>Kár)i, u (Kai, Kgu)</i> , to change, barter;	<i>Kavár)e, u</i> , to be or may be changed.

<i>Kūv)i, u, to eat;</i>	<i>Kuár)e, u, to be eaten, to be eatable.</i>
<i>Usinav)i, u, to lose;</i>	<i>Usinavár)e, u, to be lost.</i>
<i>Okōnāv)i, u, to act, treat, perform, commit;</i>	<i>Okōnavár)e, u, to be treated, performed or committed.</i>
<i>Yob)i, u, to call;</i>	<i>Yobar)e, u, to be called.</i>
<i>Musub)i, u, to knot, to tie;</i>	<i>Musubór)e, u, to be tied, to be knotted together.</i>
<i>Yom)i, u, to read;</i>	<i>Yomár)e, u, to be read.</i>
<i>Um)i, u, to bear;</i>	<i>Umár)e, u, to be born.</i>
<i>Nom)i, u, to drink;</i>	<i>Nomár)e, u, to be drunk, to be drinkable.</i>
<i>Ur)i, u, to sell;</i>	<i>Urár)e, u, to be sold, to be for sale.</i>
<i>Kir)i, u, to chop, to cut;</i>	<i>Kirár)e, u, to be cut.</i>
<i>Sir)i, u, to know;</i>	<i>Sirár)e, u, to be known.</i>

Remark 1. Has the Japanese passive verb a potential force? Implicit, yes, but not explicit! Just as our expression: „vegetables that are eaten,” includes the idea, that they are eatable, so the Japanese verb, especially its attributive form, may, in the idea of the speaker, have a potential force, and *Kuwareru imo*, = a turnip being eaten, may mean that it is an eatable one. Compare the Sanscrit *Amitāb'a*, = *immensa vita*, unmeasured and unmeasurable life.

Thus when the proposition: „Cloths imported from foreign countries, can be sold cheaper than those made in Japan” ¹⁾, translated into the Japanese spoken language is: *Nippon de ts'kuremas'ta tam-mono yori, gai-kókū kara watarimas'ta tam-mono wa yasūku ūrāre-mas'* ²⁾, it declares, that cloths, which have come from foreign countries, are sold cheaper, than cloths which are made in Japan, and the Japanese text has a fact in view, that includes the possibility, whereas the English „can be sold” speaks of the possibility merely. „Not understanding any thing” the Japanese says: *Wakāri-mas'nu*, = I don't understand it; not being able to understand it, he says *Wakāri deki-mas'nu*.

Remark 2. The language of courtesy, which gives to the predicate verb the passive form, although logic requires the active (in treating the forms of courtesy,

¹⁾ R. BROWN, *Colloquial Japanese*, p. 8. N^o. 60.

²⁾ Why not rather: *Gai-kókū kara watari-mas'ta tam-mono wa Nippon de ts'kure mas'ta tam-mono yori yasūku ūrāre-mas'*.

we shall discuss this question further). gives a passive form to intransitive verbs also. Verbs of that character resemble the Greek Middle voice, or even the Latin Deponent Verbs; names, however, with which we shall not embarrass the Japanese.

To the passive verbs derived from intransitive verbs belong, e. g.:

I, iri, iru (居[#]), to dwell, stay; passive *Irar)e, uru*.

Mair)i, u (参^マ), to enter; *Mairar)e*.

Aruk)i, u (歩^ル行^キ), to step; *Arūkar)e*.

Ner)i, u (寝^ネ), to sleep; *Nerar)e*.

Wak)i, u (分^ワ), to become divided; *Wakar)e, uru*, to be divided.

Remark 3. Our method of deriving the passive form, first made known in 1857, and afterwards (1863) adopted by Mr. R. BROWN, does not agree with the original Japanese method, according to which for ages a verb *Raruru* (i. e. *Rar)e, u, uru*), has been imagined and been inserted in the dictionaries of the country, as equivalent to the Chinese verb 被 *p'i*.

ON THE GOVERNMENT OF THE PASSIVE VERB.

§ 90. 1. The object, which suffers an action, is subject (Nominative), and the verb passive, its predicate. e. g. *Midzū ūgōkasārū*, the water is brought into motion.

2. The verb passive is considered impersonal and the object undergoing the action, remains as object to the action, in the Accusative, thus *Midzū wō ūgōkasāru*.

3. The verb passive stands in its substantive form and has its complement, as a genitive, before it: *Midzū no ūgōkasāruru*, the becoming moved (the movement) of the water, or even that of the water, which is moved, which gets movement.

4. The object, from which the action proceeds, preceeds as complement, characterized by the termination *ni*, or by *...no taméni*, = in behalf of, for the sake of.....

5. The definition of the material, from which any thing derives its existence or origin, assumes the genitive or even the ablative form in *yorī* or *kara*.

Examples of the use of the passive forms.

Midzu wā fīgāsīyē nagāru, the river flows eastwards. — *Sōnō nē de wā ūgē-*

masenü, for this price it is not sold ¹⁾. — *Watókusi kono siná wo sōnō nédán de wá ūri masénü*, I do not sell these goods for that price. — *Káviko ūndre-tari*, the silkworm is hatched. — *Umáretarū* or *ūmaresi kariko*, silkworms hatched. — *Sirusaretaru mono*, things made known. — *Kono mitsi sakán ni okonávareru tó miyétári*, it seems that this way is much practised; *Okona*ri, vulg. *i*, to practise; exercise; *Mi*, *miru*, to see; *Miye*, to appear, seem. — *Wqu-zi ra idaki torite, manukaretari*, the prince is taken into the arms and saved (from the fire). *Manuk*i, *u*, to draw out. — *Aságávo asa ni umárete yubeni sísū*, = the morning-face (the flower of the winds) is born in the morning and dies in the evening. — *Umáre* from *ūmi*, to bear. — *Fító wo moto-kuniye tsúkávasaru*, = the man is sent to his own country. — *Miko wo tsúkávasaru besi to sata ari*, it is reported that the prince will be sent. — *Ziyan mon* (城門) *wo seme yaburáru tóki*, *tou-siya* (刀車) *nite fúságu nari*, when the gate of a castle is broken by assault, it is shut by means of a scythed chariot. *Yabūr*i, *u*, to break. — *Mukási ra takawo migini sūesaresi to nari*, it is a fact, that formerly the falcon trained to sport was made perch on the right hand. *Su*e, *uru*, to roost; *Sues*i, *u*, to make roost; *Suesar*e, *u*, to be set up, placed high. — *Toga-nin no kubi wo kiru*, to cut a criminal's throat; *Kubi wo kiraretaru* (or *kirareta*) *mono*, one whose throat is cut.

ル	レ	○
由	着	惡風
シ	チヤク	ス
陳	岸	ニハ
放	シタ	ナメ
ズ		

Akū-fun ni fanatarete tsákū-gan-si-taru yosiwo tsin-fūgo-zu, the report has been spread, that (the ship) has been set adrift by an ill wind and driven on shore. *Fanatsi*, set free.

Fító ni tasinameraru, he is vexed by others, (爲人 所 困), *Fító ni nan-gi wo seráru*, = difficulty is caused by others. — *Ten-wan ni korosáru*, he is killed by the emperor. — *Im ni kamaretáru fító*, a person bitten by a dog: *Kam*i, *u*, to bite. — *Kazéni oréru take no ko*, a young bamboo cane, which is, or can be, broken by the wind. — *Kore ni yótte ... ji-you ni idzú. Mata jiyaku-siyau ni yadowarete, ta-sukí, kúsá-kari, ine-karite, do-min no mononi ari onazi*, therefore (the Bonzes of Corea) go out at day-wages. And while they, hired by any one, plough the fields, mow grass, cut rice, they assimilate themselves to the husbandmen. *Yador*i, *u*, to hire. — *Fító ra taka ni ovaréte Syak'-son no fudokóro*

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, page 4.

ni tobi-irinn, the dove pursued by the falcon, flew into S'akya's lap. *Oe)i, u*, to pursue. — *Mimana tsuini Sinrano taméni forobosáru*, the state of Mimana is at last demolished on behalf of (= by and for) Sinra. *Forob)i, u*, to perish; *Forobos)i, u*, to demolish. — *Fo no taméni yakarete simu*, burnt by the fire, he dies. 爲火所灼死. *Yak)i, u, trans.* to burn. —

途	爲	云	<i>Kono fútó kanarázu oni no taméni madorasarento iwaku</i> , it is said that, that man will certainly be misled by the devil. <i>Mador)i, u</i> , to err, to wander; <i>Madorás)i, u</i> , to make err; <i>Madorasar)e, u</i> , to be brought so far, that one errs or wanders. —
惑	魅	是	
	鬼	人	
	所	必	

Sico-nawano kori naréru sima, an island caused by the clotting of sea-foam. — *Kova Fino-kami no tsino nareru nari*, this (spirit) is produced out of the blood of the Fire-god.

THE NEGATIVE FORM OF THE JAPANESE VERB.

§ 91. I. Theory of the Derivation.

In the negative sentence, the Japanese language attaches the negative to the predicate word. It denies that an action or state exists; but it does not deny the existence of the subject or object, while the action or state, in which both are concerned, is existing as positive, as in: „no one comes; he hears nothing.” Therefore it unites the negative element, *n*, with the verbal element *i* or *si* (see § 98 and 103) and thereby gets the forms *n + i = NI* and *n + si = ZI*, 止ジ, pronounced as *ndzi* or *dzi*; two root-forms, of which the former is proper to the spoken, the latter to the written language.

These terminations, in nondeflecting affirmative verbs, are immediately added to the root (*Ake-zi*, アケジ, *Mi-zi*, ミジ), whereas in deflecting ones in *i*, this *i* at once mutates into *a* (*Yuki*, to go, *Yukázi*, ヲクヮ止ジ, not to go). *Ni* and *zi* follow the deflecting conjugation, while the closing form *zu* and *zu*, at once serve for the substantive and the attributive form. The *Nigori*-mark, so necessary to distinguish ヌカズ from ヌクス (to make go), is frequently omitted ¹⁾.

¹⁾ For instance, in the official publication of the Treaties concluded with Foreign powers.

The root-form *ni*, which we are obliged to adopt as the basis of the negative conjugation, is not in use and, in poetry, appears to be superseded by *ne*.

EXAMPLES OF THE FORMATION OF NEGATIVE VERBS.

Affirmative.	Negative.	
	Written.	Spoken.
Ak)e, <i>uru</i> , to open.	Akez)i, u, アケ)ジ, ズ.	[Akéni], Akénu, アケヌ.
M)i, <i>iru</i> , to see.	Miz)i, u, ミ)ジ, ズ.	Minu, ミヌ.
Muku)i, <i>yu, yuru</i> (<i>nondefl.</i>), to requite.	Mukuiz)i, u, ムクイ)ジ, ズ. not to requite.	Mukuinu, ムクイヌ.
Yuk)i, u, to go.	Yukáz)i, u, ユカ)ジ, ズ.	Yukánu, ユカヌ.
Sik)i, u, so to be.	Sikáz)i, u, シカ)ジ, ズ ¹⁾ .	
Nas)i, u, to cause to be.	Nasáz)i, u, ナサ)ジ, ズ.	Nasánu, ナサヌ.
Tats)i, u, to arise.	Tatáz)i, u, タヽ)ジ, ズ.	Tatánu, タヽヌ.
Av)i, u, to meet.	Aváz)i, u, アハ)ジ, ズ.	Avánu, アハヌ.
Sorov)i, u, become equal.	Sorováz)i, u, ソロハ)ジ, ズ.	Sorovánu, ソロハヌ.
Soorav)i, u, to serve.	Sooraváz)i, u, サウラハジ.	Sooravánu, サウラハヌ.
△ Sor)ai, o, ,,		Soravánu, ソラハヌ.
Nukum)i, u, to warm, <i>v. i.</i>	Nukumáz)i, u, ヌクマ)ジ, ズ.	Nukumánu, ヌクマヌ.
Nukum)e, <i>uru</i> , to warm, <i>v. tr.</i>	Nukumez)i, u, ヌクメ)ジ, ズ.	Nukumenu, ヌクメヌ.
Ar)i, u, to exist, be.	Aráz)i, u, アラ)ジ, ズ.	Aránu, アラヌ.

In the same manner, every affirmative verb, whether it be active or passive, may assume the negative form; there are, however, a few verbs which depart from the general rule of derivation, to wit:

<i>Ki</i> , <i>Kuru</i> (<i>nondefl.</i>), to come;	<i>Kónu</i> , at Yédo <i>Kánu</i> , not to come.
<i>Dek)i</i> , <i>iru</i> (<i>nondefl.</i>), to be achieved;	<i>Dekínü</i> , vulg. <i>Dekéni</i> .
<i>Mits)i</i> , <i>uru</i> (<i>nondefl.</i>), to be filled;	<i>Miténu</i> (for <i>Mitsínü</i>), not to be filled.
<i>Más)i</i> , <i>u</i> (not <i>Mas)e, uru</i>), to be;	<i>Masénu</i> , not to be; — thus also:
<i>Mi-mas)i</i> , <i>u</i> , to be seeing, to see;	<i>Mi-masénü</i> , not to see.

¹⁾ 不ジ 若^シ.

II. INFLECTION OF THE NEGATIVE VERBS.

Synopsis of the negative forms of inflection, compared with the affirmative.

YUK)i, -u (deflecting), go; YUKAZ)i, -u, not to go.

	Affirmative.	Negative.	
		Written.	Spoken.
	YUK)	YUKA)	YUKA)
Root-form.	-i, <i>go</i> .	-zi, ヌカヰ, <i>not to go</i> .	-ni, -ne.
Gerund.	-ite, <i>going</i> .	-zite, <i>not going</i> .	-nite, <i>not used</i> .
by elision. . .	Yuite.	Yukaide, ヌカイテ	Yukaide. (*)
Closing-form.	-u, <i>goes</i> .	-zu, ヌカヰ, <i>goes not</i> .	-nu, ヌカヌ.
Subst. and attr.	-u, <i>the going</i> .	-zu.	-nu.
Subst., isolated	-uva, △ -uwa.	-zuva, △ -zuwa.	
„ declined	-uni, -univa, <i>on going, in order to go</i> .	-zuni, -zuniva, -zunba, <i>on not going, for not going</i> .	
Gerund.	-ute, <i>by going</i> .	-zunde, ヌカヰンテ, ヌカヰテ, <i>contr. from</i> -zunite, <i>by not going</i> .	-nude, ヌカヌテ. -nde. ヌカンテ (†). Yukade, ヌカデ.
		-zu-site.	-nu ni ótewá, <i>on not going</i> .
Causal- and modal-form.	-eba, <i>as one goes</i> .	-zeba. ヌカヰバ, <i>as one goes not</i> .	-neba, ヌカヰバ.
Concessive. . .	-u tomó, <i>also the going</i> .	-zu mó, -zu tomo.	
	-é-domó, <i>though one goes</i> .		-né-domó, <i>also</i> Yukádemó.
	-u to iédomo.	-zu to iédomo.	-nu to iédomo.
Suppositive form.	-ábá, <i>contract. from</i>	-zumba.	-ndevá, ヌカンテハ,
	-an ni va, <i>if one goes</i> .	-zunba, ヌカヰンバ, <i>contr. from</i> -zu ni va, <i>if one goes not</i> .	Yukadevá, ヌカデハ. -nu naraba (Yédo).

(*) *Akezite* and *Mizite*, derived from the nondeflecting *Aike* and *Mi*, likewise in the dialect of Miyako. pass into *Akéide*. アケイデ. *not opening*. and *Mi ide*, ミイデ, *not seeing*.

(†) Just so

Omoranu + *te* (不思而) passes into オモハテ, *ömövéde*, pr. *ömövénde*, *not thinking*.

Aránu + *te* (弗而) „ „ アラデ, *Aráde*, pron. *Arande*, *not existing*.

Sa (= *sika*) *ranu* + *te* (不然而) „ サラデ, *Saráde*, pron. *Sarande*, *not being as...*

<i>Toránu + te</i>	passes into トラテ, <i>Toráde</i> , pron. <i>Torande</i> , not taking.
<i>Senu + te</i> (不爲而)	セテ, <i>Sede</i> , pron. <i>Se-nde</i> , not doing.
<i>Omócoyénu + te</i>	オモホエテ, <i>Omócoyéde</i> , pron. <i>ómócoyénde</i> , not being thought.

CONTINUATIVE FORMS OF THE NEGATIVE VERB.

§ 92. 1. The written language supersedes the termination *zi* by *zar*)i, *u*, which is considered a fusion of *zu + ari*.

<i>Akezi</i> , not to open,	becomes <i>Akezári</i> , アケサリ, not to be opening.
<i>Mizi</i> , not to see,	„ <i>Mizári</i> , ミザリ, not to be seeing.
<i>Yukázi</i> , not to go,	„ <i>Yukazári</i> , ユカサリ, not to be going.
<i>Masázi</i> , not to excel,	„ <i>Masazári</i> , マササリ, not to be the better.
<i>Sikázi</i> , not to be so, as	„ <i>Sikazári</i> , シカサリ, continually not to be so.

The forms for the moods and tenses are the same as those of *ari*; thus: *zar*)i, *u*, *uni*, *eba*, *edomo*; Future *an*; Condit. *aba*; Preterit *zar*)ki, *si*, *keri*, *keru*, *keruni*, *keraba*, *keredomo*; Future *keran*, *ken*; Condit. *keraba*.

2. The written language attaches *ar*)i, *u*, to the negative gerund *zi-de* and opposes to the affirmative form *Ake-te-ari*, to be opening (§ 78) the negative form **Ake-zi-de ari**, which, in the spoken language, passes into **Akeido ar**)i, *u*, to be in the not opening.

3. The spoken language uses its negative gerund ...*nu-de* in connection with *ar*)i, *u*.

<i>Akénü-de ari</i> ,	アケヌデアリ, commonly pronounced as <i>Akende ar</i> '.
<i>Minü-de ari</i> ,	ミスデアリ, „ „ „ <i>Minde ar</i> '.
<i>Yukanü-de ari</i> ,	ユカヌデアリ, „ „ „ <i>Yukande ar</i> '.

From this derivation arise the very common Preterit **Minu-de arita**, pron. **Mindo atta**, has not been seeing, and the Future **Minu-de aran**, △ **Min-de aroo**, will not be seeing.

4. The poet supersedes the negative termination *nu* with *naki*, △ *nai*, *naku* (= without, see page 108); thence **Avo-naku** = *Acenu*, without daring: **Omova-naku** '), = *Omocanu*, without thinking.

The dialect of Yédo alike, and that by preference, uses **nai** (= *nasi*, *naki*,

1) Might not these be forms, connected with § 107. 2.†

without) and the thence derived continuative form *Nakári* and *Nakeri*, as negative auxiliary verb, and supersedes *Akónu*, *Minn* and *Yukónu* with the forms *Ake-nai*, *Ake-nakár)i*, *u*; — *Mi-nai*, *Mi-nakár)i*, *u*; — *Yuka-nai*, *Yuka-nakár)i*, *u*, to be without opening, without seeing, without going. Thence \wedge *Yukanaide* for *Yukázuní*, without going. With the derivative form *nakari* the negative verb follows the affirmative conjugation, as appears from the examples following:

<i>Ake-nakárebá</i> , as one is without opening.	<i>Mi-nakattárebá</i> , if one has not seen.
.. <i>nakaraba</i> , if one is without opening.	<i>Simura-nakatta kara</i> , as or after one has
<i>Deki-nakareba</i> , as it does not issue or proceed.	not finished; from <i>Simori</i> (vulg. <i>Sinui</i>),
.. <i>nakereba</i> , as it was without success.	to finish.
.. <i>nakaraba</i> , if it is successless.	<i>Tsuké-nakatta</i> , one has not applied; from
.. <i>nakeraba</i> , if it was successless.	<i>Tsuke</i> , to apply.
<i>Mi-nakatta</i> , he was without seeing.	<i>De-nakatta</i> , he did not come out; from
.. .. <i>kara</i> , as he was without seeing.	<i>De</i> , <i>deru</i> , to go out.
	<i>Toba-nakatta</i> , did not fly; from <i>Tobi</i> , to
	soar, to fly.

The written language opposes to the forms *Tsuke-nakatta* and *Toba-nakatta* the forms: *Tsukeru koto nakatta* and *Tobu koto nakatta*, i. e. the beginning and the flying did not happen. Compare *Soré jútá-tabi kitáru koto nasi* it does not happen (*nasi*), that he appears for the second time.

FORM OF THE FORBIDDING IMPERATIVE.

§ 93. 1. The Forbidding Imperative consists of the substantive form of the affirmative verb, followed by the forbidding *na* (- Lat. *ne*) or more emphatically *nayo* ¹⁾. Compare § 69.

<i>Akeru</i> , the opening;	<i>Akeru ná</i> or <i>Akeru nayo</i> , don't open!
<i>Sáru</i> , the doing;	<i>Sáru ná</i> , don't do!
<i>Wasúrurá</i> , forgetting;	<i>Wasúrurá ná</i> , don't forget!
<i>Tatáku</i> , striking;	<i>Tatáku ná</i> , don't strike!
<i>Nasúrú</i> , making;	<i>Nasúrú ná</i> , don't make!
<i>Kiku</i> , hear; <i>Miru</i> , see;	<i>Kiku na</i> , don't hear; <i>Miru na</i> , don't see!
<i>Su</i> , doing, from <i>Si</i> ;	<i>Su na</i> (勿爲), do not!

¹⁾ ナヨ 令々スル 辞_{スル} フスル、ナニ。 *Wa-gun Siwori*. — Compare § 96.

2. If the idea of continuance is associated with the forbidding, then, instead of *na* or *nayó*, **Nakáre**, ナカレ (勿。毋), the imperative mood of *Nakári*, = not to be (§ 92. 4), is used. The action which is characterized by *nakáre* as one that may not be, precedes as subject proposition characterized by *koto* (= thing); thus: *Utagau-koto nakáre* (勿疑), let the doubting not be!, for: do not doubt!

3. The forbidding proposition begins with **Na** (= Lat. *ne*), the predicate verb being in its affirmative root-form, followed by **so** (compare § 69).

Na ivi so, say not. 勿謂。莫謂。 — *Na yurusi so*, grant not! 莫聽。 — *Na atasi tokóro ni i so*, go not elsewhere. — *Na motome so*, n'acquérez pas ¹⁾. — *Ná nakári só*, pron. *Na nakássó*, not without! = it must be! — *Nakár)i, u*, to be without.....

4. The forbidding becomes a wish (optative), when *so* is superseded by *kasi* (= Lat. *quaeso*). — *Na ivi kasi*, may he not say!

Politeness does not allow a person bluntly to use the imperative to his equals or superiors. Instead of *Miruna*, see not, expressions such as *Mi-nasárü ná*, or *Mi-nasáre-másü ná*, = let there not be seen, are used. — *Kamai na*, = let it not come under notice, is superseded by *O kamai kudasárü na* ²⁾; forms, to which we shall return in our illustration of the language of courtesy. Appendix to Chapter VII.

FORMS OF THE NEGATIVE PRETERIT.

§ 94. 1. The negative termination **nu** becomes **nanda**, ナンダ.

<i>Akénü</i> , not to open;	<i>Akenanda</i> , not to have opened.
<i>Dénü</i> , not to go out;	<i>Denanda</i> , not to have gone out.
<i>Saménü</i> , not to awake;	<i>Samenanda</i> , not to have awoke.
<i>Minü</i> , not to see;	<i>Minanda</i> , not to have seen.
<i>Yukánü</i> , not to go;	<i>Yukananda</i> , not to have gone.
<i>Masénü</i> , not to be;	<i>Masenanda</i> , or, in the vulgar language of Yédo, <i>Masinanda</i> , not to have been.
<i>Mi-masénu</i> , not to see;	<i>Mi-masenanda</i> , not to have seen.

Tsüre-datsite modorananda, they have not come back together (不同歸).
Modori, to come back. — *F'in wo sirananda*, he has not learned to know poverty (不知貧). *Siri*, to learn to know.

¹⁾ RODRIGUEZ, pag. 56.

²⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 21.

2. The spoken language of Yédo uses the forms *Ake-nakátta*, *Mi-nakátta*, *Yuka-nakátta*, = was without opening, without seeing, without going, derived from *Ake-nakári*, *Mi-nakári* and *Yuka-nakári*. See § 93. 4.

3. The written language employs *..zari* **ki**, **si**, **keri** etc., the preterit of the negative continuative form *zari* (§ 92. 1). — *Osikarazari si mótsi* ¹⁾, the life which was not agreeable. — *Osiki*, agreeable.

FORMS OF THE NEGATIVE FUTURE.

§ 95. 1. The spoken language, which employs the continuative forms *Akénū-de-ari*, *Minū-de-ari*, *Yukánū-de-ari*, cited in § 92. 3., makes use of the future of *ari*, thus *arāu* (ア ラ ウ) or *aroo*, and says: *Akénū-de-arāu*, *Minū-de-arāu*, *Yukánū-de-arāu*, he will not be opening, seeing, going.

2. 1) The written language employs *..zaran*, ザ ラ ン, the future of the continuative *zari* (§ 92. 1), or, instead of *zaran*, *..zu to nan*, *..zu mo aranan* (compare § 75. II, 3), and forms from

Akezari the future *Akezaran*, or *Akezu to nan*, not to be about to open.

Mizari „ „ *Mizaran*, or *Mizu to nan*, not to be about to see.

Yukazari „ „ *Yukazaran*, or *Yukazu to nan*, not to be about to go.

2) The written language, moreover, has a negative future in *..mazi*, マ ジ, from which by elision of the **z**, the vulgar form *mai*, マ イ, has arisen (comp. *Yukazide* and *Yukaide*, § 91. II).

Ake-mazi, vulgo *Ake-mai*, shall not open.

Mi-mazi, „ „ *Mi-mai*, „ „ see.

Yuku-mazi, „ „ *Yukū-mai*, „ „ go.

Aru-mazi, „ „ *Aru-mai*, „ „ be.

From these examples it is evident that, in nondeflecting verbs, *mazi* is joined to the root, and in deflecting verbs, to the attributive form.

Since the power to indicate the future, is not to be sought in *zi*, but must lie in *ma*, I consider this the substantive *ma*, which signifies room, space, used also with regard to time, as it appears from the expression: *Ikari wo orósu ma mo nákü-sité, kazéni makásete yuku*, = as there is not even (*mo*) time (or opportunity) to cast out the anchor, they abandon themselves to the wind and pass on. — The action now, for which there is no time or opportunity, as it appears

¹⁾ *Hiyaku-nin*, N^o. 50.

from the example, is something that is not yet happening, or has not yet happened (*Mi-rai*), but no real future. — With regard to the negative form *zi* joined to *ma* — it may be considered as an elliptical form of *nasi* ($n + si = nasi$, *zi*, *シ*), or what is more probable, a fusion of the negative element *n* with the derivative form *siki*, *siku*, *sisi* or *si* (§ 16) ($n + siki = ziki$, *シキ*) — it only denies, that time or opportunity for something exists, and consequently *mazi* too, is properly a present. The Japanese custom of passing *nasi* for *mazi* must therefore be disapproved of.

Inflectional forms of *Mazi*, vulg. *Mai*, are: the adverbial form *máziküedá*, vulg. *maiküedá*, and the modal *mazikini*, vulgo *maikini*, *maini*, no opportunity being; *mai toki*, if, or as, there is no opportunity; *mai tomo*, even if there is no opportunity. Tenses and moods are expressed by the auxiliary verbs *nari*, to be, and *keri*, have been. *Maziki nari* (Δ *Maina*); *Maziki nar)eba*; -edomo, -edo; -aba (Δ *Maziki nara*); *Maziki nar)au*, Δ -go, -oo. *Mazi ker)i*, *u*, (Δ *Mai ker)i*, *u*); *Mazi ker)eba*; -edomo; *Maziken*.

Examples of the use of the negative forms.

When, as it will appear from some of the passages following, not only the subject, but the object also, or even the appositive definition of a negative verb, is isolated by *va*, Δ *wa* or *mo*, it is intended to bring out the negation with more emphasis.

[Root-form.] *Ame tsütsi firákesi yori kono kata imá no tóki fódó dai-fei-náru koto arázi*; *nisi ra Kikai Yakü no simayóri jigási Osíyu no Sotoga-fáma made gogoreino yúkí-todókazáru tokóro mó nási*, since the development of heaven and earth a state of peace so general as at present, has not existed. To the West, from the Yaku-island, which belongs to the region of ghosts, to the farthest shore of the Eastern Osíyu, there is not even one place, to which the authority of the Government does not reach.

Firákesi, preterit of *Firáke*, to open itself, to unfold. — *Arázi*, negative root-form, = not exist, used here because, the connection of the sense is coördinative. — *Todókazáru*, attributive negative form of *Todokji*, *u*, = reach to.

Sónó moto midáríté, süé osamáru monó vá arázi; *sono atsúusurü tokóro no mono utsúú-site, sikúúsíte sono utsú sürü tokóro no mono átsuki koto imáda koré arázu* (*Dai Gaku*, § 7), — something (*monó vá*), of which the top is regulated, while the root is in disorder, does not exist; neither, is that, which has been made thick, thin, or that which has been made thin, thick. —

Yahe mugura 葉 暮 ぐら *sigereru yado no* 寂 び け ざ け ざ け ざ *sabisiki ni*
Fito koso niyene 何 處 へ 何 處 へ *akira ki-nikeri* 明 け ぬ け ぬ け ぬ ¹⁾.

In the solitary cell, where the plant *Mugura* has sprung up luxuriantly, nobody is to be seen; — Autumn has come.

Niyene, the negative root-form of *Mige*, to appear. — *Aki*, autumn: light.

[Closing-form.] *Ki-sin no tókū-tárū koto*, *sore sakán nárū ká!* *Kore wo mite mizu*; *kore wo kiite kikazu*; *mono ni tei-sité nokósū bekarazu* ²⁾), „how abundantly do spiritual beings display the powers that belong to them. We look for them, but do not see them; we listen to, but do not hear them; yet they enter into all things, and there is nothing without them.” LÉGGE, *Chinese Classics*, Vol. I. p. 261.

Mite and *Kiite*, gerund of *Mi*, to see, and *Kiki*, to hear, for which in another edition of the text the concessive forms *Miredomo* and *Kikedomo*, are used. — *Bekarazu* = may not, from the adjective *Beki* (page 109, N^o. 73).

ニ ス 出 イ 門 モ 場 バ 〇 Soto kiyō-rin-ba no sin-i ni mon shiyō wo mukezu.
 ベ シ 入 イ 墻 シ ヲ 其 ソ 〇 Ide-iri zi-zai-ji-su besu ³⁾), around this abode shall
 自 ジ 設 シ 周 ミ 居 キ 〇 neither gate nor fence be placed. In going out
 在 サイ 置 ヌ 圍 イ 留 リ 〇 and coming in, people shall be free.

勞 ラ 約 ヲ 御 コ 山 ギ 〇 Yama-naka ni kuro-ki no go-siyō wo tsukuri, ken-yaku wo
 セ シ シ 用 シ 所 シ ヲ 中 ナ 〇 motsuri, tami wo ran-se-simezu ⁴⁾), in the building of a
 ヌ ヌ ヒ 作 ツ 黒 ク 〇 palace of barked timber in the mountains (the prince)
 民 タ リ 儉 ケ 木 キ 〇 considers economy, and does not permit the people to
 シ シ ノ 〇 drudge.

[Substantive form.]

能 ア 也 ナリ 王 フ 〇 Wān no wān tarazāru wa se-zāru nari, atarazāruni
 也 ハ 〇 王 フ 〇 arāzu ⁵⁾), the king's not exercising the Imperial sway,
 非 ア 不 ガ 之 ノ 〇 is because he does not do it, not because he is not
 レ フ 〇 不 ガ 爲 セ 不 ガ 〇 able to do it.

Tarazāru, = the not being, the negative substantive form of *tari*, = *te ari*, § 78. II. — *Atarazaru*, the not being able, from *Atāvi*.

¹⁾ A hermit's farewell, N^o. 47 of *Hiyaku-nin issu*. — *Yahe mugura* is *Galium strigosum* THUNB.

²⁾ *Tschung-yung* or the Mean, XVI. 1.

³⁾ Netherl.-Jap. Treaty of 1858. Art. II. al. 10.

⁴⁾ *Nippon o dai itsi ran*, Vol. II. l. r. 39th king.

⁵⁾ *Meng-tsze*, Book I, Pt. I. § 7.

Mitsi no okonardrezaru, ware koré wo sîréri. *Tši-siyá va koré ni sugu; gu-siya va oyobázû* ¹⁾, that the path (of the Mean) is not walked in (literally: the not being walked in of the path), this I know. The knowing ones go beyond it, and the stupid do not come up to it.

Okonavarezaru, not being practised, from *Okonavi*, *u*, to practise. — *Sugi*, *u*, *iru*, *uru*, nondeflecting *v.* to overstep, go beyond. — *Oyobázu* or *Oyobánu*, not to reach, from *Oyobi*, *u*.

Sira-no to ca urusi nite nurazu-site, ji nite mo kogazaru wo ien nari, concerning the so called pale arrow shafts, people understand by them, such as are not daubed with varnish, nor burnt with fire.

Nuri, *u*, to daub. — *Kogi*, *u*, to burn.

Sinserarezaru wo omonbakarazu (不億不信), what is incredible is not taken into consideration.

Sin-sje, *uru*, to believe. — *Omonbakari*, *u*, to powder.

モ デ ア ッ ス	ス レ ヲ	事 ヲ	○ 我 彼 其	△ <i>Watákusi kare ga sono koto wo ósórezu ni suru no wo mi-tái mono de atta</i> , I should like to see him do that business, undaunted.
	見 ミ	恐 レ ニ		
	度 タイ			<i>Osórje</i> , <i>eru</i> , nondeflecting, to fear.

[Attributive.] *Onoré ni sikazáru mono wó tomo to sîrû kóto nakáre*, make not a person, who is not your equal, your mate.

Sikazáru, continuative form of *Sikázi*, and this from *Siki*, *u*, to equal.

Kono ri wo sirazáru fító, someone who does not know this law.

Mata sirazáru tokóro ari, there is what one does not yet know. — *Mata yóküsezáru tokóro ari* ²⁾, there is what one does not yet do well.

Siri, *u*, to know. — *Yoku-sje*, *uru*, to do good. — *Sezi*, not to do; thence *Sezarji*, *u*.

Yura no to wo ¹⁾ *wataru funa-bito* ¹⁾ *kadzi wo tare!*

Yuku ye mo siranu ¹⁾ *koci no mitsi kanu* ³⁾.

Skipper, sailing over the month by Yura, let loose the helm!

Oh! it is a way of love, that does not know whither it goes!

△ *Me ni miyénû, kutsi ni icarenu fodo ki-meo* (奇^キ妙^{ミョウ}) *na koto*, a matter so uncommon, that it is not to be seen by eyes, nor to be spoken by any mouth.

△ *Pito ni sirarenu gau ni suru*, so to act that it be not remarked by others.

[Gerund.] *Taka ra űeni sokonozu-sité, aku ni sokonuru mono nari*, = the hawking-

¹⁾ *Tschung-yung*. IV.

²⁾ Ibid. XII

³⁾ *Hyaku-nin*, N^o. 46.

falcon is something (*mouo*) that suffers no harm by hunger, but is spoiled by surfeiting.

△ *Fararázũ-sîté tori-age mäsü-mai*, without paying I shall not receive (the goods). — △ *Nedangu kararázũ sîté*, while no change in price takes place.

Kua-si go wo nogarcte, sirarezu-sîté, küüzu ¹⁾, the superior man, retired from the world and unacknowledged, is not grieved at it.

Nogji, *u*, to push back; *Nogár)e*, *eru*, being drawn back. — *Sír)i*, *u*, to learn to know; *Sirar)e*, *uru*, to be known; *Sirarezu*, not to be known. — *Kui*, nondeflecting verb, to be grieved at.

[Time-defining Local.] *Kokóro ürázürébá, mäte mizu, kúte kikázu, küráute sonó adzirái wó sirázu* ²⁾, when the mind is not present, we look and do not see; we hear and do not understand; we eat and do not know the taste of what we eat. Compare LEGGE, *Chinese Classics*. Vol. I. p. 232.

Kun-si iŕu tó sîté, zi-tókũ-sezáru koto nasi. Ziygu-íni aríte (átte), simo wo sinogázu. Ka-i ni aríte, kami wo fikázu. Onoré wó tadásiu-sîté, fító ni motomezarebá, sünavatsi ürámi nasi; Kani Tea wo üramizũ. Sino fító wo togamezũ. Karúga yuéní Kun-si ra yasúki ni wíte motte mái wó mátsu ³⁾. It does not occur that (*koto nasi*) the superior man having once entered on a fixed position, does not continue to be himself. Is he in a high situation, he does not condemn his inferiors. Is he in a low situation, he does not try to pull down his superiors. Rectifying himself and seeking for nothing from others, he has no dissatisfaction. Since he is not averse to Heaven, which is above him, and does not abuse the people, who are below him, so is the superior man always contented and abides his destiny.

Zi-toku, self-preservation. — *Zi-tókũ sezáru koto*, = the not remaining what one is, is the subject to *nasi* (is not). — *Sinogazu*, from *Sinog)i*, *u*, to turn off. — *Fikázu*, not draw or drag, from *Fik)i*, *u*. — *Motomezareba*, the time-defining local of *Motomezari*, not to seek for, and this from *Motom)e*, *uru*.

弗	有	弗	有
知	弗	能	有
弗	問	弗	學
措	問	措	學
	之		之

Manabazaru koto ari, kore wo manaude yoku-sezareba, okázu. Tovazaru koto ari, kore wo toŕute sirazareba, okázu ⁴⁾, if it happens that he has not learned something, and when he learns it, does not become master of it, he (the superior man) does not discontinue it. Is it that he has not examined something, and might he not after the examination understand it, he does not give it up.

¹⁾ *Tschung-yung*. XI.

²⁾ *Dai Gaku*. VII. 2.

³⁾ *Tschung-yung*. XIV.

⁴⁾ *Ibid.*, XX. 20.

[Concessive.] *Mi-kari no toki fakarázu mó taka wo tobásu*, at the time of the princely hawking the falcon is let fly even without design.

Fakarázu mó = *fakarázu-sité mó* from *fakárji*, *u*, to consider, to design.

Nippon nite irisi zen ni ra arazaredomo, *mare narázu*, = although (this coin) is not a coin cast in Japan, it is not rare.

Irisi, preterit of *Irji*, *u*, to cast, to found.

后^{ノチ} 養^{ヤシテ} 矣^{イマダ} 雖^{イフヒ} 心^{ココロ}
 嫁^{カエル} 子^コ 未^{ズレ} 不^ズ 誠^{マコトニ}
 者^{モノハ} 而^{シテ} 有^{アル} 中^{ナカ} 求^{モトメ}
 也 學^{マナシテ} 不^ズ 遠^{トホカラ} 之^{コレ}

Kokóro makoto ni kore wo motómebá (of *motómurebá*), *atarázũ tò iütómo*, *tóokarázi*; *ímada kó wo yásináu koto wo manánde*, *sikáu-sité notsi tótsugu* (of *ká-sürü*) *monōrá arázũ* ¹⁾, if (a mother) aims in uprightness of heart at it (towards the fulfilling of her motherly

duty), then even though she do not hit it, she will be not far from it. There never has been (a girl), who first learned to bring up a child, and then married afterwards.

Atarázu, not to hit, not to answer to, from *Atari*. *Tookarázi*, root-form, to be not far off, from *Tooki* (p. 168).

カ^カ サ^{サル} 錢^{ゼン} ズ^ズ 持^{モチ} ト^ト 日^{ニッ}
 シ^シ 金^{キン} 貨^カ イ^イ 行^{コト} 外^{グワイ} 本^{ホン}
 銀^{ギン} 幣^{ヘイ} ハ^ハ 日^{ニッ} 國^{クニ} 通^{ツウ}
 持^{モチ} 本^{ホン} 金^{キン} 用^{ヨウ} 金^{キン}
 行^{コト} 銅^{ドウ} 銀^{ギン} ハ^ハ 銀^{ギン}

Nippon tsuu-yon kin-gin to gwaí-koku no kin-gin ra motsi-yuku koto kurasí-karázu to iédomó, *Nippon tou-sen to kwa-hei ni kosirajezaru kin-gin ra motsi-yuku bekarazu* ²⁾, Japanese current gold and silver and foreign gold and silver, the export (of it) has no diffi-

culty; but Japanese copper money and uncoined (not made into coin) gold and silver may not be exported.

Siyan-bai-ításü koto kurasikarázũ tomo (or *to iédomó*). *Nippon kin-si no sima-monová siyan-bai-ításü bekarázu* ³⁾, = even if trade has no difficulty, concerning articles which are forbidden in Japan, in them no trade may be driven.

Nandzi ga sei- (制^{セイ}) *sité mo*, *sei-sezũ tomo*, *karera jahari kore wo suru de aru*, if you forbid it or forbid it not he will yet do it.

Matu sarádemó, even if it is not so. *Sári*, contracted from *Sakári* (page 109 N^o. 71), to be so.

¹⁾ *Dai Gaku*, IX, 2.

²⁾ Franco-Japanese Treaty of the 9 Oct. 1858, Art. XIV, al. 4.

³⁾ *Ibid.*, Art. VIII, al. 1.

[Future.] *Otoko asokonî tsuru tokira nuro wo 'zu to nan* ¹⁾, a boy, if he angles at that place, will get no fish.

破^ヤ 吾^カ 汝^ニ 國^{クニ} *Nandzi no kuni iraga-kuni no tãme ni gabürären koto jisúsiki*
 非^{アル} 國^{クニ} *ni ürü-mazi*, it will not last long, before your country will
 久^シ 所^ト 爲^ス be subdued by mine.

Yuku-sinyé karáru-mazi to sei-gou (誓^{チカ} 言^{コト}) *wo tatsurn koto*, the taking of an oath, that in future no change shall take place.

ナ^リ 損^{ソシ} セ^バ シ^シ シ^シ 飼^カ *Kari-kato no ku-den wo obóye, hon-foo wo mótte*
 有^{アル} 中^セ ツ^ツ オ^オ 方^カ *ygu-iku-siba, uaka-naka zi-son-zi aru maziki*
 間^マ ヲ^ヲ 養^ユ 本^ホ 口^ク *nari* ²⁾, if one observe the oral communica-
 敷^シ 仕^シ 育^ユ 法^フ 傳^デ *tion with regard to the feeding (of the silk-*
worm) and rear it according to my pre-
scriptions, it will then probably not happen that one suffers harm.

On-ki-dzukái-nasáru maziku soro, there is (*soro*) no occasion for your care, i. e. don't care about it; don't trouble yourself. — Δ *Káku-bitsu tai-zi-tá koto ni mo náru-mai*, it will be no matter of extraordinary importance.

大^タ 事^ジ Δ *Tai-zi-ta koto*, a matter of importance. Δ , an abbreviation of Δ Δ . If we take Δ instead of Δ , we have to do with a fusion of Δ Δ . Compare page 67, line 3

[Suppositive.] *Ki no ñe tomarite orizarn ni va* (or *orizarn kuse araba*), when (the falcon) stays on a tree, and does not come off (or: when he has the bad habit of not coming off).

Foko wo orizunba (of *orizaru ni va*), *itsu-made mo, ye wo karázu-site, hanaháda úyásu bési*, if (the falcon) does not come off his perch, one must, without baiting, let him suffer terrible hunger.

Iy' wo tsugi, toku wo tsugi, to-waza wo tsugu rai naradeva, motsirizu, if the expressions are not such as: to propagate a family, to propagate the good, to continue some trade, then (the character 紹, equivalent to *tsugi*) is not used.

Naradeva, ナラデハ, the isolated gerund of *Naránu*, not to be, used as suppositive form.

Mosi fütó wo osorete midzü wo nomazunba, in case (the falcon) shunning men, does not drink the water.

¹⁾ *Nippon o dai itsi-ran*, Vol. I, p. 11.

²⁾ *Io-san-fi-rok*, l'art d'élever les vers à soie au Japon par OUEKAKI MORIKOUNI, annoté et publié par MATTHIEU BONAFOUS. Ouvrage traduit du texte Japonais par J. J. HOFFMANN. Paris 1848. § 22.

The negation of a negation involves a strengthened assertion; e. g. *Gau rei* (号^ゴ令^{レイ}) *no yūkî-todôkazaru tokoro mo nasi*, there is not one place, to which the authority of the Government does not reach. See page 254.

Sirazunbá aru-bekarázû (不可不知也) for *Sirázu ni vá arû bekarázu*, i. e. in the not knowing — one may not be, = one ought to know.

Fagemi tsütomezumba aru-bekarazu waza nari, it is an occupation in which one may not be without zeal and diligence, i. e. in which zeal and diligence are of the most importance.

Faru aki va yasezunba aru bekarázu, in spring and in autumn (the hawking-falcon) must be lean. — *Yas)e, uru*, to become lean.

In the oral language the use is very common of the time-defining local ...*ne ba*, followed by *naránû* (not to be), to express the „necessity.” — *Saygu ni itasaneba naránû* (in the Yédo street-dialect: *Sayooni si-nakeri ya narane*), one must act so. — *Seneba naránû*, it must happen. — *Seneba naránû koto*, the necessity. — *Ide-tatsi seneba naránû de atta*, he was constrained to depart. — *Fitô ra Ten yori ukûru tokoro no negumi wo ari-gátakara neba naránû*, man must be thankful for the benefits he receives from Heaven. — *Ari-gataki*, adj., thankful.

VERBS EXPRESSING THE BEING, THE BECOMING AND THE CAUSING TO BE.

§ 96. **Ar**i, **u**, deflecting continuative verb, derived from **I** (= expire, go away), signifies being continually in a departing movement, to exist, to be ¹⁾. Its inflectional forms are: *Ari*, the root- and, by exception ²⁾, the predicate closing-form (= there is); *Ariû*, the substantive form, which is also used attributively. Comp. § 11. — *Arûte*, *Arûtera*, pron. *Atte*, *Attewa*, gerund, being, or as one is. — *Areba*, there or as one is; — *Aredomo*, although there is; — *Aran*, Δ *Arûu*, *Aroo* (ア^アラ^ラウ。ア^アロ^ロウ), future, there will be; *Aran koto kaku no gotosi* (有如此), be it so! (the termination of an oath). — *Arûba* (= *Aran* + *ni* + *ra*). conditional, if there is, might there be.

¹⁾ The Japanese themselves seem not to know, that they have continuative verbs, nor that there is a connection between *i* and *ari*. They see, as it appears from the *Wa-gun Sûwori*, in *Aru* a mere modification of 生^ナル, *Naru*, = to become, Lat. *feri*.

²⁾ By this exception they prevent a confusion of the closing form of *Ari* with that of *Are* (= to become), which is *Ariû* likewise.

Preterit.

Ariki, there was. *Aritari*)i, u, △ *Attari*, *Attaru*, *Atta*, has
Arisi, substantive and attributive form. been.
Arisi-yūe, whilst there was.
Arisikaba, „ „ „ *Attareba*, as there has been.
Attaredomo, though there has been.
Ariken, there shall or may have been. *Attaroo*, there will have been.
Arikeri)i, u, contin. (see § 82), have been. *Attaraba*, if there has been.

Negative.

Aráz)i, u, △ *Aránu*, not to be, § 91; *Arazár*)i, u, contin., not to be.

1. *Ari* has the definition, what exists, as subject, the definition where a thing exists, as Local terminating in *ni*, before it.

Fitó ari, man is; *Ari fító*, any one being. — *Itsi ni fító ari* (市有人), there are people on the market-place; *Fító itsi ni ari* (人在市), people are on the market-place. — *Kin-kwa-san kai-tsiu ni ari*, the Kin-kwa-san (gold-flower-mountain) is in the sea. — *Sono kuni ni itsutsu no tanátsu-mono ari*, in that country the five sorts of grain are met with. — *Nin ra kudamono no saneno utsúni árii mono nari*, the pith is something being in the middle of the kernel of fruit. — *Saivai ni ari*, being in prosperity, having luck. — *Bin-ku ni ari*, being in poverty and need. — *Dai-Gákū no mitsúvá méi-tókū wo akirókú ni súrū ni ári; tami wo arátā ni súrū ni ári; si-sen ni todomáru ni ari* ¹⁾, the way of the Great Study consists in illustrating illustrious virtue, it consists in renovating the people (in bringing it back to its primitive state!); it consists in resting in the highest excellence.

2. The definition where a thing is, followed by the subject, that exists, also occurs without the characteristic of the Local.

○
終_シ 事_ヲ 本_ホ 物_ヲ *Mono hon-batsū ari; waza siu-si ari* ²⁾, things have
始_シ = 有_リ 末_ヅ = 有_リ root and top; affairs have end and beginning. Con-
ceived as subject, *Mono* and *Waza* stand for *Mono va* and *Waza va*, and the li-
teral translation should be: As to things, there is a root and a top etc. Con-
ceived as local both definitions stand for *Mono ni va* and *Waza ni va*.

¹⁾ *Dai Gaku*, § 1.

²⁾ *Ibid.* § 3.

3. The spoken language characterises the definition, in what a thing exists, = what it is, by *de*. — *Sore wá yoki sake de ar'*, this is good wine.

4. If this definition is an action or a state, expressed by a verb, it is put in the Modal characterized by the termination *te* or *de* (see § 72). — *Akete ari*, to be in the opening, to open.

5. If it is a quality, expressed by an adjective in *ki*, as *Takaki*, high (see § 9. B. 1), the spoken language uses the adverbial form in *ku*. — *Tsüki ga takakü aru*, the high-standing (the culminating) of the moon.

6. By fusion of the adverbial form *kü* with *ari* (*kar*)*i*, *u* is produced. *Takakár**i*, *u*, continually to be high. Compare § 10. § 82.

7. If the definition consisting of a subject and *ari* (*Fító ari*, people are) precedes a substantive as attributive (or relative) quality, the subject of *aru* becomes a genitive definition, and as such generally characterized by *no* or *ga*. — *Fító no aru itsi*, a market-place on which are people. — *Iro no* (or *iro ga*) *aru kumó*, colors having (colored) clouds. — *Yoki nirói aru ki*, wood, that has a good smell.

Especially, Chinese substantives are made adjectives by the addition of *no aru* or *ga aru*; *ga + aru* in the spoken language passes into *gärü*. — *Sai-tsi* (材智), understanding; *Sai-tsi no aru fitó*, an intelligent man. — *Yekki* (悦喜), mirth; *Yekki ga aru koto* or *Yekkiaru koto*, a merry business. Compare § 10. page 114, Remark.

8. The negative *Aráz**i*, *u*, = not to exist, just as the affirmative *Ari*, has the definition, in which a thing does not exist, i. e. what it is not, in the Local in *ni* before it, mostly, for the sake of emphasis, still isolated by *va*. — *Rei ni arázü* (非禮), it is not polite; *Rei ni va arázü*, polite — it is not. — *Sika va* (= *Sika ni va*) *arázü* (不然), so it is not.

等 ^{タチ}	兄 ^ア	謂 ^ス	神 ^ハ	此 ^コ	
也 ^ニ	弟 ^ト	國 ^{クニ}	之 ^ノ	者 ^ハ	
	之 ^ノ	主 ^ミ	名 ^ナ	非 ^ハ	
	神 ^{カミ}	之 ^ノ	一 ^{ヒト}		

Yaso Kami. Kó va fitó fasirá no mi-na ni arázü.
Oho-kuni-nusi no Kami no ani-oto no Kami-
tatsi wo mōso nari, Yaso Kami or the eighty
superior beings. This is not the illustrious
name of one person. Thus people call the row
of Kamis of the elder and younger brothers of the Kami named the Great
Land-Lord.

9. The Passive *Ar**e*, *u*, *eru*, - to become, come into existence, is more particularly proper to the written language. — *Ko va kegare wó motsi usináru kami*

nari, *Mi fana wo arari-tamoru toki ni are-masi-tsu*, this (the goddess of the falling stars) is a *Kami*, who takes and looses dirt. She was (*masi-tsu*) produced (*are*), when (the gods of creation) cleansed their noses. — Ore is called *Ara-kane* (— *Are-kane*), as being considered metal in its primitive state (生金).

Remark. *Gōzār*i, u. The courtly epistolary style and the spoken language, instead of simple *Ari*, make use of the more ample *Gōzār*i or *Gōzār*i-másu, sounding, in a quick pronunciation, as *Gōzái*, or *Gōzái-más*’, in writing expressed by 御座有, *Go-za-ari*, which is equivalent to the expression: „to have the honor to be.” Courtesy employs this word even where it is — not suited. Like *Ari*, it has the complement of what a thing consists, i. e. what it is, if a substantive, in the Local in *de*, if an adjective in *ki*, in the adverbial form in *ku* (or *u*, page 106) before it. — *Sore wa nani de gozaru?* what is this? — *Nandoki de gozari-masu ka?* what o’clock is it? — *Iim de gozari-masu*, it is noon. — Δ *Anata de wa gosari-masenü*; *watakusi zi-sin ni itasi-masita*, = it is not you: I did it myself. — *Go ki-gen yorosu gozari-masu ka?* your disposition is it well? is it well with you? = how do you do? — *Ai-kawaru gi mo gozari-masenü*, so as ever. literally: there is no change at all.

§ 97. *Ori*i, u, deflecting continuative verb, derived from *i* (い) or *wi* (ゐ), = seat, to sit, means dwell, reside, having reference to a living being, that can remove itself. It is preceded by the definition of place, where anything dwells, as also of the condition or of the action, in which anything is, as Local or gerund with the termination *ni* or *de* (sometimes *te*). In definitions of place the spoken language makes use of *ni* or *de* indifferently.

Conjugation, regular: Root, *Ori* (居。留). Closing-form, subst. and attrib. form *orü*, pron. *or*’, he dwells, the dwelling. — *Or*e*ba*, *edomo*, *aba*, as, although, if he dwells. — *Ori*(*ki*, *si*, *keri* etc. has dwelled. — Gerund. *Ori**te* (オリテ), pron. *Otte*, which in writing is expressed by オツテ, dwelling; thence the Preterit *Ori*(*ta*)*i*, u, Δ *Otta* (オツタ). — *Or*á*zu*, Δ *Or*á*mu*, not to dwell; — *Or*ás*i*, u, 爲居, to make to dwell, to place; — *Or*ás*im*e, u, *eru*, 令居, to order to place. — *Samürá*i *wo siro ni orásimü*, order is given to place soldiers in the castle. — Passive form, used in speaking, *Or*ár*e*, u, *eru*. — *Sókó ni oraré*, = „hic sedetur,” for pray sit down, in speaking to one superior.

Examples of the use of *Ori*.

Utsi ni orü, or *ori-masu*, he is within, is at home. — *Fino soba ni orü*, he stays

at the side of the fire. — *Sinra nisino kunini orisi yori*, since the (people of) Sinra has dwelt in the western parts. — *Kun-si koreni órū* ¹⁾, the superior man stays there in (in virtue, as in his element). — *Orūni óté sono órū tokóro wo sírū* ²⁾, when (a bird some where) nestles, it knows the place where it is at home. — *Hító no kimi to nátte vá, zin ni ori, hitó no sin to nátte vá, kéi ni ori, kuni-támi tó mazivárebá, sin ni órū* ³⁾, when he (the noble man) becomes the lord of others, he rests in humanity; when he becomes the minister of others, he rests in reverence (towards the prince); if he has to do with the people of the country, then he dwells in uprightness. — Here we have a succession of three propositions of which only the last has the predicate closing-form *orū*, whereas in both the preceding the indefinite root-form *ori* is used.

Tabē, to eat; *Tabete órū*, to be eating. — *Tubes)i, u.* make eat, feed; *Tabesite órū*, to be feeding. — *Nom)i, u.* to drink; *Nonde órū*, to be drinking. — *Siri*, to know; *Sirite ori-másū*, to be knowing. — *Fanawo mite zasite órū* (看花ヲ坐ス), he sits beholding flowers. — *Kare ga ima-yagu ni kimono kite órū*, he is dressed in the fashion. — *Motte wa ore-domo fito ni misénū*, although he has it with him, he does not let others see it.

The causative *Os)i, u* (押ス), pron. *óssū*, which being derived from the root *I* (居^イ), has the original signification of to seat, make stay some where. includes the idea of our print, e. g. *Mókū ni in wó ósū*, to print a mark in wood; *Kami ni katótsi wo ósū*, to print a figure on or in paper; *Kurái wo ósū*, to maintain the throne. Employed as a substantive, it refers to something that presses, and characterises the word *Nézūmi-ósi* the mousetrap as something that presses the mouse, and makes it stay.

§ 98. *I* (井), *Ite, Iru*, nondefl. auxiliary verb, = to be in, a variation of *Or)i, u.*

候
命
易
以

 ヤ
ス
ギ
ニ
モ
ツ
テ

 君
子
居
Kun-si ra yásūki ni ite motté mǎi wo matsū ¹⁾, the superior man is quiet and calm, waiting for the appointments (of Heaven). — *Dzu-kin wo kaburazu ni iru*, to be without having a covering on the head. — *Tsikára nákkū narite iru*, or Δ *Tsikara ngo natte oru*, to have become powerless.

The root *i* or *wi* (居^イ), seat, occurs in compounds as: *Tori-wi* or *Tori-i*, = bird-seat, the name of certain doors, which are at the entrance to Japanese

¹⁾ *Tschung-yung.* X.

²⁾ *Dai Gaku.* III. 2.

³⁾ *Ibid.* III. 3.

⁴⁾ *Tschung-yung.* XIV

temples. — *Kārā-i* (位²/_#), from *Kārā*, saddle, thus a seat raised as a saddle, a throne. — *Nauri* or *Nai*, the old-Jap. name of earthquake, from *na*, = dis-, and *i*. — *I-su*, = seat-nest, the chair on which one sits with the legs crosswise. — *I-toko*, seat. — *I-ziri*, bed. — *Iyé* (△ *é*), in Eastern Japan *ya*, contracted *yá*, the house. — *I-tsi*, = seat-way, the market-place.

NONDEFLECTING VERBS IN I.

§ 99. As these, with respect to their conjugation, are connected with the verb *I, Iru*, to be, they are placed here ¹⁾.

The conjugation of the nondeflecting verbs in *i*.

	Aorist.	Continuative present.	Preterit. pres.	Future.	Continuative Fut.
Root-form..	i.	[iri, uri, yuri.]	itari, △ ita.	in, △ iû. en.	[inzi.]
Imperative...	i-yo, i-sai.				
Closing-form..	u.	iru, uru, yuru.	itari, △ ita.		inzu, △ iûzu.
Subst. and Attr.		iru, uru, yuru.	itaru, △ ita.		△ iûzuru.
Gerund	ite.		itarite.		
Local		ireba, ureba, yureba.	itareba.		△ iûzureba.
<i>as, when.</i>					
Concessive . . .		ire- ure- yure- domo. domo. domo.	itare-domo.		
<i>although.</i>					
Suppositive . . .			itarába.	in-va, △ iba, △ iû-narába.	
<i>if.</i>					

Causative: *isi, osi, asi, usi*.

Negative: *izi, u, △ inu, onu*.

Synopsis of nondeflecting verbs in *i*.

I. Intransitives.

1. **Si**i, **yu**, **iru** or **yuru** (強²/_#。△。△。△), to force, compel. — *Sîte*, by force. — ? From *si*, to do, and *i*, *iru*, to be.

2. **Sii**, シイ; **Siyu**, シユ; **Siiru** or **Siyuru**; gerund *Sîte*; supposit. *Sîiba*; to be gone; to be dead, from *si* (去²/_シ), to go away (not from 死²/_シ, to die), and #,

¹⁾ What RODRIGUEZ in his *Éléments* § 38 says about these verbs, is not of that nature to make a treatment of this subject unnecessary here.

井 ν . Some also write シ ヒ , *Sivi*. Causat. *Süs)i*, u , 弒 シ , to dispatch, send out of the world. Compounds with *Sü* are: *Me-sü*, 盲 メ , = to be eye-dead or blind; *Mesütärü*, Δ *Mesüta*, has become blind. — *Mimi-si)i*, 聾 ミ , yu , *iru*, or *yuru*, *ite*, = to be ear-dead or deaf.

3. **Ki**, 來 キ , to come. Imperat. *iyō*, *oyō*, *oi*, in *Sikok ei*; Gerund *ite*; Fut. *en*, old-Jap. *ómü*, *on*, Δ *oo*, *oozu*, *oozuru*; Negat. *ónü*, at *Yédo anu*.

4. **I-ki**, 去 イ 來 キ , = go and come; to breathe, live (生). *Ik)iru*; *Ikite-iru*, 在生, to be living; Fut. Δ *Ik)iü*; Causat. *ás)i*, u , to make live, to enliven.

5. **De-ki**, 出 デ 來 キ , = to come out of, to procede, to be produced, to be achieved; Lat. *procedere*. *Dek)i*, *iru*, *ite*; Fut. Δ *iü*; Negat. *inü*, vulg. *énü*. Caus. *Dekas)i*, u , to produce; thence *Dekas' mono*, a product. A variation of *Deki* is *idéki*.

6. **Tsüki**, 盡 ツ , to come to the end, to consume, *v. i.*, to get exhausted or consumed. *Tsük)i*, *iru*; Negat. *inn*, not to become exhausted; Causat. *Tsükús)i*, u , to exhaust, to consume; Pass. *Tsükar)e*, *uru*, to be in a state of exhaustion. It is to be distinguished from deflecting *Tsük)i*, u , 著 ツ 即, to come to.

7. **Oki**, 起 オ , to rise, to get up, *se lever*. *Ok)iru*, *uru*, *ite*, *ita*; Fut. Δ *iü*; Causat. *ós)i*, u , to make rise, to raise, to establish.

8. **Sügi**, pron. *Sü-ngí*, 過 ス , contracted from *süé + ni + ki*, = to go (*ki*) on the top (of anything), to rise above, to surpass, exceed. *Sug)iru*, *uru*, *ite*. Causat. *ós)i*, u .

9. **Fi**, 乾 フ , dry. *F)iru*, to dry, *v. n.* to ebb. *Sico no f)iru toki*, at low water.

10. **Ni**, 似 ニ , to be like, to resemble. *N)iru*, *ite*, *ite ari* = *itari*; Negat. *izu*, not to be like; Causat. *is)e*, u , *uru*, *eru*, to make to like; to imitate. *Nise-mono*. imitation.

11. **Ori**, 下 オ , to descend. *Or)iru*, also *uru*; *ite*, *itari*; Fut. *in*, Δ *iü*; *into su*, to be about to descend; Negat. *izu*, *izar)i*, u , not to descend; Causat. *Orós)i*, u , to make descend.

12. **ōtsi**, 落 オ , to fall down. *ōts)i*, *ite*, *itar)i*, u , Δ *ita*; Closing-form *(ōts)u* or *i-másü*; Attributive *iru*, also *uru*, (*ōtsürü tsü*, a falling stone); Fut. *in*, Δ *iü*; (Condít. *iba*; Negat. *izu*. Causat. *Otós)i*, u , to make fall: to fell.

13. **Mitsi**, 満 ミ , to be filled. *Mits)u*, *uru*, *ite*. Negat. *Miténu*.

14. **Kütsi**, 枯 ク , to rot, *v. i.* to wither. *Kats)iru*, *uru*, *ite*.

15. **ōdzi**, 忙 オ , to be afraid. *ōdz)u*, *iru*, also *uru*. Causat. *Odós)i*, u , to make any one afraid.

16. **Fadzi**, 辱 フ 恥, to blush, to be ashamed. *Fadz)i*, u , *uru*, *ite*; Imperat.

iyó; Adverb. *ärákürá*; Adj. *Fadzúkásiki*, timid. Causat. *Fadzúkásim)e*, *uru*, to make blush, to shame.

17. **Karabji**, 枯^カ_ヒ, *iru*, *i-nuru*, to dry, *v. i.* *Kara*, halm; *Kar)e*, *uru*, to dry up.

18. **Kabi**, 微^カ_ヒ, mould. *Kabiru*, to grow mouldy; metaphorically: to be grieved.

19. **Sabji**, *uru*, to rust; metaphorically: to be solitary and still.

20. **Wabji**, *iru*, also *uru*, *ite* etc. 謝^ワ_ヒ, intercession, to intercede, to excuse.

21. **Nobji**, *iru*, *itō*, 延^ノ_ビ 申, to stretch, to be extended. *Nobór)i*, *u*, to be stretching, *v. i.* to go aloft, to ascend. — *Kceuri no nobóruwo miru*, to see the ascending of smoke. — *Fino nobóri*, the rise of the sun. — *Yamani nobóri*, to go aloft on a mountain, to ascend a mountain. Fact. *Nobós)e*, *uru*, to make stretch, or ascend. — *Tskai wo Miyako ye nobosete*, despatching messengers up to Miyako. — *Yaki-mono wo kuruma ni nobósu*, to work up pottery on the potter's wheel. — *Nob)e*, *uru*, *v. tr.*, to stretch, to extend, to raise.

22. **Kobi**, 媚^コ_ヒ, to flatter. *Kob)i*, *iru*, *uru*, *ite*; Imperat. *iyó*; Fut. *in*, Δ *iñ*. — *Fitó ni kobiru*, to flatter men.

23. **Korobji**, *u*, *uru*, 腐^ク_ヒ, corruption, decay, to pass toward destruction. Causat. *ás)i*, *u*, to cause to decay.

24. **Fokorobji**, *u*, *uru*, 綻^ホ_ヒ, to tear, to burst, *intr.*, to rip as a seam, open as a flower bud.

25. **Forobi**, 亡^ホ_ヒ 滅, to become destroyed, to perish. *Forob)i*, *u*, *i-nu*; Fut. *inu*, *in*, Δ *iñ*. Causat. *ós)i*, *u*, to destroy. *Forobosár)e*, *uru*, to be ruined or destroyed.

26. **Fotobji** (not *Fitobi*). *iru*, *uru*, 液^ホ_ヒ, to soften, *v. i.* Causat. *Fotobas)i*, *u*, to make soft.

27. **Furubji**, *iru*, *uru*, 古^フ_ヒ, to get old; to grow old (old, opposed to new).

II. Transitives.

28. **Kji**, *iru*, *ite*, Fut. *in*, Δ *iñ*, 著^キ, to put on (a dress).

29. **Kovi**, 戀^コ_ヒ, Δ *Koi*, longing for. *Koe)i*, *u*, *iru*, *uru*, to long after, to love. Causat. *Koros)i*, *u*, to cause to love, to attract one's love; *Korósiki*, charming, amiable.

30. **Mótsii**, 用^モ_ツ, to use, to employ. *Motsi)i*, *u*, *iru*, or *yuru* (\pm *u*); *itar)i*, *u* (\pm *u*). Fut. *Motsi)in*; Condit. *iba*; Negat. *izu* or *inu* (\neg 不^フ 用^モ_ツ), *izar)i*, *u*; Pass. *irare*, to be used, to serve, *v. i.* We consider *Motsi)i*, *iru* the continuative

form of *Mots*i, u (持^{モツ}), to take hold of, seize, use, of which the Gerund *Motte* (以^{モツ}) is equivalent to the word expressive of relation, with. Some, although incorrectly, also write モチビ。モチフ etc. The predicate closing-form モチユ generally passes for a passive (to be used, to be of use to) perhaps from the analogy of the form with the derivative *Iyu* (to get a shot), from *I* (to shoot). See § 89. 2.

On account of the important part, which this verb plays, some instances of its use follow here.

Koré wo surü mono vá tókü, koré wo mótsi-uru mono vá šdzüká naréba, šnärátsi sai tsüné ni tárü ¹⁾, if those which produce them, are quick, and those which use them are slow, riches will ever be sufficient. — *Sono riyau-tan wo torite* (Δ *totte*), *sono tsin wo tami ni motsivu* ²⁾, he takes hold of the two extremes (of good and bad) and employs the Mean of them in his government of the people. — *Gu nisite midzükára motsiuru koto wo konómu* ³⁾, being ignorant he is fond of using his ownself (his own judgement). — *Onae kore wo nani ni motsiuruka?* or, more politely: *Anáta kore wo nani ni O motsii nasáru ka?* for what purpose do you use this?

31. I, 射^イ 弋, shooting. *Iru, Ite*, to shoot at, to hit. *Mato wo iru*, to shoot at a mark. *Tori wo iru*, to shoot birds. *Yumi-iru*, to shoot with a bow. Passive *Iye, Iyu*, to be shot. *Iyu sisi* (所射穴), = shot meat, venison.

32. Mukui, 報^ウ, 1. reflecting; 2. retaliation, retribution. *Muku*i, *yu, yuru*, to retaliate, to retribute; Negat. *izu, izari*, not to retribute. The recent orthography ムクビ。ムクフ is erroneous. — *Inu wa on wo siri, ata wo mukuu*, the dog knows favor and retaliates wrong.

報^ウ 知^チ 狗^{イヌ}
 仇^ウ 恩^{オン}

33. Abji, iru (not *uru*), 浴^{アビ}, = to shoot with bath-water, to splash, to squirt, to cast water up or out. *Yu-abiru*, to sprinkle anything with warm water, to wash it. *Midzu wo abiru*, 浴^{アビ} 水^{ミヅ}, to squirt cold water. Since, as appears from this expression, *Abiru* has the word water for its object direct, it cannot mean to wash oneself or to bathe.

34. M*i*, iru, 見^ミ, to see. Imperat. *igo*; Gerund *ite*; Pret. *itari*, Δ *ita*; Fut. *in*, Δ *in*; Negat. *izu*, Δ *inn*. Pass. *ige, iyu*, to appear; *irare*, to become visible. Compounded with *mi*, to see, are:

¹⁾ *Dai Gaku*. X. 19.

²⁾ *Tschung-yung* VI.

³⁾ *Ibid.* XXVIII

35. **Ura-m)i**, ite, u, uru, 恨^{ウラミ}, to see backwards, to be disgusted with...
Fut. *imn*, *in*, △ *iü*; Negat. *izu*.

36. **Kangám)i**, iru, 鑑^{カンガム} 鑒 監, to look in the glass; to consider.

37. **Kaheri-m)i**, iru, 顧^{カヘリ}, to look back.

THE FOREGOING NONDEFLECTING VERBS IN **I**, ARRANGED ALPHABETICALLY.

Abi . N ^o . 33.	Forobi. . 25.	Kabi . . 18.	Kobi . . 22.	Mitsi . . 13.	Odzi. . . 7.	Sugi . . . 8.
Deki . . . 5.	Fotobi. . 26.	Kangám 36.	Korobi . 23.	Metsii. . 30.	Ori . . . 11.	Tsuki . . 6.
Fadzi . . 16.	Furubi . 27.	Karabi. . 17.	Kovi . . 29.	Mukui. . 32.	Otsi . . . 12.	Urami . . 35.
Fi 9.	I 31.	Kaherimi 37.	Kutsi . . 14.	Ni 10.	Sabi . . . 19.	Wabi . . . 20.
Fokorobi. 24.	Iki . . . 4.	Ki . . . 3. 28.	Mi . . . 34.	Nobi . . 21.	Sü . . . 1. 2.	

§ 100. I. **Ni**, 爲 = 矣 =, = to be, is; Gerund *Níte*, Fut. *Nan*, is equivalent to our copula, to be, when in connection with a precedent substantive it implies, that that substantive is a definition, which is ascribed to the subject of the proposition. Derived from the Local termination *ni* and from *i* (= to be, exist, § 96) the verb *Ni* means really an existence or being in...

It is peculiar to the written language, and except the root-form, which is of use in coördination of propositions, only the Gerund *Níte* and the Future *Nan* are to be met with, whereas for the further conjugation the continuative *Nar)i*, *u* is used (§ 100. II). Examples:

[Root-form.] *Kin to iŕü fító va takümi ni*, *Nin to iŕü fító vá tsuri wo yókü su* ¹⁾, one *Kin* is (or was) an architect, one *Nin* knows (or knew) how to use the angle.

[Gerund.] *Tane va mi-wake-gataki mono nite*, *ku-den oosi* ²⁾, the seed (of silkworms) is a difficult object to judge of, and there are many oral traditions respecting it.

[Future.] The forms *..ni nan* and *..to nan*, the first preceded by a substantive, the second, by the substantive form of a verb, have a potential force, *ni-nan* being a coupling of *ni*, to be, and *nan*, the Future of *ni*, *nuru* (§ 84), whereas *to nan* stands for *koto nan*, or, as some will, for *tomo nan* also. Compare § 95. 2. 1). — *Kono ori kara mohaya mina mina utari taranure mote itonámü koto ninan* ³⁾, from this time all (the work) shall be a matter (*koto*) which shall be

¹⁾ *Das Buch von Tausend Wörtern*, aus dem Schinesischen, mit Berücksichtigung der Koreischen und Japanischen Uebersetzung ins Deutsche übertragen von Dr. J. HOFFMANN. 1840. N^o. 925—928.

²⁾ *Yoo-san fi-rok*. § 5.

³⁾ *Ibid*.

done singing and playing. — *Ezu to nan*, they will not get. See page 259 line 1. — *Kevi no Dai Miyoo-zin wa kono Ten-wau wo agame-matsuru to nan* ¹⁾, with regard to the great illustrious spirit of Kevi, this emperor will have been honored (as such). — *Kono siu* (宗^ス) *ni omó-muki-keru to nan* ²⁾, he will have been converted to this sect.

Remark. In RODRIGUES' *Élém.* § 54 lines 16, 17 the verb *Ni* here treated is mentioned with the words: „*De, nite, site, Étant.* — Ces trois mots s'emploient quelquefois au lieu du verbe substantif.” — *Site* is the gerund van *S'i, u, uru*, to do. See § 103.

II. **Nár**i, u (也^ナ), deflecting continuative verb, derived from **Ni** (= to be, § 100. I). It is immediately preceded by the definition, of what the subject consists, or what it is. Inflectional forms, the same as of *Ari* (§ 96): *Nári* is the root- and, though by exception, the closing-form also; *Nárrü*, Δ *Na* (§ 12), the substantive form, which is also used as attributive. Gerund *Nárite*, Δ *Natte*; Causal *Naréba*; Fut. *Naran*, Δ *Naroo*; Condit. *Narába*, in the spoken language generally abbreviated to *Nara* (see § 76).

1. *Nari* is used as closing-form in: *Tókü vá moto nári*; *Sai vá süé nari* ³⁾, virtue is the foundation; fortune the top. — *Fino fíkári akiráka nári*, the sunlight is clear.

2. *Naru* is substantive in: *Katátsi no madoka náru wá Tenni atári, anáno keta* (or *kaku*) *náru wá Tsi ni narau*, = that the shape (of the Chinese copper money) is round, answers to the heaven, that its opening is square, is an imitation of the earth. — *Ame náru wa in-yau no ki nári* (雨^{アメ}也^ナ者^ハ陰^キ陽^ニ之^ノ氣^キ也^ナ), that which is rain (= the rain) is an emanation of the tellural and solar principle.

3. *Naru* is attributive in: *Mata ki-náru mayu wo tsükürü káiko ári*, there are also silkworms, which make yellow cocoons.

4. The attributive form *Naru*, Δ *Na*, serves to derive adjectives from substantives and adverbs. (See § 12, page 115). *Iyé no katawara naru hayási*, a wood at the side of the house.

5. The Gerund *Nárite*, Δ *Nátte*, is generally superseded by *Nite* and *Ni-site* (§ 100, I), probably to prevent a confusion with *Nárite*, - giving sound, or

¹⁾ *Nippon woo dai itsiran.* I. 10.

²⁾ *Ibid.* VII. 46 recto.

³⁾ *Dai Gaku.* X. 7.

with *Narite*, = *Narete*, becoming. — *Kokoro-bāse makoto nari*. *Kokoro-bāse makoto ni sītō*, *sikōu-sitē notsi kokoro tadāsi* ¹⁾, the will is truth. The will being true, the heart is then rectified.

6. The negative **Narāz**i, u (也^ナ止^ズ), = not to be, is avoided and, as a rule, superseded by the analytical form **ni-arāzū** or **ni-arānū**. *Waga koto ni urāzu*, it is not my business. (See page 162. 8).

7. **Nari**, with its inflectional forms, particularly its closing-form, is in the written language, used periphrastically also, to lengthen or round off a period, and is preceded by the predicate verb proper in its substantive form. The spoken language of Yédo uses *Mas*i, *u* for the same object (see § 101). Examples: *Kono toki va kaiko ūmōre-idzuru nāri*, = it is at that time that the silkworm comes out. *Idē*, *Idzuru*, to come out. — *Kāiko samūsā ni tacezu*, *si-suru nari*, the silkworm cannot bear frost, it dies. — *Kusū wo kārāsu naraba*, if one gives grass for food. — *Anda no hoo ni sobokū ga arinūsū nara*, *sore mō kai-māšoo* ²⁾, if you have sapan-wood, I will buy it too. — *Yāsui nara*, *tori-māšoo* ³⁾, if it is cheap, I will take it. — *O kai nasaru nara*, if you buy.

III. **Nar**e, u, **eru**, **uru** (成^ナ), = to become, Lat. *fieri*, the passive of *Ni*, = to be (§ 100. I). As there is a homonymous *Nar*e, u, *eru*, which being formed from another root *Ni*, means to be boiled, become tame, the form *Nare*, when it means to become, is not employed, but now generally represented by the active form **Nar**i, u, and the immediately precedent, appositive definition, what or how any thing becomes, has to show by its inflectional termination **to**, **ni** or the adverbial **ku** (§ 9, page 111), that *Nari* is not used with the active signification of to be, but supersedes *Nare*, = to become.

Observations concerning the use of *Nari*, as substitute for *Nare*, = to become.

1. The apposition, what any thing becomes, when it is some thing concrete, characterized by the suffix **to**.

Amē kōrite yūki tō nārū, the rain, congealing, becomes snow. — *Ten-Tsi no seki-in* ⁴⁾ *atataka-nāru toki va ame to nari*, *samūki toki va yuki to naru* (or *nāru nari*) ⁵⁾, the accumulated tellural matter of the heavens and earth, when it is warm, be-

¹⁾ *Dai Gaku*. § 5.

²⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 40.

³⁾ *Ibid.* p. 37.

⁴⁾ 天^テ地^チ積^キ陰^{イン}.

⁵⁾ *Kasira-gaki kin-moo dzu-i*. I. 7. recto.

comes rain, when it is cold, it becomes snow. — Since they are coördinate, the former of the two propositions closes with the root-form (*ame to*) *nari*, the latter with the closing-form (*yuki to*) *naru*. So, likewise, in: *Kumova san-séuno ki nari*. *Tsi-ki nobóríte (nobótte) kumóto nári*, *Ten-ki kuddríté ameto nárrü nari* ¹⁾, clouds are the exhalation of mountains and rivers. The exhalation of the earth rising becomes clouds, the exhalation of the heavens descending becomes rain, or, literally: is becoming rain. — *Motsüürn tokinbá, nezümi mo torá to nari*; *motsüzáru tokinbá, torá mo nezümi to naru*, if one make use of it (if one attach value to it), even the mouse becomes a tiger; if one attach no value to it, then even the tiger becomes a mouse. — *Fító no kimi to nátte vá, zin ni órú* ²⁾, if (a noble man) becomes a prince over others, he has humanity for foundation. — *Kava wakarete fütátsu to naru*, the river divides into two branches. — *Kore naravasi to nári-táru nári*, this has become a custom.

2. The apposition, what something becomes, characterized by **ni**; a construction peculiar to the classic language.

Kuni tsu kami om'na- (onna-) ni naríte (化^ナ爲^ル而^シ) mitsi ni mukaveri ³⁾, the god of that district became an old woman and came to meet (him) on the way. — *Kora torini narerisi kami nari (此者於鳥所成之神也)*, this is a god changed into a bird. *Narerisi*, the attributive form of the preterit of *Nari* (compare § 80 line 16). — *Kova Fíno kami no mi-kabane ni nari-maséru nari*, this (kami) has become the corpse of the god of fire. If *ni* were superseded by *no* (thus *kabane no*), an existence from the corpse would be meant, for the same writer says of another kami: *Kova Fíno kami no tsino nareru nari (血之所化也)*, this is a production from (has arisen from) the blood of the fire-god. — *Nami kazé mo tawoyuka ni naríte...*, also waves and wind becoming softer... — *Ken-go (堅^ク固^ク) ni naru koto*, becoming sound.

3. If the apposition, what something becomes, is an adjective in *ki* (§ 9. B. page 105), it stands in its adverbial form in **ku**.

Kara-kane fūrúku naríte sono iro akaku naru nari, the Chinese metal (an alloy of copper and silver) growing old, his color becomes red. — *Aritaru mono no náku naritaru koto*, the annihilation of a thing that has been.

¹⁾ *Kasira-gaki kin-moo dzu-i*. I. 6. verso.

²⁾ *Dai Gaku*. III. 3.

³⁾ *Nippon-ki*. 14. 13 recto.

4. The materials from which any thing becomes, is put in the Ablative or Genitive, characterized by **yori** or by **no**.

Midzu yori naru mono, something that has arisen from water. — *Fino kami no tsino nareru nari*, it has arisen from the blood of the god of fire, = it is an emanation from the blood...

5. The definition, by what a thing becomes, if it is a verb, is put in its root-form before *Nari*.

Kono sima wa siro-nawa no kori-nareru nari, this island is a clotting of the sea-foam.

6. *Nari*, employed impersonally (without a subject, as in Germ. *es wird*), and preceded only by an appositive definition what it is to be, characterized by **ni** or **to**.

Ni-gwats' ni nareba, = when it becomes (comes to) the second month. — *Sidzankani naru*, it grows calm. — *Magn ni* (or *Magn to*) *nareba*, itow *torásimū*, as cocoons become formed, one has the thread taken from them. — *Notsūni iro-irono yamāi to nārū*, or *naru-nari*, afterwards arise all sorts of illness.

IV. 1. **Nās)i, u**, deflecting causative verb, = to cause to be; to make (生。成。爲。化。作), from *Ni*, = to be (§ 100. I).

Fu-sen wo nāsū ¹⁾, to produce evil. — *Fitō no zin-sai wo nāsū*, originate cleverness in others, make others grow clever. — *Korē wo nāsu bēsi*, this must be done. — *Korē wo nāsū koto nakāre*, do this not! (§ 93. 2.). — *Ten no nasēru wasarai*, calamities which heaven has caused.

2. **Nasáz)i, u; Nasazár)i, u**, negat. not cause to be, not produce. — *Kore wa nasazārū besī*, = as to this, one ought not to do it, this may not be done.

3. **Nasás)i, u**, causat., to make produce.

4. **Nasásim)e, uru**, cause that one makes be, give order that one makes, to bring about.

5. **Nasár)e, u, uru**, become produced or done, to happen. Imperative *Nasáre*, let there become done, sounding in the popular language of Nagasaki *Nahári*, *Nahai* and *Naherri* too ²⁾).

The use, which courtesy makes of the passive *Nasar)e, u, uru*, will be illustrated in the Appendix to this Chapter.

¹⁾ *Dai Gaku*. VI. 2.

²⁾ Observation by the late Mr. R. S. DE SAINT AULAIRE, interpreter for the Japanese language.

§ 101. **Mas**i, u (坐^マ), deflecting v., to abide, reside, originally *ĩmäs*i, u, from *ĩma*, abbreviated *ma* (間^マ), = space, spot, or with reference to time, while, interval and *s*i, u, to be active, do. Gerund *Masĩte*, by elision *Maĩte* also; Pret. *Maser*i, u, *Masik*i, *eri*, u; *Masĩta*, *Mas'ta*; Fut. *Masan*, Δ *Masoo*, pronounced as *Mašoo* (see page 209, line 12). Negat. Δ *Masėnũ*, instead of *Masėnũ* (see page 248).

1. In the elevated style *Masi* supersedes the commoner *Ar*i, u, to exist, and *Or*i, u, dwell, and just as it, is preceded by the definition of place, where something is, in the Local. E. g. *Ko va Oki tsu miya ni mäsũ kami nari* ¹⁾, this is a kami dwelling in the chapel of Oki.

2. *Masi* is used as an auxiliary verb, when an eminent subject is spoken of, and is preceded by the verb with which it is connected in the root-form (*a*) Present or *b*) Future), or also *c*) in the Gerund. Examples:

a) *Ama-teräsũ Kami*, = the Kami enlightening all around, is also called *Ama-teräsi-mäsũ Kami*.

[*..ni-mäsũ.*] *A. va B. Kami no mi fara ni-mäsũ*, A. is the mother of the Kami B. ²⁾. (*Ni*, *Nite*, to be, see § 100. 1.) — *Tamayori-fimé no mikoto va Kamo no mi oyano Kami ni-mäsũ* ³⁾, Her Highness Lady Tamayori is the Kami of the ancestors of Kamo.

[*..nari-mäsũ.*] *Kono mi fasira no Kami va mina fĩtõri-gami nari-mäsĩte*, *ni-mi wo kākũsi-tamāviki* ⁴⁾, these three gods were gods standing alone, and kept themselves hidden. — *Kono fimé no gani vá N. Kami ni mi-äri-masėri*, this goddess has matched herself with the god N. (See § 80). —

也^{ナリ} 所^{ツミ} 爲^シ 此^{コノ} *Kono sima vá ye to sũtũ umi-maseru nari*, this island —
生^マ 胞^エ 嶋^{シマ} (the gods) have produced (it) as an after birth. — *Ma-*
坐^セ 而^ト 者^ハ *seru*, the attributive form of *Maseri*, the preterit of
Masi. (See § 80).

[*..masi-mäsũ*, = to be being.] *Ten wgu N. no miya ni masi-mäsũ*, the emperor is residing in the palace N. — *Buts zin va fĩtõ no negari ni yotte ka-go* (加^カ 護^ゴ) *si-mäsi-masedomó, sono mi* (其身) *kari-kata ni orosoka nareba, ikagara sen?* ⁵⁾ although Buddha and the spirits assist, complying with the wish of men: if, in the rearing (of the silkworm) one is negligent, what will it avail? — *Siyuk-ke*

¹⁾ *Kami-yono mi-sudzi.*

²⁾ *Ibid.*

³⁾ *Ibid.*

⁴⁾ *Ibid.*

⁵⁾ *Tõo-san fi-rok. II. 11 recto.*

(出家^{しゅけ} *ヶ*, pron. *šukke*) *no nozōni masi-masi-keredomo, tsitsi yurusu tamarázu*, he wished to quit the paternal house (i. e. to become a monk), but the father did not grant it him.

b) [*..amasi.*] By grafting *masi* on the form of the Future, *..am*, *..an*, by which *amasi* is gotten, a periphrastic future is formed. *Sin*i, *uru*, to go away; *Iuótsi sinamasi* ¹⁾, life will perish. See § 75. 5.

c) *Masi* in connection with a gerund, used as well in the elevated style as in the polite conversational. — *Kōno Kami wa Susano wo no mikoto to tsikára wo arasete masi-tamaru nari* ²⁾, this Kami wrestles with the moon-god Susano wo no mikoto, literally: he is (*masi*) measuring his strength etc. — *△ Kore wa yaburete imásu* ³⁾, this is torn. — *Fitō maru ni ikūra faitte iuúsū ká* ⁴⁾, in a bale, how much goes in it? *Fa-ir*i, *u* (開^{ひらく}), to enter.

There is no verb of which the polite spoken language makes a more frequent use, than *Masi*, and as it, grafted on the root-form of verb, generally has to express the inflectional forms, whereas the verb itself to which it is added remains unchanged, in its root-form, a knowledge of the conjugation of this auxiliary verb will be found without any other. The forms, which are in use in the spoken language, are limited to:

Másu, △ *Mas'*, is, being.

Másuka? is it?

Másūua? is it not?

Mase, imperat. be!

Masite, △ *Maste*, gerund.

Masita, △ *Masta*, has been.

Maseba, as it is.

Masedomo, although it is.

Masiyoo, △ *Mašoo*, it will be.

Masu-uara, if it is.

Maséuu, △ *Maseng*, it is not.

The forms *maszu*, *maszeba*, *maszredomo*, quoted by Mr. R. BROWN, *Grammar* XXIV, for *masu*, *maseba*, *masedomo*, I have neither found in any original Japanese writing, nor observed in conversations with Japanese. To what dialect do these forms belong?

From the *Shopping-Dialogues*, published by us, which particularly come under notice as a faithful representation of the polite language of Yédo, it is obvious that *Masi* is used as the final word of a proposition indifferently whether the speaker or the person spoken to or something else, is the subject of it. Thus it may,

¹⁾ *Wagun Sincori*, under *Sinu*.

²⁾ *Kami-yono mi-sudzi*.

³⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 24.

⁴⁾ *Ibid.* p. 34.

without the speaker's attaching any importance to it, be used only to round off the proposition, and express our „please” just as little as „have the honor.”

Examples of the use of *Masi* in the spoken language, borrowed from the *Shopping-Dialogues*.

Kono fūto wa dare de ari-masūka, = this man — who is he? *Watākūsi no tsuki-yai de ari-masū*, he is my bosom-friend. *Anāta no O na wa nani to i-masūká?* your name — what is it called? *Watākusino na wa ... to i-masū*, my name is called ... (S.-D. 19).

Sina wo miru-koto wa deki-masūka? The seeing of your goods — can that take place? (*deki-masū na?* cannot it take place?) *Deki-masū*, it can take place. (S.-D. 23).

Anāta wa too-šo no fūto de ari-masūka? Are you an inhabitant of this place? *Watākūsi wá too-šo no mono de ari-masu*, I am someone of this place. (S.-D. 20).

Kono nedan wa ikūra si-masūká? the price of it — to how much does it (amount)? (S.-D. 34).

Šoo-tsi si-masita, I have understood you. (S.-D. 41.)

Miyoo-nitsi Go hen-too itási-mášoo, to-morrow I will give you an answer. (S.-D. 39.)

Watākūsi wa kore wo zonzi-masēnū, I do not know it. (S.-D. 26).

Firu-majeni wa mairi-ye-masēnū, before noon I cannot come. (S.-D. 17).

Rok-kin ni atari-masū na? Is not that about six pounds? (S.-D. 8) ¹⁾.

Watāksa hanakāda Go dža-ma (即^マ差^サ魔^マ) *de gozari-masēn'ká?* Am I not your disturber? Don't I disturb you? the ordinary question of anyone who unasked pays a visit.

§ 102. **Samurav**)i, u (侍^{サマライ}。候。伺候), also **Savurav**)i, u, △ **Sorai**, closing-form **Soro**, 依^ヨ。守^{モリ}, = to be, is; in old-Jap. 佐^サ守^{モリ}, *Sa-morari*, from *save*, at the side, by, and *morari*, guard. As noun *Samurai* (△ *Sōrai*) answers to our „garde” and is the old general name for people on duty at the court of a prince.

Used as an auxiliary verb in the written language, particularly in the epistolary style, it qualifies the being as a serving being and humiliates the speaker. If, therefore, in a proposition, of which the predicate verb is *Soro*, no subject is named, the unnamed, who speaks or acts, is the speaker not the person spoken

¹⁾ Page 29 of the original edition: *A new familiar phrases*. Nagasaki 1859.

to, and we assign to those propositions the I or We as subject. With regard to the use of *Soro* the following is to be noticed:

1. The definition, what a thing is, when it is a noun, precedes in the Local, characterized by *ni* or *nite*, \triangle *de* (not *do*) ¹⁾.

2. The definition, how a thing is, expressed by an adjective in *ki*, is placed in its adverbial form in *ku*. — *Kôku no gotôku soro* (如^フ斯^カ候^コ), it is so ²⁾. — *Mgusi agu-beku soro* (可^カ申^シ上^ウ候^コ), = it is possible that I mention, = I shall make mention of it. — *Naku soro*, = *Nasi*, there is not. — *Go-za soro* (所^シ座^ザ候^コ), = \triangle *Gozari-mâsû*, it is (See § 96, p. 263, line 4). — *Sa-yoo nite go-za naku soro*, it is not so.

3. *Soro*, as an auxiliary verb, expressive of humility, grafted on the root-form of a verb, is appropriate to the familiar, as well as the official form of

歿 ^{ア ケリ サ フ ヘ}	希 ^{○ ヨロ シ ク ヲ ン}	居 ^{ヲ リ サ フ ロ フ}	火 ^{○ ヒ ヲ ン バ ニ}	writing. — <i>Fino sobani ori-sôrô</i> , „I am by the fire” ¹⁾ .
	飽 ^{○ ウ レ}	候 ^{○ コ ウ}	側 ^{○ ソ バ ニ}	— <i>Yorôsiku On agâri-soorâv</i> , eat heartily ²⁾ , literally:
爲 ^{タ ス}	相 ^{ア ヒ}	守 ^{マ モ ル}	向 ^{○ キ ム}	may your rise be good! — <i>Kyoo-go mamôrû-beki ka</i>
	立 ^{タ テ}	ケ ^カ	後 ^{○ コ ロ}	<i>deo ai-tate-soro tame</i> , to appoint the articles to be
	候 ^{コ ウ}	條 ^{テ ウ}	可 ^{○ ベ キ}	kept in future. — <i>Bu-sata itâsi-soro tokôro ni</i> , while
				I make no mention of it. — <i>Deo-yâkûwo tori-kivame</i>
				<i>soro</i> , one draws up a treaty. — <i>Sasi-yurusi-soro</i> , I
				agree to.

4. In negations as *Agezu-soro*, I do not raise, — *Motomezu-soro*, I do not try to acquire, — *Ivazu-soro*, I do not say, in deviation from the rule, *zu* is used instead of *zi*, the root-form. If *soro* be grafted on the negative form of the spoken language, the forms *Agênû + soro*, *Motoménû + soro*, *Ivánû + soro*, are obtained, which forms may fuse into *アゲゾコ Agezoro*, *Motomezoro*, *Ivazoro*, and are to be easily distinguished from the affirmative forms *Age-soro*, *Motome-soro*, *Ici-soro*. Thus if in RODRIGUEZ *Élém.* page 71 line 10, it is said with regard to the negative form: „cependant on dit aussi *motome soro*, *wazou* (sic) *soro*,” then *motome-zoro*, *ivazoro* are meant.

¹⁾ Here the example cited in RODRIGUEZ *Élém.* page 71 line 12: „Christam nite soro,” christianus sum, comes under notice.

²⁾ See page 109 n^o. 70.

³⁾ *Beki*, see page 109 n^o. 73.

⁴⁾ Nieuw verzameld Japansch en Hollandsch woordenb. door den vorst van Nakats. 1810. V. 55 recto.

⁵⁾ Ibid. II. 40 verso.

SYNOPSIS OF THE CONJUGATIONAL FORMS OF SAMURAI, △ SOORAI,
SORAI, TO BE.

	Present.		Preterit.	
Root-form...	Sôrai,	△ Sorai,	Sôrai si. △ Sorai si.	
	サウライ.	ソライ.	Sôrai ni.	
Closing-form	Sôrô,	„ Soro,	Sôrai-ki. Sôrai nu. Sôrai tsu.	
	サウラウ.	ソロ.	△ Soro tsu, ソロツ.	
Subst. and Attr.	Sôrô,	„ Soro.	Sôrai si. Sôrai nuru. Sôrai tsuru.	
	Sôrô koto,	„ Soro koto.	Sôrai si koto. △ Soro tsuru.	
Gerund	Sôraite,	„ Sorote,		
	ル而.	ル而.		
Local-, Causal and Modalform	Sôrayeba,	„ Soroyeba.	Sôrai-sikaba. Sôrai tsureba.	
	候 ^ソ バ.		Sôrai-sini. △ Soro tsureba.	
	Sôrô ni,	„ Soro ni waitewa	Sôrai tsuruni.	
		„ Soro tokoroni.	△ Soro tsuruni.	
Concessive...	Sôrayedomo,	„ Soroyedomo.	Sôrai si to iyedomo. Sôrai tsure domo	
	Sôrô to iyedomo,	„ Soro to yutomo.	Sôrai si kadomo. Soro tsure domo	
	Sôrô tomo.	„ Soro tomo.		
	Sôrayeba tote.			
Imperative...	Sôraye.			
Optative...	Sôraye kasi,	„ Soroye kasi.	Sôrai si mono wo.	

	Future.	Periphrastic Future.		Fut. preterit.
Root-form...	Sôraivan	[Soravanzî, Sorovanzî.]		Sôrô beku Soro bekeri
	サウラ ン			
	△ Sorovan			
Closing-form		Sôravanzu △ Sorôzu	Soro besi	
		サウラ ハンズ	Soro beku- soro	
Subst. and Attr.	Sorovan	Soravan zuru △ Sorovan zuru	Soro beki	
	koto	△ Sorô zuru		
		Soravan zuru- △ Sorô zuru-	Soro beki-	
		koto koto	koto	
Local-, Causal- and Modalform		Sôravanzureba △ Sorovan zureba	Soro beki ni	Sôrô bekere- ba
		△ Sorô zureba		
Concessive...		Soravan zurumuo △ Sorô zurumuo		Soro bekere- domo.
		Soravan zuredomo △ Sorovan zuredomo		
		△ Sorô zuredomo		
Conditional	Sôravaba			
	△ Sorovaba			

	Future.	Periphrastic Future.	Fut. preterit.
Conditional. . .	Sôravani ni waitewa △ Sôró ni waitewa		
Optative.	Soravan monowo △ Sorovan monowo		

NEGATIVE CONJUGATION.

	Present.	Future.
Root-form. . . .	[Sôravazi], <i>not to be.</i>	
Closing-form. .	Sôravazu ¹⁾ , △ Sorovazu, <i>it is not.</i>	Sôro maziku soro, <i>will not be.</i> Sôró koto maziku soro.
Substant. and Attributive.	Sôravazu. △ Sorovazu, <i>the not being,</i> <i>not being.</i>	
Substant., iso- lated.	Sôravazu va, <i>the not being.</i>	
Gerund.	Sôravade, △ Sorovade. Sôravazu site, <i>not being.</i>	
Time defining Local.	Sôravaneba, <i>when it is not.</i>	
Concessive . . .	Sôravane domo, <i>though it is not.</i>	Sôró mai keredomo, <i>though it</i> <i>might not have been.</i>
Conditional . . .	Sôravazunba } Sôravazuba } <i>if it is not.</i> Maziku sôravaba.	Mazikusôravaba, <i>if it should</i> <i>not be.</i>

§ 103. Si, u, uru (爲シスル). to do. As we have already elucidated this verb, so far as it is used in the formation of causative verbs, in § 87, it is here noticed only in its other relations.

I. The root-form Si occurs in compound nouns,

1. as chief word, indicating the person, who is employed with something, in which case it is equivalent to our termination *er* of tiler, potter etc. -- *Kāvārú-si*, = a brick-maker; *Mono-si*, = Lat. *opifex*, maker; *I-mono-si*, metal founder; *Kûsu-si*,

¹⁾ The regular negative form of the deflecting verb *Sôravi* is *Sôravazu*. But the spoken language uses for it, *Sôrovazu*, and *Sorovazu*, which are more easily pronounced, on account of the rule, that the vowels of the subordinate syllables adapt themselves to that of the principal syllable. .

medicine-maker, physician; *Nu-si* (contracted from *Nuru-si*), japanner, *Si* being generally explained by 師^シ, master; or

2. as definitive member before the chief word, as in *Si-goto*, occupation, where it is generally indicated phonetically by 仕^シ, and even by 支^シ, with the signification of which characters the pure Japanese root, *Si*, has nothing to do. Thus *Si-goto* is met with under the form of 仕^シ事^ジ. — *Sore wa idzure ga si-waza ka?* (夫^ハ誰^カ仕^シ業^ヲ業^ヲ), whose business is this? 仕^シ様^ヨ, *Si-yoo*, manner of doing; 仕^シ法^フ, *Si-hoo*, manner of acting. *Si-kata*, 仕^シ方^フ, manner of handling, also 仕^シ形^カ, form of doing, gestures; *Tenite no si-kata*, gesticulations with the hands. *Si-te*, 仕^シ手^テ, = work-hand, the hand, the person that accomplishes a thing.

3. The root-form *Si* further occurs in compound verbs as an adverbial prefix, to imply that the action expressed by the verb, is done, as a definite act, and, in itself, includes all the activity of the subject. Examples:

Fūné wo dasi)*i, u*, to clear a ship (compare page 236 n^o. 18). — *Fūné no dasi-ba*, = the place for the clearing of ships. — 其^ノ船^ヲノ仕^シ出^ス場^バノ港^トノ名^ナ, *Sono fūné no si-dasi-ba no minato no na*, the name of the port at which this ship is, or has been, actually cleared. — *Ire, uru*, to take in, to take up; *Si-ire*, 仕^シ入^ル, the taking in, as exercising a calling, the buying in, purchase of merchandise. — 仕^シ居^ル, *Si-or*)*i, u*, to be busy; *Mono-si-or*)*i, u*, to keep oneself busy with one thing or another. — *Nippon ni oite yebumino si-mairi* (仕^シ参^マ) *va sūdeni fai-* (廢^ヘ) *seri* ¹⁾, in Japan coming up to the image-trampling has been already abolished.

仕^シ打^ツ, *Si-útsi*, the deed.

仕^シ拂^ツ, *Si-hardi*, the payment.

仕^シ立^ツ, *Si-tate*, erection, making.

仕^シ遂^フ, *Si-tóge*, perfect accomplish.

仕^シ直^ス, *Si-naosi*, polish.

II. Acting as verb, *S*)*i, u* is nondeflecting. On account of the important part it plays, it is advisable that the explanation of its use should be preceded by a

¹⁾ Franco-Japanese Treaty of the 9 Oct. 1858, Art. IV, al. 2.

SYNOPSIS OF THE CONJUGATIONAL FORMS.

	Nondeflecting.	Deflecting.
	Continuative.	
Root-form...	SI, 爲 ^シ , TO DO.	[Sur]i, u. not in use.] .. si, form-word of causative
Imperative...	Seyo, Sero, Sei, Sesai, <i>do.</i>	verbs, as <i>Nasi</i> , to make
Closing-form...	Su.	be, .. <i>seyo</i> , imperative;
Subst. and Attr.		.. <i>sa</i> , closing-form.
Terminative...		
Local.....		
	Seba.	Suru.
		Suru, <i>doing.</i>
		Suruni, <i>to doing.</i>
		Suruni, <i>by doing.</i>
		Suruni va.
		Sure ba.
Concessive...		.. seba.
		Sure domo, } <i>if one</i>
		Suru to iedomo, } <i>do.</i>
Gerund.....	Sité.	.. sité, <i>doing.</i>
	PRETERIT.	
Closing-form...	Seri, <i>did.</i>	Si-tari, △ Sita, <i>has done.</i> .. sitar)i, u. △ .. sita, <i>has done.</i>
Substant. and Attributive.	Seru, <i>the having done.</i>	Si-taru. △ Sita.
	Sesi.	
	Sesini, <i>when one did.</i>	
	Sesinari, <i>has done.</i>	
	Sesikaba, <i>as he did.</i>	
	FUTURE.	
	Sen, セン, <i>shall do;</i>	△ Seôz)u, uru. シウ)ズ,
	△ Seô, 爲 ^シ .	ズル.
	Senzu.	.. su-be)ki. ku. si. (p. 109 n ^o . 73. § 104).
	NEGATIVE.	
Root-form...	Sezi, セジ, <i>not to do.</i>	Sezari, <i>contin.</i>
Closing, Subst. and Attrib.	Sezu. △ Senu.	Sezaru.
Gerund.....	Sezu site, △ Sede.	
	不 ^テ 爲 ^セ .	
	CAUSATIVE.	
		.. sas)e, 令 ^セ 爲 ^サ , <i>have done.</i> .. sas)u,

Nondeflecting.	Deflecting.
Se-sim)e (使 ^ス), u, uru, <i>charge to do; Ger. Se-</i> <i>simate, contr. Sesite;</i> <i>Fut. Sesimen.</i>	..sas)ete, etari, △ eta, <i>Fut. en, △ eô. Con-</i> <i>tin. uru, ureba, ure-</i> <i>domo. Neg. Sasenu.</i> ..sasim)e, <i>nondeflect.,</i> <i>let do, have done.</i>
PASSIVE.	
Serar)e, u, uru, <i>nondefl.</i> <i>become done.</i>	..sar)e, u, uru. <i>be-</i> <i>come done.</i> ..saserar)e, u, uru, 令爲, <i>order is</i> <i>given to do.</i>
Serarezu, △ Serarenu, <i>negative, not to be done.</i>	

Compounds with Si.

1. **Si**, u, uru (to do) is used to derive verbs from Japanese nouns: e. g.:

Kari, hunting; *Kari-si*, u, uru, to practise hunting; *Fira no farani kari-su*, people hunt on the plain of Firano. — *Tada ji-kûré ni kari suru koto*, hunting alone in the evening. — *Yome-iri*, = the entrance as a (married) woman, marriage. *Onna va*, — *imáda yome-iri-sezaru wo dzyo* (女^メ) *to iri*, *sûdeni yome-iri-sitaru wo fu* (婦^メ) *to iwu*. *Yome-iri-sitemô fu-bo yonde musumé to iŕŭ* ¹⁾, = as to the woman, she who has not yet made her entrance as wife, is called *dzyo* (maid), she who has already made her entrance as wife, is called *fu*. Also if she has been married, her parents say, calling her *musume* (daughter). — In the same way, by means of *si*, verbs are derived from:

Yome-tori, to take to wife. — *Kami-agari*, the rising as Kami, the decease of a prince. — *Katsi-watári*, a ford. — *Karu wo katsi-watári-suru*, the fording of a river. — △ *Mûma no kasira ga fîgási-su*, the horse's head faces the east. — *Ono-ono nisi ya jigasi-su*, each turns either to the west or to the east, every

¹⁾ *Kasira-gaki kin-moo dzu-i*. IV. 2. r.

one does this or that. — *Kono kata ni mukôte tane-uaki sezu.* — towards that side the sowing is not done. — *Mainai serarézû,* he is not bribed. — *Kono m-dan wa ikûra si-másû ka* (or *ari-másû ka*, or *kakûri-másû ka*)! ¹⁾, what is the price of it? — *Go zû me si-másû,* it is five taels. — *Sono kata wa doo si-másû ka*? ²⁾, its form — how is it?

2. *a.* Chinese words also are verbalized by means of *si*; their number is legion. Examples:

來 ^{ライ} シ,	<i>Rai-si.</i> to come.	旅 ^{リョ} 行 ^カ シ,	<i>Rio-koo-si.</i> to travel.
來 ^{ライ} 朝 ^{テウ} シ,	<i>Rai-teo-si.</i> to come to court.	坐 ^サ シ,	<i>Za-si.</i> to sit.
對 ^{タイ} シ,	<i>Tai-si.</i> to be opposite to.	通 ^{ツウ} シ,	<i>Tsun-si.</i> to go through...
拜 ^{バイ} シ,	<i>Fai-si.</i> to greet, salute.	用 ^{ヨウ} 意 ^イ シ,	<i>You-i-si.</i> to provide...
廢 ^{ハイ} シ,	<i>Fai-si.</i> to abolish.	用 ^{ヨウ} 心 ^{シン} シ,	<i>Yon-sin-si.</i> to be attentive.
勞 ^{ラウ} シ,	<i>Rgu-si.</i> to weary.	敵 ^{テキ} シ,	<i>Teki-si.</i> to be hostile.
令 ^{レイ} シ,	<i>Rei-si.</i> to order.	着 ^{チヤク} シ,	<i>Tsaku-si.</i> to arrive.
死 ^シ シ,	<i>Si-si.</i> to die.	着 ^{カク} 岸 ^{カン} シ,	<i>Tsôku-gan-si.</i> to land.
餌 ^ジ シ,	<i>Zi-si.</i> to allure with bait (餌 ^ジ). — <i>Zi-serar)e. u,</i> <i>neu,</i> allured with bait (bribed).	達 ^{タク} シ,	<i>Tas-si.</i> to make known.
在 ^{サイ} 留 ^{リウ} シ,	<i>Zai-rin-si.</i> to keep abode.	徹 ^{テツ} シ,	<i>Tes-si.</i> to penetrate; un- derstand.
居 ^{キョ} 留 ^{リウ} シ,	<i>Kiyo-rin-si.</i> „ „	合 ^{カッ} シ,	<i>Gas-si.</i> to fit, agree.
住 ^{ヂウ} シ,	<i>Dzin-si.</i> to dwell.	熱 ^{ネツ} シ,	<i>Nes-si.</i> to be hot.
住 ^{ヂウ} 在 ^{サイ} シ,	<i>Dzin-sai-si.</i> „ „	失 ^{シツ} シ,	<i>Sis-si.</i> to lose.
		沒 ^{ボツ} シ,	<i>Bos-si.</i> to sink.

b. Of the thus verbalised Chinese words some, by way of exception, have. *zi, u, uru* (ジ, ズ, ズル) instead of *si, u, neu*. The impure *z* occurs in:

按 ^{アン} ジ,	<i>An-zi.</i> to remark (to distin- guish from 安 ^{アン} シ, <i>An-si.</i> to bring to rest.)	感 ^{カン} ジ,	<i>Kan-zi.</i> to affect, stir, excite the feelings.
散 ^{サン} ジ,	<i>San-zi.</i> to scatter.	献 ^{ケン} ジ,	<i>Ken-zi.</i> to offer.
御 ^ゴ 覽 ^{ラン} ジ,	<i>Go-ran-zi.</i> to please to see.	現 ^{ゲン} ジ,	<i>Gen-zi.</i> to appear.
		減 ^{ゲン} ジ,	<i>Gen-zi.</i> to lessen, to diminish.

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, page 3. 34.

²⁾ *Ibid.* p. 11.

轉^{テン}ジ, *Ten-zi*, 1. to make revolve;
2. to transform.

合^カ多^タ戰^{セン}ジ, *Kassén-zi*, to be hand to
hand (*teki to*, with the enemy).

吟^{ギン}ジ, *Gin-zi*, to sing.

損^{ソン}ジ, *Son-zi*, to suffer damage. *Son-*
zas)i, *u*, to injure.

命^{メイ}ジ, *Mei-zi*, to give order.

存^{ゾン}ジ, *Zon-zi*, 1. to maintain;
2. *vulgo*, to think.

論^{ロン}ジ, *Ron-zi*, to discourse.

相^{ソウ}步^フ論^{ロン}ジ, *Soo-ron-zi*, to converse.

生^{ショウ}ジ, *Šoo-zi*, to come forth, grow; to
produce.

報^{ホウ}ジ, *Hoo-zi*, to reward.

應^{オウ}ジ, *Oo-zi*, to answer to.

Examples of the use of Chinese-Japanese verbs in *si*.

Ken-bun (見^ミ聞^クジ) *suru koto wo kaki tomeru*, to note down what one sees and hears. If *suru* be superseded by *seru*, it means to note down what one has seen and heard (remarked). — *I'i no tooki tsikákiwo ron-zu*, = people speak of the far and near (of the distance) of the sun from the earth. — △ 承^{ショウ}知^チシマシタ, *Šoo-tsi-si-mas'ta*, I have understood! = very well. — △ 左^サノ様^{ヤマ}シマシヤウ, *Soo-si-mášoo*, I shall do it, = I shall satisfy your desire. — *Fisásiku sūc-okite fanasazareba*, *ási tsukárete yamái wo siyau* (生^シジ) *zu*, if the hunting falcon be kept long perched, and not let fly abroad, his feet get exhausted by weariness, and he grows sick. — *Sore taka va tsuné ni nessuru* (熱^{ネツ}ジ) *yūeni sei-midzu wo konómu mono nari*, the falcon, because he is continually hot, is very fond of fresh water. — 庶^{ショ}民^{ミン}ニ令^{レイ}シテ カヒコヲ カハシメ タマフ, charging all people (the emperor) has silkworms bred. — *Füransi-kókū no fitó Nippon ni kio-riu-* (居^キ留^{リウ}ジ) *seva* (read *seba*), *sono fitó-bitó wo Nippon ni óité nengoroní átsukáru besi* ¹⁾, if the French remain in Japan, that people will be treated well.

Remark. If the accomplishing of a thing, instead of the being occupied with it, is to be expressed, then *itás)i, u* (致^シジ), to accomplish, is used instead of *si*, both in Japanese and Chinese words. *Itási* has arisen by syncope from *itarási*, which is the causative form of *ítar)i, u* (至^シジ), = has gone (whither he would go) and as such signifies the accomplishment of an action. For the rest, the spoken language seems to use *itási* also, merely for euphony, as being more harmonious than the simple *si*.

Examples:

¹⁾ Franco-Japanese Treaty of 1858. Art. 1. al. 2. Ibid. IX. 2. XV. 1. 2.

方 イタサスベシ 人 吟味イタシ 節 ハ 日本役 シヤウバイ 人 ヨリノ 借財 シヤクサイ 拂 フ 日本 ニッポン 佛蘭西 フランシ

カラス タス 商 シヤウ 賣 バイ 苦 シ

Nippon-zin Fransi-zin yori no saku-zai wo juru-rázusité šuppon itasitarū toki va, *Nippon yakunin gin-mi itási, fardí-kata itasasu besi* ¹⁾, when Japanese, without having paid their debts to Frenchmen, have taken flight, the Japanese authorities shall make inquiry and make them pay.

Šoo-bai-itasu koto kurusikarazu ²⁾, trade is not unwelcome, — it will not be thwarted.

△ *Miyoo-nitsi Go hen-too itási-mášoo* ³⁾, to morrow I shall give you an answer. — △ *Go soo-dan tasi-* (*tasi* = *itási*) *mášoo*, I shall speak with you about it. — △ *Sa-yoo itási mášoo*, I shall do so. — △ *O-itoma itasi-mášoo*, I shall take leave of you ⁴⁾.

III. ON THE GOVERNMENT OF S*i*, u, uru, TO DO.

When this verb has an object direct, in the accusative. before it, it is transitive, but when not, it is intransitive.

1. [*..wo su.*] The definition: what a person does, stands, as object direct, in the accusative. Examples:

Kare va nani wo sitaru ka? what has he done? — *Ware kore wo sezu* (吾^レ弗^ズ爲^セ之^{コレ}矣^矣) ⁵⁾, I do not do this, = this is not my business. — *Zin wo suru mono* (爲^レ仁^ニ者^者) ⁶⁾, one who practises humanity. — *Tedzákúra kúwa wo toríte (totte) ko-gai wo si-tamaru*, = with her own hands (the princess) plucks the mulberry leaf, and practises the nourishment of children (the breeding of silkworms).

2. [*..ni su.*] The definition of the state or of the quality, in which one is engaged or is (intransitive), or in which one causes a thing to be, what one makes of a thing (transitive), provided it be a noun, is put in the Local in *ni*, the form *..ni-s*)i, u, uru, sometimes mutating to *..n-s*)i, whence *..nz*)i (シ。ス。ル) proceeds ⁶⁾. From the Gerund *ni sité* the form *nite* arises, by syncope.

¹⁾ Franco-Jap. Treaty. Art. XVIII. al. 1.

²⁾ Ibid. VIII. 1.

³⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 39.

⁴⁾ Ibid. p. 41.

⁵⁾ *Tschung-yung*. XI.

⁶⁾ The *z* in *nzi* — I have observed it myself, — is so softly pronounced, that one thinks he hears *nyi* instead of *nzi*, therefore even RODRIGUEZ in *Élém.* § 29 has adopted the written-form *ii*.

Examples:

a. *Si*, with an intransitive signification. — *I-nakára ni site* (or *nite*) *itási tsu besi* (可坐而致也), one may do it while sitting. — *Fu, roku-sai ni sité karu*, the leaf, being in the sixth year, dries up. — *Zai-wi ku-nen nisité* (or *nite*) *Ten-wau fou-zu*, = being in the ninth year of his reign, the Emperor dies. — *Nomi yotsu kado nisité, suē togaru*, the fruit is quadrangular, and pointed at the top. — *Kono sima va mi jitotsu ni sité omo yotsu ari, omo gotoni na ari*, this island (Sikok, or the four countries) is one and has four faces; these have each a name. — *Tatsi-tokóro ni sité mátsi tsu bési*, 可立而待也, standing on the point of departure he must wait. — *Saki*, the point. *Sakin'zuru tokin're* (= *saki ni suru toki ni va*) *fitó wo sei-su*, when one is at the point (is the chief), one leads the others (先則制人). — \triangle *Fito fako ni nan gin iri ni si-masūka?* ¹⁾, how many pounds shall I put in a chest? *Fyak-kin iri ni nasáre*, put a hundred pounds in. — *Roo no kata wa doo si-masūka?* the shape of the wax — how is it? — *Atsukaci ni sureba, musu. tsüsákū sité, mayu mo tsüsaki wo tsukuru* ²⁾, by overfeeding, the (silk)worm will remain small and also make small cocoons. — *Sika va mūma no gotóku ni sité seo* (小麋) *nari*, the stag is much like a horse and is smaller. — *Yama-inu va iro ki ni sité, fou siroku, wo nagasi* ³⁾, the wild dog, being yellow of color, has white cheeks and a long tail.

b. *Si*, with a transitive signification. — *Makoto*, truth. *Sono kokóro base wó makoto ni su*, he makes his meaning truth. — *Tókū wo akiráka ni su*, he lets virtue shine. — *Moto wo hóká ni sité, sūé wo ūtsi-ni surebá, tami wo arasovásiméte, ūbáru koto wó hodokósū* ⁴⁾, if one excludes the root (virtue) and includes the top (fortune), one teaches the people strife, and rapacity. — *Futokóro*, bosom, heart. *Kore wo futokóro ni si-tsubesi*, one ought to take this to heart. — *Omote*, face, front side. *Nisi va gara wo omote ni su*, on the west one has a river in front. — *Tairáka*, level, smooth. *Ten-ka wo tairaka ni sürū koto ru sono kuni wo osáturu ni ávi* ⁵⁾ (平天下在治其國), the making the whole empire peaceful and happy depends on the government of his state. — *Meate ni suru*, to set for aim. — *Te-hon ni suru*, set for example. — *Dai-setsu* (大切) *ni suru*, to consider im-

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 11.

²⁾ The inversion: *mayu mo tsüsaki* instead of *tsüsaki mayu mo* serves to bring out *tsüsaki* (-small) with emphasis.

³⁾ *Kasira-gaki*. XII. 5 r.

⁴⁾ *Dai Gaku*. X. 8.

⁵⁾ *Ibid.*, X. 1.

portant. — *Atataka ni suru*, to warm. — *Komaku ni suru*, to make fine. — *Tsumabiraka ni suru*, to make clear. — *Karo*, light (of weight); *Karonzi*, to consider lightly, despise. — *Omo*, heavy, weighty; *Omonzi*, to consider weighty. To be distinguished from *Karoku si*, *Omoku si*, to make light, to make weighty. — *Sora*, empty; *Soranzi*, to learn by heart. — *Ama*, mead. sugar juice; *Ama ni su*, or *aman'zu*, to think sweet. — *Fakowa soyè ni sîte kudasare* ¹⁾, please to give the chest into the bargain. — *Oki-tokei wo jútótsu soyè ni si-mašoo* ²⁾, I will give a time-piece into the bargain.

3. [*.ku su*, *.u su*.] If the definition of quality is an adjective in *ki* (§ 9), e. g. *Nagaki*, long, its adverbial form in *ku* (or merely *u*) is used to unite with *si*, *u*, *uru*, and the so formed compound (*Nagaku-si*), as long as there is no object direct, expresses the mere carrying out of the idea of the adverb, and, as it appears from the examples quoted, is equivalent to the predicative closing-form *Nagasi*, = is long; if however an object direct is involved, then the verb *si*, *u* has its transitive signification (the causative form *se-su* = *se-simu* seems to lurk behind it). In the example quoted at page 269: *Tsurí wo yókû-su*, he handles the angle well, *yoku* is a modal definition of the transitively used *si*, *u*, to do, handle.

a. With an intransitive signification *.ku si*, *u*, *uru* appear in propositions as:

Wo nagáku síté tooku tobu koto utarázu ³⁾, he (a certain bird) has a long tail and cannot fly far. — *Iwa ... kubi nagáku síté. ási takasi*, the camel has a long neck and high legs. — *Sono ke un-kau* (温之厚多) *ni síte*, *kitsüne no ke yori mo atataka nari*; *nátsürá suzusi* ⁴⁾, his hair is warm and close, and warmer even than the hair of the fox; in summer it is cool. — [*Tsikáki*, near.] *A.. ra B.. ve tsikákúsite C.. to koto-nari*, A.. comes near B.. and differs from C.. — [*Usuki*, thin. *Karoki*, light.] △ *Kutsibiru usüru-site*, *kotoba karón-su*, if the lips are thin (if the tongue is smooth), the word weighs light. — [*Araki*, rough, wild; *Arakúsu*, act wildly, behave wildly.] *Ten-icau ümóre-tsuki aráku-site jítowo korósu kotowo konómü*, the emperor, fierce by nature, was fond of killing men. — [*Gotóki*, like.] *Kaku no gotoku sureba*, when people are acting in this way. — [*Yasúki*, easy.] *Nokorázu O kai nasáru nará. yasúku-site age-mašoo* ⁵⁾, if you buy the whole

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 12.

²⁾ *Ibid.* p. 39.

³⁾ *Kasira-gaki*. XIII. 11. r.

⁴⁾ *Ibid.* XII. 9. r.

⁵⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 36.

stock, I will let you have it cheap. — [*Naki*, not existing. *Naku su* (△ ナウス。ナンス pron. *ngosu*), 1. to be wanting, to fail, 2. to think paltry (of no value).] 1. *Yakū su koto nakū site, Kami no tāsūké ari*, medical treatment failing there is God's help. 2. △ *Fītō wo nandomo ngu su*, he considers others as of no value.

b. With a transitive signification ..*ku si*, *u*, *uru* is found in propositions as:

[*Takaki*, high.] *Me-ate wo takaku suru*, = to exalt one's aim, not to give up one's intention. — [*Fikiki*, low, humble.] *Mewo jikiku site utsubukite miru*, to cast the eyes downwards and look below. — [*Tadásiki*, right, upright.] *Sono mi wo osamento hōssuru mōnō wa mādzu sono kokōro wo tadásiu-su Sono kokōro wo tadasiu-sento hōssuru mono wa mādzu sono kokōrobase wo makōto ni su* ¹⁾, who ever will govern himself, first makes his heart right. He who will make his heart right, first aims at truth. — [*Mattaki*, whole; *mattaku-* (*mattau*, *mattou*, △ *mattoo*) *su*, to make whole, to perfect.] *Zin wo suru to wa sono kokōro no tōkū wo mattou suru yuēn nari* (爲仁者所以全其心之德也), the practice of humanity is the means to perfect the heart. — [*Toki*, quick, ready.] *Kore wo toku su*, he does it quickly. — [*Atsūki*, hot.] *Atsuku* or *Atsuu suru*, to make hot. — [*Suzusiki*, cool.] *To wo firaki suzusiku su besi*, you may open the door and let in the coolness. — [*Fītōsiki*, = one-ish, of one sort.] *Koku ka wo fītōsiu su*, he makes the country and people conforming to one mode. — [*Onāziki*, identical.] *Tomoni tsiu-kōkū wo onāziū sézu*, not having the middle kingdom in common. *Tsirī wo onāziku sénu*, not having the dust in common, not staying at the same place with anyone. — [*Fukāki*, deep; *Katōki*, hard, fast.] *Ne wo fukau si, fozo wo katāku suru kūsā nari*, = it is a plant, that shoots its roots deep, and makes its stalk hard.

4. [*to su*.] The appositive definition, what a thing is made, whether in fact or in imagination merely, is characterized by the particle *to*, *to*, (see page 70. V). If an object direct is mentioned in the proposition, the apposition has reference to the object and *si* has the transitive signification of make (to), take for, consider as; on the other hand if no direct object is mentioned in the proposition, the apposition has reference to the subject, and *si* has the intransitive signification of: to be actually.

a. Appositions referring to the subject we have in sentences, like:

¹⁾ *Dai Gaku*, IV, 4.

Fîto to site kqu naki vá (or *naki monova*) *tsikñ-šgu ni kótondrazu*, he who is a human being and is destitute of filial love, does not differ from the brute; or: he who as a human being is devoid of etc. — *Aradsî no sima vá ena to site mmi maseru nari*, the island of Avadsî arose (at the creation of the Japanese archipelago) as an afterbirth. — *Fosi otsûrn to ieru va fosi ni ardzû*, *Fîto no me ni fosi to suru nomi*, concerning the assertion, that stars fall, they are not stars. Only for the eyes of men do they appear as stars.

b. Appositions referring to the object we have in sentences as:

Onore ni sikazâru monowó tomotó suru koto nakâre, it may not be that (you) make any one, who is not as your self (who is your inferior), (to) your fellow. — *Kono fan wo dai-itsi to subesi*, this rule must be considered as the first (the principal). — *Fân to su* (爲^ス法^フト), make (to) a rule, consider as a rule. = *Te-fon ni su*; *meate ni su*.

Remark. 1. The object that is taken for anything, is found as object still governed by a separate active verb, which most frequently gives the way in which it is made. — *Tenwan ... jime wo tatete kisagi to si-tamaru*, the emperor appoints Lady ... and makes her (to) consort. = the emperor takes Lady ... for consort.

Remark. 2. Much used is the formula: *A. wo motte B. to su*, he makes A. to B., considers A. as B., has A. to B. — *Wauki wo motte tsitsi to si*, *Buwau wo motte ko to su* ¹⁾, he has Wang ki for father and Wn wang for son. — *Kniwa ri wo motte ri to sézû*; *gi wo motte ri to su* ²⁾, a government does not make advantage pass as advantage: it considers justice as advantage. Or: a government does not find its advantage in advantage; it finds its advantage in justice. — *Rito suruni gi wo mottesu* ³⁾, to use justice as being advantageous. —

主^シ以^モ觀^ミ
 主^シ其^ソ遠^エ
 所^ト臣^シ

Yen-sin wo miru nira, *sono siyu to suru tokórowo mottesu* ⁴⁾, to judge of a foreign minister people take as stand him whom he makes his host (him in whose house he stays).

Remark. 3. By the omission of *site*, instead of ..to *site*, we meet with *to* alone. — *Yuru yuru*, loitering, hesitating, by degrees. — *Yuru yuru ayumi*, to go step

¹⁾ *Tschung-yung*. XVIII.

²⁾ *Dai Gaku*. X. 22.

³⁾ *Ibid*. IV. 5.

⁴⁾ *Meng-tsze*, Lib. II, Cap. III. § 45.

for step (slowly). — *Yaru yuru to suru*, slowly, by degrees to do. — *Yuru yuru to site* (or *Yuru yuru to*) *fappoo* (八方) *ve firogu*, it spreads gradually in all directions.

5. If the appositive definition, what any thing is made (to), and that in imagination, is a verb with or without complement, it is put in the closing-form followed by *to sji, u, uru* etc.

Kakuru koto nasi, there is no want. — 爲^ス無^ト缺^カカ^ル, *Kakuru koto nasi to su*, people think, that nothing is wanting. — △ *Kore yori ũewa nai*, there is nothing that surpasses that. *Kore yori ũewa nai to su*, people consider, that nothing surpasses it. — *Itari*, come to.. *Itareri*, is come to.. *Ware itareri to su*, I think to have come to the extreme, to have reached the topmost. — *Faru-aki va kage wo tattomi, fuyu va finata wo yosi to su*, in the warm season (spring—autumn) the shadow is prized; in winter the sunshine is thought the best. — *Tada jikure ni kari-suru wo yosi to suru nari*, people think it for the best, to hunt only in the evening.

6. [en-, in-, an-to su.] The definition expressed by a verb with or without complement, to what purpose a person is occupied, is put in the Future followed by *to sji, u, uru*; whence the forms: ..en to su, ..in to su, ..an to su (△ *eô-*, *iu-*, *oo to su*), = he is busy about.., he is about to.., he tries to..; Lat. *in eo est ut, id agit ut*. These forms are equivalent to the Lat. *verbum meditativum (moriturio)*, and, as it, express an effort towards something.

Kassen ni yūkân to su, he is about to go to battle. — *Yebisû domo no ni fi wo fanâtte mikoto wo yaki-korosan to suru toki, mikotono faki-tamaveru fou ken midsu-kara nukete, moye-kitaru kusa wo nagi-faravu*, when the savages setting the field on fire tried to burn the prince, the sword which the prince had girded on, unsheathed itself and mowed the burning grass away.

7. [..to sîté, = ..to to.] Instead of the gerund *to site* the syncopated *to* is often met with. Examples:

Kono aida ni, Hayatomo sedo to ¹⁾ to, siro hayâsi, being between them (between the two banks) the isthmus of Hayatomo, the stream is rapid. — *Kono hokô Koorai-taka, Yezo-taka, Rin-kin-taka to to, kuni-guni ni ari*, moreover there are, since

¹⁾ In our opinion, to estimate *to*, rightly as it is here used, what has been said at page 70, V, respecting *Fito to va*, must be observed.

THE falcon of Corea, that of Yezo, that of Liu-kiu are met with, (falcons) in every country. — *Kono seki wo Fotoke ni nitari to te*, *Buts-zau-séki to mo iri*, people call that rock, because they think that it resembles a Buddha, the Buddha-image-rock. — *Iné wo tsumide* (\triangle *tsunde*), *siro to site ... tatakacu*, he heaps up rice-balls to a fort and fights. — *Yase-ki wo niwaka ni sei-teu-* (成^ぢ 長^ぢ) *se-simen to te koyasi wo tsūyoku-su bekarázū*, to make meagre trunks of trees grow, they may not be too strongly manured. —

人 ^ニ	ト ^テ	日 ^ニ	吳 ^オ	<i>Go koku no wau wa Nippon wo semen to te su-man no nin</i>
數 ^ジ	數 ^ス	本 ^{ボン}	國 ^{コク}	<i>ziyu wo watásu</i> , the king of the country U, intending
ヲ	ヲ	ヲ	ノ	to make war on Japan. sends a force of many tens
ヲ	萬 ^{マン}	王 ^{ワウ}	ハ	of thousands thither.
ヲ	ノ	ハ		

§ 104. **Bési**, may, can, shall; **Béki**, adjective. **Békū**, adverb possibly, expressed in Chinese by 可。當。應。須。合。好。請。

I. Derivation and signification.

Be (べ), after the old form of writing ㄥべ, *mūbé* (pronounced as **mbé**), also うべ, *ūbé* and ウメ, *ūme* (pronounced as **mmé**), is in Japanese dictionaries, called a word of assent ¹⁾ and made equal to the Chinese 宜 ²⁾.

If, although this definition of the idea is practically sufficient, an investigation of the origin of *Be*, is still required, it must be sought in the exclamation *m*, which, as our *hem*, implies that a person understands something, and in *he*, = our *yes*. The original form, *m-hé*, according to the rule of euphony passes, in pronunciation, into *mbé*, expressed in writing by べ, for which we write *be*, whereas in the month of a Yédo gentleman it sounds clearly as *mbe*.

The old form ㄥべ, *Mūbe*, occurs as a substantive with the signification of consent still, in expressions as *Mūbé nari* (宜^ㄥ ^{ナリ}), it is granted, = one has the liberty to do, one may do: *Mūbé narázū*, it is not allowed, it may not be; whereas べ (*be*), occurs as a substantive in the every day expression *Su-be nari*, it is possible. *Su-be nasi*, it is impossible.

¹⁾ 古ハ 諾ヲ ウメ ウベ ト カケリ, i. e.: Formerly the Chinese word 諾 (= consent) was translated with *Ube* or *Ume*.

²⁾ 宜 *i* „suitable, proper, fit, becoming; ought, should.” MEDHURST, *Chinese and English Dictionary*.

The forms derived from the root *Be*: the predicative *bési*, the attributive adjective, *beki*, and the adverb, *békũ*, thus include the idea of *may*, and of *can*, i. e. no external cause preventing the doing of a thing. A command to do something is not included in it, and we do injustice to the politeness of the Japanese, if we give to this word the signification of our „one must, you must, you shall.” The idea of consent on the one side does not include that of obligation on the other (must), and *can*, at its strongest, only contain an inducement.

II. *Be* belongs to the root-words treated in § 9. I. B., of which the so called adjectives in *ki* are derived. In accordance with the rule given there, *Besi* and *Beki* in the old-Japanese and in the popular language are superseded by the syncopated form *Bei* (可^レ ^ベ _イ) and the adverb *Beku* by *Beo* (可^レ ^ベ _オ ^ゾ 可^レ ^ベ _歴 ^ゾ), and that particularly in the countries east of the Hakone-pass, whereas in Sinano *Mei* (可^レ ^メ _イ) is said, instead of *Bei* ¹⁾.

With regard to the inflectional forms, they cannot be better elucidated than by a systematic synopsis. The writer confines himself to those forms, which have actually come under his notice, and with regard to such as, according to the rule, may yet exist, he refers the reader to the Synopsis of the Inflectional forms of *Nasi*, § 106.

INFLECTIONAL FORMS OF *BESI*, *MAY*, *CAN*.

	Aorist.		Contin. present.	Preterit.
Root-form . . .	<i>Be</i> , <i>can</i> .	<i>Békũ-si</i> , <i>may</i> .	<i>Békári</i> , arisen from <i>Beku</i> + <i>ari</i> , <i>is</i> <i>being able</i> .	<i>Békéri</i> , arisen from <i>Beku</i> + <i>eri</i> . <i>has</i> <i>been able</i> .
Closing-form..	<i>Besĩ</i> , △ <i>Bei</i> , <i>Mei</i> , <i>it can</i> .	<i>Beku-su</i> .	<i>Békári</i> , <i>Benari</i> .	<i>Bekési</i> .
Subst. and At- tributive.	<i>Beki</i> , △ <i>Bei</i> , <i>Mei</i> , <i>possible</i> .	<i>Bekusuru</i> .	<i>Bekáru</i> .	<i>Bekérũ</i> .
Subst., isolated	<i>Beki va</i> .		<i>Bekáru vá</i> .	
Gerund		<i>Békũ-sité</i> , <i>contr</i> . <i>Bete</i> .		
Local <i>as, when, there</i>			<i>Bekáre ba</i> .	<i>Bekére bá</i> , <i>when he</i> <i>could</i> .

¹⁾ *Wa-gun Siwori*, under *Mei*. Vol. 17. p. 1. recto.

	Aorist	Contin. Pres.	Preterit.
Concessive. <i>although.</i>		Bekare domo.	Bekére domo.
Adverbial . . .		Bekaraku.	
FUTURE.			
		Bekarjan, 可也, go. oo.	Beken, <i>it shall ha- ve been possible.</i>
		Bera (可也馬也). Bera nari, <i>it shall be possible</i> (可也). Bekárabá. <i>if it be possible.</i>	
Conditional . <i>if</i>	Béku ni.		
NEGATIVE.			
	Be-nasi, <i>old-Jap. may not.</i>	Bekaráju, △ nu.	NB. Page 292 line 9 from the bottom for <i>Bekési</i> read <i>Bekeri</i> ; line 7 for <i>Bekéru</i> read <i>Bekési</i> , <i>Be- kéru</i> .
	Sube-nasi, = <i>it is not to be done.</i>	Su-bekarázu, <i>it is not possible.</i>	
		U-bekarázu, <i>it is not to be obtained.</i>	

III. ON THE GOVERNMENT OF *Besi*.

The verb, which, preceding *Besi*, expresses what one may, can, shall or will (do) is put either in its root, or its attributive form. In nondeflecting verbs both forms are used, in deflecting verbs in *i*, only the attributive form in *u* or, instead of it, in the root, in *i* with *nu* or *tsu* as termination. Examples with nondeflecting verbs:

Ake-besi, one can, may open. — *Mi-besi*, one can, may see. — *Fiyori yoki wo mite, tané wo age-besi*. *Savo-nado ni tsuri, jikage-nite karakásu-besi*, if you see, that the weather is fair, you may take out the seed (of the silkworms that have been put in water). Suspend it on sticks and dry it in the sun. — △ *Wakerare*, be divided; *Wakeráruru-beki*, divisible. — △ *Mi-wakerare*, to be distinguished at sight; *Mi-wakeráruru-besi*, it is to be distinguished at sight. — △ *Ararare*, to be visible; *Aravaruru-beki koto*, visibility. — *E, Ete* (or *Ye, Yete*) *U. Urû* (get) becomes *U-beki* instead of *Ur'beki*; ウベキモノ, *Ubeki mono*, something one can get, something obtainable. — *Sesime*, have it done; *Sésimû-bési* instead of *Sesi-*

múr'besi, one can have done. — *Tasūke*, help, save; *Tasuku-besi* instead of *Tasukur'besi*. — In a legend S'akya speaks to the falcon: *Nandzi kono fato wo tásūku-bési*, spare this dove. — The falcon answers: *Ware kono fato wo tásūkēbá, ware uréte si-su-besi*, if I spare the dove, I shall die of hunger.

Examples with nondeflecting verbs:

馬^ウ _ニ當^{ベシ} ^〇此 嶋 必
Nari, to be. *Kono sima kanarazu Okino-sima naru-besi*, this island will undoubtedly be that of *Ok*i. — *Si*, to do. *Su-beki* (可爲), feasible. *Su-beki koto ari*, there is a possibility of doing (this). — *Onna kono tewaza wo su-besi*, women ought to do such work. — *Kore wa onna no su-beki tewaza nari*, that is a work which women can or ought to do. *Su-beki* (being able, or about to do) is here conceived in an active sense, whereas the genitive *onna no* precedes as attributive definition. — *Tomoni iyu-besi* (可與言), people may speak with one another. — *Nivakáni fusegu-beki yūmo nakereba, Kavatsiye nige-yuku*, as in the hurry it was impossible to offer resistance, they fled to *Kavatsi*. — *Kore wa nasazāru bési*, with regard to this, it may remain undone. — *Kore wa nasaru bekarazu*, with regard to this, one may not do it. The former allows, that something may not happen, the latter forbids that it happen. — *Tsumabiraka ni su-bekarāzu* (不可審), I cannot make it clear.

The terminations *nu* and *tsu* occur in deflecting verbs, e. g. *Ari*, to be; *Ari-nu-bési*, it may or can be. — *Iri-nu bési* (可入), one may go in. — *Itárinu-bési* (可至), one may or shall come to. — *Ivi* (*Ii*), to be called; *Ivi-tsu-bési*, it may or can be called. — *Tana-kokōro ni megurāsī-tsu-bési*, one can make it run round on the palm of the hand.

I refer both terminations not to the closing-forms *tsu* and *nu*, treated in § 84 and 85, but to 豊^ヌ *nu* (a variation of *no*) and 津^ツ *tsu*, which, as characteristics of the attributive relation, are derived from the old language. See page 67.

IV. 1. The ability to do any thing is expressed by *Yókūs*i, u, *uru*, to do good; 能^ユ. 耐. 克. 巧. Negative *Yokusé*zu, △ *Yokusénu*. From the expression: *Uru koto wo yókū su*, = I am able to get, it appears that the definition what one is able for, precedes as object in the Accusative.

Also used adverbially *Yōku* expresses the ability to do anything, e. g. *Omonbákátte síkūsíte notsī yōku u*, by reflection is one able consequently to attain (his object). 慮而后能得. *Dai Gaku*, I. 2.

能^{ヨク} 惡^ム 人^ヲ 能^{ヨク} 愛^{アイシ} 人^ヲ 仁^{ニシ} 人^{ニシ} 爲^ス

Tādā zin-zin yókū hitó wo ai-si, yókū hitó wo nikúmū koto wo su ¹⁾, the humane man alone is able to love others, to hate others. — *Sei-zin to iedomo, mata yoku-sezaru to-kóro ari* ²⁾, even if he were a saint, there would still be

something that he could not do.

2. The inability to do a thing is expressed by **Ataváz**i, u (不^フ能^ズ能^ズ), = Lat. *non valet*, = *Uru koto atavázu*, = the acquisition is not brought about. *Atávi*, of which *Atavázu* is the negative form, is composed of *Ate*, = equivalent, and *av*i, u, = to fit, or, after the *Wagun Siwori*, from *Atekavi* (當^{アテ}易^{カヒ}), = to take the place of a thing, as an exchange, and means, substantively used, the value (直^{アツ}) of a thing; thus, as a verb, to be of value, to be worth (Lat. *valere*). The Japanese language considers the treatment, and not the person treating, as that which is not of value, or cannot be brought about.

吾^{ワレ}弗^フ能^ズ已^{ハス}矣^ヤ, *Ware yamu koto atavázu* ³⁾, = that I (halting half-way) should rest, is not brought about, = I can not rest. — *Ken wo mite agíru koto útávázu, agíte sakinzürü koto atavazürü vá mēi nári. Fu-sen wo mite sirizókürü koto atavázu, sirizókētē tóságürü koto atavazürü va ayamátsi nari* ⁴⁾, to see an excellent man and not be able to raise him; to raise him and not be able to promote him, is fate. To see a good-for-nothing and not be able to remove him, to remove him and not be able to put him away, that is a mistake. — *Kore wo motsiite tsukusu koto atavazaru mono aran* ⁵⁾, = that this (principle) be

盡^{ツク}者^{モノ}有^{アル}不^フ能^ズ之^{コレ}

exhausted by the application, will be something impossible. — 不^フ能^ズ無^{ナシ}敝^ヰ, *Tsuiye naki koto atavázu*, it is not possible, that (a thing) do not perish.

V. To dare, is expressed by **Ahété**, **Aete** (敢^{アヘ}), the gerund of *Ahe* or *Arje*, u, uru, = to answer to... — *Ahété atarázu* (不^フ敢^ズ當^{アタ}), he dares not attempt it. — *Ahété kotowari-iru*, he dares judge of it. — *Ahété kotowari-ivánu*, he dares not judge of it. — *Tarazáru tokoro areba, ahété tsütomezunba arázu* ⁶⁾, = if there is any thing that does not suffice (if he comes short of), he (the man of character) does not dare not exert himself, — he dares not be negligent.

¹⁾ *Dai Gaku*. X. 15.

²⁾ *Tschung-yung*. XII. 2.

³⁾ *Ibid*. XI. 2.

⁴⁾ *Dai Gaku*. X. 16.

⁵⁾ *Tschung-yung*.

⁶⁾ *Ibid*. XIII. 4.

Remark. The negative *Ahézu* or *Ahénu* (不敢), joined to the root of a precedent verb, means the not accomplishing of an action; it is made equivalent to *Fatasazu* (不^ズ果^ハ _ナ), not to accomplish. — *Omoi-*, *Iri-*, *Tori-*, *Nagare-ahézu* or *ahénu*, mean: not continue meaning, saying, taking, flowing.

VI. That an action or a state is fitting, or is as it should be, is expressed by *Too-sen tar*i, u (當^タ多^タ 然^ニ _タ _リ), = it is as it should be. Joined to it are also the ideas, that one is obliged or even entitled to it. The definition what is fitting, precedes as substantive proposition, and is characterized by *koto* (affair). — *Oitáru wo nyanganu koto too-sen tari*, that age is respected, is as it should be. —

當 乘 ヲ 府 日
然 組 ニ 役 本
スル ヌ 人 船 政
ベシ ヌ

Nippon sei-fu yori ... fñne-bune ni ... yaku-nin nori-kumasuru koto toosen taru besi ¹⁾, it will be proper that on the part of the Japanese government custom-house officers be placed on the ships; or, after the official translation: the Japanese government shall have the right ... to place.

§ 105. The desiderative verbs.

I. Desiderative verbs are formed by grafting on the root of the verb, the word expressive of quality *Ta*, = desirous. Belonging to the adjectives in *ki* (see page 109 n°. 69), *Tu* (ideographically expressed by 欲, phonetically by 度), has all the inflectional forms common to them, thus *Taki*, the substantive and attributive form, = desirous; *Tasi*, predicate, = is desirous; *Táku*, adv. — The spoken language, which according to § 9 II. suppresses the *k* and the *s*, supersedes *Taki* and *Tasi* by *Tai* (タイ, for which タヒ is improperly written), and *Takü* by タウ, *Tánu*, *Too*, for which inadepts also write タフ.

Mi-taki (△ *Mi-tái*), desirous to see; *Mi-tási* (△ *Mi-tái*), he desires to see; *Mi-tákü* (△ *Mi-tan*, *Mi-tgo*, *Mi-too*), adv. — 欲^タ見^ミ。見^ミ度^タ。 — *Mi-takuba*, if he wishes to see. — *Mi-taku* (or *Mi-too*) *mo nai* ²⁾, he will not even see.

From the adverbial form *Taku* or *Too*, by means of the verb *S*i, u, *uru*, to do (§ 103), is derived *Tákü-si* or *Too-si*, to desire; gerund *Táküsité* or *Too-sité*,

¹⁾ Regulations by which the Dutch trade in Japan shall be carried on. Art. 11

²⁾ This is the „*tomo nai*, je ne veux pas,” occurring in *RODR. Étém.* pag. 54 § 56 line 4.

in the spoken language passing by elision into *Taku-té* or *Too-te*, = desiring; *Takute wa* or *Toote wa*, the gerund isolated by *wa*, = if one desires; *Takute mo* or *Toote mo*, though he wishes.

The adv. *Taku* or *Too* is further used in compositions like *Taku-* or *Too-goza-ri-masu*, is desiring; *Taku-* or *Too-omou*, or *omoi-masu*, = is desirous thinking, = desires; *Taku-omooté iru*, *Taku-omooté ori-masu*, roundabout polite form for: I desire; *Tôku-zon-zi-masu*, I am desirous; *Mairi-taku-zonzi-masu*, I will go.

II. Continuative forms.

1) If according to § 10. to the adv. *Tôku* or *Too* we join the verb *Ari*, = to exist, we obtain the continuative form *Taku + ari* or *Too + ari*, which in pronunciation, and in writing also, passes over to **Takari**, タカリ, = continually to be desirous. Inflection, the same as of *Ari* (§ 96).

Pres. *Mi-takū ari*, *Mi-too ari*, *Mitakar)i*, u, is desiring to see.

Gerund *Mi-taku-arte*, *Mi-taku-atte*, *Mi-too-atte*, *Mi-takarite*, △ *Mi-takatte*.

Concess. *Mi-taku wa aredomo*, also *Mi-tai-keredomo*, though he desires to see.

Condit. *Mi-taku-ba*, *Mi-takereba*, *Mi-tai-naraba*, if he desires to see.

Future *Mi-takaroo*, he may desire to see.

Pret. *Mi-tooatta*, *Mi-takatta*, he was desiring to see.

Mi-takattu keredomo, though he has desired to see.

Fut. Perf. *Mi-takattaroo*, he may have desired to see.

Derivative verbs of this stamp are:

Kiki-taki, desirous to hear. 聞き度々.

Yuki-taki, desirous to go.

Si-taki (支度), desirous to do, = ready. — *Si-taku-* (*si-tôu*)-*suru*, to be ready.

Itôsi-taki (欲致), desirous to bring about.

Manabi-taki, desirous to learn.

Nomi-taki, desirous to drink.

Mede-taki, desirous to love, in love.

Ure-taki, desirous to mourn, = sympathetic.

Nemu-taki, desirous to sleep, sleepy. —

△ *Nému-tai*, I will sleep. —

Nemu-taku nasi (△ *Nemu-tôu nai*), I am

not sleepy. — *Ware mata nemu-taku mo nai* (vulgo *nemu-tôu mo nai*),

also I am not sleepy. —

Nemu-tasa, sleepiness. —

Wa-takûsi, = selfish; the l.

§ 106. The leaving off of an action is expressed

I. by the deflecting transitive verb **Mak)i**, u. From *Aku*, to open, *Mi*, to see, *Yuki*, to go, are derived by means of *Maki*: *Ake-maki*, *Mi-maki*, *Yuka-maki*,

to leave off opening, to leave off seeing, not to go farther. From the examples given it appears, that, just as in the forming of the continuative, factive and passive forms, the weak *i* of the deflecting verb undergoes a strengthening. *Mak)i, u* means to roll up; thence the substantive *Maki*, a roll, or *Maki-mono*, a thing that is rolled. A roll of writing, that has been used, is rolled up again. Thence, improperly: *Sita wo maku*, to roll up the tongue, i. e. cease speaking, grow speechless. — *Ito naki koto wo mukite zi wo ütôvu*, he lays the stringless harp aside and sings a verse.

Joined to a verb with the signification of ceasing to do what the verb expresses, *Mak)i, u* is expressed by 退 = to refuse, to retire, thus 見^ニ退^キ, *Mi-maki*, to cease seeing. — 知^テ退^キ, *Sira-maki*, to have done with a thing. 欲^ホ聞^カ退^ラ敷^キ, *Kika-mákü fósiki*, desiring not to hear more of. — 懶聽政, *Mátsüri-koto wo kikamaku fóssu*, he wishes to hear no more of business.

II. *Yam)i, u* (止^ム), *intr.*, to become quiet, to come to rest, Lat. *quiescere*; to leave off ... — *Kaiko kûvá wo kûvi-yamu*, the silkworm leaves off eating. — *Kûvá wo furi-yame*, leave off strowing food on the floor (to feed the silkworm). — *Yami*, as we see, with the root of a precedent verb forms a compound verb.

III. *Simav)i, u*, △ *Sima)i, u*, 了^ル, phonetically expressed by 仕^シ舞^{マシ}, in my opinion, a distortion of *Símávi*, to retire to rest, perch as bird, thence improperly to have done with a thing, to leave off. It belongs more especially to the spoken language, and generally has the complement of the action one leaves off, in the gerund in *te* or *de*, sometimes also in the verbal root, before it.

Si-goto wo site simái-mášoo, I shall finish my work. — *Wataküsi wo sono siyo-(šo) motsü wo moháya yoni-simavüta* (△ *simoota*), I have read this book throughout. — *Kare wa kunde simoota*, he has left off eating, = he has eaten. — *Kunde simante aroo*, he will have eaten. — *Waki-simuguta sake*, fermented beer. — *Imada waki-simarázu ni oru sake*, beer that has not fermented. — *Kunde simaé; nonde simaé*, leave off eating and drinking. — *Uri-nargute simgu*, to sell out. — *O ya-siyókü O simai nasare mase*, may your supper be ended! = take your supper at my house! the action being represented as finished. ¹⁾

¹⁾ Compare what A. RÉMUSAT in *Élém. de la Gramm. Chinoise* § 352 says concerning 了 *liao*.

Simavás)i, *u*, causat., to make leave off ... — *Watákusi ni mǎdzu iúte-simavaseyo*, let me first have done speaking.

Simavar)e, *u*, *uru*, pass., to be finished. — *Kaki-simavaretaru šoo-kan*, a written (finished) letter.

§ 107. The adverbial form of a verb, as characteristic of modal propositions, like: as one thinks, as one says, is *..á-síku*, *..á-síkū vá*, = *..á-ku*, *..á-kuvá*.

Of the verbals derived by means of *síki*, = ..like, treated at large in § 16, 2), page 121, some by changing *síki* into *síku* assume an adverbial character. From *Omóvi*, to think, to mean, is obtained *Omovásikū*, = probably, as one thinks or means. This is the axiom. As nevertheless the *si* of *síku*, is suppressed, for shortness, *..a-síku* passes into *..á-ku*; from *Omovásíku* is formed *Omováku* and with addition of the isolating *va*, *Omovákū vá*, = as one means. The same is good of:

Ie)i, *u*, to say, to be called; *Si ni ivaku* (詩^シ = 曰^フ), = as it is said in the odes, according to the odes.

Nori-tamáv)i, or *No-tamáv)i*, *u*, to bid, enjoin, command; *Sino nori-tamaváku* (子^{シノ} 曰^フ 玉^{ハク}), = according to the master's sentence, as the master says.

Negáv)i, *u*, to wish; Δ *Negavákuba*, *sa-yoo yorosii*, = as I wish, it is good so, = so it should be according to my wish.

Mǎus)i, *u*, to say; *Mǎusákū*, as people say. — *Fós)i*, *u*, now *Fóss)i*, *u*, to, desire; *Fosáku* (欲^{サク}), as people desire, as people will.

Iveri, has said; *Iveráku va*, as people have said.

Ivikeri, has said; *Ivikerasi*, it is as if people had said (compare § 18); *Ivikeraku* (云^ク 来^ク 久^ク), as people have said. — *Sen-zi* (宣^{セン} 旨^ジ) *ni ivikerákū va*, as it has been said in a proclamation by the Mikado.

Osor)e, *uru*, old-Jap. also *Osori*, to fear; *Osorákūva* (恐^ク ハ), as it is to be feared, as I fear; a polite way of expressing doubt.

Nari, to be: *Narákū* (= *Narásíku*), = as it is, preceded by a verb in the substantive form, e. g. *Kíku-naráku*, as one learns. — *Míru-naráku*, as people see. — *Ivu-naráku*, as people say. — *Utagaru-naráku*, contracted *Utagavu-rákū*, probably. *Naráku* is declared to be a contraction of *Nari* (to be) and *Kaku* (= *Sikáku*, adv. so, compare § 17) ¹⁾, and, while it is said that *Naraku* must

¹⁾ 也^{ナリ} 斯^{カク} ノ 畧^{リョク} ヌ. See 助語審象, *Zio-go sin-soo* or Explanation of the auxiliary verbs. III. 51 v.

be expressed by 説 or 道, people write 聞^キ説^ヲ。見^ミ説^ヲ。言^フ説^ヲ or 聞^キ道^ヲ etc.

Remark. The derivative form *siki*, elucidated in § 16, predicate *sisi*, contracted *si*, which in connection with *ari* (to be) passes into *ará-siki* and *ra-siki* (§ 18), is also joined to verbs to express doubt ¹⁾. Consequently *Keri* (= has been, § 82) passes into *Kerási*, it is as if it had been; *Ki-ni-keri* (= is come, § 84) into *Ki-ni-kerasi*, it is as it were come. — *Aki va ki-ni-keri* ²⁾, the autumn is come. — *Fáru sugite* ³⁾ *nátsu ki-ni-kerasi* ³⁾, the spring is passing away and it seems as if the summer were (already) coming.

§ 108. ...*meri*, = it is as if, it seems, an old-Japanese derivative form, which, as it is said, resembles *Nari* (= is) but expresses some doubt ⁴⁾. It follows the indicative closing-form of a verb.

Yebisū no kami no koto yo ni sanazama ni iku-meri ⁵⁾, with respect to the history of the God Yebis', people speak about it in the world, as it seems, in different ways.

Tsigiri okisi ⁶⁾ *sasemo ga tsuyuwō!* ⁶⁾ *inotsi nite*

Avare! *kotosi no* ⁶⁾ *aki mo iuu-meri* ⁶⁾.

Oh dew of the sprig, that is planted with promises! In my life, Alas! the autumn of this year, as it seems, passes away (without seeing the promise made to me performed). — *Inu*, from *In*i, *u*, *uru*, to go away (§ 84), not a negative form of *I*, to be.

As belonging to this category are cited: ⁷⁾

Ak'uu-meri (明去), it seems to become day.

Nagáru-meri (流), *Fat'uu-meri* (消去), it is as if it flows away, as if it perishes.

This form is to be distinguished from *Tsubóm-éri*, *Nasásim-éri*, being the pret. pres. of *Tsubómi*, to bud, and *Nasásime*, to order to be made (see § 80), as also from *..nameri* or *..naumeri*, shall have been, Future Perfect. of *Ni*, to be (see § 100. I.).

¹⁾ *Súkósi utagavu koloba nari. Wágun Siwori*, under *Rasi*.

²⁾ *Hiyaku-nin*, N^o. 47.

³⁾ *Ibid.* N^o. 2.

⁴⁾ ナリト 似^ニテ 少^シ 疑^ウヒノ 意^コハリト イヘリ. *Wágun Siwori*, under *Meri*

⁵⁾ *Nimaze*. II. 16 recto.

⁶⁾ *Hiyaku-nin*, N^o. 75.

⁷⁾ *Ha-gun Siwori*

§ 109. **Nāsi**, **Naki**, **Nāku**, in the ordinary manner of speaking and writing, by the suppression of the *s* and *k* (see § 9, II. page 112), **Nai**, **Nai**, **Nau** (ナウ, pronounced as **Nāo**, whence the written form **Noo**, **Nó** and **Nò**), means not to exist (無), not to be present, to be not at hand, in opposition to *Arī*, *u* (有, § 96), = to exist.

A general sketch in § 20, when treating of the derivative adjectives in *naki*, has already made us acquainted with this word. Here it requires to be elucidated in further particulars, concerning which all the dictionaries generally leave the student in the lurch.

I. The root **Na**, of which the sound *n* is the negative element (compare § 91, I), occurs

1. as prefix, like our *un-* in compounds as: *Na-yami*, = unrest; *Na-koto*, nothingness; *Na-wi* (ナヰ), *Na-i* (ナイ), = un-seat, i. e. earthquake; *Na-mi*, the un-real, the nothing; whence *Aru-jitō wo nami-su*, = *Nai ga siro ni su* (蔑), to esteem any one as nothing.

2. as the forbidding not, followed by an imperative, that closes with **so**. — *Na-motomé so*, seek not! — *Na-si so*, also *Na-si zo* (勿爲), do not! — *Na-iri so*, say not! — *Na-nakare so*, = Δ *Na-nakasso* ¹⁾, let it not be wanting! = it must be there.

3. In the spoken language *na* suffixed to the substantive form of an affirmative verb is the forbidding not, Lat. *ne*.

Ageru na, raise not!

Kiku na (聞き 奈), hear not!

Miru na, see not!

Iu na (イウナ), say not!

Aru na, be not!

Suru na, do not!

Ageraruru na, let it not be raised!

Yomaruru na, let it not be read!

This imperative is strengthened by the subsequent *yo*. — *Miru-na yo*, you shall not see. — *Wasururu-na yo*, you shall not forget.

4. *Na* suffixed to the substantive form of a verb, occurs as characteristic of a negative question. — *Man gin de wa hyāku nitsi kakari masanā?* for (the delivery) of ten thousand pounds are not a hundred days needful? — *Ri ni mo iro-iro arimasu soo na?* there are also different sorts of miles, — is it not so? *Shopping-Dialogues* p. 31.

¹⁾ Compare **RODR.** 56, line 12.

II. *Nasi*, △ *Nai*, predicate: there is not.

1. *Ato nasi*, there is no trace. — *Kizu nasi*, there is no hindrance. — *Urami nasi*, there is no disgust. — *I nasi*, there is no meaning. — *Yeki nasi*, there is no advantage in it. — △ *Zeni ga* ¹⁾ *arū ká? nai ká?* are there cents or are there not? = Is there money, or not? — *En-rio nasi ni hanásu koto*, to speak without forethought, not to care about what one says.

2. To bring it out with emphasis, the subject of *Nasi* is isolated, either by *va*, △ *wa*, or by *mo*, = also, even. — △ *Fu-sóku wa nai*, there is no want. — △ *Fító koto mó nai*, = there is not even a single affair, = there is absolutely nothing on hand.

3. [..*koto nasi*.] If the subject, the existence of which is denied by *Nasi*, is a substantive proposition, it is characterized by *koto*, affair. — *Fítóri kore wo násu-koto nasi* (無獨成之), = that a person does this alone, does not exist, no one accomplishes it alone. — *Taka va kureni sorete, mío-ō-šoo* (明多朝多) *tadzune yobu toki va, fítówo mite, osóre tonde tsikádzükü koto nasi*, if the falcon has flown away in the evening, and one seeks and calls him the next morning, he becomes shy at the sight of people, flies around, and it does not happen (*nasi*), that he approaches. *Tsikádzükü koto nasi* may for rounding off the period, stand for *Tsikádzükünu*, not approach. — *Sari todomaru koto nasi* (△..*kotoga nai*), 無去住, he goes not, he stays not. — *Sikareba kaiko va suzusiki ni masi-* (増多) *taru koto va nasi*, = that however the silkworm has grown in cool weather, this does not exist. — △ *Nán no koto mó nai* (無事), there is absolutely nothing at hand. — △ *Nán no ü-bun mó nai*, there is nothing to say.

[..*mono nasi*.] △ *Kore wo yóku-suru mono mo nai*, a person who can (do) such, there is not. — △ *Tanósimi-suru mono ga nai*, there is no one people may trust. — △ *Me ni atáru mono ga nai*, there is nothing that comes under notice. — *Ohošiku za-sen* (座多錢多) *to miyuru mono nasi*, chiefly those (coins) are wanting which (*mono*) seem to be counters or model coins.

[..*tokóro nasi*.] *Ki-suru tokoro nasi* (無所歸), there is no support. — △ *Nokóru tokóro wa nai*, there is no more room, = every place is taken. — △ *Fító ni waruu yuwaruru* (= *iváruru*) *tokóro wá nai*, there is nothing, about which ill is spoken by others.

¹⁾ For *ga*, see page 64.

4. If the definition that this or that is wanting, is predicate to a precedent subject, it is, for the sake of clearness, willingly isolated by *wa*, Δ *wa*, thus separated from the predicate. — *Iwaga sima fító nasi*, the „brimstone island” is without people, has no inhabitants. — *Kono yumi rá tsikára nási*, this bow is without strength, is powerless.

5. The appositive definition, what a thing is not, is put in the Local, characterized by one of the terminations *ni*, *de*, *ni wa* or *de wa*. — Δ *Ri fat ni wa nai*, it is not sagacity, it is stupid. — Δ *Sono yau ni nai*, it is not so. — Δ *..no yau ni nai*, it is not so as... — Δ *Kore fodo ni nai*, it is not so much. — Δ *Waga mama ni wa nai*, it is not capricious. — Δ *Na-koto de wa nai*, it is no nothingness, it is even of importance. — Δ *Waga koto de nai*, it is not my business; it does not concern me; I have nothing to do with it. — Δ *Waga-tomo de nai*, it is not we. — Δ *Sorewa sayau de wa nai ka?* is it not so? — Δ *Sgu* (or *Sou*) *de wa nai*, it is not so. (不如是。不^レ然^カバア^ラ)。 — Δ *Doko de mó sou de nai to ieru koto wa nai*, it is nowhere said, that it is not so, literally: it does not occur anywhere that people say that it is not so. — Δ *Kau de wa nai*, it is not so. — Δ *Sou sita koto de wa nai*, it is not a business of that nature. — Δ *Minu de wa nai* (非不見), one may not overlook; one may indeed look to. — Δ *Iwanu de wa nai* (非不言), one must speak about it.

6. [*..ku nai*.] The definition denied by Δ *Nai*, in the easy manner of writing, also precedes as an adverb. — Δ *Kono syok-mots' umaku nai*. that meat is not tasty. — *Umaku nai syok-mots*, distasteful meat.

Remark. The predicate *Nasi* is in compound words used as an attributive also, e. g. *Na-nasi-yubi*, the nameless (the fourth) finger, i. e. the finger, whose predicate definition: *na-nasi* is at the same time its adhering attribute.

III. **Naki**, Δ **Nai** (ナイ, vulg. ナ^レ also), = ..less, the adjective form.

1. Used as a noun substantive, it means: nothing, and answers to *Naki-mono* and *Naki-koto*, i. e. a thing or a matter that does not exist. — *Naki ni suru*, to consider as nothing, to cipher away. — *Fító wo nai ga* (vulg. ナ^レガ) *siro ni suru* (蔑人), to consider others of no value. — *Korewo nasu mo yūve-naki ni arázu*, = also that people make this, is not a „cause-lessness,” i. e. it is not without reason that this is done.

2. The attributive **Naki**, Δ **Nai**, = paltry, in the original signification of not existing. — *Naki-fító*, a person not existing, not present, i. e. a de-

funct. — *Naki-mono*, vulgo *Nai-mono*, a thing not existing, a nothing. — *Arû fitô no naki-koto wo kiku*, to hear of one's not being (his being dead). — *Naki-ato* (亡迹), a trace effaced.

3. As attributive adjective (= without, Lat. *absque*, *sine*) *Naki*, Δ *Nai* has the definition, what there is not, as a genitive before it, either with or without the genitive termination *no* or *ga*.

Δ *Tsuiye-naki koto atarazu*, continuance is impossible, = an end must come. — *Tsikara-naki yumi*, a powerless bow, a bow without strength. — *Tsikara-naki koto*, power-less-ness. — *Ato-naki nari*, it is a thing without trace = it has disappeared, = *Ato nasi*, there is no trace of it. — *Kiwamari no naki koto nari*, it is a matter without limitation. — *Kiwamari no aru koto nari*, it is a matter that has limitation. — Δ *Mi no oki-dokoro no nai mono*, a person without a place in which he can settle, a wretch. — Δ *Tsigai no nai yau ni wa naranu*, it is not of that nature that there should be no difference. — Δ *Fei-sei no kokôro-gake ga nai*, without a life's exertion or care. — Δ *Tanomi ni suru mono ga nai*, without anything or anybody in which one has support. — Δ *Kokôro ni mono ga nai*, having no evil in the heart, = *Urami naki*, without disfavor.

Remark. To *ga nai* of the last three examples, what is said at page 64 respecting *ga* is applicable.

IV. The adverbial form **NAKU** (ナク), = without, by the dropping of the *k* in the easy manner of writing passes to ナウ **Nau**, for which ナフ **Navu** also is written, sounding in pronunciation as **Ngu**, **Ngo**, — for which **noo**, **nô** or **nô** have chiefly been written. See § 9. II. — *Nani-to naku, idzu to naku*, = without anything whatever, = nothing at all.

1. The form **NAKU** is used, as if it were the uninflected verbal root, in coördinate propositions. See § 9. B. 2. — *Kake-mo naku, amari-mo nasi*, there is nothing too little, nothing too much. 无欠无餘.

2. Among Poets **NAKU** supersedes the termination *...nu* of the negative verb. — *Ace-naku*, = *Acénu*, not to dare. — *Maka-naku*, = *Makanu*, not to roll up (§ 106). — *Omora-naku*, = *Omoránu*, not to think. See § 92. 4.

3. **Naku va**, Δ **Naku wa**, the adverbial form isolated by *va*, Δ *wa*, is used as predicate verb in adverbial propositions, with the meaning of as or if there is not, failing of. — *Iki-taru kizi naku va, si-taru kizi wô tôrû-bési*, failing of a living pheasant, one may take a dead one (to feed the falcon).

4. **Nakunba**, **Nakumba**. The Local *Nakunba* contracted from *Naku ni*, and isolated by *va*, means in case of not existing, if there is not. — *Mádzu-*

sikūsité fetsuráru koto náku. toudé ogoru koto nakumba, ikau? if one, being poor, is without flattery, and being rich, is without pride, how then? (what do you think of it?) Compare RODR. 56.

This Local form may even close a suppositive proposition, but is therefore no modus conditionalis.

アル	日 ^ニ	業 ^ケ	安 ^{アン}	衣 ^{○イ}	<i>I-siyok' no mitsi ra an-min dai itsi no keo naréba, itsi mitsi mo nakunba aru bekarazu, as clothing and feeding are the principal acts towards the welfare of a people, they may never fail for a day.</i>
ベ	モ	ナレ	民 ^{ミン}	食 ^{シヨク}	
カ	ナ	レ	第 ^{ダイ}	食 ^{シヨク}	
ラ	ク	バ	一 ^{イチ}	道 ^{ミチ}	
ズ	ン	一 ^{イチ}	一 ^{イチ}	道 ^{ミチ}	

5. Δ *Náku te wa*, = *Ngo te wa*, contracted from *Nákusité wa*. See below V, 1, *Nákūsi*.

6. *Náku to mo*, = *Náku to iédomó* or *Náku to iú to mo*, though it is said that there is not, granted that there is not. = even if there is not.

V. VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH *Náku*.

As such come under notice: *Nákū-si*, *Nákū-se*, *Nakári*, *Nakarásime*, *Nakeri* and *Nákū-nári*.

Explanation.

1. *Nákū-si*, *u*, *uru*, not to be. to be wanting, a coupling of *Naku* and *si*, = to do (see § 103. III. 3), antithesis to *Arí*, *u*, to be present. The spoken language, which makes from *Nakū-si*, *Ngu-si* (ナウシ). *Ngo-si*, changes the gerund *Nákū-síte*, by syncope into *Ngute*, *Noote*, and *Nákū-síte ra* into *Ngute wá*, *Noote wá* ¹⁾, = by or through want of, or: as there is not. Examples:

Ya-tsiu ra Nippon yákū-sio yori gurúsi naku-sité, ni-orósu-bekarazu ²⁾, at night, without permission of the Japanese officers, no goods may be unloaded. — *Nippon yákū-nin tatsi-ari nákusité* ³⁾, without there being Japanese officers present. — *Zin-sin no rei siru-koto arazáru-koto náku-síte* (or *ngu-síte*), *sikáu-sité Ten-ka no mono ni arazáru koto nasi* ¹⁾, the spiritual part of the human heart is not without knowledge, and so also are the things on earth not without natural laws. — *Kotoba náku-síte kaheri-tamaru*, without (saying) a word (the king) goes away

¹⁾ In RODRIGUEZ *Élém.* p. 55 line 3 below, *Ninwetawa* should stand instead of *Nōtewa*, = our *Nao te wa*.

²⁾ Art. II al. 3 of the Regulations by which the trade in Japan shall be carried on, belonging to the Treaty of 1859.

³⁾ Franco-Japanese Treaty of 1858, Art. VIII, al. 4

⁴⁾ *Dai Gaku*, V. 2

again. — \triangle *Kane ga ngu-síte* (or *Kane ga nakute wa*) *kónawánü*, without money no success. — \triangle „*Anohito wá ori-ori kami-ire wo nákusü* (or *nakusare-masü*), he is always losing (read wanting) his pocket-book” ¹⁾.

Nákü-s)e, **uru**, \triangle **Ngo-se** (ナフセ), contracted from *Nákü-sim)e*, **u**, **uru**, = to despise.

\triangle *Fító wo nan to mo noosuru* (ナフソ ν) *mono*, = a person, who does not respect others for anything, who respects others for nothing.

2. **Nakar)i**, **u**, continuative, not present, a fusion of *Naku* and *ari*, follows the inflection of *Ari*. See § 92. 4. — *Urésisa kagiri nakari keri*, the joy has been boundless. — *Kono zení, men-kiyo nakarisi ga útsi nite, faya iritaru mono ima no yoni nawo nokoreri*, of this coin there are now still several copies (*mono*) remaining, which, while there was no permission, were prematurely struck off.

As a form of the forbidding Imperative, *Nakáre* comes particularly under notice. See § 93. 2. — *Tsiu-ziyo mitsiwo sárü koto túokarázu. Koréwo ónóréní*

施 ^{ホド}	不 ^ズ	施 ^{ホド}	不 ^ズ	忠 ^{チウ}	<i>hodokósíte negavazúnbá, fító ni hodokósu koto nakáre</i> ²⁾ , whoever is honorable and kind, never deviates far from the way (from the moral law). If a person does not wish that this or that be applied to him, he may not apply it to others!
於 ^オ	願 ^{ガン}	諸 ^{ショ}	違 ^ヒ	恕 ^{ジョ}	
人 ^{ヒト}	亦 ^{モト}	己 ^コ	違 ^ヒ	道 ^{ミチ}	
	勿 ^{ナカレ}	而 ^ニ			

Derived from *Nakári* is **Nákarásim)e**, **u**, **uru**, = to command that there be

桑 ^{クワ}	母 ^ボ	<i>not, i. e. forbid. See § 88. — Kuvanokiwo kiru-koto nákarásimu,</i> <i>= order is given that the chopping of the mulberry-trees do not</i> <i>happen, = it is forbidden to chop the mulberry-trees.</i>
柘 ^セ		

3. **Nakeri**, Pret. pres. there has not been, follows the inflection of *..eri, esi* (§ 80. § 92. 4). — *Nivakáni fusegu-beki ygu mo nakereba*, .. *Kavatsi ye nige-yuku*, as in the hurry there was no opportunity for defence, they fled towards Kavatsi.

Remark. The spoken language of Yédo seems to use *Nakéreba* for *Nakáreba*, thence „*Sivó- (sío-) ke ga nakerebá* (or *nakutewá*) *adziwai ga nai*, it is not good without salt” ³⁾.

4. **Náku-nar)i**, **u**, \triangle **Ngo-nari**, **Noo-nari**, to become nothing, to come to nothing, to be consumed. See § 100. III. (歿。沒。死). — *Tsikára naku-naru*,

¹⁾ R. BROWN, *Coll. Jap.* N^o. 291.

²⁾ *Tschung-gung.* XIII. 3.

³⁾ R. BROWN, *Coll. Jap.* N^o. 632.

to become powerless. — *Tsikára náku-naríte iru*, = Δ *Tsikára ngo nátte iru*, to have become powerless. — *Sake wa náku-narita*, = Δ *Sake wa ngo-nattu*, the wine is consumed. — Δ *Urevi no yûmé ga naku-narita*, the unpleasant dream has disappeared. — *Aritaru mono no náku-naritaru koto*, the perishing of a thing, that has existed.

SYNOPSIS OF THE INFLECTIONAL FORMS AND DERIVATIVES OF NASI, KI, KU,
NOT TO BE.

	Forms of the Predicate verb.	Substantive and Attributive form.	Adverbial form.	Derivative verb.
Root-form...	NA. — <i>not</i> .	Naki, Δ Nai, ...less.	Naku, Δ Nau, $\frac{7}{8}$ (Δ Noo, Nò) <i>without</i> .	Naku-si, Δ Nau- si, <i>to want, fail</i> <i>of</i> .
Closing-form..	Nasi, Δ Nai <i>there is not</i> .			Naku-su, Δ Nau- su, <i>there is wan-</i> <i>ting</i> .
Substant. form, declinable.	Nasi, Δ Nai Nasi vá, Δ Nai wá <i>that there is not</i> . Δ Nai ka? <i>is there not?</i>	Naki, Δ Nai Naki vá, Δ Nai wá <i>what there is not</i> , <i>the ...less</i> . Δ Nai koto	Δ Naku wa	Naku-suru, Δ Nau-suru
Local, defini- tive of time and manner.	Nasi ni, Δ Nai ni Nasi ni- Δ Nai ni- óite wá, óite wá, <i>while there is not</i> .		Naku ni va, = Nakunba, Δ Nakumba.	
Gerund.....				Nakû-site, = Δ Nakû te Δ Nago te Δ Nò te Δ Nakû te wá Δ Nò te wá <i>by want of...</i>
Concessive... <i>though</i> .	Nasi to- Δ Nai to- iyé domo, iyé domo Nasi to- Δ Nai to- iu tomo, iu tomo Δ Nai tomo		Naku tomo, <i>though there is</i> <i>wanting</i> .	
Conditional... <i>if</i> .		Δ Nai-narabá Δ Nai-nará		
Imperative...	Na! Nayo! <i>be it not!</i>			

Continuative.

	Present.	Pret. pres.	Preterit.	
Root-form...	Nakari.	Nakari tari, △Nakarita, Na- katta, ナカツタ. Nakari-keri, <i>there</i>	Nakari-si, <i>there has not been.</i>	Nakéri, △Nai- keri, <i>there was</i> <i>not.</i>
Closing-form..	Nakari, <i>there is not.</i>	<i>has not been.</i>	Nakari-ki, <i>there</i> <i>has not been.</i>	Nakéri, <i>there was</i> <i>not.</i>
Substant. form	Nakáru. Nakaru wa.	Nakaritaru, △Nakatta to.	Nakari-si.	Nakési.
Attributive...	Nakaru.		Nakari-si.	Nakési, Nakéru.
Local, defini- tive of time.	Nakaru ni. Nakaru ni óitewa.	Nakaritaru ni △Nakari ta ni, △Nakatta ni.	Nakari-si ni.	Nakeru ni.
Gerund.....	Nakarite, △Na- kátte.			
Causal form..	Nakareba.	△Nakattareba.		Nakereba, <i>as</i> <i>there was not.</i>
Concessive...	Nakarédomo. Nakarutomo.	△Nakattaredomo.		Nakeredomo, <i>though it was not.</i> Nakeru to mo.

FUTURE.

Conditional...	Nakaran, △Nakarao (Nakaroo, Nakarò). Nakaran z)u, uru, △Nakarò z)u, uru. Nakaraba.		
----------------	---	--	--

IMPERATIVE.

Optative	Nakare. Nakare kasi. Nakare gaua.		
----------	---	--	--

NEGATIVE.

Nakaránu, *it must be there.*

Nakerana naranu, 不可無, *it must have been.*

Naki ni arazu, Nakinarázu, *it is not without...*

Na nakasso, *it may not be wanting.*

REMARKS ON THE COMPOUND VERBS.

§ 110. The subordinate definition, which precedes a verb with which it is compounded, may be a substantive or a verb.

I. The substantive may be its object direct, or indirect. See § 3. II. 1 and 2.

It is the object direct in *Ama-govi*, *Tsi-govi*, to long for rain, for milk; it is the object indirect in *Ama-kūduri*, descending from the sky.

II. 1. The verb. preceding another verb as subordinate qualifying definition, remains in its root-form. The chief word of the compound governs the accidental object. *Korósi*i, *u*, to kill; *Fító wo i-korósi*, *útsi-korósi*, *sási-korósi*, to shoot a person dead, to strike dead, to stab dead.

To the qualifying definitions belong verbs like *Os*i, *u*, 押 お, to press, to do with emphasis; *Osi-yar*i, *u*, throw away; *Osi-ir*i, *u*, to intrude.

*Uts*i, *u*, 打 う, to strike, with a blow, or suddenly; *útsi-or*i, *iru*, to pounce, as a bird of prey (§ 99. I. n^o. 11); *Siro wo útsi-i*de, *dzuru*, to make a sally.

Sasi, 差 さ, send away; *Ok*i, *u*, place; *Sasi-oki*, set aside, put away; *Fító wo sasi-tsukavas*i, *u*, to dispatch any one.

*Mes*i, *u*, 召 め, invite, call up. qualifies the action as one which takes place by higher command; *Mesi-tor*i, *u*, to take by order, to arrest a person; *M.. ye fító wo tsukavasi*, *N.. wo mesi-kavesi-tamaru*, (the prince) sends people to M.. and has N.. brought back.

Avi, *Ai*, 相 あ, together. Lat. *con*; *Ai-katar*i, *u*, speak together; *Ai-gisu*, consult together.

2. The definition of the particular direction of an action incorporated in a compound verb (as in flying upwards or downwards). is not expressed in Japanese, as in other languages, by a prefix or a preposition, but as the principal part of the expression, by a verb, that is preceded by the mention of the action as a subordinate definition. Leaving the indication of such compound verbs to the dictionaries, we here confine ourselves, for the sake of brevity, to a few examples.

Age, *uru*, 上 あ, *trans.*, expresses the moving upwards, *Sage*, *uru*, 下 くだ, *trans.*, the movement downwards. — *Tori-age*, to take up, to raise. — *Sasi-age* *Saságe*, to present. — *Motsi-age*, to bring up. — *Fiki-age*, to draw up. — *Mausi-age*, to mention (a thing to a superior). — *Fiki-sage*, or *Fiki-orósi*, to draw down. — *Agari*, *Sagari*, *contin.*, *intr.* — *Tobi-agar*i, *u*, to fly upwards. — *Tobi-sagar*i, *u*, to fly downwards.

Nobór)i, u, to go upwards, Kudár)i, u, to go downwards. — *Fase-nobóri*, to run upwards. — *Nagare-kudari*, to flow downwards.

Ir)i, u, 入_い, to go into, Ide, Idzuru, 出_で, to come out. — *Osi-iru*, intrude. — *Faye-iru*, to grow inwards. — *Otsi-iru*, to fall into... — *Faye-idzuru*, to sprout out. — Ir)e, uru, *trans.*; Otósi-ire, to make a thing fall in .. — Idás)i, u, *causat.* — *Tori-idás)i*, u, to take out of.

Kom)i, u, 込_こ, *intr.*, to go inwards. Kom)e, uru, *tr.*, to bring in. — *Komas)i*, u, to make go inwards. — *Fi no teri-komu*, the shining in of the sun. — *Nomi-komu*, to swallow. — *Kugi wo (Kusabi wo) útsi-komu*, to drive in a nail.

Utsus)i, u, 移_{うつす}, to remove. — *Fakobi-utsusu*, to transport. — *Kaki-utsusu*, to write over again, to copy.

Kaher)i, u, 歸_{かへ}, to turn back; Kahes)i, u, to make turn back. — *Tobikaheru*, to fly back. — *Tori-kayesu*, to take back.

Mav)i, u, 舞_{まわ}, to move in a circle. — *Mi-mavi*, to look around.

Mavar)i, u, continually to go round. — *Nagare-mavaru*, to flow round.

Mavas)i, u, to make go round. — *Fiki-mavasu*, to draw a thing round-about. — *Tori-mavasu*, to turn round.

Tsuk)i, u, 著_{つく}, *intr.*, = on, to. — *Kisi ni tsuku*, to come ashore. — Δ *Fune ga oka ni nagare-tsuku*, the ship drifts ashore.

Tovor)i, u, Δ Toór)i, u, 通_{とお}, to go through, to pass. — *Fino naka wo*, to go through the midst of the fire. — *Nagare-tovoru*, to flow through.

Tvos)i, u, Δ Toós)i, u, to make go through. — *Ovi-toósu*, to drive through. — *Ovi-toósaretaru*, driven through. — *Matowo i-toósu*, to shoot through a target.

Watár)i, u, 渡_{わた}, to pass, to go from one side to the other. — *Kawa wo watári*, to cross a river. — *Kawa wo katsi-watári*, to wade through a river. — *Tobi-watari*, to fly over.

Watás)i, u, to make pass over, to carry over. — *Yaku-šo ye fíto wo jiki-watásu*, to transport people to the office.

Tsir)i, u, 散_ち, *intr.*, to spread, scatter; Tsirás)i, u, *caus.*, spread, scatter. — *Fou-bouye nige tsiru*, they fled to all sides. — *Tobi-tsiru*, to spatter abroad. — *Ovi-tsirasu*, to scatter.

A P P E N D I X.

DISTINCTIVE VERBS AND VERBAL FORMS EXPRESSIVE OF COURTESY.

§ 111. Courtesy in language and writing is, in Japan, not confined to the privileged classes of society; cast ages ago in distinct forms and, we may add, stamped by the law, it has penetrated to the lowest grades of society and spread over social intercourse a gloss of reciprocal respect, which is indeed not to be found among any other people on the globe.

Besides, courtesy in language and writing is not the consequence of recent development: even the oldest Japanese historical book, the *Yamato-bumi* of the eighth century (see page 37) is characterized by a courteousness of expression which, the not unfrequent insignificance of the contents considered, cannot be acquitted of extravagance.

So long as courtesy governs the oral and written intercourse of a people, the appreciation of its forms belongs to the study of the language, and since we have treated it in the chapter on the Pronouns, we are obliged to fix the attention on the verbs and verbal forms also with which courtesy gives gloss to its language.

The chief features of the Japanese courtesy are:

1. The polite speaker distinguishes the conditions and actions of persons beyond him by the honorary prefix 御ゴ。* *On* or *O*. See page 75.
2. He does not say or require, that another person, whom he places above himself, should do any thing himself, but says or requires only, that the action be done, i. e. he places the passive form as predicate to the subject, that really performs the action.
3. He considers not only persons of higher station, but even his own equals as being in a higher position, and with the actions of others connects the idea of descent, whereas to his own he gives that of ascent.
4. He is scrupulous in the choice of synonymous verbs, in proportion as he wishes to express the same idea in a more or less exalted style. Letter-writers teach him to distinguish the degrees.

§ 112. To satisfy the demand, which represents the person beyond the speaker not as acting himself and thus as not immediately coming in contact with persons of lower station, the active form of the predicate verb is, as it has been said, simply superseded by the passive form, without — and here is the peculiarity of the expression, — introducing any modification in the construction of the original active proposition (compare § 90. 2). Examples:

Karuno Oho-kimi wo dai-si ni sadameraru ¹⁾ (instead of *sadamu*, or *sadame-tamavu*), (the emperor) declares the Great-prince Karuno hereditary prince. — *Zin-mu Ten-wan aru toki takaki oka ni nobórite, kono kuni no katatsi akitsumusi ni nitáruwo mite, faziméte Akitsusimato nadzuckeraru* (instead of *nadzuku*), = Emperor Zin-mu, once climbing a height, seeing that this country (Japan) resembles the light-insect (the dragon-fly), first gave it the name of Light-island. — *L. wa M. ni N. no kwan wo sadzuckeraresi* (instead of *sadzukesi*) *to ari*, people say, that L. has given the office of an N. to M. — *Nani wo irasare-masita ka?* what have you said? *Iwasare* from *Iwasi*, make say, and this from *Ivi*, to say.

Much in use are the honorary passive forms: 1. *Serare*, 2. *Saserare*, 3. *Nasare*, *Nasare-mas*)i, u. 4. *Nasaserare*, 5. *Arasare*, 6. *Irare*, 7. *Irasare*, 8. *Iraserare*. Explanation:

1. *Serar*e, *uru*, pass. of *S*)e, *uru*, to do, to effect. — *Yamato-Take sibaraku tou-rin-seraru* ²⁾ (instead of *tou-riu-su*). Yamato-Take stays there some time. — *Kei-ko Ten-wan Siganite fou-gyo-* (崩御 ^{フウゴ}) *seraru* (instead of *fou-gyo-su* or *fou-gyo-si tamaru*), Emperor Kei-ko dies at Siga. — *N. no Oho-kimi kau-zi-* (薨 ^{カウジ}) *seraru*, Great-prince N. dies. — *M. wo kiri-korosi, N. wo ru-zai-* (流罪 ^{ルザイ}) *seraru* ³⁾, (the king) sabres M. down, and banishes N. If, instead of *seraru*, *séši-mérdaru* were used, it would mean, that the king gives order to kill and to banish.

2. *Saserar*e, *uru*, it is effected that one does; from *Sas*)e, *uru*, to make do. The action runs, as it were, over three wheels, by which a person of high station causes an inferior to have a thing done. — *Go-beo* (御廟 ^{ゴボウ}) *ni mayu wo ken-zi-saseraru* (or *ken-zi-sase-tamaru*), the prince has cocoons offered in the ancestral temple.

3. *Násar*e, *uru*, 被 ^レ成 ^ナ, to be done, from *Nasi*, make exist, and this from *Ni*, to be (see § 100). *Nani wo nasaru ka?* what does your honor?

¹⁾ *Nippon woo-dai itsi-ran*. II. 8 verso.

²⁾ *Ibid.*

³⁾ *Ibid.* II. 6 verso.

In the familiar style of speaking and writing as an auxiliary verb grafted on the root of another verb, it makes known, that the action which is done, proceeds from the person spoken to, or even merely from another person than the speaker. Examples from the spoken language:

Sayoo nará, O tsüké násare! if it is so, give it me! — *Kosikake ni O kake nasare!* may Your sitting on a chair happen. take a seat. *O kake násare*, sit down. — *Kore wo O kasi- (O tsüké) nasare*, lend (give) me this. — *Kore wo Goran nasare*, please look at this. — *Yoku O yásūmi násaré!* = may Your good rest happen! = good rest! — *Doko ni O sūmai nasarū ka?* where do You live? — *O kai nasarete mo, O yame nasarete mo, kono ōyēwa deki-masenū*, you may buy it or not, there ends the matter. — *Nokorazu O kai násarū nará, yasukū-sité aye-māšoo*, if you buy the whole stock, I will sell it cheap. — *Roowo O kai-nasarū ka?* don't you buy wax?

Nasare-masi, u, the same as *Nasare*, only more round-about. vulgo *Nasari-masu* also (see § 101). — *△ Nani wo nasare-masu?* what are you doing? — *Goan-sin nasare-mase*, depend on it. — *Watakusi no mōsu koto wa O wakari nasare-masū ka?* do you understand what I say? — *Sa-ygu ni nasare-masū ka?* will you do so? — *O kamai nasare-masū na!* take no pains! — *Sūkōsi mo O kamai nasare-masū na*, don't trouble yourself about; don't care for it. — *Kono mitsi wo O ide nasare-mase*, go this way. — *Idzureye O ide nasare-masū?* whither are you going? — *Idzure yori O ide nasare-masita?* whence do you come? — *Douzo O hairi nasare-mase*, if you please, walk in.

4. **Nasaserar**e, uru, 被_レ爲_レ成⁺, care is taken that a thing is done or made; the passive of *Nasare*, have made, and this the causative form of *Nasi*, to make. The action or the effect here runs over four wheels.

5. **Arasar**e, uru, pass. of *Arasi*, to have be. and this from *Ari*, to be. — *△ Dore ga O suki de arasare-masū ka?* what is there of your desire? what do you like?

Arašerare, uru, vulgo for *Iraserare*. — *△ O ko-sama ikaga de arašerare-masu*, how is your son? — *Sošite okūsamawa ikaga de arašerare-masu?* and how is your lady?

6. **Irar**e, uru, to be placed in the condition of dwelling, pass. of *I*, *Iru* (居_ル), to dwell, be somewhere, stay (see § 98). — *Anata iraruru tokoro wo zonzi-masēnu*, I do not know your dwelling-place.

7. **Irasar**e, uru, pass. of *Irasi*, make dwell, thus to be placed in the condition

of making dwell, = to be (somewhere). — *Mo sūkoši irasare-mase* (low language: *iraššai masi*), stay a little longer. — *Yoku irasare-masita*, you are well placed, = you are welcome. — *Sate, hisabisa ikaga de irasare masu*, come on, how have you been this long time. — *Ikaga de irasare-* (vulgo *irašai-*) *masu?* how do you do?

8. *Iraserare*)e, *uru*, to be placed in the state of dwelling, = to be. — Δ *Go ka-nai samawa ikagade iraserare* (vulg. *iraššai*) *masū?* how are your family? — Δ *Kiwa hen-* (火多邊) *ni iraserare-mase*, be near the fire (come near the fire). — *Itsi bet irai* (一不別以來) *ikaga de iraserare-masita?* since our last separation, how have you been?

§ 113. I. *Tama*)vi, *vu*, Δ *Tamai*, *Tam*)au, oo, 賜^{タマヒ}。給^{タマフ}, to bestow, grant, give, when the giver belongs to a higher sphere. Although the Japanese themselves reduce this word to *Tama*, 玉^{タマ}, = jewel, we take it for a compound of the old *Tabi*, = to give, and *Avi*, 合^{アヒ}, to meet. Thence: *Mono wo motte fitō ni tamavu* ¹⁾, literally: to confer something on a person. 祿^{ロク}ヲ諸^{シロ}臣^{シン}ニタマフ ²⁾, *Roku wo šo-sin ni tamavu*, (the king Zin-mu) grants incomes to his servants.

As an auxiliary verb grafted on the root of another verb, it characterizes the action as proceeding from a higher person, whether divine or princely. It is expressed by 給^{タマフ} and phonetically by 請^{マシ}。祈^{イノリ}, answers somewhat to the „please” or „have the goodness” used by courtesy, German *geruhen*, is however, at least in tales, rightly left out by the translator.

Examples:

Tedzūkara kūvā wo torite ko-gavi wo si-tamavu, (the princess) plucks mulberry leaves with her own hand, and feeds silkworms. — *Sono notsi Tau yori taka wo ken-ze šikāba, Mi-kari wo moyorasare, šio-teo wo torāšime-tamavu*, when afterwards falcons had been brought as presents from China, (the Japanese prince) caused hawking to come more into fashion, and had all birds caught. *Mayov*)i, *u*, to come into fashion. *Tor*)i, *u*, to take. — *N.. tatsimatsi mūnāsiku nāru*, *N..* dies suddenly. — *Iku-fodo mo nākū kano fimé mūnāsiku narāse-tamavu*, immediately after, that lady (a princess) dies.

¹⁾ *Nippon-ki*.

²⁾ *Nippon woo-dai itsu-ran*.

シタマフ オドナク 身^ミ煩^{ワザラ} 軍^{クン}中^{チュウ} *Kun-tsiu nite mi mi wadzurawasikusite fodo-nákü fou-kiyo si-tamaru* ¹⁾, (the prince), while he is with the army, is taken unwell and dies shortly after.

崩^{ホウ}御^{キョ} ハシクソ 御^ミ *Old writers have Tab)i, u, = to give, instead of Tamavi also; thence: Osame-tabisi toki, = when N.. governed* ²⁾. —

For further examples see page 230 line 11 from the bottom. — p. 239 l. 8 from the top. — p. 274 l. 20. — p. 290 l. 9 from the bottom.

II. *Tamavar*i, u, Δ *Tamguri*, *Tamôr*i, u, the continuative form of *Tamavi*, which however supplies the place of the passive form *Tamavare*, = to be granted, not in use (compare *Nari* as substitute for *Nare*. § 100. III), and, like *Tamavi*, also as an auxiliary, is joined to the root, or to the gerund of a verb.

Kore Ten no tamavâru nari, 是天所致也, this is a present from Heaven. — *Ko-zi-ki ni Izanagi no mikoto yori Amaterasu Ohon kami ve mi kubi-tama wo tamavarisi koto wo iveri*, in the book of antiquity it is mentioned, that by (the god) Izanagi a necklace was presented to the goddess of the sun. — *Kore wo mesite go i ni dziyo-* (五位^ニ叙^ジ) *serare, ... no na wo tamavari*, (the king) inviting him, raises him to the fifth rank and confers on him the name of .. — *Nuno san-byâku-tan wo Hâku-sai kok-ugn NN. ni tamavari* (賜), *ya zyu-man hon wo ... ni tamaru*, (the Jap. prince) gives three hundred pieces of silk to NN., king of Petsi, and presents (his minister) a hundred thousand arrows.

*Uke-tamavar*i, u, Δ *Uke-tamôri* (承奉), to have the honor to receive (from a superior), or to hear. — *Tsiyôku wo uke-tamavari* ³⁾ (承勅), to receive the king's orders. — Δ *Go i-ken* (御意^イ見^ミ) *wo uke-tamavatta* or *tamotta*, I have had the honor to receive your advice. — Δ *Sakû-ya yuki ga furi-masita to uke-tamavari-masita*, I have had the honor to hear, that it has snowed during the night. — *Go sa-u* (御左^サ右^ウ) *uke-tamavari-tâkü zonzi-mâsû*, I wish to have the honor to hear, how you do. — *Ka-roo* (家老^{カロ}) *füné wo idasite tamavari-keri*, we (skippers are speaking) enjoy the honor, that the secretary (of the governor) has our ships cleared. — Δ *Midzu wo nomasete tamôre*, = have the goodness to let me drink fresh water.

¹⁾ *Nippon woo-dai itsi-ran*, I, 10.

²⁾ *Wa-gun Siwori*, under *Tamavu*.

³⁾ " " " I, 16.

§ 114. By *Mátsür*i, u. the speaker expresses the most profound respect for the object, be it a person or a thing, that he speaks of or to. As continuative form of *Matsi* (待_{マツ}), = to wait (compare page 218), *Mátsür*i (祭_{マツル}尊. 禪) means continual waiting, solemn attendance, to show respectful homage. Thence *Tenwo mátsür*i, *Tsiwo mátsür*i, 祀_{マツル}先_{マツル}, *Senwo mátsür*i, *Kamiwo mátsür*i, „people do homage to heaven, to earth, to ancestors, to Kamis,” by celebrating feasts to their honor, *Mátsür*i being the feast itself.

As qualifying auxiliary joined to the root of a verb, *Mátsür*i unites with it the idea of reverential homage. One says: *Fútári no kimi ni tsúkavuru* (△ *tsukóru*) *koto atavázu*, serving two masters is impracticable. — More respect is shown by the expression: *Kimi ni tsúka^ovu* (△ *tsúkô*) *mátsür*i *koto* ¹⁾, to serve my prince with respect. — *Žó-tei ni tsúko-mátsür*i, to serve the Most High reverentially ²⁾.

上_{ミヤ}事_{コト} = 帝_{ミカド} When the excessively polite speaker says to his equals: *O tomo tsúkamatsuri-mášoo*, I will accompany you, or *O itoma tsúkamatsuri-másü*, I take leave of you, we may put down such politeness to his own account. The rule requires *Tsúkai-* or *Tsúkae-mátsür*i, yet this, for ease in pronunciation, passes into *Tsúkô-* (ツカフ) or *Tsúká-mátsür*i.

*Tate-mátsür*i, 奉, to offer respectfully and solemnly. from *Tate*, set up-right.

Kono toki ama-bito fardkano uwo wo Ten-wau ni tate-matsuri si koto ari ³⁾, it appears that, then, the divers solemnly presented a redbellied fish to the Emperor. — *Deva kuni yori kariko wo kavu mono wo tate-matsuru* ⁴⁾, from the country of Deva persons, who breed silkworms, are solemnly presented (to the emperor). — *Tsusima yori sirokane wo tate-mátsür*i ⁵⁾, from the island of Tsusima silver is presented (to the emperor). — *Haküsai no tate-matsureru te-fító*, artificers, whom Hakusai had presented (to the king of Japan).

Tate-mátsuri is joined to the root of a verb, as a qualifying auxiliary, to characterize the action as respectful, solemn.

On na (御名) *wo Yamáto Take no Mikoto to m^ousi-tatematsuru* (申_{マウシ}奉_{マツル}マツル) *besi* ⁶⁾, your name I must respectfully call Yamáto Take no Mikoto (compare

¹⁾ *Tschung-yung* XIII.

²⁾ *Yamato nen dai.* I. 21 v.

³⁾ *Ibid.* II. 29 r.

⁴⁾ *Ibid.* XIX.

⁵⁾ *Ibid.* III. 4 r.

⁶⁾ *Ibid.* I. 22.

p. 228 line 8). — *Ten-wgu wo ãmá ni tasúke-nose-tate-mátsuri*, *Kavatsi ve nige-yuku* ¹⁾), they respectfully help the emperor to mount a horse and escape to Kavatsi.

It is in earnest, not in irony, when the historian says: *Makowa no miko ukagavi kitárite Ten-wgu wo korósi-tate-mátsüru* ²⁾). prince Makowa, steals in and respectfully kills the emperor.

Tate-matsurare, **uru**, the honorary passive, honoring, in the eye of the speaker, also him who respectfully offers or presents. If in the preceding example *tate-mátsürárü* were used, instead of *tate-mátsüru*, the speaker would show his respect towards the murderer.

The states and occupations to the qualification of which courtesy pays particular attention, and the expressions of which, to be properly appreciated, must be understood also, are: 1. Being, existence; 2. Doing; 3. Seeing. Showing; 4. Saying; 5. Giving; 6. Going and Coming. — Explanation:

§ 115. BEING.

1. The spoken language, which leaves the use of *Nari*, to be, to the book-language, instead of it uses 1. *Masi* (§ 101); 2. *Ari* (§ 96), *Ari-masi* (§ 101); 3. *Ori*, *Ori-masi* (§ 97); 4. *Gozari*, *Gozari-masi* (p. 263 Rem.); 5. *Soro* (§ 102); 6. *Fanberi* and 7. *Moosi*.

6. **Fanber**i, **u**, **Famber**i, **u**, ハヅベリ。ハベリ, of old ハヅヘリ, means wait upon (侍。陪), stay or be somewhere (在), it is expressed in the epistolary style by 候 (wait upon), and declared as equivalent to *Samuravi*, *Sorai* (§ 102). *A. B. sa-u ni fanberite* (左^サ 右^ウ = 侍^ハリテ) *mátsüri-koto wo tori-okonáru*, (the ministers) A. and B. taking the places right and left (of the sovereign), carry on the affairs of government. — *Yumira Zin-dai yori fanberi*, the bow has existed from the time of the gods. Compare page 230 line 3 from the bottom.

7. **Maus**i, **u**, **△ Moosi**, 〃。〃。〃。〃, 1. to show oneself respectful; 2. 申, to mention. The way in which this word is used, requires the distinction of its two significations, although no attention is paid to it, by the Japanese, who use but one Chinese sign (申) for both.

In the former signification, as definitive or as defined part of a compound verb also, it qualifies the action as submissive, respectful: *Máusi-uke* is to receive respectfully; *Uke-máusi* on receiving to show oneself submissive. The

¹⁾ *Nippon woo-dai itsi-ran*.

²⁾ *Ibid*.

root *Mgu* seems to be the same as occurs in *Mgu-k*)i, *uru* (來朝), to come to court in solemn procession, *Mesi-mgu*ko- (not *ka*) *šimu* (召來), to send for a person to court, and in *Mairi*, to make a solemn entry. Japanese philologists think that this *Mausi*, „placed after the root of a verb, frequently passes into *Masi*” (§ 101) ¹⁾.

*Yamáto Takeno Mikoto Ise Dai-zin-Guu yori fou-ken wo mgu*si-ukete, *Surugá no kuni made yuki-tamgu* ²⁾, prince Yamáto Take receives respectfully from the temple of the Great Spirit at Ise the precious sword and departs to the country of Suruga. — Δ *Kaki-tome-mgu*su beki ya (書留可申), if I shall take a note of it? — *Sa-ygu naraba O wakare moosi-* (= *masi*) *masu*, as it is so, I take respectful leave of you; the ordinary expression for our: Farewell! — *Ori wo motte On tsikadzúki ni nari-mousi-taku-zon-zite, tada ima-made yen-in mgu*si soro, wishing for an opportunity humbly to come in contact with you, I have only delayed it till now. — Δ *O hanási-mousi-soro hitó wo mi-mousi soro*, I see the man of whom you speak.

§ 116. DOING is expressed by

1. *S*)i, *u*, *uru*, to do (§ 103), *Si-mas*)i, *u*, to be doing (§ 101).

2. *Itás*)i, *u*, *Itási-más*)i, *u*, to accomplish (p. 284 *Rem.*), more stately than *Si*.

3. *Asobas*)i, *u*, the causative form ³⁾ of *Asob*)i, *u* (遊^{アソブ}), to play, to be amused (*Saru yeda ni asobu*, the ape is playing among the branches), and further the honorary passive *Asobasar*)e, *uru* (被^レ遊^{アソビ}), to take pleasure in any occupation, are used both for the qualification of what persons of rank do. See page 237 line 5.

Δ *Go ki-gen yoku asobasi-soro*, His Honor's disposition (cast of mind) is good. — *Kore wo obosimesi asobasi-soro*, Your Honor means this. — *Kono hoo ye On-ide aso-*

遊^{アソビ} 出^{イデ} 此^コ
候^{コウ} 可^ベ 方^{ハツ}
被^レ 申^{マシ}

basaru beku soro, literally: may your outgoing be to this side, for: please come to my house. — *O noki asobasare!* please to go back (or out of the way)!

¹⁾ *MASU* go-bi ni tsúkete iyu va ohoku *MAUSU* no riyaku nari. — *Wa-gun Siwori*, under *Masu*.

²⁾ *Yamato nen dai*. I. 22 v.

³⁾ According to the *Wa-gun Siwori*, *Asobasu* is a contraction of 遊^{アソビ} 坐^{マス}, *Asobi-masu*. — „*Insihe yori*,” so it adds, „*Ki-nin koto wo nasaruru wo kaku iveri*,” it is an old custom to designate by this word the doing of noble persons.

§ 117. SEEING and SHOWING.

1. **Mi, Mite, Miru** (§ 99 n^o. 34), to see. — *Sina wo miru koto wa deki-masūka?* can I see your goods? ¹⁾. — *Watákusi wa kásuká ni fúné wo mi-masu*, I see ships in the distance. Do they say for it really in Yédo *Watakusiwa kas'kani fune ga mie-masu* or *mieru*? i. e. I — the ship comes in view.

2. **Mis)ø, eru**, to show. — *Bun-kowo O mise!* ²⁾, let me see a desk, or in the more round-about language of Miyako: *Bun-ko wo Go ken* (御^マ見^ミ) *se kudasare mase*.

3. **Fai- (Hai-) ken**, 拜^ハ見^ミ, to look on with respect. with interest. — *Kore wo hai-ken itási-masu*, or *hai-ken tsükamátsüri-soro*, I have the honor to see it.

4. **O me ni kak)ø, eru**, 向^カ目^メ掛^カ, = to bring a thing under Your Honor's notice, to show a thing.. — *Nani wo O me ni kake-mášoo ka?* ³⁾, what shall I show Your Honor?

5. **O me ni kakar)i, u**, = to appear before His or Your Honor's eyes. — *Miyoo-nitsi O me ni kakari-mášoo* ⁴⁾, = to morrow I shall come under your notice, I shall let myself be seen by you. I shall call upon you. — *Tadui ma hazimete O me ni kakari masíta* ⁵⁾, it is for the first time that I come under your notice, = it is for the first time that I have the honor to see you.

6. **Go-ran** (御^ゴ覽^{ラン}), the glance of a noble person.

Go-ran-z)i, u, uru, to honor with a glance. — *Ten-wgu no on fava sou-ziygu wo ik-ken Go-ran-* (一^ヒ見^ミ御^ゴ覽^{ラン}) *zite, kokóro yoku, waravi-tamavu* ⁶⁾, the mother of the emperor. at the first glance upon the prior. becomes glad of heart and smiles.

In the familiar style of speaking and writing the speaker applies *Go-ran* to his equals, to show them respect. — *Kore wo Go-ran-zerare*. or *Go-ran nasare*, please look at this. — *Nani wo Go-ran nasáru ka?* ⁷⁾, what are you looking at, what do you wish to see? the shopkeeper asks his customer. — *Nani de gozari-masū ka?* *itte Go-ran nasare*, go and see what it is.

§ 118. SAYING. The idea of saying is expressed by

1. **Iv)i, u, I)i, u** (云^ク), **Ii-mas)i, u**. — *Anata no O na wa nanito ii-masu ka?* what is your name? — *Watakusino nawa ... to ii-masu* ⁸⁾, my name is ...

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 23.

²⁾ *Ibid.* p. 2.

³⁾ *Ibid.*, p. 1.

⁴⁾ *Ibid.* p. 18.

⁵⁾ R. BROWN, *Coll.* N^o. 1048.

⁶⁾ *Nippon woo-dai itsi-ran.* II. 15 v.

⁷⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 1.

⁸⁾ *Ibid.* p. 19.

2. **Nori-tamav**)i, u, to order, when speaking of the master (see § 107, p. 299 l. 15).

3. **Osiy**)e, u, **uru**, 教^ヲ ^ヲ _ニ, pron. *óss(y)e*, ũ, ũrŭ, to teach, to communicate a thing (*jito ni koto wo*) to a person by teaching, places him who makes the communication above him, who receives it. — *Ware ni* (not *ware wo*) *osiye yo* (教^ヲ _ニ 我^ニ), = teach me or communicate to me, sounds modest; *Anáta ni osiye-másu*, = I teach you or communicate to you, is considered presumptions. — *Tami ni takahési uyuru koto wo osiyesimu* ¹⁾, (emperor Schin-nung) has the people taught ploughing and sowing.

4. **Oós**)e, **uru**, 仰^{オホセ}, to charge (*jito wo koto ni*, a person with anything), see § 87 n°. 25. Thence the passive *Oóserar*)e, **uru**, 被^{オホセ} _レ 仰^{オホセ}, to be charged, instructed. To a superior one says: △ *Anata wa sono toorini ooserare-mas'ta ka?* have you spoken so? to an inferior: *Omae sono toorini itta ka?* -- *Oose-tsük*)e, **uru** (仰付), speak to, to address.. Thence the honorary passive *Oóse-tsúkerar*)e, **uru**, 被^{オホセ} 仰付. — *Nippon ye to kai wo mo oose-tsukeraruru aida*, as or since (s. § 129, n°. 46) We (the sovereign speaks) have given orders to sail to Japan. — △ *Tono-sama korewo oose-tsukerareta*, the master has said this to us, or charged us with it.

5. **Kikas**)e, **eru**, = *Kikasime*, to make people hear, from *Kiki*, to hear. — *Ano O kata ni O kiki nasaré*, learn from him, ask him. — *Kikasime*, old-Jap. *Kikame!* 令^レ 聞^キ, let me hear! tell me! speaking to a nobleman. — *Watakusi ni O kikaše nasare!* let me hear! tell me. — *Watakusi ni O kikase nasaru koto ga deki-másu ka?* can you tell it me? — *I'tóno kokóroyeni naru koto wo i i kikaseru koto*, to tell that which tends to the interest of others.

Kikó-sím)e, **uru**, 使^シ 聞^キ, to let hear.

Kikosimes)i, u, 聞^キ 召^シ, to let hear, inform.

6. **Maus**)i, u, マウシ, △ **Moos**)i, u, to speak respectfully to one's superior, to mention, declare; expressed ideographically by 云。曰。申。白。謁。啓。告。奏。言。 ²⁾. It has the definition of what is said as an Accusative, and, if it is a Substantive objective phrase, this with the particle *to* before it, whereas the more distant object, to whom or where one mentions, as Dative or Local

¹⁾ *Jap. Encycl.* vol. 103. l. r.

イ
ヘ
リ
稟
字
也
ト
マ
ウ
シ
ト
イ
フ
ハ
語
ヲ
發
ス
ル
ニ
ハ
ッ
尊
長
ニ
對
シ
タ
イ
²⁾

precedes. — *Tsubusa ni sono koto wo mausi-soro*, I mention this minutely. — *Žoo-tei ni mansu*, 告^コ上^ウ帝^{テイ} =, to speak to God. — *Buts'ni mansite mausáku* ¹⁾, 白^{ハク}佛^{ブツ}言^{ゴン}, = as he speaking to Buddha says. — *Mausi-tamavakura*, 奏^{ソウ}言^{ゴン} ²⁾, a (the prince to the emperor) says. — *Nagákn Nippon no yatsúko to naríte*, midzúki-mono wo sadzuku besi to maosu, he declares that he will always be the servant of Japan, and pay tribute. — *△ Sore wa Nippon de wa nani to moosi-masú ka?* ³⁾, what is this called in Japan?

If *Musi* is used as a root, on which another verb is grafted, it is expressed thereby, that the action is confined to the speaking or saying, e. g. *Sadame*, to define; *Musi-sadame*, to defined with words; *Age*, to raise; *Musi-age*, *uru*, 申上, = to say towards above, to communicate to a superior; *Moosi-ire*, 申入, proposition to one's equal. — *Nandziye* (or *Nandzi ni*) *šo-kan wo motte moosi-ire-soro*, I have the honor to inform you by letter. — *Yákn-nin ye mausi-tassu-besi*, notice shall be given of it to the officers.

§ 119. GIVING.

1. As from courtesy the speaker places the person addressed above him, even if he is his equal, he qualifies his own giving as an upward movement, and the giving of another as a downward one: he uses *Age*, *uru*, to reach upwards, in opposition to the honorary passive *Kudasar*, *uru*, to be let down from on high, to descend (page 243 line 22), and since from this distinction it appears who gives, the speaker or the person spoken to, the express mention of a pronoun in connection with these and similar verbs is superfluous, as the following examples show:

△ *Dai-kin wo age-mású kara*, *uke-tori-gaki wo kúdásare* ¹⁾, after I have paid you the price give me a receipt. — *Dai-kin wa agerarénú* (or *agerare-masénú*) ²⁾, = the price will not be reached upward to you by me. = I will not pay the price. — *Dai-kin wa tadáima kúdasáru ka?* ³⁾, will you give me the money for the goods immediately? — *Tadáima kúdasaru koto wa deki-masénú ka?* ⁴⁾, cannot you give (it) me immediately? — *Anata-sama yori kudasareta kane itsi-pu mo tsukai wa itási-masenú*, of the money given by Your Honor — it is a Japanese grisette who writes it — I have not yet spent one *bu*.

¹⁾ *Mansaku*, see § 107.

²⁾ *Nippon-ki*. Vol. VII. 14 r.

³⁾ R. BROWN, *Coll.* N^o. 366.

⁴⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 14.

⁵⁾ *Ibid.* p. 13.

⁶⁾ *Ibid.* p. 13.

⁷⁾ *Ibid.* p. 13.

2. *Saságe*, *uru* (from *Sasi*, to show, and *Age*, to raise), 掀。捧。擎, holding a thing up, to present to a person in a higher station.

Sinra no tsukai N.N. kitatte mitsuki wo saságū ¹⁾, N.N., ambassador of Sinra comes and solemnly offers presents (to the emperor). — *Tanba no kuni yori kūrōki kitsūne wo saságu* ²⁾, a black fox from the country of Tanba is offered (to the emperor).

3. *Kudasare*, joined to the root or to the gerund of a verb, characterizes the action as one proceeding from the person spoken to. It sounds more courtly than *Nasare* (§ 100. IV. 5).

O kai kudasare (vulgo *kudasai*), or *kudasare-mase*, or *O kai nasare!* please to buy. — The chapman: *San-byaku me de kudasare!* 三サ百ダ目メ出テ下^ダ_サ ³⁾, please to pay 30 taels! The buyer: *Ni-byōkū me de agemašoo*, I will give you 20 taels. — *Doozo mioo-nitsi O ide* (御^オ出^デ) *kudasare!* please to come to-morrow! — *Tsikadzuki ni O nari* (御^オ成^{ナリ}) *kudasare!* ⁴⁾, please to approach him, = allow me to present him to you. — *O kamai kudasaru na* ⁵⁾, take no pains. — *Mo sūkōsi ne-masite kudasare* ⁶⁾, please to set the price somewhat higher. — *Gok' yasūku-site kudasaru nará, nokorazu kai-mašoo* ⁷⁾, if you give it as cheap as possible, I will buy all.

Remark. For *Kudar*i, *u* see § 87 N^o. 10.

4. *Tsūk*é, *uru*, 付^ツ, to add to, expresses the idea of giving, without any boast. In *△ O tsúké nasare!* please give it me! *Tsúke* has reference to the speaker and the honorary passive *Nasare* to the person spoken to.

5. *Torásim*e, *uru*, also *Torás*e, *uru*. That the expression: „to give order to take” places the person ordered beneath the one who orders is self-evident. —

ヲ^ヲ上^シシ^メテ 物^{モノ}ヲ^ヲ賜^{タマフ} 礼^{レイ}智^チ信^{シン}札^サ 百^{ヒヤク}官^{クワン}仁^ニ義^ギ *Fyak-kwan ni zin, gi rei, tsi. sin no fuda wo torasimete mono wo tamavū* ⁸⁾, the emperor orders the assembled officers to take tablets, on which one of the words humanity, justice etc. is written and thereby bestows gifts.

6. *Yar*i, *u*, 遣^ヤ, to cast, throw, send (*fūto ni mono wo*, to send a thing to some one); it humbles the receiver. — *Tsukai wo O yari nasare*, please send me a message. — *Kono mononi kane itsipu yare!* give that person one *bu*!

¹⁾ *Yamato nen-dai*. III. 3 v.

²⁾ *Ibid*. III. 4 r.

³⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 38.

⁴⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 19.

⁵⁾ *Ibid*. p. 21.

⁶⁾ *Ibid*. p. 38.

⁷⁾ *Ibid*. p. 36.

⁸⁾ *Yamato nen-dai*. III. 6 v.

§ 120. GOING and COMING are expressed by

1. **Mairi**i, u, solemn entry, to enter (a palace or temple) in solemn procession. 參。參。詣。入。參^一入。參^一納。 From *Mai*, *Mau*, to walk in procession, to hold a stately procession, and *iri*i, u, to enter. The definition: whither one goes or where one enters, precedes, characterized by *ye*, *ve* or *ni*.

Ten-mu unadzuite O-mae ve mairu ¹⁾, prince Ten-mu, yielding, waits upon His Highness (the Mikado). — *Kau-rai mo .. Go tsin* (御^二陳^一) *ni mairite fei-fukū su* (平^一伏^二) ²⁾, also they of Corea come into the imperial camp and submit themselves.

In the familiar style of speaking and writing *Mairi* is used instead of *Ki-tari*, to come, if one's own coming to the person spoken to is meant, even if one is on an equality with him. If the pronoun of the first person is wanting, by *Mairi* it is indicated that the speaker means his own coming to the person spoken to. — △ *Watōksa sina wo mī ni* (or *kai-mono ni*) *maitta* (來^二見^一), I have come to you to look at (or to buy) goods. — △ *Watōksa kono fītō wo tsurete maitta*, I have brought this man with me. (*Shopping-Dial.* 18). — △ *Firu-maye ni wa mairi ye-* (行^二得^一) *masēnū*, I cannot come before noon. (*Sh.-Dial.* 17).

2. **Mairar**e, *uru*, if it occurs, is used by the speaker, instead of *Mairi*, by way of an honorary passive, from respect towards the person who comes.

3. **Mairas**e, *uru*, cause to enter solemnly, cause a thing to enter solemnly, i. e. to send a thing to a person in a high station, to offer a thing solemnly. 進。上。獻。 The giver humbles himself, and raises the receiver.

4. **Mairasar**e, *uru* (passive of *Mairasi*), to be admitted with solemnity. — An example from RODR. § 105: *S. Joam Baptista Jesu Christoni Baptisma wo sadzuke-mairasareta* or *Sadzuke-tatematsurareta*, S. J. B. was solemnly admitted to the administration of baptism to J. C. — Here by *Mairi* the giver of the baptism is placed beneath the recipient, whereas the passive form *mairasareta* expresses the respect of the speaker towards the giver.

5. **Ide**, *Idzuru* (出^二見^一), to come out of, to appear, and

6. **Agār**i, u (上^二見^一), to come up, rise, are applied only to a person beyond the speaker. The former points to the beginning, the latter to the duration of the action. *Fino ide* is sun-rise, *O ide* (御^二出^一見^二), the rising, the appearing of persons beyond the speaker, His or Your coming. — *O ide nasaru* (出^二成^一),

¹⁾ *Nippon woo-dai itsi-ran.* II. page 4 r.

²⁾ *Yamato nen-dai.* I. 26 v.

= Your or His rise takes place, i. e. you or he comes. — *Yokū O ide nasare*, or *nasare-mase*. or. abbreviated, *Yoku O ide!* = be welcome! — *O ide nasarei kasi!* oh that he came! — *Dokoni O ide nasarūka?* whither are you going? — \triangle *Kono mitsi wo O ide nasare-mase*. go this way. — *Idzuku ye* (or *Idzuku yori*) *O ide nasare-masu?* whither are you going (or whence are you coming? — *Watakusi to isšo ni* (— 所 $\frac{\text{ヨ}}$ =) *O ide nasare-mase*, go with me.

O ide also takes the place of the auxiliary verb *Ari*, *Ori* or *Iri* (§ 96, 97, 98), in connection with a precedent gerund. — *Tasiká ni sirité* (štte) *O ide nasare-másuka?* ¹⁾, do you, or does he know it certainly? — *O ki wo tsükéte*, mite *O ide nasare!* ²⁾, fix your attention on it and see! — *Atsira ni matte O ide nasare!* ³⁾, wait there! — *Akari wo motte O ide nasare*, bring a light. — *O agári* (御 $\frac{\text{ナ}}$ 上 $\frac{\text{ノ}}$) *nasare*, i. e. may your coming take place. says a merchant for: come in! (*Sh.-Dialogues* 1).

Taken in an ample sense. by another's coming the speaker understands a meeting, a concession to the speaker's wish, e. g.: *Sake wo age-mášoo ka?* may I offer you sake? — *Ari gátoo*. no I thank you. — *Nazení O agari nasaróni ká?* = why do you not rise? for: why don't you concede, — why do you refuse? (*Shopping-Dialogues* 21).

Agarasar)e, **u**, **uru**, to be raised, from *Agarasi*, to make rise, and this from *Agari*, to rise. The passive form, for honor's sake used in deference instead of *Agari*; also **Agaraserar)e**, **uru**.

7. **Makár)i**, **u**, evidently a continuative verb and as I think derived from *Mak)i*, **u**, = to leave off (§ 106), means a continual leaving off of work, i. e. to have furlough (Hd. *Urlaub*) or vacation. to be out of service for a time; to go on furlough ¹⁾. It was formerly used for people in service, who left the capital to go elsewhere for a time, on a visit. It is expressed by 罷。退。往。去。辞。向。至。就, and must be distinguished from *Makar)e*, **cru**, to be sent away, the pass. of *Mak)i*, **u**.

曰 倭姫命 于 辞 $\frac{\text{マカ}}{\text{リ}} \frac{\text{ムシ}}{\text{タマ}} \frac{\text{マ}}{\text{リ}} \frac{\text{テ}}{\text{イ}} \frac{\text{ラ}}{\text{ク}} \frac{\text{ナ}}{\text{リ}}$

Yamáto fime mikoto ni makari-mousi-tamarite iraku ²⁾, (prince Yamáto take) paying a visit to (the priestess) Yamáto fime (at Ise) says ... — \triangle *Watakusi wa omae no kata ni makaru*, or *makari-mášoo*, I shall come and visit you.

¹⁾ R. BROWN, *Coll. Jap.* N^o. 14.

²⁾ Ibid. N^o. 34.

³⁾ Ibid. N^o. 36.

⁴⁾ *MAKARU to wa koto sumite sono ba wo sirizoku koto nari*.

⁵⁾ *Nippon-ki*. VII. 16. r.

When the chapman says: *Sono ne de wa makári-masénü.* — for that price I will not come to you, he declares that he is not willing to sell for that price. — *Aru tokóroni makári-aru.* to be somewhere on leave, to be somewhere; to be there for a time, but not definitely. — *Bu-zi ni makári ari-masü,* = he finds himself for a time at ease, it is well with him. — That *Makári* is, at the same time used for „to die” will, our derivation considered, not appear strange.

Placed before another verb it seems to unite with it the idea „of furlough, on a visit only for a time.” — *Moo-nitsi makári idzu besi.* possibly I may just call on you to morrow. — *Makári* therefore indicates discretion, politeness.

8. *Tsiká-dzük*i, u, 近^{チカ}_キ, to come into the neighborhood. — *Füru tomosü ni tsiká-dzuku.* the night moth comes in contact with the lamp-light. Thence *Tsiká-dzüki*, an acquaintance, one known. — *O tsikádzüki ni nari-masü,* I become your acquaintance, I make acquaintance with you. — *O tsikádzüki ni nari-masite yoro-kobi-másü.* it is agreeable to me to have become acquainted with you.

The going out of the Mikado is called *Mi-yuki-s*i, u, uru, or 行^ギ幸^ザ *Giao-gao-s*i, u, uru, or *Giao-gao-ari.* — to spread happiness in going; on the other hand the going out of the Tai-kun, 御^ミ成^{ナリ} *O nari.*

Ten-wau N. kuni ni gigu-gau-su ¹⁾, the emperor repairs to the country of N. — *Ten-tsi Ten-wau aru-toki yama-sina ye gigu-gau arite, kaheri tamavózü.* *Ten ni nobori tamavu ni ya?* ²⁾, the emperor Ten-tsi once went into the mountains and did not return. Should he have gone to Heaven?

¹⁾ *Nippon woo-dai itsi-ran.* II. 10 r.

²⁾ *Ibid.* II 4 v.

CHAPTER VIII.

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 121. As the relation indicated by conjunctions, in which propositions stand to one another, is either a coördination or a subordination, Grammar distinguishes coördinative and subordinative conjunctions. Consequently we arrange the Japanese conjunctions as follows:

A. COÖRDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

I. Copulative conj.

1. Mo, .. mó, .. mó.
2. Mata, .. mo mata.
3. Katsu, Katsu va.
4. Oyobi.
5. Narabi ni.
6. Kanete.

II. Disjunctive conj.

7. Arüiva.
8. Matava.
9. ..ka, ..ka.
10. ..ya, ..ya.
- ..yara, yaran.

III. Adversative conj.

11. Mottomo.
12. Nagára, ..ga (..nga).
13. Sikasi-nagára, Sikasi.
14. Sari- (San-) nagára.
15. Yavari.

IV. Conclusive conj.

16. Kono-yüé ni. Sore-kara. Koreni yotte.
17. Sore de, Sore de wa, Soo wa.
18. So site, So gote.
19. Sáte.
20. Sunavatsi.

V. Explanatory conj.

21. Kedási.
22. Tadási.
23. Anzuru ni.

B. SUBORDINATIVE CONJ., GOVERNING THE ADVERBIAL PROPOSITION THAT PRECEDES.

I. Conjunctions of place and time.

24. Tokóro, Bašo.	27. Setsu.	31. Ma-ma.	35. Notsí.
25. Tokóroni,	28. Migiri.	32. Aida.	36. Yori.
△ Tokóro de.	29. Utsí.	33. Uyé.	37. Kara.
26. Toki.	30. Ma.	34. Mave, Mayé.	38. Made.

II. Conjunctions of quality and manner.

a. *Comparative,*b. *Proportional conj.*

39. Toóriní.	40. Yáuni.	41. Gotósi, ki, ku.	42. Fodo, Fodoní.
--------------	------------	---------------------	-------------------

III. Conjunctions of causality,

a. *used in the notice of an actual cause.*

43. Yuéni.	44. Kara.	45. Niyotte, Aida, Tsuki, Tsuite.
------------	-----------	-----------------------------------

b. *Conjunctions used in the notice of a possible, i. e. a future and thus an uncertain cause (Conditional conjunctions).*

46. Naraba, Nara, in connection with Mosikuvá, Mosiva, Mosi.
--

IV. Conjunctions of the purpose.

47. Taméni.	48. Tote.
-------------	-----------

V. Conjunctions of concession.

49. ..mo.	52. ..iédomó.	55. Sikamo.
50. ..tomo.	53. Sikaredomo. Saredomo.	56. Somo-somo.
51. ..domo.	54. Soredemo.	57. Mamayo.

The relative comparative of propositions. 58. ..yori va musiro.

Explanation.

A. COÖRDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

I. Copulative or coördinative conjunctions.

§ 122. 1. ..mo, 亦^モ, adverbial suffix, = too, also, Lat. *que, quoque*, characterizes the word which precedes, either subject or object of the proposition, as added to, or made equivalent to another subject or object already mentioned.

Kore, this; *Kore mó*, this too; even this.

Kore wo, this, him; *Kore wo mó*, him too.

As suffix to an interrogative pronoun it contains all that is included in the interrogative, as individuals together. — *Dare*. = who? (Lat. *quis?*) — *Dare mó*, = whoever (Lat. *quisque*). See page 102.

It characterizes the concessive proposition. See § 131 n°. 50.

..*mó*, ..*mó*, = both.. and.., as well.. as also... not alone or not only, but also.. — *Kazémó nami mó sidzūmarázu*, = both wind and waves do not abate, = neither wind nor waves become still. —

ツ
リ
モ
フ
ト
モ
イ
ヘ
リ

フ
ハ
タ
武
王

○
扇
ハ
舜
ツ
クリ
エ
ア
ギ
シ
ン
レ

Avugi (△ *Oogi*) *ra*. *Ziyun tsukuri-tamáru to mó mata Bu-wau tsukuri-tamáru to mó iveri* ¹⁾, = concerning the fan, it is said that (to) Schun has made it, as also that (to) Wù-wang has made it.

2. *Matá*, 又 亦, = twig, something that is double; as adverbial conjunction = too, and, moreover (*sono ūyē*), likewise, or also, unites both coördinate names, and equivalent propositions, and refers to the word or proposition, that follows it. — *Anóta no kinū-mono mata momen-mono it-tan no naga faba wa ikūra ari-másū ká?* ²⁾, what is the length (and) breadth of one piece of your silk- and cotton goods? — *Ke-ori wa kane-žak mata ken wo motsū-másū* ³⁾, for woolen goods the iron foot is used as also the *ken* (an ell of 6 feet).

Mata (亦) refers to the predicate in propositions like:

不
亦
說
乎

○
學
而
時
習
之

ズ
マ
デ
ト
キ
ニ
ラ
フ
レ
ヤ

Manánde toki ni kore wo naru matá yorókobasikarázu ya? ¹⁾, to learn a thing (and) practise it continually, is this not agreeable too?

..*mó matá*, - likewise. If the subject as well as the predicate of a proposition is made equivalent to the subject and predicate of a precedent proposition, the sameness of the subject is expressed by the suffix *mo*, and that of the predicate by the adv. *matá* (亦); thence the formula ..*mo matá*..

Kono futá fásirano kami mó matá... *mi-mi wo kákūsi tamáki*, also (*mo*) both these gods kept themselves likewise (*matá*) concealed. Compare page 225.

At the beginning of a proposition *Mata* points to the equality of its contents with that expressed in the preceding proposition. — *Mata* (又) *anóta no hooni sa-too ari-másū nará*, *sore wo kai-mášo* ⁴⁾, = and if you have sugar, I will buy it.

¹⁾ *Kasira-gaki*. VIII 2 r

²⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 33.

³⁾ *Ibid.* p. 23

⁴⁾ *Lun-yu*, Cap. I

⁵⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 40.

3. **Kātsū**, 且^カ, isolated by *ra* or *wa* also **Kātsū vá**, **Kātsū wá**, = and also, moreover, Lat. *quoque*, continuative conj., characterizes the proposition or the part of the proposition that follows it, as an addition to the precedent clause.

猿^コ親^シ且^カ商^シ賣^イ, *Kon-sin kātsū šoo-bai* ¹⁾, friendship and trade.
有^リ耻^ハ且^カ格^ス, *Fadzi ariti kātsu itáru* ²⁾, people grow ashamed and come to perfection.

Kātsū matá, 且^カ亦^モ, moreover also, than so much the more.

Kātsū-kātsū, = moreover and moreover, all and all.

4. **Oyóbi**, 及^オ, reach to, as conj. to and with, inclusive, unites two objects removed from each other, comprising the series of similar things between them. It is a synonym of *..ni itáru made* or *..yuki-tsukite*, = coming to.., and of *Made mó*. (See § 62. n^o. 26).

The stipulation that Japan shall appoint consuls and commercial agents abroad, is expressed in the Treaty of 1858. Art. I al. 4, by:

諸^シ取^リ締^メノ役^ノ人^ニ及^オ貿^ホ易^キヲ處^シ置^ル役^ノ人^ニヲ任^セハシ.

5. **Narabi ni**, 並^ナ, besides, also, from *Narabi*, *u*, to place oneself next, joins substantives and propositions. — *Morokosi narabini Ban-go ni dzun-suru mono*, a person versed in the Chinese as also in foreign languages. — *Nippon no kome narabi ni Nippon no mugi* ³⁾, Japanese rice and Japanese wheat.

At the beginning of a proposition *Narabi ni* is met with e. g. in Art. VII al. 2 of the said Treaty, containing the stipulation: „And these buildings shall not be injured,” after the building of churches is conceded in the previous proposition.

6. **Kanete**, 兼^カ而^テ兼^カ, at the same time, gerund of *Kane*, to take with or together, to comprehend, comprise, embrace, characterizes an apposition. — *N.N. Bunjo no kami kanete Nagasaki Go-Bu-gioo*, N.N., prince of Bungo and governor of Nagasaki.

II. Disjunctive conjunctions,

between propositions that reciprocally exclude or may supersede each other.

§ 123. 7. **Arüiva**, **Arüiwa**, 或^{アル}, contr. of *áru ívu ra*, = as someone says ⁴⁾, separates, with the signification of *or*, or also, substantives and propositions

¹⁾ Netherl.-Jap. Treaty of 1858, in the beginning.

²⁾ *Lun-yu*. II. 3.

³⁾ Treaty. II. 19.

⁴⁾ アルイハ 有人ノ略ナルベシ又一ニ謂フ義^ニ, *Wa-gun Siwori*, under *Aruiwo*.

which may take the place of each other. — *Kono figiri arüwa sono i-zen nite mo* ¹⁾, at this date or earlier.

Aruwa repeated has the power of exclusion. — *Aruwa kono figiri, aruwa sono i-zen*, either at this date, or earlier.

8. *Mata va*, *Mata wa*, the *mata* isolated by *va*, = or also, then well. The „or” in „consul or consular agent” is expressed in the Treaty Art. I. al. 2 by 又^{マタ}ハ, *mata va*. — 日^{ニッポン}本^ホ貴^キ官^{クワン}又^{マタ}ハ委^イ任^ニノ役^{ヤク}人^{ニン}, *Nippon ki-kwan mata va i-nin no yaku-nin* ²⁾, Japanese officers of rank or also commissioners. — *Anáta wa Egeres mata va Oran-mo-zi wo O kaki ka?* ³⁾, do you write English or Dutch?

9. ..*ka*, 歟^カ。耶^カ。乎^カ, as suffix and pronounced with emphasis, original characteristic of the direct question; e. g.: *Fütó ká?* a man? *Arü ka?* is there? *Ari!* there is!

In alternative propositions repeated as a suffix, ..*ka*, ..*ka*, takes the place of our disjunctive either.., or.., Germ. *entweder.., oder...* — *Yama ka? Kuno ka? toókü-site siru-koto nasi*, = whether mountain? or cloud? being far off I cannot know it. — *Sore ka aránü ka?* (是耶非耶), is it so, is it not so? — △ *Sore ka, kore ka koi to iye!* tell that or this (one or the other) to come! ⁴⁾.

Remark. In my opinion, *ka* gets its disjunctive power from its original quality of an interrogative particle. *Sore* and *kore* are thus characterized by *ka* as undetermined points of interrogation. Besides the alternative question: is it so or not? is expressed by two coördinate questions, of which one as well as the other closes with the interrogative particle *ka*, thus *Sa-yoo de ári-másü ka? Sa-yoo de ari-masénü ka?* = is it so? is it not so? The question: Is it silk or woolen stuff? sounds in the spoken language: *Kinu-mono de ári-másü ká? ke-ori de ári-másüka?* ⁵⁾ = is it silk stuff? is it woolen stuff? If this alternative question is put, without any modification, dependent on the subsequent *to ómóu* (= to think that), or of *to toru* (= ask if), the expression is obtained: to think that, or ask if it is silk or woolen stuff. Thus, when ..*ka*, ..*ka* answers to our dis-

¹⁾ Treaty. XI. 1.

²⁾ Ibid. IX. 6.

³⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 14. The original has *O kaki ka* for *O kaki-másü ka*.

⁴⁾ Compare COLLADO, p. 59 line 7 from the bottom. „*Pedro ca Iuan ca coi to iye*, dic quod venint Petrus vel Joannes.”

⁵⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 16.

junctive either..., or..., it is because the questions themselves are disjunctive or alternative.

Since *Oókata* means „for the most part, in general” (see page 175 n^o. 44), *Oókata sayoo de gozári-mášoo*, *oókata sayoo de gozári-másü-mai* of course also means „In general it may be so, in general it may not be so,” for which we are used to say: „It may be so, in general. or it may not.” Consequently the disjunctive character in those two propositions is not expressed by *Oókata*, but by the mere antithesis of the propositions themselves ¹⁾.

10. ..*ya*, ヲ, disjunctive suffix ²⁾, = or. Lat. *vel, sive*. — *Taya sono va färubitári*, garden or field has become old; in the spoken language: *Ta ya sono ga färubita*. — *Dzu-kin yá kúsa wo nuku*, to take off kerchief or hat. — *Siba yá ödóro wo motte seki wo tsükürü*, to make mats of underwood or thorns. — *Hanásü yá warádu koye*, noises of talking or laughing.

Also *ya* is, just as *ka*, properly the closing particle of a question, it may be simple or disjunctive, and as that about which a question is put, is uncertain, this particle is also called *ivayuru utagai no ya*, i. e. the so called *ya* of uncertainty. — *Ano fito wá kitórü yá?* is he coming? — *Sikóru yá, ina yá?* is it so, or not? — *Mikado hei-an ni másü yá? ina yá?* ³⁾, — is the Mikado at his ease or not? = how does the Mikado?

Asa yuru ni oyani kan-kan (孝ヲ行カ) *suru fito wá*

Kami ya Fotoke no megumi aru besi.

He who early and late does his duty towards his parents.

Shall have the grace of the gods and of Buddha.

Yara, properly **Yaran**, = *Ya* + *aran*, = if there shall be? — .. *sama ga kuru de aru yara. watákusi wa utagáute órû*, I doubt if Mr. N. will come. — *Idzure no koto yara sirarezu*, it is not known what matter it is. — Δ *Fító yara tsiku-šoo yara siranu* ⁴⁾, whether it is a man or a brute — I do not know.

III. Adversative conjunctions.

§ 124. 11. **Mottomo** (improperly expressed by 尤^{モトモ}モ^モ尤^{モトモ}モ), though, although, adversative or properly concessive conjunction, originally *Mótte mó*

¹⁾ Compare R. BROWN, *Coll. Jap.* LI. line 5 from the bottom

²⁾ 言^{コト}之^ノ間^マ也^ヤ *Wagun Siwori*, under *Ya*.

³⁾ *Nippon-ki*. XXVI. 9.

⁴⁾ Borrowed from COLLADO, pag. 60.

(以^モモ), = with (this) also, modified for vocal harmony *Motto mo*, is put, in my opinion, elliptically for *Sore wo môtte mó*, = with all this.., though, on the other hand. An example:

引 ^{ヒキ}	尤 ^{モトモク}	彼 ^{ヤク}	軍 ^{グン}
差 ^{サシ}	外 ^{ガイ}	所 ^{ショ}	用 ^{ヨウ}
構 ^{カマエ}	國 ^{コク}	外 ^{ガイ}	諸 ^{ショ}
事 ^{コト}	人 ^{ジン}	賣 ^{ウル}	物 ^{モノ}
ナシ	互 ^{タカヒ}	取 ^{トル}	日 ^{ニチ}
	取 ^{トル}	本 ^{ホン}	本 ^{ホン}

Gun-yoo no šo-butsu wa Nippon yakū-šo no fóká e urū-be-karázū. Mottomo gwai-koku-zin tagai no tori-fiki wa sasi-kamai-arū koto nasi ¹⁾, munitions of war may be sold to the Japanese government exclusively. That foreigners take such from one another will not, however be noticed. — By *Motte* as it appears from this example, the contents of the previous proposition are resumed, whereas the suffix *mo* stamps them as

conceded. That the proposition following *Mottomo* contains an antithesis, is the logical consequence of the concessive character of the previous proposition. Compare § 74. The Japanese are accustomed not to distinguish the conjunction *Mottomo* from the adverb *Mottomo*. according to the old manner of writing properly *Mótomó* and ideographically expressed by 最 or 尤, = „utmost, by eminence” (see page 134), and also express the conjunction *Mottomo* by the character 尤, by which it has become a stumbling-block for many a translator. As a proof it is necessary to cite the official Dutch translation of the above mentioned article: „Oorlogsbehoefden zullen alleen aan de Japansche regeering verkocht worden EN om dezelve aan vreemde natiën te verkoopen is buiten deze bepaling.” — Of another article ²⁾ also, in which the description of the tedious manner of examining goods is followed by: 尤取調方格多外²時¹日²ヲ費³サマルベシ, i. e. the examination, however, shall take place without any extraordinary waste of time, the Dutch translation drawn up by Japanese interpreters has „EN” (and) instead of however, whence it appears that they, misled by the Chinese character, have misconceived the force of the conjunction *Mottomo*.

Remark. The *Mottomo* occurring in *Go motto mo de ari-másu* (却²理^モモテ有³マス ³⁾, You are right) of the everyday colloquial language, is evidently the adverb used as a substantive, and the phrase, which is elliptical, means:

¹⁾ Treaty. II. 18.

²⁾ Art. III. al. 5 of the *Ki-soku* or Tariff belonging to the Treaty of the 18 Aug. 1859.

³⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 13.

what you have said is incontestable. This expression is, by the by, also connected with a particular shrewd hero of antiquity, one Mr. *Mottomo* (尤), who had applied to himself the name of 道多理¹⁾, *Doo-ri*, i. e. right, reason ¹⁾. We leave this as we find it.

12. *Nagára*, = in the midst of, whilst, properly a word expressive of relation, arisen by syncope from *Naka gara*, which for the sake of euphony has taken the place of *Naka kara* (自^ナ中^カ). = from the midst, and has a verb in its root-form before it. *Ne-nagára*, in the midst of sleep, not: as long as one sleeps. *I-nagára uru-mono* is a person who sells, sitting; *Motsi-yukite úrú mono* on the contrary, a hawker. *Nagára* is to be distinguished from *Nakara* (半^ナ中), = the half. — *Fino nakara*, noon.

If the subsequent proposition is an antithesis to the antecedent, *Nagára* is equivalent to: nevertheless, yet, e. g. So *fuku wo ki-nagára matsuri-koto wo kiki-tamarū* ²⁾, though he wears mourning, yet he attends to affairs of government. — *Kono kuni Dai-Min ni tsudzuki-nagára, kisa arázū*, this country, though it borders on China, has (nevertheless) no elephants.

The antithesis is more emphatically expressed by *Nagára mó*.

The spoken language, which contents itself with putting *Nó* in the place of *Narū-dáke* (if possible), also retains simply *ga* (at Yédo *nga*) of *Nagára*, to which the force of but has been justly attributed ³⁾. It is put, like *Nagára*, at the end of the concessive proposition. — *Ano O kata ra kokórozasi ra yorósin gozari-mas'ta ga, matsigai-mas'ta* ⁴⁾, though his intention was good, yet he has made a mistake.

13. *Síkási nagára*, = since it is so, mostly simple *Síkási*, 併^シ爾, = it is so, exhibits the previous proposition as conceded, and is followed by a sentence containing a statement, which must be of value equal to or more than the antecedent proposition. It is equivalent to: although, though, yet, however, nevertheless. — *Sina wo mirū-koto wa deki-másū ka?* can I see your goods? — *Deki-másū. Síkási* (併^シ) *koko ni te-hon-gire ga ari-másū kara, koré wo Go-ran nasáre* ⁵⁾, yes; however as I have patterns here, please see them. — *Oke-gai ni va jikage yosi; síkási* (併^シ) *amári samúsa ra asisi; mottomo do-ma re dasi-kau-setsu va,*

¹⁾ *Wagun Siwori*, under *Mottomo*.

²⁾ *Nippon woo-dai itsi-ran*. II. 1 v.

³⁾ R. BROWN, *Coll. Jap.* LV. LXII. 2.

⁴⁾ *Ibid.* p. 41. N^o. 313.

⁵⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 23.

finata mo yosi ¹⁾, in the breeding (of silkworms) on tubs, shadow is good, but too much cold injurious, however as soon as (the silkworms) are brought out of doors and fed there, sunshine also is good.

14. *Sārī-nagāra* or *Sān-nagāra* (然^ナナカラ。雖然, vulgo 乍然), by syncope for *Sikāri-nagāra*, = since it is so, is put at the beginning of a proposition, which contains an antithesis, and therefore is equivalent to: although it is so, notwithstanding, nevertheless. The antithesis is more decidedly expressed by *Sari-nagāra mó* or *Sikāsī-nagāra mó*. — *San-nagāra* is phonetically, but not ideographically, indicated by 乍^ナ。乍^ナ。乍^ナ。乍^ナ。

15. *Yavāri*, 猶^ナ。然。即, however, yet, nevertheless, still. — Δ *Nan-dzi ga sei-site mo, sei-sēzū tomo, kare wa yavari sore wo suru de aru*, whether you forbid him or not, he will do it nevertheless.

IV. Conclusive conjunctions,

preceding the proposition, which expresses a consequence.

§ 125. 16. The adverbial expressions formed with ..*yūēni*, ..*kara* and ..*niyotte*:

Kono yūēni, Karu ga yūēni, Sore yūēni, or also simply with *Yūēni*, therefore.

Sore-kara, Δ *Soreda kara, Soosita kara*, vulgo *Soosite kara*, thence, then.

Koreni yōtte, Soreni yōtte. therefore. *Sikārūni yōtte*, or *Sārūni yōtte*, since it is so, therefore.

Further elucidation follows in § 129, N^o. 43, 44, 45.

17. Δ *Sore de*, 夫^ナ。ナ, *Sore de wá*, so, thus, then, = *ni yōtte*. — Δ *Watakūsi dai-zina koto wo tōssu, sore de O kike!* I communicate an affair of importance, thus listen! — Δ *Sore de wá kai-māsoo* ²⁾, then (as it is so) I will buy it.

Δ *Soo wa*, a contraction of *Sikāku ra, Sikqu wa*, so, or in the opinion of Japanese, of 左^ナ。様^ナ, *Sa-yan wa*.

左^ナ。程^ナ ¹⁾ *Soo wá makāri-masēnū* ³⁾, so I cannot consent to it, so it is not to be done. (For *Makāri* compare page 325, line 1.)

18. *Soo-site*, vulgo *So-site*, 且^ナ, also 卒^ナ。而^ナ, *Sosste* written, contr. from *Sikqu-site*, = since it is so, thus, then. See *Shopping-Dial.* page 15. Comp. Δ *Soo si-māsoo*, I shall do it.

¹⁾ *Yama-mayu kai-foo hi-den* I 1

²⁾ *Shopping Dialogues*, p. 10.

³⁾ *Ibid.*, p. 3

19. *Sáte, Sáte vá*, so, thus, a fusion of *Sikúríte, Sikatte*, = (this) being so, according to some, also of 左サ様ウ仕シ而テ *Squ (Soo) síte*, which as far as the meaning goes, comes to the same thing, placed at the beginning of a proposition, expresses a consequence, even if the idea, from which the consequence flows, is not expressed as in: „So then the day approaches, on which” etc. — *Sate* is expressed by 扱, sometimes also by 偕.

20. *Sūnavátsi*, modified for vocal harmony from *Sundvo-tsi (正直路)*, = the right way; adverbially: right, directly (Germ. *geradenwegs*); conjunctively: consequently, is placed at the beginning of the subsequent proposition, which expresses the consequence. It is also used with the power of *videlicet*, to wit. 則チ。即。乃。迺。便。即一便。

則チ知シレバ *Sen-kou-sürü tokóro wó siréba, sūnavátsi mitsi ni tsikási* ¹⁾, if one knows what precedes and what follows (if one knows the cause and effect), then one is near the path of wisdom. — 安政チ近所トコロニ先ニシテ 五ノ年チ即チ千セ八百ヒ五ノ十セ八年チ, the 5th year of Ansei, consequently the year 1858 ²⁾.
道先ニシテ 矣 後ニ

V. Explanatory conjunctions.

§ 126. 21. *Kedási*, 蓋シ, = namely, for, though, Lat. *nam*, at the beginning of a sentence, which explains the proposition preceding, mostly giving a reason. — *Yun-dzúka wo nigiri to íru. Kedási tana-kokóro ni nigiru no tokóro nari*, the hilt of a bow is called *nigiri* (hilt); it is the place at which it is held with the hand though.

The shade of doubt ascribed to *Kedási* by some philological Japanese is with justice, not admitted by others.

22. *Tadási*, 但シ, = properly, devoid of other definitions, forsooth, is placed at the beginning of proposition, which explains a preceding assertion by a particular circumstance and generally confines it to that. It is to be distinguished from the adv. *Tada*, = only (see p. 176 n°. 66). — *Yqu-gin ni hiyaku mai. tadási gulden nari*, European silver two hundred *Mai*, i. e. guilders.

23. *Anzuru ni*, 按ズルニ, = in my opinion, Remark, precedes that, which the writer has to remark on the saying of another.

¹⁾ *Dai Gaku*, § 3.

²⁾ *Neth.-Jap. Treaty. Art. XI. al. 5*

B. SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, THAT GOVERN ADVERBIAL PROPOSITIONS.

I. Conjunctions of place and time.

§ 127. 24. **Tokóro**, 所^{トコロ}, or **Ba-šo**, = place, it answers to our adverbial conjunction of place where (see page 97). — Δ , „*Anáta no sinuru tokóro de wató-kúsi mo mata asóko ni sini-mášo*, where thou diest, I too will die” ¹⁾. — *Mina mina nige-sarisi tokóro ni vá* (or *ba-šo ni vá*) *fútóri tatte-oru*, alone to remain standing, where all have fled. — *Kavi-taten to omóru tokóro no do-ma* ²⁾, a patch of ground, where people think of breeding (silkworms).

25. **Tokóro ni**, Δ **Tokóro de**, characterizes the attributive proposition by which it is preceded, also as an adverbial definition of time, and is equivalent to: whilst, a.s. — *Mina mina yórókóbú tokóro ni*, *sono yo nivaká ni oo-kaze fúki-kitári-keri*, whilst everyone (on board) was full of gladness, in that night a storm suddenly arose, = every one was glad, as a storm arose etc. — *Sikárú tokóro ni*, as it is so, it being such.

26. **Toki**, 時^{トキ}, time; **Toki vá**, **Toki ni**, **Toki ni vá** = **Tokinvá**, at the time of, when. — *Mono-kun toki ni monogatári sézu*, at the time of eating (when one is eating) one does not talk. — *Fínó kasá árú toki vá, jidéri; tsúkino kasá árú toki vá, san nitsi no útsi ame-furu to iéri*, people say that the weather becomes dry, when there is a sun-hood (a circle round the sun), and that it rains within three days, when there is a moon-hood. — *Sono tate-mono wo ... syu-fo nado suru koto aran toki ni va*, *Nippon yáku-nin kore wo ken-bun suru koto tau-zen taru bési* ³⁾, when it shall happen that people repair buildings... etc., Japanese officers will have to look after them. — *Sore wo süru ná; sayoo ni náru toki va semerareru zo*, do not do that! if it happen so, then you will be blamed, = do not do it, otherwise you will be etc. — Δ *Yedo e yukimasita toki Rokú-go gawa ni midzú ga masi-masita* ⁴⁾, when I went to Yédo, the water in the river Rokngo was high.

27. **Sétsū**, 節^{セツ}, division of time. (See page 158). — *Tadási idzure no kaze nite mo kirarú nari; mottomo no-gai no sétsū va kurusikarazu* ⁵⁾, properly one must avoid every wind; at the time of the breeding (of wild silkworms) in the open fields however, it does not matter.

¹⁾ R. BROWN, *Coll. Jap.* LVII.

²⁾ *Yama-mayu fi-den.* III. I.

³⁾ *Neth.-Jap. Treaty.* II. 7.

⁴⁾ R. BROWN, *Coll. Jap.* LVI.

⁵⁾ *Yama-mayu fi-den.* I.

The rest of the words expressive of relation, which define time are used in the same way as *Toki*, i. e. they are preceded by the proposition governed by them in its attributive form. If they occur with a gerund preceding, they then belong, adverbially, to the subsequent principal proposition.

28. *Migiri*, 砌^{ミヅ}, = street-cutting ¹⁾, paving with flag-stones, also the stones of a staircase; fig. step, space of time. Synonym of *S'tsu* (nº. 27). — *Füné no tsuyákü-kan no migiri ni*, on the arrival of the ship.

29. *Utsi*, 内^{ウチ}, *Utsi wa*, *Utsi ni*, within; while. See page 188. — Δ *Yédoni ori-masita utsi ni*, [on-siro no] *kwa-zi ga ari-masita* ²⁾, there was a conflagration [in the palace], whilst I was at Yédo.

30. *Ma*, 間^マ, 1. space, interval; 2. opportunity. — *Ikari wo orésu mamo nakä-site, kaze ni makasete yuku*, not even having had time to drop the anchor, they drifted before the wind.

31. *Ma-ma*, 門^マ \sim \sim , *Ma-ma ni*, 1. at every place, wherever; 2. on every occasion, as often as, every time that. Repetition of *Ma* (see page 54), synonym of *Aida-aida*. — *Ko-tsi matara siya-tsiwo jorite (jotte), ma-ma ni ki-seki wo uru koto ari*, at the digging up of old soils, or ground on which temples have stood, rare stones are frequently discovered. — *Kane wo útsü ma-mani*, as often as the bell is struck. — *Monowo tóru ma-mani*, as often as any thing is taken.

<i>Tabi-tabi ni</i> , 度 ^{タビ} \sim \sim =,	} as often as. —
<i>Tabi-goto ni</i> , 毎度,	
<i>Goto ni</i> , 毎 ^{ゴト} \sim \sim ,	

Yu wo fanótsu tabi-goto ni (or *Yu no tobu goto ni*) *koyé wo tatsuru*, to call out at every shot of an arrow (or so often as an arrow flies).

32. *Aida*, 間^{アイダ}, while. See page 189.

33. *Uyé*, 上^{ウエ}, above, upon, on. See page 186.

34. *Mave*, *Maye*, 前^{マエ}, vulgo *Mai*, before. See p. 187. — „*Watákusi no kaeru maeni site simae*, get it done before I come back” ³⁾. — Δ „*Watáküsi wa mairanu maini sigoto wo sité simai-mašoo*, I shall finish my business before I return” ⁴⁾, — properly: I don't come: I first shall have done my business.

¹⁾ *Mi-giri*, contracted from *Mitsi no kiri*, way-cutting, or as some say, from *Mina-kiri*, = water-cutting, because the row of flag-stones laid at short distances from one another to step on in rainy weather is called *Migiri*. — *Wa-gun Siwori*, under *Migiri*.

²⁾ R. BROWN, *Coll. Jap.* LVI.

³⁾ Ibid. Nº. 161.

⁴⁾ Ibid. LVI.

35. Notsi, 後_チ, after. See page 187.

36. Yori, 自_{ヨリ}, since. — *Amē tsūtsi firākesi yori kono kata*, since heaven and earth have developed themselves. — Δ *Mairi-masita* (vulgo *masite*) *yori, āno tokōro wa hirake-masita* ¹⁾, that place has been opened, since they came.

37. Kara, 自_{カラ}, after, see page 72. — *Watakūsi-ni wa yomenu kara, tsuu-zikata ni tanonde, naosi-te morai-masū*, I cannot read it and thus I shall request the interpreters to translate it. — Δ *Age-māsū kara uke-tori-gaki wo kudāsāre*, after delivery by me, please give a receipt. Vulgo also with a gerund preceding. — Δ *Tabēte* (for *tabeta*) *kara yuki-masita* ²⁾, he went, after he had eaten.

38. Made, 迄_{マデ}, to, till. See page 192.

II. Conjunctions of quality and manner.

§ 128. a. Comparative conjunctions, equivalent to: like, just as, so as.

39. Toóri ni, 通_{トオリニ}, = in the way, on the passage of... (see page 191), according to, in the way that, properly a word expressive of relation. — 例_レ之_ノ通_{トオリニ}, *Rei no toóri ni*, according to the law. — *Anāta no osiyuru toóri ni itāsi-māsita*, I have acted according to your direction (as you prescribed).

40. Yau ni, Δ Yoo ni, 様_{ヤウニ}, in the manner of, in the way that, so that, as if ³⁾. — *Omōvu yau*, the meaning. — *Fūtō no sūku yau ni surū*, to do as others would gladly have it. — *Kariko kūdā ni fanarenū yau ni su-besi*, people must go to work so, that the silkworm be not removed from its food. — Δ „*Hitō-bitō no osoreru yoo ni okonai-masita*, he behaved so, that people were afraid of him” ⁴⁾.

41. Gotōsi, ki, ku, 若_{ゴトシ} 如_{ゴトシ}, to be like... (see page 109 n^o. 7), is equivalent to „to be as if,” when it, used without a subject, has a proposition before it, as complement. — *Akū wō konō mī mono wā wazāvaiwo mǎnǎkū; tatoreba jibiki wō otō ni oō-suru ga gōtōsi*, whoever loves evil, draws upon himself adversity; it is, to use a comparison, as if the echo answered the sound. — *Mosi*

¹⁾ R. BROWN, *Coll. Jap.* LVII.

²⁾ Ibid. LVI

³⁾ Comp. page 85. *Dono yau* etc. and 131

⁴⁾ R. BROWN, LVII.

sa-ygu ni yomu-beku naraba, in case one must read so. — *Mosi sa-ygu ni yomu-beki ga gotókū naraba*, if one ought to read so (which the speaker doubts).

b. Proportional conjunctions, which express a proportion as: in proportion to, how, — so much the.

42. *Fodo* (△ *Hodo*), *Fodo ni*, 程_ニ _ニ, = in proportion to, for so far as, so much as, so much that. Comp. page 131. — *Tsikara no oyóbu fodo ni*, for so far as my strength reaches. — △ *Wutókusi wa kiu-sókū-si-tai fodo ni tsukarete oru*, I am so tired, that I long for rest. — *..ra .. to iu fodo no kotoba nari*, .. is a word that says so much, as .. — *Físúsi fodo ooi* (△ *Hísúsü hodo ooi*), = much in proportion to the long lasting, i. e. the longer, the better. — △ *Ooi hodo yoi* ¹⁾, the more, the better. — *Físúsi-kereba físúsi fodo ooi*, the longer, the more. — *Hayákerebá hayáki fodo yoi*, the sooner, the better. — *Are wa nomeba, nomü fodo kavaki ga tsüyóku nárü*, the more he drinks, the more thirsty he is.

Sáru fodo ni, 爾_ニ 程_ニ _ニ, arisen by syncope from *Sikárü fodo ni*, = for so far as it is so, is placed at the beginning of a sentence. *Sari-fodon* is also met with.

III. Conjunctions of causality.

§ 129. a. Conjunctions of propositions, which notice an actual, past or present cause.

43. *Yüé*, 故_ニ, now commonly written 故_ニ, = cause; *Yüé ni*, for reason of, because, as, whereas, while, with an attributive definition preceding, which is sometimes qualified as a genitive by *ga*. — *Sore Nippon-góku wa Tsiu-kwa nó tsiyori fígási ni atáru yüé ni Nit-tóntó iü*, the country of Japan, as it from the middle kingdom (China) lies towards the east, it bears the name (there) of the (country) to the east of the sun. — *Ten-ka ni keda-mono oóku, den-fata wó sokonávu yüé ni fitó ni kari wó osíve-tamóviki*, as many animals were upon the earth and did damage to the lands, he (a certain prince) taught the people hunting. — *Ten-ka ni midzü óosi yüé ni*, as rivers are on the earth in great numbers. — *Múkási wa kinu ni mono wo kakisi yüé ni, kamito ien zi ito-fen wo kakern* ²⁾, formerly people wrote on silk; thence the character indicating paper (紙) is combined with that indicating silk (糸). — *Yáma takaki gá yüé ni táttokarázu; ki árü wó mótte*

¹⁾ R. BROWN, LVII.

²⁾ *Kasira-gaki*. VIII. 1 r.

táttoši tó sū, on account of its height, a mountain does not deserve honor: that it bears trees, that makes it deserving of honor. — *Fító kovetáru gá yūēni táttokardzu*: *tsi árū wó mótte táttoši tó sū*, a person is not respectable on account of acquired bulk: having understanding, that makes him respectable.

Compounds with *Yūēni*, placed as illative conjunctions at the beginning of a proposition:

Kono yūē ni, 是^レ故^ニ, = therefore. — *Kono yūē ni kun-si vá mádzu tókūni tsütsü simū* ¹⁾, therefore the philosopher applies himself particularly to virtue. — **△ Sore yūē ni**, 夫^レ故^ニ, = for such reasons, therefore.

Kárū gá yūē ni, by apheresis for *Sikárū gá yūē ni*, = on account of its being so, since it is so, therefore, thence, Lat. *ergo*, is placed at the beginning of a proposition, which contains the consequence of a series of propositions preceding. — *Kárū gá yūē ni kuni wó osámürü koto vá ihé wo totonouru ni ári* ²⁾, therefore the management of a country depends upon the management of his own house.

44. Kara, 由^レ自^ニ, = from. Lat. *ex* (see page 71), as an illative conjunction peculiar to the spoken language of Yédo, it characterizes the proposition it governs as the cause, from which the subsequent proposition flows.

It is sometimes also used alone with the signification of after. The verb dependent on *Kara* is used as a substantive. — *Te-hon-gire ga ári-másū kara, kore wo Go-ran nasare* ³⁾, as patterns are at hand, please see them. — **△ Kon-nitsi wa yohodo ósói kara**, *mūgu-nitsi kaheri-masīyoo* ⁴⁾, as it is too late to day, I shall return to morrow. *Ósói* stands for *Osóki* of the written language. — *Hosi wa tai-soo toói kara, tsüisáku miye-másū* ⁵⁾, the stars seem small, because they are more or less distant. — *Kan-ben-si masīyoo kara, watókusi nó sina mo O kai kudasáre* ⁶⁾, = after you shall have thought of it, please buy my goods. — **△ Tabete** (properly *Tabeta*) *kara yuki-masita* ⁷⁾, after having eaten, he went.

Compounds with *Kara*, placed as illative conjunctions at the beginning of a proposition:

Sore kara, 自^レ夫^ニ, vulgo *Soreda kara*, thence.

△ Soo site (properly *Soo-síta*) *kara*, thence, then.

△ Soo site, So site, 且^ニ, then.

¹⁾ *Dai Gaku*, X. 6.

³⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 23

⁶⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 39.

²⁾ *Ibid.* IX. 5

⁴⁾ *Ibid.* p. 41.

⁷⁾ *R. BROWN*, LVI.

⁵⁾ *R. BROWN*, LVII.

45. ..ni yórite, old-Jap. ..ni yote, vulgo ..ni yótte, 依^ヨ由^リ仍^ニ, gerund of *yori*, proceeding from..., having its foundation on..., because of... It is preceded by the causal proposition, which it governs, in its substantive form with or without the suffix *ni*. — *Kami no kádárinó Avadzi no sima yóri Sado no sima made ya sima mádzu umi-maseru kuni náru ni yorite Oo Ya-sima-kuni tó iru* ¹⁾, the eight isles mentioned in the preceding lines — beginning with Avadzi and ending with Sado are called the „Great land of eight isles,” as they constitute the land first produced. — *Fijókú-kokuwó umuru koto wo yókú-su yotte mono wo tsukuru mono wo Nou-nin to iru* ²⁾, with respect to his ability (*yókúsu*) in cultivating the hundred (= all) kinds of grain, the producer is called Nou-nin (husbandman).

Compounds with ..ni yótte, as illative conjunctions placed at the beginning of a proposition:

Kore ni yótte, Sore ni yótte, therefore, Lat. *igitur*.

Sikáru ni yótte, or **Sáru ni yótte**, as it is so, for such reasons, therefore, consequently.

Remark. ..ni yótte is, in the official style, superseded by the words expressive of relation **Aida**, = between, while (§ 62 n^o. 14), and **Tsuki**, **Tsukite**, **Tsuite**, — respecting (§ 63. B. 3). At least, places have come under our notice, in which both words must have causal force. Compare page 320, line 14.

b. Conjunctions of adverbial propositions, which indicate a future, possible cause (**Conditional conjunctions**).

We may not pass them over in silence, because they are suggested by others although they do not really exist. We have alone to do with a time-defining local, and thus if, with a view to the spoken language, we confine ourselves to *Nari*, to be, with the form *Naran-toki ni*, = when it shall be, for which also simply *Naru-toki ni*, = when it is, is used, or, instead of it, with the suppositive form explained in § 76, thus, to stick to *Nari*, with

46. **Naraba**, Δ **Nara**, = if it shall be; it is preceded by a substantive or by a verb in the substantive form. — Δ *Sa-yoo náru*, or *Sore nara, kai-másoo* ³⁾, if it is so, then I shall buy it. If the speaker intends to say: as it is so, then he takes *Nara* for a contraction of *Nareba*. — *Firu maye ni wá mairi-ye-masénu*. —

¹⁾ *Ko-si kei-dzu*. I. p. 4 r.

²⁾ *Kasira-gaki*. IV. 4 r.

³⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 4.

„Sore nará, jirugo ni.” ¹⁾ I can't come before noon. — „In the afternoon then.” — \triangle *Nokorázu O kai nasáru nará, onázi nedan de age-mášoo* ²⁾, if you will take all, I will sell them at (て) the same price. — \triangle *Nokorázu fei-kin nedan de O kai-nasare.* — „Yasui nará, tori-mášoo” ³⁾, = Buy all the pieces at one and the same price. — „If it is cheap, I will take it.”

If the mere possibility or probability of the statement is insisted on, then, in addition to *Naraba*, use is made of the adverb:

Mósiküvá, or simply *Mosiva*, *Mosi*, = in case of. 苟。如。若。 = 万。一。 *Man-itsi*, one against a thousand. Its place is at the beginning, or even after the subject of a subordinate proposition, whereas the predicate verb of that statement, if it is not attributively connected with *toki* (as *Naru-toki*), is put in the suppositive form (*Naraba*) or occurs as the gerund. *Mosi síkárü toki va*, in case it is so: 若。然。 *Mosi síkárábá*, if it might be so; *Mosi síkáríte*, in case it is so.

As *Siküva* is evidently the adverbial form of *Sikí*, = ..ish. ..like, isolated by *va* (see page 109 n°. 71), only *mo* of *Mo-siküvá*, remains as the nucleus of this compound. If this *mo* is a variation of the *ma* (直), = actually, explained at page 130, *Mó-sikü vá* is equivalent to the Latin *veri-similiter*; if it is an abbreviation of *ómói*, = thought, then *Mósi-küvá* means probably, likely, *peut-être*. — *Inuka neko ka?* dog? or cat? *Inuka? mosiküva neko ka?* a dog? or perhaps a cat? — *Ni-nusi mosi korewo inamu toki ra* ⁴⁾, in case the owner of the goods refuses such. — *Mosi ta no kóku-zin so-seino takawo gen-suru toki va*, *Oranda-zin mo dou-yau ni síyo-seraru bési* ⁵⁾, if the amount of the import duty be lowered for another nation, the Dutchmen shall be placed on a like footing. *Mosi gi-den-(deo)si gátaki toki vá, sono zi-zen wo ... sei-fu ni mesite síyotsi-sesimu bési* ⁶⁾, if such may be difficult to determine, this question shall be brought to the knowledge of the government and (by it) be settled. — *Niigata minato, mosi sono minato wo aki-gatoki koto arava* (read *araba*), *Nippon nisi no kata mite betsumi fitótsuno minato narabini müra wo ... aku-bési* ⁷⁾, the port of Niigata — in case a difficulty might arise about opening this port, a harbor and town shall be opened elsewhere on the West-side of Nippon. — *Mosi síygu-zen*

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 17.

²⁾ *Ibid.*, p. 36.

³⁾ *Ibid.* p. 37.

⁴⁾ *Neth.-Jap. Treaty*, III. al. 3.

⁵⁾ *Ibid.* III al. 7.

⁶⁾ *Ibid.* II. al. 9.

⁷⁾ *French-Jap. Treaty*, III. al. 2.

san kin i-ziyau wo motsi-watarabó ¹⁾, in case a merchant vessel might import more than three pounds (of opium). — *Mosi yo-gi naki si-sai arite, kono ki-gen tsiu fon-siyo tori-kayesi sumazu domo, den-yáku no omómaki wa kono ki-gen yori tori-okonárbési* ²⁾, if there might be some trifling matter, which cannot be avoided, the spirit of the Treaty shall be acted upon, even if the ratification of the document (containing the Treaty) within the fixed term shall not have taken place.

IV. Conjunctions of the purpose.

§ 130. 47. **Tamé ni**, 爲 ^{タメニ}, of *Tamé*, purpose, aim, end, for, on behalf of, is properly a word expressive of relation (see page 292 n^o. 24), and has, when it is used as a conjunction, the verb in its substantive form with or without **ga**, as suffix of the genitive, before it. — *Ki-sókú wo siyun-siu-sesimuru ga taméni* ... *siyo-riki-su besi* ³⁾, in order to have the rules followed, aid will be given. — *Uru taméni*, for sale. — *Tsutsi suna ye ni fukaranu tamé, kaze wo kiravu bési*, take care to shelter the place from wind, to the end that earth and sand be not blown on the food (of the silkworms).

The verb dependent on *Tamé ni* is put in the future with or without the genitive termination *ga*, when the attainment of the object is considered as still belonging to the future. — *Kono okite wo katákusen taméni*, in order to carry out this clause, there shall etc. — *Kagami wa sugáta no yosi-así wo miru mo, kokóro no kiyoku-tsüyóku wo tadási aratamen ga tamé nari*, = with regard to the mirror, its object is not alone to see if the countenance is beautiful or ugly, but also to rectify and reform the wrong and the right (i. e. the moral nature) of the heart.

48. **Tote**, the syncopated *tó site*, of *to*, - to, and *sité*, the gerund of *sí*, *u*, *uru*, to do.

Preceded by a verb in the future, *..tó su* means to be active to carry out the object, which still belongs to the future. (Compare § 103. 6. 7. page 290). *Motomen to su* is thus = *acquisiturus est*, he is about to get; *Motomen to site* or *Motomen to te*, = being about to get, i. e. for the purpose of getting. — *Siu-fu to ívu mono fu-zi no gúsúri wo motomen to te Nippon re watáriki*, a certain Siu-fu came to Japan to search for a remedy against death.

¹⁾ Neth.-Jap. Treaty. III. al. 5

²⁾ Ibid. XI al. 2

³⁾ Ibid. VIII al. 2

The spoken language supersedes *Motomen* by *Motomeô* (see page 209), thence the expressions: *Motomeô to suru tokoroni*, on the point of acquiring; *Motomeô to suru mono*, some one who is on the point of acquiring; *Motomeô to te*, that he may acquire.

V. Concessive conjunctions.

§ 131. 49. **Mo**, 亦^モ, = also, properly an adverbial postposition (see § 122), when it is put after the predicate verb of a subordinate causal proposition, it characterizes it, as one granting that something is real or possible, whilst the statement thus conceded is limited or revoked by a proposition immediately following it (adversative proposition). The verb dependent on *mo*, as it has been already noticed in § 74, is put in the substantive form with the local termination *ni* or also in the gerund.

Akuru ni mo, *Miru ni mo*, *Yuku ni mo*.

Akete mo, *Mite mo*, *Yukite* (△ *Yūite*) *mo*.

△ *Ika-yau ni nāsīte mó*, however it be made. — △ *O kai nasarete mo*, *O yame nasarete mo*, *kono ūjé wa deki-masénu* ¹⁾. you may buy it or not: I cannot go further. I don't care; take it or leave it.

50. ..*tomo*, 𐤀, also, with a verb preceding in its substantive form. *Akuru-tomo*, *Miru-tomo*, *Yuku-tomo*. — *Idzūrē no káta yōrī mairu-tomó* ²⁾, it does not matter from which side he may come.

51. ..*domó*, 𐤀𐤌𐤐, = *ndomó*, contr. from *ni*, Local, and *tomó*. Comp. page 207. Opposed to *Akeba* アケバ, the fusion of *Ake ni va*, is *Akedomo* アケドモ, likewise a fusion of *Ake ni to mo*, and opposed to *Arebá* is *Aredomó*. — though there is. From *Aranedomo*, = though there is not, and *Saranedomo*, = though it is not so, come *Arademo* and *Sarademo*. Compare page 258.

52. ..*iedómó*, = though it is said, though it is called, though... with a previous appositive definition characterized by *to*. See page 208.

忘 ワスル ヲ	雖 イハヒ タツ トモ ナカレ	忘 ワスル ヲ	雖 イハヒ タツ トモ ナカレ	<i>Tómü tó iedomó, mázusiki wo wásurūru koto nakare!</i>
賤 イヤシ キ	貴 イヤシ キ	貧 イヤシ キ	富 イハヒ タツ トモ ナカレ	<i>Táttsitó iedomó, iyásiki wo wásurūru koto nakari.</i>
	勿 ナカレ		勿 ナカレ	Though you are rich, do not forget the poor!
				Though you are honorable, do not forget low people!

¹⁾ *Shopping-Dialogues*, p. 39

²⁾ *French-Jap. Treaty*. III. 13.

日^{ニチ} - 學^{ガク} 金^{コウ} - 雖^{イヘドモ} 積^{ツク} 不^ズ 如^シ 千^{セン} 一^{イチ} 兩^{リウ} *Sen-rýgu no ko-gane wó tsumû tó iedomó, itsi-nitsi no gákû nî va sikázu, though gold is heaped up to the amount of a thousand ounces, it is not equal to one day's study. — ..koto wo mó yurusu bési to iedomó, ..koto va kessite nazáru bési ¹⁾, though this also be granted, it may not certainly happen that...*

53. **Sikare domo**, 然, syncopated **Sare domo**, = though it is so, the concessive form of *Sikar*)i, u. = to be so, root *si* (see page 109 n^o. 71).

54. **Sore de mo**, = also then, the modal of *Sore*, = such, followed by *mo*, antithesis of the conclusive *Sore de wa* (see page 334 n^o. 17).

55. **Siká mó**, 而^{シカモ}, = but: abbreviation of *Sikarédomo*. = *Hutó no gen-séi naru, sikamó koré ni tagaute, tsuu-sézárasimû ²⁾*, to oppose men, although they are accomplished and wise, and not allow their advancement.

56. **Somo somo**, 抑^ヨ ³⁾, 亦然, = or, explained by the Japanese themselves as concessive ¹⁾, concedes the antecedent statement, however introduces an adversative clause. It means properly „so as so as,” is a fusion of *Sikámo*, and this of *Sikákû mo* (just as *Sosite* of *Sikákû sité*, see page 334 n^o. 18), and stands with the adversative force of *Todúsi* (see page 335 n^o. 22) or of *Sikási* (see page 333 n^o. 13). Some Japanese etymologists think *Somo somo* an abbreviation of *Sore mo sore mo*, others of *Sate mo, sate mo*, which, so far as the meaning goes, approaches our derivation.

In the beginning of a speech it serves to announce that which is to be said, as an opposition of other opinions. In this quality it is stamped as an introductory word (發^{ハツ} 語^ゴ, 辭^ジ, *Fat-go no kotoba*), and will approach most nearly to an expression like: „However it may be” ⁵⁾.

與^カ 抑^ヨ 求^{モトム} 之^{コレラ} *Kore wo motomuru ka? Somo somo kore wo atururu (atoorn)*
與^カ 之^{コレラ} *ka? ⁶⁾, does he strive for it? or does one give it to him?*
之^{コレラ} 與^カ

¹⁾ Neth.-Jap. Treaty. II. al. 6.

²⁾ *Dai Gaku*. X. 14.

³⁾ „*Yih*, a particle denoting or, either: also a commencing particle as moreover.” MEDHURST, *Chinese and English Dictionary*.

⁴⁾ 反^ハ 語^ゴ, 辭^ジ.

⁵⁾ The sense we assign to *Somo somo* does not agree with that attributed to it in GOSCHKEWITSCH *Yaponsko-Russkii Slovar*.

⁶⁾ *Lun-yu*. I. § 10.

抑ノモ而ナレ強シ與カ
 與カ北ホク方ハウ之ノ強キヤウ與カ
 曰ノタマハク南ナン方ハウ之ノ強キヤウ
 子シ路ロ問ト強キヤウ子シ

Sì-ro kiyoo wo torû. Sino no-tamawaku, nan-foonno kiyooka?
foku-fau no kiyooka? somo somo nandzi ga kiyooka? ¹⁾.
 Tsze-lu asked about energy. The Master said, „Do
 you mean the energy of the South? the energy of
 the North? or your own energy?

57. **Mamayo**, — in case it occurs with the meaning attributed to it of „*en-core que, quoique*” ²⁾ — for in Japanese writings I have never yet met with this word. it must, to have a concessive force, be reduced to the form of *Ma-ma mo* (see page 337 n^o. 31) modified for the sake of euphony, and thus mean „however often,” being equivalent to *Toki-toki mo* or *Tabi-tabi mo*. The expression: „How-
 ever often he tries it, he does not succeed in it,” would thus be equivalent to *Kokoro-miru mamayo deki-masénû*.

Remark. The suffix **mo** gives to all the conjunctions definitive of place and time, or properly words expressive of relation, cited in § 127, a concessive force, i. e. it characterizes the antecedent proposition, which the word expressive of relation governs, as concessive, while the subsequent proposition comes out with an adversative force ³⁾.

The relative comparative of propositions.

§ 132. 58. **Musiro**, 寧シ, = in preference, rather, Lat. *potius*, as an ad-
 verb, it is put at the beginning of a subsequent proposition. to the contents of
 which preference is given above that expressed in the antecedent proposition. As
 starting point of the comparison the antecedent statement is characterized by *yori va*.
 Next to „*Yuku yori va yukánû ga másu*, = it is better not to go than to go,” cited
 in *Remark* p. 131. is *Yuku* (or *Yukan*. Future) *yori va musiro yuku na yo?* = rather
 do not go, than go! Whereas the state or action. to which the preference is
 given may be represented as one commanded or future, the state or action of
 the antecedent proposition may be a present, or likewise a future one, as appears
 from the following saying of *Kung-tsze* (*Lun-yu*, Cap. III. *Pä-yü*, § 4). of which
 we give three Japanese translations, which lie before us.

¹⁾ *Tschung-yung*. X. 1, 2.

²⁾ RODRIGUEZ § 83.

³⁾ According to GOSCHKEWITSCH *Yap.-Russ.* *slowar*, *Mamayo* signifies *Wprotschem* (besides)

I. 1	2	3	II 1	2	3	„As to festive ceremonies, be rather sparing than
禮、 レイハ	...	...	喪、 モハ	...	...	extravagant; as to mourning, be rather grieved
與、 ヨリハ	...	...	與、 ヨリハ	...	...	than pay attention to observances.”
其、 ソ	...	...	其、 ソ	...	...	In the translation 1 and 2 the subsequent pro-
奢、 オゴル	オゴラン	オゴラン	易、 オヤムル	オサメル	オサマラン	position is taken as Imperative, in 3 as a wish,
也、 シ	...	...	也、 シ	...	...	in the Future, whereas in 1 the antecedent pro-
寧、 シロ	...	...	寧、 シロ	...	...	position is conceived as Present, in 2 and 3 as
儉、 ケンセヨ	ケンセヨ	ツ、マヤカナラン	戚、 イタマセヨ	イタメル	イタマラン	Future.

In Mr. J. LEGGE's excellent version of the Chinese text this passage runs: „In festive ceremonies, it is better to be sparing than extravagant; in the ceremonies of mourning, it is

better that there be deep sorrow than a minute attention to observances.”

Remark. 1. Japanese etymologists see in *Musiro* a variation of *Mosi* (若_シ, = in case of, see § 129 n°. 46), and explain *ro* as an „auxiliary word” ¹⁾; an explanation that does not preposses us in its favor. Should not *Musiro* much rather be equivalent to the syncopated form of *Masu-siro* (益_ス代_シ), and thus mean „more price” or „higher value” ²⁾. Used as an adverb, a word with this signification, at least more than any other, would be equivalent to our „by preference.” With regard to the so called auxiliary word *ro*, the *Wa-gun Siwori* teaches us, that in the eastern Japan it supersedes the termination *wo*. In Japanese Dictionaries the signification of △*Sou-si-tai* and *Kau-si-tai*, i. e. to desire to do so or so (see § 105), is given to *Musiro* and 寧 (*ning*, willingly); it is plain that the writer aims at the optative proposition, which is introduced by *Musiro*.

Remark 2. The spoken language supersedes *Musiro* with *Naka-nakani*, = almost, rather, and *Nengoro ni*, = willingly, rather; and makes use of other expedients too. — *Si-sen yori wa naka-nakani nokorazu sūte-oken*, I will rather give up all, than die. — *Watakusi wa yuku yori yuki-masēnu hoo ga yorosii to zon-zi-masū* ³⁾, I think, that it is better not to go, than go. I would rather not go. — „*Fūto wo gai-suru yori wa fūto ni gai-seraruru ga māsī to omōi-nasare!* Suffer wrong rather than do it” ⁴⁾; literally: think, that it is better to be injured by others, than to injure others!

¹⁾ *Wa-gun Siwori*, under *Musiro*.

²⁾ Compare *Nai ga siro*, worth nothing. § 109. I. 1

³⁾ R. BROWN, *Coll. Jap.* N°. 419.

⁴⁾ *Ibid.* N°. 873.

ALPHABETICAL SYNOPSIS OF THE CONJUNCTIONS TREATED.

<i>Aida</i> . . . N ^o . 32.	<i>Mata va.</i> . N ^o . 8.	<i>Sáte</i> N ^o . 19.	<i>Toki ni</i> . . N ^o . 26.
<i>Anzuru ni</i> . . . 23.	<i>Mave, Maye</i> . . 34.	<i>Sáte vá</i> 19.	<i>Toki ni va.</i> . . . 26.
<i>Aruiva</i> 7.	<i>Mai</i> 34.	<i>Setsü</i> 27.	<i>Tokinva.</i> 26.
<i>Bašo</i> 24.	<i>Mígiri</i> 23.	<i>Siká mó.</i> 55.	<i>Tokóro</i> 24.
<i>..domo</i> 51.	<i>..mo.</i> 1.	<i>Sikaredomo.</i> . . 53.	<i>Tokóro de.</i> . . . 24.
<i>Fodo</i> 42.	<i>..mo. ..mo.</i> . . 1.	<i>Sikáru ni yotte.</i> 16.	<i>Tokóro ni.</i> . . . 24.
<i>Fodo ni</i> 42.	<i>..mo mata</i> . . . 2.	<i>Sikási.</i> 13.	<i>..to mo.</i> 50.
<i>..ga.</i> 12.	<i>Mosi.</i> 46.	<i>Sikási-nagára</i> . 13.	<i>Toóri ni.</i> 39.
<i>Gotó ni</i> 21.	<i>Mosiküva</i> 46.	<i>Sikási-nagáramo</i> 14.	<i>..to te.</i> 43.
<i>Gotó)si, ki, ku.</i> 41.	<i>Mottomo</i> 11.	<i>Somo-somo</i> . . . 56.	<i>..tsuite</i> 44.
<i>Hodo ni.</i> 42.	<i>Musiro</i> 53.	<i>Soo-sitá kara</i> . . 16.	<i>Utsí.</i> 29.
<i>..iédomó</i> 52.	<i>Nagára.</i> 12.	<i>Soo-site kara</i> . . 16.	<i>Utsí ni</i> 29.
<i>..ka, ..ka</i> 9.	<i>..nara.</i> 46.	<i>Soo wa</i> 17.	<i>Utsí wa</i> 29.
<i>Kanete</i> 6.	<i>..narabá</i> 46.	<i>Sore da kara.</i> 16. 44.	<i>üyé</i> 33.
<i>Kara.</i> . 16, 37, 44.	<i>Narabi ni.</i> 5.	<i>Sore de</i> 17.	<i>..ya, ..ya</i> . . . 10.
<i>Kárü ya yüé ni.</i> 43.	<i>..nga</i> 12.	<i>Sore de mo</i> . . . 54.	<i>..yara.</i> 10.
<i>Katsu.</i> 3.	<i>..ni yórite.</i> 16, 45.	<i>Sore de wa</i> . . . 17.	<i>..yaran.</i> 10.
<i>Katsu va</i> 3.	<i>..ni yote.</i> . 16. 45.	<i>Sore-kara</i> . 16. 44.	<i>Yau ni.</i> 40.
<i>Kedási</i> 21.	<i>..ni yotte.</i> . 16. 45.	<i>Sore ni yotte</i> . . 16.	<i>Yavári</i> 15.
<i>Kono yué ni</i> . . 43.	<i>Notsí</i> 45.	<i>Sosite</i> 18.	<i>Yoo ni</i> 40.
<i>Kore ni yotte.</i> . 16.	<i>Oyóbi</i> 4.	<i>Sosite kara.</i> 16. 44.	<i>Yori.</i> 36.
<i>Ma</i> 3.	<i>Sán-nagára.</i> . . 14.	<i>Sānaratsi</i> 20.	<i>Yotte</i> 16.
<i>Made</i> 33.	<i>Sare domo.</i> . . . 53.	<i>Tubi-goto ni</i> . . . 31.	<i>Yüé</i> 43.
<i>Ma-ma</i> 31.	<i>Sári-nagára</i> . . 14.	<i>Tabi-tabi ni.</i> . . 31.	<i>Yüé ni</i> . . . 16, 43.
<i>Ma-ma ni.</i> . . . 31.	<i>Sári-nagára mó.</i> 14.	<i>Tadási</i> 22.	
<i>Ma-ma yo.</i> . . . 57.	<i>Sárü-fodo ni</i> . . 42.	<i>Tamé ni.</i> 47.	
<i>Mata</i> 2.	<i>Sárü ni yotte</i> . . 16.	<i>Toki.</i> 26.	

APPENDIX.

The three dialects, those of *Hán*, *U* and *T'áng*, mentioned and elucidated at pp. 30 and 31, are, according to a statement, since come to our knowledge, from a Japanese man of letters ¹⁾, the dialect of *Hang-chow* (杭州), capital of the province *Ché-keang*, that of *Fúh-chow* (福州), capital of *Fúh-k'een*, and the Official language (官音, *Kwan-yin*), by others, also called *Kwan-hwa* or the Mandarin. A correct instruction in the Official language is extremely rare, the more so, as both the other dialects are generally in use.

As this statement furnishes a satisfactory answer to the question concerning the presumed historical value of the Chinese dialects extant in Japan, we consider ourselves required to quote the original expressions of this statement also.

精 密 傳 ル モノ マレ ナリ、	福 州 ナリ、 官 音 ハ 至 テ	三 ツ アリ、 多 ク ハ 杭 州	杭 州、 福 州、 官 音、	○ 本 朝 ノ 傳 ル ト コ ロ、
-------------------------------------	--	--	-------------------------------	--

¹⁾ 四聲解環, *Si-sei kai-kwan*, = a round to elucidate the four tones, by *Kau-mon Sen-sei*, 1804; reprinted in 1858. Preface, p. 1 verso.

A D D E N D A.

Page 157. The year-name *Gen-dzi* (1864) is succeeded by 慶々應々, *Kei-oo 丑元* 1865.

Page 250, § 92. 1. *Remark.* If *zar*i, *u*, is preceded by a substantief in the Local or by an adverb in *ku*, it stands as a substantive affirmative verb and is a fusion of the particle *zo* and *ar*)*i*, *u*. Thus *Fána ni zarikeri* stands for *Fána ni zo arikeri*, = a flower has it been; *Sámüku zarikeri*, for *Sámüku zo arikeri*, = cold has it been.

E R R A T A.

Page 294 line 5. *For:* nondeflecting *Read:* deflecting

PL533 .H71
A Japanese grammar

Princeton Theological Seminary-Speer Library



1 1012 00072 7992